

# Manual for FOMA® SA702i 706.5

Quick search/ Contents/Precautions Before using SA702i

Making/receiving a call

Making/receiving a videophone call

Phonebook

Sound/Display/ Light settings

SA702i

208(\*)

 $\mathbb{M}$ 

8

2 D

1.0

€ CLR

4 GHI 5 KL 6 MNO

7°2° 8°0 9°5′ Kän 0°5′ #32

PWR

Safety settings

Camera

i-mode/ i-motion

Mai

i-αppli

i-channel

GPS function

Displaying/editing/ managing data Music Player/ FM radio Other convenient functions

Network service

Data communication

Character input

Appendix/External device linkage/ Troubleshooting Index/ Quick reference manual



# **DoCoMo W-CDMA System**

# Thank you for choosing "FOMA SA702i" mobile terminal.

Both before and during the use of FOMA SA702i mobile terminal, be sure to thoroughly read this manual and instruction manuals that come with the battery pack and other devices, to ensure you for correct use of FOMA SA702i mobile terminal. Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details. FOMA SA702i mobile terminal will be your trusted partner. Treat it with care, for long-term use.

# Before using FOMA mobile terminal

- Since FOMA terminal uses radio waves, it may not function in locations where it is difficult for radio waves to reach, such as tunnels, underground and inside buildings, in areas where radio wave signals are weak, or outside the service area. FOMA terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals, even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, in some cases. In addition, communication might be interrupted even when the signal meter on FOMA terminal indicates a good radio wave condition, and even when you are not moving.
- Use FOMA terminal in a way that does not disturb others in public places, crowded locations or quiet places.
- Since FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is a possibility that third parties may attempt to intercept your calls. However, the W-CDMA system automatically performs a confidential communication function for all calls. Even if someone should somehow be able to tap a call, the signals are modified so that the eavesdropping party will hear only noise.
- FOMA terminal encodes voice communication as digital signal. When you are using FOMA terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave signals, the transmitted digital signal may not be correctly decoded. The decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.
- Keep a separate written record of the data you register in FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.
- The user hereby agrees to be solely responsible for the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed below makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL, and assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, Inc.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA plus area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

# For new users of FOMA terminal

- If you are a new user of FOMA terminal, it is recommended to read this manual in the following order. It provides you with the basic understandings for preparation and operations to use FOMA terminals.
- 1. Place the battery pack and charge it.  $\rightarrow$  P41, 42
- 2. Turn the power on, make the initial settings, and check your phone number. →P48, 49, 51
- 3. Check the functions of each key on the terminal.  $\rightarrow$  P28
- 4. Check the meaning of the icons etc. on the screen.  $\rightarrow$  P30
- 5. Check the operation procedures of the menus.  $\rightarrow$ P34
- 6. Check the operation to make/answer a call.  $\rightarrow$  P53

The latest information on this manual can be downloaded from DoCoMo Internet site.

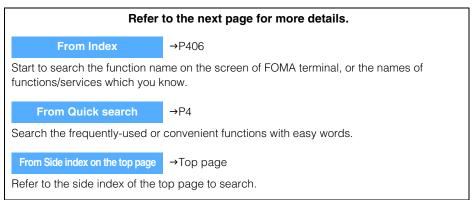
- "User's Manual Download" (in PDF format)
- http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
- \* URL and the contents of this manual may be subject to change without a prior notice.

# How to read/refer to this manual

# In this manual, instructions are described with illustrations or marks, to use FOMA terminal properly.

## **Referring to this manual**

You can search the appropriate page for desired information of functions or services as below:



From Contents

Search from the terms of contents with categorized functions.

From Features

→P8

→P6

Start to search the featured new/convenient functions of FOMA terminal.

From Menu list →P360

Lists the menus displayed on the menu screen of FOMA terminal.

From Quick reference manual →P4

→P412

The basic functions are explained briefly. Cut out from the manual, to take it with you.

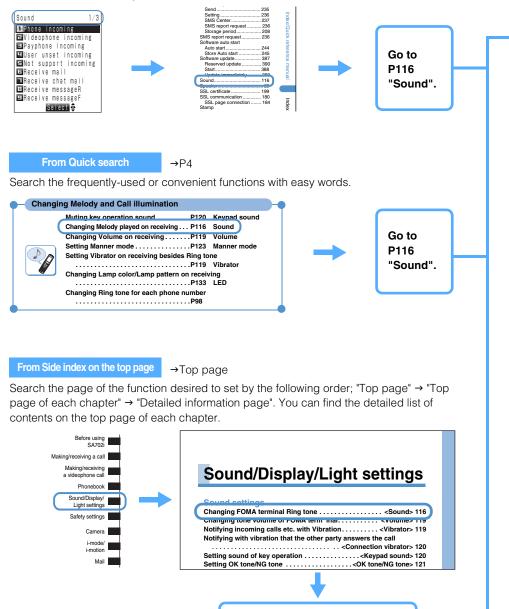
- Note that in this "Manual for FOMA SA702i", "FOMA SA702i" is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal". Please be forewarned.
- This manual describes the functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. miniSD memory card →P287
- Descriptions in this manual are based on the default settings. Contents displayed on screens may differ from the description on this manual, depending on setting changes.
- The images or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may differ from the actual screens.
- Unauthorized copy of all or part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual may be subject to change without a prior notice.

## Describes how to search Sound setting information as an example.

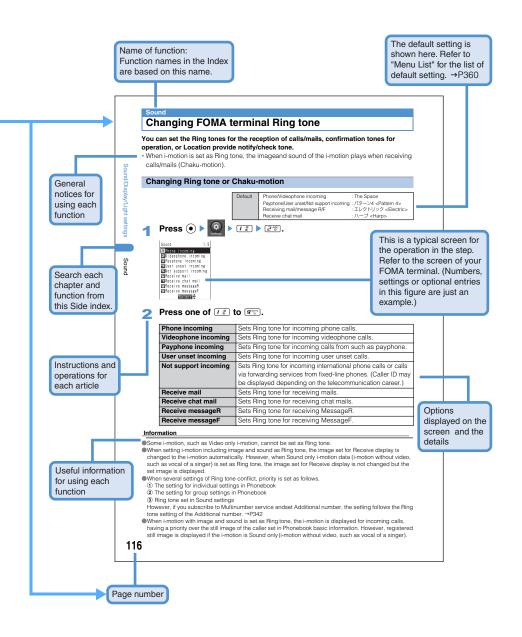
From Index

→P406

Start to search the function name on the screen of FOMA terminal, or the names of functions/services which you know.



Go to P116 "Sound".



• The page shown is an example. Contents may differ from the actual page.

# **Quick search**

## Use this index to search from the desired function or operation.

# Using convenient functions during a call



Notifying/not notifying your Caller ID P51			
Facing to the screen while talking P83			
Adjusting volume of the other party's voice			
P68			
Holding a callP55			

Hands-free Earpiece volume Call-on-hold

Caller ID notification

## Handling a call when you cannot answer



Recording the other party's message P76	Record message
Recording the message on Voice mail P338	Voice mail
Holding a call to answer	On-hold

## **Changing Melody and Call illumination**



Muting key operation soundP120	Keypad sound
Changing Melody played on receiving P116	Sound
Changing Volume on receiving P119	Volume
Setting Manner modeP123	Manner mode
Setting Vibrator on receiving besides Ring to	ne
P119	Vibrator
Changing Lamp color/Lamp pattern on receiv	ving
P133	LED
Changing Ring tone for each phone number	
P98	

# Changing/reading display



Changing Stand-by displayP125Stand-by displayDisplaying Calendar on Stand-by display.P126Clock/CalendarSetting Time and date.P50Time and date settingChanging Font size.P135Font sizeLooking up meanings of Marks (Icons) on screenP30

# Making full use of Mail



Using Chat mail.....P232

Deco-mail Melody/Still image/ Movies/i-motion mail Auto sort

Compose/send Chat mail

## Making full use of Camera

1

Changing shooting sizeP168	
Changing Shutter soundP171	
Turning Light onP168	
Saving to miniSD memory card directly P171	Save to:
Displaying shot imagesP275	

## Using FOMA terminal with security settings

Searching the route to the destination

Rejecting calls with no Caller ID notified P150 Rejecting calls from numbers not registered ir P152	for User unset Phonebook Reject calls from unregistered numbers
Locking Side keyP147	unregistered numbers

## Other convenient functions

	Searching the route to the destination F256	Navigation
	Starting frequently used functions with simple of	operation
		Shortcut menu
	Using as CalculatorP329	Calculator
_	Scanning QR codes or JAN codes P172	Bar code reader
	Transferring information with Infrared comm	unication
7	P298	
	Using as alarm clockP316	Alarm
	Using GPS P255	
	Using miniSD memory cardP287	
	Using FM radioP309	
	Updating softwareP387	Software update
	Updating Security function	Scanning function

D258

Novigation

Refer to "For new users of FOMA terminal" on the back of the cover page, for viewing other operations and functions. Quick manual provides frequently used procedures to refer. →P412

Terms of contents

# **Terms of contents**

Before using FOMA mobile terminal	Back	c of	the	cover	page
For new users of FOMA terminal	Back	c of	the	cover	page
How to read/refer to this manual					1
Quick search					4
Features of FOMA SA702i					8
Making full use of FOMA SA702i!					10
Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECT	TIONS	)			12
Handling instructions					21
Intellectual property rights					24
Basic package and optional accessories					26

## Before using SA702i

Names and functions of parts Display Select Menu Use UIM (FOMA card) Insert/remove battery pack Charge Battery level Power ON/OFF Time/date setting Caller ID notification Profile Select language etc.

#### Making/receiving a call 53 Make a call Redial International call Answer a call Any key answer Open to talk Public mode (Drive mode) Closing action Received call On-hold Record message etc. Making/receiving a videophone call 81 Make a videophone call Answer a videophone call Set image to send Display setting for videophone call etc. Phonebook 93 Store in Phonebook Edit Group Search Phonebook Secret Direct call etc. Sound/Display/Light settings 115 Sound Vibrator Manner mode Stand-by display Backlight LED etc. Safety settings 137 Security code Change terminal security code PIN code Lock all self mode PIM lock Keypad dial lock Secret mode Call rejection etc. Camera Shoot still image Shoot movie Setting for shooting Bar code reader Character reader etc i-mode/i-motion 177

i-mode Display site Change i-mode password Connect to Internet Bookmark i-mode setting MessageR/F Certificate i-motion Download i-motion etc.

27

Mail	203
Compose/send i-mode mail Deco-mail Attachment Save i-mode m Receive i-mode mail Check new message Reply to i-mode mail i-n Play/save melody Mail setting Chat mail Compose/send SMS et	motion mail
i-αppli	239
Download Start i-appli i-appli To function i-appli stand-by display	etc.
i-channel	251
Display i-channel i-channel setting	
GPS function	255
Position location Navigation GPS software Location provide Notify lo	ocation etc.
Displaying/editing/managing data	273
	nemory card etc.
Music Player/FM radio	305
Music Player FM radio	
Other convenient functions	313
Multiaccess Multitask Alarm Schedule Shortcut menu Profile Voice memo during a call Duration/Cost Calculator Text r Call maximum limit Reset settings Delete all data Dictionary etc.	nemo
Network service	337
Voice mail service Call waiting Call forwarding service Nuisance call barr Caller ID request status service Dual network service English guidance In-call arrival act Remote access etc.	0
Data communication	345
Flow of data communication AT command	
Character input	349
Character input Edit Common phrases/emoticons Copy character In Store in user dictionary Download dictionary Input prediction 2-tou	nput code ıch etc.
Appendix/External device linkage/Troubleshooting	359
Menu list Characters assigned to dial keys Input codes Combination of Multiaccess/Multitask functions Optional and related de Data link software Movie player software Troubleshooting Error me Warranty and After-sales service Software update Scanning function Major specifications SAR certification information etc.	essage list
Index/Quick reference manual	405

Terms of contents

# Features of FOMA SA702i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA format, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant with the global standard for the third generation wireless communications (IMT-2000).

## i-mode, its splendid service

i-mode is the online service providing useful information from i-mode Menu sites (programs) or i-mode compatible sites. In addition, you can transfer mails easily using i-mode terminals.

- i-mode →P178
- i-mode mail →P204
- i-motion mail →P207

- i-motion →P201
- i-shot →P206

# SA702i main features

## Videophone →P81

You can talk to the other party in a distance watching each other's face. Set the caller's voice to come out from the speaker, or switch to Outcamera to show surroundings to the other party.

#### Deco-mail →P211

Deco-mail allows you to compose and send more expressive E-mail messages with varieties of font color/size/background color, as well as inserting Deco-mail pictures or images shot by built-in Camera. You can also compose Deco-mail easily using received Deco-mail or templates downloaded from sites.

## i-channel →P252

i-channel provides graphical information such as latest news or weather reports. Information is provided periodically. Latest information is displayed as ticker on Stand-by display, or Channel list which becomes available by pressing i-channel key. In addition, you can retrieve enriched detailed information by selecting your favorite channel from Channel list. If you have not subscribed to i-channel service yet, the trial service is available with free of charge for a certain period.

## i-αppli/i-αppliDX →P239

You can download various i-αppli from sites for your use, or set to Stand-by display etc. i-αppliDX also allows you to broaden the use of i-αppli in conjunction with the data such as Phonebook or mails in i-mode terminal.

# Wide variety of network services

- Voice mail service (charged)<sup>\*1</sup> →P338
- Call forwarding service<sup>\*1</sup> →P340
- SMS (Short Message)<sup>\*2</sup> →P235
- Dual network service (charged)<sup>\*1</sup> →P341
- Call waiting (charged)\*1 →P339
  - \*1 Optional subscription is required.
- \*2 Optional subscription is not required.

# Safety settings

You can set the terminal security code to protect privacy, or Lock all/self mode not to be revealed or connected by third parties without permission.

# Other convenient functions

## GPS function →P255

Retrieves location information of FOMA terminal by using radio waves transmitted from GPS satellites. Following services are available with retrieved location information.

- Displaying map or searching surrounding information of the present location You can send retrieved location information to display a map, or search surrounding information easily.
- Sending the present location or favorite places by mails

Attach location information to mail message, and i-mode users who received the mail can confirm the location with maps.

 Registering location information onto Phonebook or images
 You can add location information of such as shops to Phonebook etc., and confirm the shop location with maps.

It is also available to add location information of the shooting spot to the still image, and confirm later with maps.

- Using GPS applicable i-αppli (GPS software) Useful i-αppli is available by location information.
- Using Navigation Navigation to the destination is available by using retrieved location information.

## High-qualified camera functions →P155

FOMA terminal equips CCD camera with approximately 1300K effective pixels (approximately 1200K maximum effective pixels for shooting), and the available still image is up to the SXGA size. You can shoot images with frame decorations or special effects, or shoot continuously. And the recordable movies with FOMA terminal is up to the QCIF size.

#### Character reader →P174 /Bar code reader →P172

You can register Phonebook entries or compose i-mode mails by reading phone number or mail address with built-in camera. In addition, scanned English words can be translated. Scanning bar codes (JAN code, QR code) is also available.

## Multitask →P315

Multitask allows you to activate several functions at the same time and to perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can confirm Phonebook entries during a call, or compose a mail with referring to a memo, etc.

## Supporting miniSD memory card →P287

With supporting miniSD memory card standard, you can use the data in FOMA terminal, such as images, melodies or sound saved in external devices. Movies or sound data saved in miniSD memory card can be played with FOMA terminal. (Some data may not be played properly in some conditions.) Alternatively, images, Phonebook data or mails in FOMA terminal can be saved to external devices by using miniSD memory card.

## FM radio →P309

You can listen to FM radio or channel 1 to 3 of television with only sound. Select an area where you want to choose a station, and favorite stations are available by pressing dial keys. You can also record the sound.

## Melody →P287

FOMA terminal equips melodies with 64 chords in PCM format, to set as Ring tone of phone/mail. You can also download PCM format melodies with surrounded-sound from sites.

#### Infrared communication → P298

Phonebook data, mails, images, melodies and other data can be exchanged between FOMA terminals and mobile phones equipped with infrared communication function.

## Supporting Flash<sup>®</sup> →P181

Enjoy Flash movies and animations on i-mode sites with FOMA terminal. And you can also download Flash animation and set it as Standby display.

## Direct Call →P111

Register persons whom you contact frequently, to make calls or send mails quickly with easy operation. You can select and display the list of Received calls/Redials or Received/Send mails only between the registered persons.

# Making full use of FOMA SA702i!

## This section introduces various functions of FOMA SA702i with screen images.

# Videophone →P82

Images to send can be switched easily in a videophone call. You can switch In-camera and Out-camera, or display various images in Data box.







party.



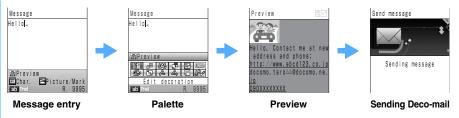
Sends image in Data box as substitutive image.



Available to switch the display size

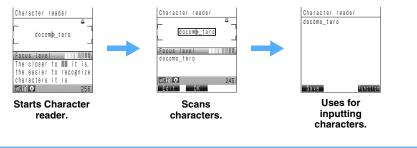
# Deco-mail →P211, 213

You can send colorful and enjoyable mails easily, by changing font color or background color, and inserting pictures in Deco-mail picture or the ones shot with built-in camera.



# Character reader →P174

You can scan phone number or E-mail address with FOMA terminal built-in camera. Various usages of data are available, such as registering the scanned data to Phonebook or composing a mail.



Making full use of FOMA SA702i

# Making full use of FOMA SA702i

# Direct Call →P111

Register persons whom you contact frequently, to make calls or send mails quickly with easy operation.



# i-channel →P252

Reception of various information periodically, without any operation. Press i-channel keys and you can display Channel list. Channel list provides you more detailed information to retrieve.



# Gガイド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV Program Remote Control> →P244

"Gガイド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV Program Remote Control>", which is preinstalled in FOMA terminal, provides you to retrieve program guides any time in response to your request. Remote control of television is also available using infrared communication function of FOMA terminal.



Check G-code<sup>®</sup> on program guides.



Retrieve detailed information of the program by connecting to the server.

• The screen is an example. Contents may differ from the actual screens. Displayed channels vary according to the area you live.

# Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

Quick search/ ontents/Precautions

- Before using your FOMA terminal, read the following precautions to ensure safe use and handling. Keep this manual carefully after reading.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others. Read and follow the cautions carefully to avoid injury, damage to a person or the property.
- The following signs differentiate the levels of danger or damage that may occur if the product is not used under the specified guidelines.

This sign denotes that high potential for death or serious injury may be caused by improper use.
This sign denotes that potential for death or serious injury may be caused by improper use.
This sign denotes that bodily injury or damage to property may be caused by improper use.

# The following symbols show specific directions.

Don't	This symbol denotes that the action is prohibited.
No disassembly	This symbol denotes that disassembling the terminal or its component is not allowed.
Avoid water	This symbol denotes that using the terminal or its components near water or getting the device wet is not allowed.
No wet hands	This symbol denotes that using the terminal or its components with wet hands is not allowed.
	This symbol denotes that the instruction must be obeyed at all times.

This symbol denotes that the adapter must be unplugged.

# Unplug

# "Precautions" contains the following 6 descriptions.

Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) andUIM (FOMA card) (Common)13Handling FOMA terminal.14Handling battery pack.16Handling adaptors (including battery charger)18Handling UIM (FOMA card)19Handling mobile phone near electronic medical devices20

# Contents/Precautions Quick search/

Precautions (ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

# Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (FOMA card ) (Common)

# 



Use battery pack and adapter (including battery charger) that are specified by the DoCoMo group companies with your FOMA terminal. Not using the terminal specified by the DoCoMo group companies may cause FOMA terminal, battery pack and other parts to leak, heat, burst, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack SA03 Desktop holder SA03 FOMA AC adapter 01 FOMA DC adapter 01 FOMA AC adapter 01 for global use FOMA dry battery adapter 01

\* Contact DoCoMo shop etc. for more information on other compatible products.



## Do not wet the terminal.

Contact with water or other liquid may Avoid water cause heating, electric shock, fire, malfunctions or injury. Take care where and how you use the terminal.



#### Do not disassemble or remodel the terminal. Also, do not solder the No disassemble device or components.

It may cause a fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.

Also battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

Do not use or leave the battery pack in locations subject to high temperature, such as near a fireplace, heating appliances, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

It may cause the terminal deformation/ malfunction or battery pack leak/ overheat/burst/ignite/catching fire/ performance loss/shorter life. Also a part of the case may be heated and may be the cause of burns.

# 🗥 WARNING



## Do not throw the terminal or give hard shock to the terminal.

It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, and the terminal to malfunction or catch fire.



Do not put the battery pack, FOMA terminal, the adapter (including battery charger) or UIM (FOMA card) into microwave ovens or other heating appliances or high-pressure containers. It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, burst or ignite, FOMA terminal or the adapter (including battery charger) to heat, smoke, ignite, or damage circuits.



## Do not use the terminal in an environment liable to cause it to explode or catch fire, such as a gas station. Explosions or fire may be caused if the terminal is used in areas where dust or flammable gas such as propane or gasoline vapors are generated.



Do not allow an electrically conductive material, such as metal piece or pencil lead, contact to the charging terminals or the external connection port. Also do not put electrically conductive material into the terminal.

It may cause fire or malfunction from short-out.



Operate following procedures immediately when your terminal acts differently from usual, such as strange smell, heat generation, discoloration, or deformation while using, charging, storing.

- 1. Remove the power plug from the outlet or a socket.
- 2. Turn off the power of FOMA terminal.
- 3. Remove the battery pack from FOMA terminal.

The continued use in those conditions may cause overheat, burst, ignite or leak of battery pack.

# Handling FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (FOMA card ) (Common) (continued)

# 



Keep the terminal out of the reach of infants.

The card or adapter can be accidentally swallowed or cause injuries.



Do not keep the terminal in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.



Children using the terminal should be instructed by adults. Do not allow them to use the terminal without adult supervision.

Or it may cause injuries.

6		
	2	ý
		,

Do not leave the terminal on unstable or tilted surfaces.

Don't It may fall off and cause malfunction or injuries.

6	Π	
	!	
[	Do	

The temperature of FOMA terminal or the battery pack/adapter (including the battery charger) may become higher for charging or repeating/ continuously using in, shooting/ playing movies, videophone, i-mode or i-αppli.

If you touch the heated part for a long time, your skin may get reddish, itchy or irritated depending on the physical constitution or condition.

Be careful especially when using FOMA terminal on the adapter (including battery charger) for a long time.

# Handling FOMA terminal

# 🕂 WARNING



Do not use the terminal while driving a vehicle.

According to the amendment of Road Traffic Law, the punishment has been charged by use of mobile phone while driving vehicle since November 1st, 2004. Even when you use hands-free kit, park your vehicle at the safe area to use your mobile phone. While driving, activate Public mode or Voice mail service.



Be sure to keep FOMA terminal away from your ear when you talk with the hands-free function set. It may cause hearing loss.



Turn off the power of FOMA terminal near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals.

It may affect electronic devices and cause mechanical error or malfunction.

\* Examples of electronic equipment to avoid: Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electrical medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors, or other automatic control equipments.

Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators or other electrical medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio waves on the terminal.



If you have heart disease, be careful of settings of such as the vibrator and the ring tone volume for incoming calls.

It may affect heart function.

# 🚹 WARNING



Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in an airplane or hospital.

The use may affect the operation of electronic equipment or medical electric equipment.

If the function which automatically turns on the power is set, release the setting before turning off the power.

When using the terminal in a medical facility, follow the regulations and instructions of the facility.

With prohibited act, such as using the terminal in an airplane, you may be punished by law.



When you use electric medical equipment, do not keep the terminal in your chest pocket or inside pocket. Using your FOMA terminal near medical electric equipment may cause the failure on the equipment.



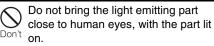
If you hear thunder while using the terminal outdoors, turn off the power immediately, and move to a safe place.

The terminal may be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



Do not point the infrared data port toward your eyes when you transfer the signals.

It may affect your eyes. In addition, pointing to another infrared device to send may cause mechanical error or malfunction on the device.



Visual loss may be caused. Or a strong light dazzles or surprise may cause accidents leading to injury.



Do not put FOMA terminal at the place where impact by blowing up of the airbag is expected, such as dashboard near the air-bag.

In case air-bag is blown up, FOMA terminal may hit people and cause injury, or may cause damage on the terminal.



Do not point Flash/Light towards drivers of vehicles.

<sup>'t</sup> It may cause accidents from dizzy eyes.

# 



Do not put liquid such as water, metal pieces or flammable materials inside UIM (FOMA card) slot or miniSD memory card slot of FOMA terminal. It may cause fire, equipment failure or electric shock.



Do not leave the lens of the built-in camera exposed to a strong light such as direct sunlight for a long time.

A light collection effect from the lens may cause a fire.



Do not swing the FOMA terminal by holding the strap or other parts of the terminal.

It may hit you or other persons and cause injury, or cause equipment damage or failure.

# Handling FOMA terminal (continued)

# **CAUTION**



Do not bring magnetic cards etc. close to FOMA terminal or place them in <sup>t</sup> between the folded terminal.

Magnetic data stored in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks may be erased if the storage medium is placed near the terminal.



Occasionally, using FOMA terminal in some types of vehicle may cause the vehicle's electronic malfunction or failure. In this case, do not use FOMA terminal not to hamper safe driving.



Do not use Flash/Light for other purposes than camera shooting. <sup>t</sup> Flash/Light is turned off with ending

camera. It gets dark suddenly and accidents may be caused.



Do not inhale or put the crystalline liquid leaking from the broken display in your mouth or on your skin. If the liquid gets into your eyes or mouth, rinse with clean water and see a doctor immediately. If the liquid adheres to skin or cloth,

If the liquid adheres to skin or cloth, use alcohol etc. to wipe off and wash with soap.

It may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

 $\langle$ 

Be careful not to catch your fingers or a strap in the terminal when opening/ closing FOMA terminal.

Accident such as injury or damage may result.

# Handling battery pack

# Confirm the battery type to match according to the description on the battery pack label.

Description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery





Do not connect a wire or other metal materials to the battery pack

terminals. Do not carry or keep the battery pack together with a necklace or other metal materials.

It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

Do

If the battery fluid contacts your eye,

do not rub but flush your eye with clean water and see a doctor immediately.

Battery fluid in the eyes may cause blindness.



Contents/Precautions ack

Don't D

Do not bring the battery pack into fire. It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.



Do not nail, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.

It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

**D**on't

Do not force to attach the battery pack on FOMA terminal or the battery pack charger. Always connect the battery pack after confirming the direction to attach.

It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.

If the battery fluid contacts your skin or

clothes, flush the contacted area

The fluid may damage your skin.

thoroughly with clean water

immediately.



Do

If the battery pack leaks liquid or gives off a strange smell, stop using and move the battery pack away from flame immediately.

The liquid from leaking battery fluid may ignite or explode.



If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time, stop charging it.

It may cause the battery pack to leak, heat, damage or ignite.





# Do not discard used battery packs together with other garbage.

<sup>n't</sup> It may cause ignition or environmental destruction. Bring used battery pack to DoCoMo shops etc. with the terminals taped for insulation, or follow the instruction of the municipality collecting used battery.

# Handling adapters (including battery charger)

# <u>î</u> warning



Always use DC adapter in a negativeground vehicle. Never use it in a positive-ground vehicle. Fire may result.



No wet hands with wet hands.

Electric shock may result.



Do not short out with the charging terminals connected to an output or a cigarette lighter socket.

Also, do not touch the charging terminals with a part of your body such as a hand or a finger.

Fire, malfunction, electric shock, or injuries may result.



# Only use with the specified power source and voltage.

Fire or malfunction may result if using with different voltage. When using FOMA terminal overseas, use FOMA AC adapter 01 for global use.

AC adapter:

AC100V (Connect to 100V AC outlet for internal household use only) FOMA AC adapter for global use:

Between AC100V and 240V (Connect to AC outlet for household use)

## DC adapter:

12V or 24V DC (specific for negativeground vehicle)



# Do not touch FOMA terminal or adapter (including charger), if you hear thunder while using.

The terminal may be subject to lightning strike and could cause electric shock.



## If the DC adapter/In-car adapter fuse blows, be sure to replace with the specified fuse.

Applying wrong fuse may cause fire or terminal malfunction. For the specified fuse, refer to each manual of the terminal.



Do not use AC adapter and desktop holder in a bathroom or other highly humid area.

Electric shock may result.



Remove the plug out of outlet or cigarette lighter socket, if water or other liquid get into the adapter. Electric shock, smoke or fire may result.



When you connect AC adapter to an outlet, be careful of contacts with metal materials such as metal straps, and insert firmly.

It may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.



Do not use the adapter (including battery charger) cord or power cord if it gets damaged.

Electric shock, heat or fire may result.



Wipe off any dust around the plug. Fire may result.

# Handling adapters (including battery charger) (continued)

# WARNING



Remove the plug of adapter out of the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket when not using for a long period of time.

Electric shock, fire or malfunction may result.



## Do not force to pull the power plug out when the plug is not removed.

It may cause damage, electric shock or malfunction.



Place the desktop holder or AC adapter on a stable surface while charging. Do not cover or wrap the desktop holder or AC adapter with a cloth, blanket, etc.

Otherwise, FOMA terminal may come off the holder, or the optional devices may be heated, resulting in fire or troubles.

Don't

## Do not use outlets or wiring accessories beyond rated specification.

It may cause heating or firing with plugging too many leads into a single socket.

# A CAUTION



Remove the plug of the adapter out of the wall outlet or the cigarette lighter socket when cleaning the terminal. Electric shock may result.



Do not place heavy objects on the cord of the adapter (including battery charger).

It may cause electric shock or fire.

When you unplug the adapter (including battery charger) out of the Don't wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the code but hold the plug. Pulling the cord may damage the code itself, possibly leading to electric shock or fire.

# Handling UIM (FOMA card)

# CAUTION

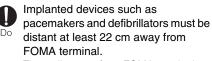


Be careful when you remove IC part of UIM (FOMA card).

Your hands or fingers may be injured.

The following safety precautions conform to "Guidelines regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan).

# 🕂 WARNING



The radio wave from FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in crowded trains or other public places for the people with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators. The radio wave from FOMA terminal may affect the operation of implanted pacemakers or defibrillators. Obey the following rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not bring FOMA terminal into operating rooms, intensive care units (ICU) or coronary care units (CCU).
  - Turn off the power of FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Turn off the power of FOMA terminal also in hospital lobbies and corridors if electronic medical devices are around.
- If the medical facility has specified zones where use or possession of mobile devices is prohibited, follow those instructions.
- If the function to turn on the power automatically is set, release the setting before turning off the power.



When using electronic medical devices other than implanted pacemakers and defibrillators outside medical facilities (such as in homecare), check with the manufacturer about the affection of the signal to the devices.

The radio wave from FOMA terminal may affect the performance of electrical medical devices.

# Handling instructions

## General

- Do not wet FOMA terminal.
  - FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including battery charger) and UIM (FOMA card) are not waterproof. Do not use FOMA terminal in bathrooms, other highly humid areas, or in a rain. Also sweat may corrode the inner components and cause malfunction when carrying FOMA terminal near your body.

Note that malfunctions proved to be caused by water are not covered by the warranty, and may not be possible to repair. Since these malfunctions are not covered with warranty, repair, if possible, is to be done with owner's expense.

- · Clean FOMA terminal with a soft and dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses).
  - Some FOMA terminal models may use the special coating on the display for higher visibility. When cleaning FOMA terminal, rubbing it roughly with a dry cloth may scratch the display. Be careful to handle FOMA terminal, and use a soft and dry cloth for cleaning (such as a cloth for eyeglasses). Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains or removal of the coating.
  - The printing may disappear or color may fade for wiping with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent.
- · Clean the connecting terminals occasionally, with a dry cotton swab.
  - Dirty connecting terminals may cause loose contact with FOMA terminal, resulting in powering off. Also as it may result in poor charging, clean connecting terminals with a dry cloth or cotton swab etc.
- Do not place FOMA terminal near the air outlet of an air-conditioner.
  - A rapid change in humidity may cause dew condensation, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- · Do not place FOMA terminal in a place where excessive force is applied.
  - Damage and malfunction of LC display or internal PCB caused by cramming into a brimming bag or putting in a pocket and sitting on FOMA terminal is out of the coverage of the warranty.
- Read the respective instructions attached to the battery pack and the adapter (including battery charger) carefully.

# Handling of FOMA terminal

- It is normal for FOMA terminal to be warmed up when using or charging. Keep using FOMA terminal.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
  - Use FOMA terminal at temperature between 5 and 35  $^\circ\!\!\! C$  and at humidity between 45 and 85 %.
- FOMA terminal may affect fixed-line telephones, TV or radios nearby. Use FOMA terminal as far as possible from these appliances.
- · Keep a separate written record of the data you register in FOMA terminal.
  - Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Do not sit down with FOMA terminal put in a back pocket. Do not place FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag or anywhere it will encounter excessive force.
   Malfunction or damage may result.
- Do not fold FOMA terminal with the strap caught between the folding parts.
  - Malfunction or damage may result.

- Do not put seals on the surface of LC display or Keypad.
  - Pressing keys when folding FOMA terminal may cause false operation, or malfunction of FOMA terminal may result.
- Use the earphone microphone jack, the external connection port and miniSD memory card slot with being covered.
- Dust or water leaked into the terminal may cause malfunction.
- · Do not scratch or rub the display with metal materials.
  - Display may be damaged.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.
  - It may cause color degradation or burn-in of the CCD.

# Handling of battery pack

- The battery pack is a consumable supply.
  - Replace the battery pack when operation length becomes extremely short on a full charge. The battery pack life will vary depending on environment of use. Purchase a new battery pack of the specified type.
- Charge the battery within the temperature range area (5 to 35  $^\circ\!\!\!\mathrm{C}$ ).
- Always charge before using FOMA terminal for the first time or after a long-term nonuse.
- The operation time provided by the battery pack may vary depending on the operating environment and battery pack deterioration.
- Dirty metallic parts (terminals) of the battery pack may cause loose contact with the terminal port, and may result in powering off, etc. Wipe the dirty terminals with dry cloths or cotton swab.
- · Keep the battery pack in a cool place away from direct sunlight.
  - When you do not use the battery pack for a long time, keep it with run out, detached from FOMA terminal, and wrapped with a plastic bag which comes with the battery back.
- The battery pack may be slightly distended depending on the condition of use, however it is not a defect.

# Handling of adapter (including battery charger)

- Do not charge the battery in the following places.
  - Where the ambient temperature is less than 5  $^\circ\!\!\mathrm{C}$  or more than 35  $^\circ\!\!\mathrm{C}.$
  - In excessive humidity, dust or shaking.
  - Near fixed-line phones, TV or radios.
- It is normal for the adapter (including battery charger) to become warm while charging. Keep charging.
- $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$  When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
  - Otherwise, the vehicle's battery may possibly be dead.
- Do not give strong impact. Or do not deform the charging terminals.
  It may cause malfunction.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism for prevention of unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.

# Handling instructions

# Handling of UIM (FOMA card)

- · Do not force to remove UIM (FOMA card).
- Do not place an excessive pressure when inserting UIM (FOMA card) into the terminal.
- It is normal for UIM (FOMA card) to get warm while used. Keep using.
- Note that DoCoMo will not be responsible for malfunctions occurring as the result of using UIM (FOMA card) by inserting it to another IC card reader/writer.
- Always keep IC device part of FOMA terminals clean.
- Clean UIM (FOMA card) with a soft, dry cloth (for glasses etc.)
- Keep a separate record of the data you register in UIM (FOMA card).
   Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- To preserve the environment, bring the used UIM (FOMA card) to DoCoMo shops etc.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.
- Do not scratch, touch carelessly, short-circuit the IC. - It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop or apply a shock on UIM (FOMA card).
  - It may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend or apply weight on UIM (FOMA card).
   It may cause malfunction.
- Do not put any stickers etc. on UIM (FOMA card).

# Handling of miniSD memory card

- Do not pull out miniSD memory card, give an impact, turn the power off, or remove the battery pack while you use miniSD memory card.
  - Data may be damaged.
- Do not put any sticker etc. on miniSD memory card.
- When you discard miniSD memory card, it is recommended you destroy your miniSD memory card as well as erase the saved data, to prevent outflow of the data. The user must be responsible for the management of the saved data in miniSD memory card, including in the case when you assign it to another party.

# Handling of Camera

• If you use FOMA terminal to commit nuisance act and bother people, you may be penalized according to applicable laws or regulations (nuisance prevention ordinance etc.)

Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when shooting and sending images with camera-equipped mobile phones.

# Intellectual property rights

# Copyrights and portrait rights

It is prohibited to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from Internet sites with FOMA terminal, without the copyright holder's authorization, except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use.

Note that shooting photos or movies at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be restricted even for personal use.

Also, it may infringe on the portrait rights to take pictures of others with FOMA terminal or to disclose the pictures to general public through Internet sites, etc., without their consent.

# Trademarks

Company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-appli", "i-melody", "i-anime", "mopera U", "mopera", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-motion mail", "i-appliDX", "i-shot", "i-area", "Short Mail", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "i-appli search", "V-Live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Pake-Houdai", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "QUICKCAST", " イマドコサーチ <Searching position>", "MessageF", "トクだねニュース便 <Convenient News>", "My DoCoMo", "Direct Call", "Multinumber", "i-channel", and "FOMA" logo, "i-appli" logo, "Direct Call" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- Freedial (Toll-free Number Service; the service name) and Freedial logo are trademarks of NTT Communications.
- Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries. (The official name for Windows is Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> operating system.)
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a trademark of NEC Corporation.
- Catch Phone <Call waiting service> is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- NetFront by ACCESS CO., LTD is installed in this product to provide Internet function. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

Copyright<sup>©</sup> 1996-2006, ACCESS CO., LTD.

This product contains a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

- JV-Lite is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- miniSD™ and mig are trademarks of the SD Association.
   (miniSD™ memory card is described as miniSD memory card.)
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.

All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners. ©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US or other countries.
- ・ "Gガイドモバイル <G-guide mobile>" and its logo is a registered trademark of Gemstar-TVGuide International, Inc. in the US and/or its affiliates in Japan.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- ©2006 Microsoft. All rights reserved. Microsoft, the Microsoft Game Studios<sup>®</sup> logo, Age of Empires<sup>®</sup>, Age of Empires 2 Gold Edition<sup>®</sup> and Ensemble Studios are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
   ©2006 IN-FUSIO. Published by Media Socket Inc.
- Other company and product names referred in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- The following abbreviations of operating systems (Japanese versions) are used in this manual.
  - Windows XP indicates Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Professional operating system or Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 indicates Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
  - Windows Me indicates Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows<sup>®</sup> Millennium Edition operating system.
  - Windows 98 indicates Microsoft® Windows® 98 Professional operating system.
  - Windows 98SE indicates Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
  - Windows NT Server indicates Microsoft<sup>®</sup> Windows NT<sup>®</sup> Server Network operating system Version 4.0.
  - "Windows XP, 2000, Me or 98" may be used jointly to indicate these operating systems.
  - Windows 98 is written as a general term of both Windows 98 and Windows 98SE.

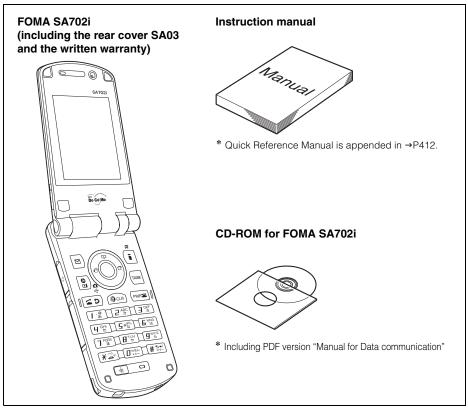
## Others

- This product contains Macromedia<sup>®</sup> Flash<sup>®</sup> Player technology by Macromedia, Inc., Copyright<sup>©</sup> 1995-2006 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product contains JV-Lite2 by ACCESS CO., LTD. as JAVA Virtual Machine technology. Copyright<sup>©</sup> 2000-2006, ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Advanced Wnn by OMRON SOFTWARE Co., LTD. is used for conversion in Japanese language. "Advanced Wnn"<sup>©</sup> OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2003-2006 All Rights Reserved.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases.
  - Shooting movies and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
  - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA
  - For further utilization such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

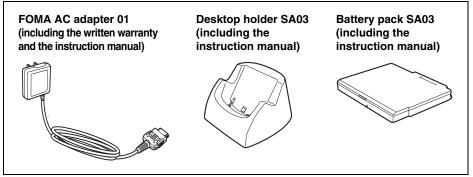
4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

# Basic package and optional accessories

# <Basic package>



# <Optional accessories>



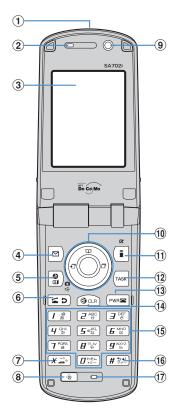
Basic package and optional accessories

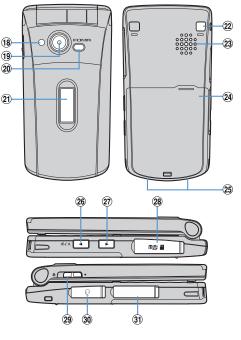
# Before using SA702i

Names and functions of parts2	28
Screen details	80
Selecting Menu	34
When you forget key operation	88
Using UIM (FOMA card)	39
Attaching/removing battery pack	11
Charging FOMA terminal4	2
Checking remaining battery level	7
Turning the power ON/OFF	8
Switching languages on Screen	8
Initial setting	9
Setting time and date	50
Notifying your phone number to the other party	
	51
Checking your own phone number	51

# Names and functions of parts

## Names and functions of parts are as below.





Size (mm)	Weight (g)	
Height 98 $\times$ Width 50 $\times$ Depth 21	Approx. 104	
(When folded)	(With the battery pack attached)	

## 1 Infrared data port

Used for data exchange with Infrared communication. →P298

## ②Earpiece

Voice of the other party comes out here.

## ③Display →P30

## ④Mail/Left flexible key (□)

Displays Mail menu. →P208 Hold down the key for over a second to display Compose mail screen. →P209

## ⑤i-channel/Videophone start (இ)/Camera key (☎)

Displays Channel list screen.  $\rightarrow$  P253 Makes videophone calls.  $\rightarrow$  P83 Hold down the key for over a second to display the screen to shoot still images.  $\rightarrow$  P163

# 6 Voice call start/hands-free/Direct Call key (বিচ)

Makes voice phone calls.  $\rightarrow$  P54 Press the key during a videophone call to switch Hands-free ON/OFF. (Hold down the key for over a second during a voice call.)  $\rightarrow$  P54, 83

Displays Direct Call screen. →P111

#### ⑦★/Public mode (Drive mode) key( ★ → ) Enter \*\*, small letters, or voiced sound symbol. →P350

Hold down the key for over a second to change to Public mode (Drive mode).  $\rightarrow$  P73

## 8 GPS key (🔌)

Displays GPS menu.  $\rightarrow$  P256 Hold down the key for over a second to position the present location.  $\rightarrow$  P256

## 9 In-camera →P156

Used for shooting a self image, or sending a self image with videophone.

## ①Cursor key (③) Center key (④)

Executes the operation, or selects menu items. →P32 Hold down the key for over a second to set Side key operation Valid/Invalid. →P147

# Phonebook/Up cursor key (🔘)

Displays Phonebook search screen.  $\rightarrow$  P103 Selects the upper items.  $\rightarrow$  P32 Hold down the key for over a second to add a new entry to Phonebook.  $\rightarrow$  P95, 99

# Down cursor key ((2))

Selects the lower items. →P32

## Received calls/Left cursor key (📀)

Displays Received calls.  $\rightarrow$  P66 Selects the items to the left.  $\rightarrow$  P32 Hold down the key for over a second to display Received address history.  $\rightarrow$  P228

## Redial/Right cursor key ()

Displays Redials.  $\rightarrow$  P56 Selects the items to the right.  $\rightarrow$  P32 Hold down the key for over a second to display Sent address history.  $\rightarrow$  P228

#### (i)i-mode/Right flexible (i)/i-αppli key (α) Displays i-mode menu. →P183 Hold down the key for over a second to display i-αppli folder list screen. →P242

(2) Task menu key (™)
 Displays Task menu. →P315

# (3) Power/On-hold/End key (

Hold down the key for over 2 seconds to turn the power ON/OFF.  $\rightarrow$  P48 Terminates a call.  $\rightarrow$  P54, 83 Holds a call by pressing when receiving a call.  $\rightarrow$  P70 Ends to display menu, etc.

# 14 Clear key (@c.R)

Deletes the entered characters, or returns to the previous screen.

# 15 Dial keys (I \* to D \* )

Enters phone numbers. Enters letters or numeric characters.

# (6 #/Manner mode/Line feed key (#))

Enter "#".  $\rightarrow$ P350 Hold down the key for over a second to set

Manner mode. →P123

Press the key on a character input screen to feed a line. →P351

# 17 Mouthpiece/Microphone

Sends your voice through Mouthpiece. Use it as a microphone while shooting movies or recording sound.

Do not cover here. The other party may not receive your voice clearly, or sounds may not be recorded properly.

## 18 Incoming-call/Charge/Shoot lamp

Lights on (blinks) while receiving calls, shooting images, or charging.

## (1)Out-camera →P156

Used for shooting still images/movies, or sending images of such as landscapes during a videophone call.

# ②Flash/Light

Adds light intensity while shooting. →P168

# ②Backside display →P33 ③Strop hole

# 22 Strap hole

## 23 Speaker

Ring tone comes out here. Voice of the other party comes out here in hands-free function.

# 24 Rear cover

## 25 Charging terminals

Used for charging with Desktop holder (optional).

## <sup>2®</sup>Side key [・ (ボイス<Voice>)] →P30 ขிSide key (・) →P30

- Hold down  $\bigcirc$  for over a second to enter "+".
- Insert miniSD memory card slot →P287
  Insert miniSD memory card.

## 29 Close-up switch lever

Switches the mode between Close-up/ Normal. →P169

# ③Earphone/Microphone jack

Used by inserting Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch (optional).

• Conventional Earphone/Microphone can be used with an Earphone jack convert adapter (optional).

## Connecting to the Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch

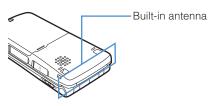


# ③External connection port

Charges by connecting ÅC adapter (optional). Connects to PC with FOMA USB connection cable (optional).

# Information

- •Operation procedure is indicated based on Key illustration described in this section.
- ■Refer to "Inserting/removing UIM (FOMA card)" or "Attaching/removing battery pack", for the details of the inside of the rear cover. →P39, 41
- The antenna is built-in to FOMA terminal. Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call or using i-mode.



Names and functions of parts

# **Operations available with Side keys**

Operations with pressing Side keys ( and ) of FOMA terminal are as below.

Status	Operation	Operation result
W	ith FOMA terminal opened	•
Stand-by	Hold down I for over a second.	Enters "+" to make an international call etc.
Stand-by	Press •.	Notifies Time, Missed calls or Receiving mails with sound/voice.
Displaying sites		Scrolls the screen.
Playing Ring tone/Notification sound *1		Stops Ring tone/Notify tone.
Playing Alarm sound * 1		Stops Alarm sound.
During a videophone call, Shooting still/movie images	Press I or I.	Adjusts Brightness.
Displaying images, playing Movie/ i-motion/Melody/Music Player	-	Displays/plays the previous/next data.
Activating FM radio *1	Hold down I or I for over a second.	Volume adjustment*2
C	Press I or I.	Selection of Radio station*2
W	ith FOMA terminal folded	
-	Press 1.	Switches Backside display.
-	Press .	Notifies Time, Missed calls or Receiving mails with sound/voice.
Playing Music Player	Hold down I or I for over a second.	Volume adjustment

\*1 Operations when FOMA terminal is folded are the same as when opened.

\*2 Operation result differs depending on the setting.

# Screen details

The screen displays the current mode or various Marks (Icons), to indicate the status of FOMA terminal such as battery level.

1234567891011213141516

DARCERCE CONTRACTOR	
(7 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 39	
10:30	
Wed Sep 20	

## Icon field

Displays the status or settings of FOMA terminal.

#### Information

•Only one function (status) with the highest priority is displayed even when activating multiple functions (status) of the same position for the icon.

The 2nd line ((f) to (g)) of the lcon field is not displayed while playing animations or i-motion. Press (see to stop playing and display icons.

# Display icon list

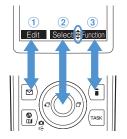
	lcon	Description	
1	Ē	Battery level →P47	
	Ç	Charging	
	<u> </u>	Charging disorder	
2	M	Radio wave level →P48	
		Being outside the service area or under poor radio wave condition.	
	98 <b>4</b> 5	Under self mode →P144	
3	ŝ	Positioning/providing/notifying location →P255	
		Periodic notification is set. $\rightarrow$ P264	
		Location provide is set. →P261	
	必留	Periodic notification and Location provide are set.	
4	3	Connecting i-mode →P183	
	۲¢	In packet communication (Stand-by) →P346	
	ī.	In packet communication (Sending)	
	中	In packet communication (Connecting) →P346	
5		Displaying SSL page/activating software downloaded from SSL page →P184	
6	6	During a voice call →P53	
	2	During a videophone call →P81	
		In 64K data communication →P346	
_	_X	In Infrared communication →P298	
0	C (orange)	Activating i-αppli →P242	
	हुट्टे (gray)	Displaying i-αppli stand-by display →P246	
	🕎 (orange)	Activating i-αppliDX →P242	
0	한 (gray)	Displaying i-αppliDX stand-by display →P246	
8	ΞD	Mail is stored in i-mode Center. (Mail mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P216	
	III R	MessageR is stored in i-mode Center. (R mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P196	
	Ξ	MessageF is stored in i-mode Center. (F mark is colored orange with mail box full.) →P196	
9		Inbox full →P221	
	] <b>"</b> [	Unread i-mode mail is saved in Inbox →P216	
	出入	Unread i-mode mail/SMS is saved in Inbox →P216, 236	
	٦		
10	lon	UIM (FOMA card) (SMS) full →P237	
	(ID)	Terminal link [inserting a card other than UIM (FOMA card)]	

	lcon	Description	
1	R	Unread MessageR is saved (colored orange when full). →P196	
12	F	Unread MessageF is saved (colored orange when full). →P196	
13		In USB hands-free →P63	
		In USB connection under Communication mode →P346	
	2 5	USB connection status (miniSD mode) (colored orange in USB connection) →P292	
14	S	miniSD memory card inserted (colored orange when referred or in USB connection)	
	2	Unable to find inserted miniSD memory card (colored orange when referred)	
15	<b>9</b> -1	Under Secret mode (colored orange when editing Secret data) →P148	
16	Ŵ	You have Missed calls. →P76	
17	Ą	Alarm is set. →P316	
18	÷	Schedule alarm is set. →P321	
19	£ ₽	ToDo alarm is set. →P323	
		Under Lock all →P142	
20	ß	Under Public mode (Drive mode) →P73	
21)	IJ	Under Keypad dial lock →P146	
22	ļ	Under PIM lock →P145	
23		Exceeding the set Maximum call cost →P329	
24	명/맥	Record message set (the number of messages on lower right, colored orange when full) →P76	
25	<b>1</b>	Voice mail stored in the Center (the number appears when more than 2 messages stored) →P338	
26	€	Under Manner mode (OFF as time's passed) →P123	
		Under Manner mode (Duration mode) →P123	
27	何 (red)	Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator) →P123	
	ł	Under Manner mode (Sleep) →P123	
	(green)	Under Manner mode (Original manner) →P123	
28	ත	Phone ring tone volume is set to OFF. →P119	
29	8	Phone incoming vibrator is set. →P119	
30	1	Side key operation is set to Invalid. →P147	

# Soft key

Operations or settings are available by Soft keys displayed on the lower field of a screen during operation. You can use Left flexible key (), Right flexible key () to execute Soft key function.

Available Soft key functions differ depending on the operation.



Executing Soft key 1 function
 Press 

 Executing Soft key 2 function

# Press ●.

The marks such as " $\blacktriangle$ " or " $\checkmark$ " on the right of Soft key (2) indicate the selectable items above/below/right/left. Press the cursor key () to select an item, and press ().

Executing Soft key ③ function ①Press i.

• In this manual, Soft key functions are described with [] like <a>[Edit]</a> or <a>[Edit]</a> (Function], when instructed to operate Soft key <a>1</a> or <a>3</a>.

# Task icon

The icon of currently activated or operated function appears (Task icon). Multiple task icons are displayed while activating multiple functions.  $\rightarrow$ P315



For example, Task icon indicating Phonebook is displayed while displaying Phonebook.

Displaying the current time

# Task icon list

lcon	Description	lcon	Description
	Dialing	ß	Displaying "Melody" folder
Ð	Dialing/receiving/during a voice call	A m	Displaying Bookmark
	Dialing/receiving/during a videophone call	Dic	Activating Kana-English dictionary
<u>A</u>	Schedule alarm	JPN	Activating Jpn-Eng dictionary
- <del>G</del> anger - Ganger -	ToDo alarm	Eng	Activating Eng-Jpn dictionary
<u> </u>	Alarm	œ	Activating Vocabulary quiz
Σ	Viewing Mail/Message, making Mail setting	ġ	Activating Word recognizer
Ł	Composing Mail/SMS/Deco-mail template		Displaying Redial, Received calls, Sent/Received address, Missed calls, Rejected calls history
	Checking new message, receiving/sending i-mode mail, receiving MessageR/F	۲	Activating Snap photo
ξË	Checking SMS, receiving/sending SMS	∎	Activating Shoot movie
B	Under i-mode, making i-mode setting, displaying Screen memo	器	Activating Bar code reader
2	Activating Chat mail	ABC	Activating Character reader
	Displaying Data box	Ð	Making settings
Ŀ,	Displaying "My picture" folder	ß	Exchanging data with Infrared communication (stand-by)
	Displaying "i-motion" folder	Ħ	Activating Play record message

Icon	Description	lcon	Description
Þ	Activating Play record message during a call	Q	Activating Voice recorder
₽	Activating Text memo	S	Displaying contents in miniSD memory card
9	Activating Dial memo		Displaying Original data
QŽ	Activating i-appli/GPS software	5	Activating Direct Call
÷ð	Activating GPS function, activating Compass	ď	Updating pattern definitions
M	Displaying Phonebook	β(Π)	Software update (standing by)
	Displaying Calendar, activating ToDo/Schedule	ধ্বয	Receiving i-channel
EE • •	Activating Calculator	Σ	Activating Music Player
96	Displaying Profile	ÉW	Activating FM radio

## Information

•FOMA terminal displays are manufactured with highly advanced technology, however, some dots may be always or never light up. Please be forewarned this phenomenon is not malfunction.

## **Backside display details**

Radio wave condition, battery level, time or status of FOMA terminal are indicated on backside display. You can also check reception of calls/mails.

# Press 🕑 with FOMA terminal folded.

• Press each time to switch icons. When no icon appears on Status screen, the screen is not switched.



## Icon list (Clock screen)

lcon	Description	Icon	Description
	Battery level →P47	self	Under self mode →P144
<b>.</b>	Charging	00	Connecting i-mode →P183
<u>ات</u>	Charging disorder	ζ	Unread i-mode mail/SMS is saved. →P216, 236
<b>T</b> il	Radio wave level →P48	R	Unread MessageR is saved. →P196
圈外	Being outside the service area or under poor radio wave condition.	F	Unread MessageF is saved. →P196

## Icon list (Status screen)

lcon	Description	Icon	Description
<b>-</b>	Missed calls →P76	0FF	Under Manner mode (OFF as time's passed) →P123
8	Record message set (the number of messages on lower right) →P76	5	Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator) →P123
U	Voice mail message in the Center (the number of messages on upper left) →P338	1	Under Manner mode (Sleep) →P123
PIM O T	Under PIM lock →P145	e	Under Manner mode (Original manner) →P123
O RL	Under Keypad dial lock →P146	S	Phone ring tone volume is set to OFF. →P119
s	miniSD memory card inserted →P287	Ų	Phone incoming vibrator set →P119
?	Unknown miniSD memory card inserted	ŧ	Alarm set →P316
æ	Under Public mode (Drive mode) →P73	ic.	Under Manner mode (Duration mode) →P123

## Information

- Backside display is turned off when FOMA terminal is opened. It may not be turned off in some cases such as when dialing/receiving a call.
- ●When a call from a phone number saved in Phonebook is received, the registered name is displayed. →P95
- Lighting duration of Backside light follows the Light setting of Display.

# **Selecting Menu**

Select and set/activate a function from menus. You can select the function by pressing dial keys on Keypad, or by moving the cursor and press 

o on the menu screen.

- Menu items colored gray cannot be selected.
- Press [mmm] to return to Stand-by display, to quit selecting/setting.
- Press (Rear to return to the previous screen.

# Selecting a function from Menu

Press (•) on Stand-by display to display Main menu. Select an icon, and Menu/folder list of the item appears. Select an item from the list to set.

- Press , i, or i on Stand-by display, and each menu appears. Set each item with the same procedure as Main menu.
  - 🖻 🛛 : Displays Mail menu.
  - (i) : Displays i-mode menu.
  - 🐚 : Displays GPS menu.
- Menu definition on Menu is available to be set to display.  $\rightarrow$  P132

# <Example> Changing Ring tone

# Press on Stand-by display.



Main menu with 9 icons appears on the screen.

# <sub>2</sub> Press 장 to select 🎆 , and press 💽.



Sound setting screen appears.

• The selected item is focused, or transformed in the icon.



#### Selecting an icon with a key

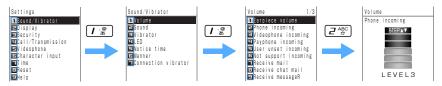
The icons in each menu correspond to the keys on the same position. (Example: Press  $\underline{\textit{F}}_{ac}^{\text{MED}}$  to select "Settings" on Main menu.)

• The icon can be selected by the key on the same position correspondingly, even after sorting.

# **3** Press *I*: "Sound/Vibrator", press *I*: "Volume" and press *I*: "Phone incoming".

Volume setting screen appears.

• Numbers on the top of items framed with \_\_\_\_\_ indicate the numbered keys.



#### Selecting with cursor key

①Press ③ (Up/Down cursor) to select an item, and press ④.
Selected items are highlighted.

# ▲ Press ③ to adjust volume, and press ●.



#### Selecting multiple items

When selecting multiple items such as Delete option, select a file and press to change [ to [. Select all files in the same way, then execute the operation.



• When selecting multiple items, select the data and press (a) to confirm the contents.

#### Selecting a function from Function menu

When displaying Menu screen or activating a function, "Function" may be displayed as Soft key. Press (i) (Right flexible key) to operate the function.

Press **i** while Soft key "Function" is on the screen.

#### Phonebook 001 Phonebook 001 d Basic Specify Others □ 1/2Functions DoCoMo Taro ∎Compose SMS msg Export ESend infrared data 🖻 Usud 090XXXXXXX Copy to UIM 3€Group O ⊑Store in schedule ⊡Add to Direct Call Copy item Edit Select 🗣 Function OK 🕀 Eunction

Function menu appears.

#### When there are more than 2 pages of Function menu etc.

#### 0 Press O to go to the next page, or press O to go to the previous page.



The next/previous page is displayed. "Current page/total pages" is displayed on the upper right of the screen.

# **2** Press a dial key, or press 0 to select and press 0.

#### Information

Alternatively, press i to display the next page. Press i on the last page to close Function menu.

#### <Notify icon>

### Displaying details of Notify icon

When you have missed calls or received mails, Notify icons appear on Stand-by display, to enable you to see the information quickly.

• When you have missed calls or received mails from senders/callers registered in Direct call, Direct call icon is displayed. →P113

#### <Example> Missed calls



1 Notified information 2 Notify icon

Press ().

Missed calls list appears.

- If there are multiple notified information, press O to select the information.
- If there are multiple Notify icons, press 😒 to select one of them. When both Notify icon and Direct Call icon are displayed, select one of the icons by pressing 🔇.
- When only Notify icon or Direct Call icon is displayed, you can view the details by pressing O, select an icon and press O.

#### Icon list

• The chart below indicates the case when a single information is notified.

lcon	Notified information	Screen after selected/executed		
	Missed calls 1	Displays Missed calls screen. If View dialed/received calls setting in Received calls/addresses is set to "OFF", a message appears.		
	Voice mail received	Displays Play messages screen.		
	Record message 1	Displays Record message list screen. If View dialed/received calls setting in Received calls/addresses is set to "OFF", a message appears.		
	New mail 1	Displays the folder where the last received i-mode mail/SMS is saved.		
$\sim$	R MessageR 1	Displays MessageR list screen.		
	F MessageF 1	Displays MessageF list screen.		
	🔯 Alarm 1	Displays unchecked Alarm list.		
20.00	Schedule alarm 1	Displays the Schedule. (The list is displayed when there are 2 or more Schedules.)		
<u>Oy</u>	ToDo alarm 1	Displays ToDo. (The list is displayed when there are 2 or more ToDo.)		
	Missed location 1	Displays location history.		
ׯ	X Auto start failed	Displays a message to indicate the failure of i-appli auto start.		
	Update complete	Displays a message to indicate completion of Software update.		
2	Check update	Displays the reason for the failure of Software update or other information.		

#### Displaying information with FOMA terminal folded

Displays the information of Notify icon on backside display and notifies the information with voice.

• Voice notification is not played and Vibration is activated alternatively, under Manner mode. Under Original manner mode, the volume of voice notification follows the setting in the Original manner.

#### <Example> Missed calls



# Press 🗹 (ボイス <Voice>) with FOMA terminals folded.



The number of Missed calls is displayed and notified with voice.

 If there are multiple Notify icons, displays and notifies with voice each time when 
 is pressed.

#### Information

Notify icons are not displayed when answering the call or stopping the alarm.

- Notify icons disappear when selected and confirmed the details.
- Main menu is not displayed by pressing when displaying notified information. Press or to clear notified information and press •.
- The setting not to notify information with voice is also available.  $\rightarrow$  P335
- ●The volume of voice notification follows the setting for Phone incoming in Volume setting. →P119

#### Description for operation procedure

Operation procedure is given as below in this manual.



Actual operation procedure is as follows.

1Press 0 (Center key operation) on Stand-by display.

- 2 Press S and select , and press .
- **3** Press  $\underline{\Psi_{\underline{x}}}$  (selecting "4 Memo menu").
- Procedure up to above (1) to (4) is described as Step 1.
- **5**Select a memo to delete, and press **i** (Right flexible key).
  - Displays the function of Soft key within [] when pressing Right/Left flexible keys.

#### 6 Press $\overline{T_{\pi}^{\text{res}}}$ (selecting "7 Delete").

• Procedure up to above ((5) to (6)) is describes as Step 2.

#### Information

- Function of Center key is omitted and indicated only as "O".
- The instruction to end the function by pressing me after each procedure is omitted.
- •Confirmation message may appear depending on the setting. The message disappears in approximately 5 seconds, or you can clear the message alternatively by pressing •. (Omitted from the operation steps.)

#### Functions guide

# When you forget key operation

· For details, refer to each operation procedure given in this manual.



2

# Press 📀 to display Functions guide.

Press the key each time to switch items.

• Press 💿 to close.

Functions guide

# Using UIM (FOMA card)

# Using UIM (FOMA card)

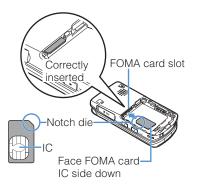
#### User information such as phone number is saved in UIM (FOMA card).

#### Inserting/removing UIM (FOMA card)

• Turn the power off, remove the battery pack and hold closed FOMA terminal in your hands, to insert/remove UIM (FOMA card). →P41

#### Inserting UIM (FOMA card)

Insert UIM (FOMA card) slowly all the way in FOMA card slot, as the figure below.



• UIM (FOMA card) is fixed at the position shown in the left figure when properly inserted.

Removing UIM (FOMA card)

- Push lightly UIM (FOMA card) attached into the slot.
- Pull out UIM (FOMA card) along to the horizontal direction of the arrow in the figure below.



#### Information

Be cautious not to lose removed UIM (FOMA card).

Be careful not to force to insert or remove UIM (FOMA card), or FOMA terminal (FOMA card slot) or UIM (FOMA card) may be damaged.

# Security code for UIM (FOMA card)

Two kinds of password. PIN1 and PIN2 code are used for UIM (FOMA card).

	You can set to require the entry of the code every time the power is turned on, for privacy protection.
PIN2 code	Enter the code for the personal authorization on i-mode/Internet sites.

- · Both codes are set to "0000" by default, however, they can be changed to any 4 to 8-digit number
- Enter PUK when PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. →P141

# **UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction**

UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction provides protection for user's data/files. When downloading data or files from i-mode/Internet sites with UIM (FOMA card) attached. UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction is automatically set to downloaded items.

- · You cannot display or play data/files with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction, when another UIM (FOMA card) is attached or UIM (FOMA card) is removed.
- · Data types with restricted operation by UIM (FOMA card) are as below.
  - Image
- Melody - Screen memo
- Flash movie
- Decorated mail template
- Files attached to i-mode mail
- i-motion - Frame/Stamp
- i-αppli - Original data
- Images inserted in Deco-mail text
- Files attached to MessageR/F

#### Information

- Operations of following data are not restricted by UIM (FOMA card); data or files retrieved by Infrared data, miniSD memory card, or Data link software, and images shot by FOMA terminal built-in camera or edited images.
- Operations of images/i-appli/Melody preinstalled in FOMA terminal are not restricted, however, to be restricted when deleted once and downloaded again.
- When setting data with operation restriction by UIM (FOMA card) to Stand-by display/Call or Receive display/Ring tone, and starting FOMA terminal with another UIM (FOMA card) attached or UIM (FOMA card) removed, the setting returns to default.

### The settings saved in UIM (FOMA card)

The following settings are saved in UIM (FOMA card). If you switch UIM (FOMA card), the settings saved in the inserted card become valid.

- PIN1 code - バイリンガル <Select language>
  - i-mode setting (Certificate) SMS message validity
- PIN2 code

- Enter PIN1 code
- SMS input character type - SMS Center setting

# Attaching/removing battery pack

# Functional differences between UIM (FOMA card)

Functions of 2 types (green and blue) of UIM (FOMA card) vary as below.

Item	UIM (FOMA card) (green)	UIM (FOMA card) (blue)
Number of digits of a phone number allowed to be registered to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits
Client certificate to use FirstPass	Available	Unavailable
WORLD WING Service	Available	Unavailable
Service dialing no.	Available	Unavailable

#### WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. Insert your green UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminals or mobile phones for international use (W-CDMA or GSM method), and you can make/ receive a call with the same phone number overseas.

WORLD WING is available to use without additional application.

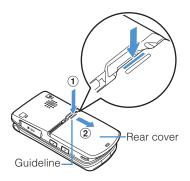
- \* Subscribers who had applied FOMA service before August 31, 2005, and have not subscribed to WORLD WING service, additional application is required for the use of WORLD WING.
- \* WORLD WING may not be available depending on the billing plan.
- \* In case your UIM (FOMA card) (green) has been lost/stolen overseas, immediately contact DoCoMo to suspend your application to the service. See the contact information for "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for inquiries. Note that the call/communication cost charged after your UIM (FOMA card) have been lost of stolen is charged on you.

# Attaching/removing battery pack

• Turn the power off before changing or removing the battery pack.

### Attaching battery pack

Hold down and slide the guideline part on the rear cover, to remove the cover.



Hold down the rear cover to the direction of ①, slide to ② and remove.

## Fit the battery pack in, with the printed surface on top.



To fit the metal terminals of the battery pack and FOMA terminal, hold down the battery pack to the direction of ③, and insert in the direction of ④.

Attach the rear cover.



Mount the tab of the rear cover to fit to the groove with approximately 2 mm gap, and slide the rear cover until the click sound is heard.

#### **Removing battery pack**

#### Remove the rear cover, then remove the battery pack.



Pull the tab of the battery pack to the direction of the arrow and remove.

• Remove the rear cover with the same procedure as attaching.

#### Information

The metal terminals of FOMA terminal may be damaged when forcing to attach or remove the battery pack.
 Fold FOMA terminal when you attach or remove the battery pack.

# **Charging FOMA terminal**

• The battery pack is not fully charged by default. Be sure to charge the battery with the specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) before using FOMA terminal.

#### **Cautions for charging**

#### For good use of the battery pack

Use the battery pack specific for FOMA terminals.

- For details on handling of the battery pack, refer to the battery pack manual.
- In the extremely low, or high temperature such as in a closed car, battery power reduces, allowing shorter duration for use. The battery pack life would also be shortened. Use in normal temperature, as far as possible.

- Battery pack life is limited. When the battery pack is charged, but not recovered the original power or the battery lasts only for a sort period of time, the battery pack life is probably expired. Purchase a new battery pack of the specific type.
- The battery pack life is approximately 1 year. However, life may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



For environment protection, be sure to return the used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo sales outlets, our corporate agencies or the shops that collect used batteries.

#### Charging

- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (several days) with FOMA terminal powered on. When charged for an extended period with FOMA terminal powered on, the power is supplied from the battery pack of FOMA terminal after completing charge. As the battery is consumed, an alarm may sound after using the terminal for a short period of time. In this case, charge with the correct procedure again. Before charging the battery again, remove FOMA terminal from AC adapter/Desktop holder/DC adapter (optional) and reconnect it.
- Charge the battery when you have not used the terminal for a long time.
- When FOMA terminal is powered on while charging, phone calls or mails can be received. However, charging takes longer period of time.
- The battery pack cannot be directly charged. Be sure to charge it with being attached to FOMA terminal.

#### Charging time/available time for use (estimate)

#### Charging time

• The period of time is for charging an empty battery pack with FOMA terminal powered off.

FOMA AC adapter 01	FOMA DC adapter 01	
Approx. 105 min.	Approx. 105 min.	

#### Available time for use (estimate)

• Available time for use depends on the usage environment.

Continuous stand-by duration (stationary)	Continuous stand-by duration (when moving)	Continuous call duration (during a voice call)	Continuous call duration (during a videophone call)	Continuous play duration
Approx. 480 hrs.	Approx. 360 hrs.	Approx. 170 min.		Music (Music Player): Approx. 7 hrs. FM radio: Approx. 20 hrs.

- Continuous call duration indicates the approximate call duration under a condition that FOMA terminal can send or receive radio wave normally.
- Continuous stand-by duration is approximate duration that the user moves with FOMA terminal folded, under normal radio wave condition. In addition, calling (data communication)/stand-by duration may be reduced to half, depending on the charging status, function setting status, usage environment such as temperature, or the radio wave condition of the location to use (out of service area or poor radio wave condition). Calling (data communication)/stand-by duration is shortened by using i-mode communication.
- After composing i-mode mail, starting i-αppli, in data communication, using Camera/Music Player/FM radio, or executing Multi-access, the call (communication)/stand-by time is reduced.
- Continuous play duration is approximate duration, when folding FOMA terminal, without connecting Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional), and setting Play volume in LEVEL7 (by default), and Off timer to OFF.

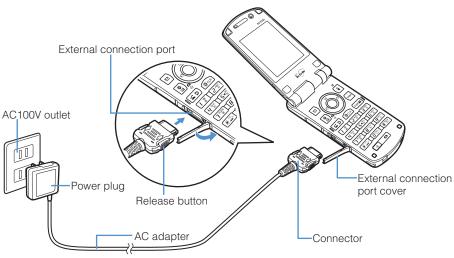
#### Charging with AC/DC adapter

Charge with optional AC adapter, DC adapter or Desktop holder.

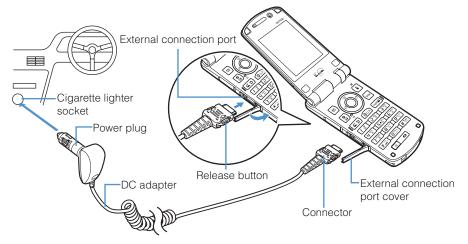
- Be sure to read the manual of FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) or DC adapter 01 (optional).
- Attach the battery pack to FOMA terminal.

#### Charging with AC adapter





#### Charging with DC adapter



# **1** Open the cover of the external connection port of FOMA terminal.

Insert the connector of AC adapter or DC adapter with the arrow mark on top into the external connection port of FOMA terminal.

Insert horizontally until it clicks.

3 Unfold the power plug of AC adapter and insert it into AC outlet. When using DC adapter, insert the plug into Cigarette lighter socket of a car.

Charging starts with a sound and the charging lamp lights up.

**4** Remove the charger plug of AC adapter from AC outlet after completing charge.

When using DC adapter, remove the plug from Cigarette lighter socket.

**5** Be sure to press the release buttons and pull out the connecter horizontally, to remove the connecter from FOMA terminal.

• Do not force to pull, or it may be damaged.

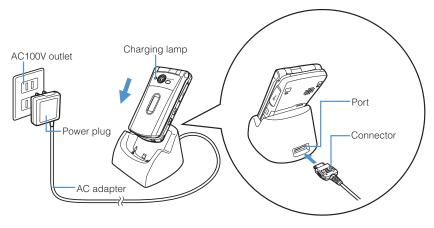
6 Close the cover of the external connection port of FOMA terminal.

- Red lamp lights up while charging. The lamp is turned off after completing charge.
- Charge lamp may not light up immediately after the start of charging. If the lamp does not light up after a while, disconnect FOMA terminal from AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter then reconnect to start charging.
- •FOMA terminal, battery pack and AC adapter may become warm while charging but it is not a defect.
- Connect AC adapter to AC 100V outlet.
- Do not use DC adapter when the vehicle's engine is not running. It may cause the car battery to be discharged.
- Remove/insert the connector slowly and firmly to the right direction at the right angle, not to apply excessive force. Forcing to remove/insert may cause damage on the external connection port.
- The fuse (2A) of the DC adapter is a consumable part. Contact the nearest automotive supply stores for replacements.
- Always use DC adapter in a negative-ground vehicle. Never use it in a positive-ground vehicle.
- Data saved/registered in FOMA terminal remains about 1 month with the battery pack removed or battery empty. The data may be lost after a longer time elapsed. For data may be lost due to other handling of FOMA terminal such as failure or repair, it is recommended to maintain a separate record of the data registered in your FOMA terminal. In case that saved or registered data has been lost, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

#### Charging with the desktop holder

Charge FOMA terminal with the desktop holder (optional).

· Be sure to read the manual for the desktop holder SA03 (optional).



- Insert the connector of AC adapter (optional) with the arrow mark on top into the port of the desktop holder.
  - Insert horizontally until it clicks.
- Insert the power plug of AC adapter into AC outlet.

# Set FOMA terminal on the desktop holder as illustrated.

Charging starts with a sound and the charging lamp lights up. • Insert the connector until it clicks.

# Pull out FOMA terminal to the direction of the arrow to remove from the desktop holder after completing charging.



- •Set FOMA terminal firmly on the desktop holder.
- Connect AC adapter to AC 100V outlet.
- •Do not catch the strap etc. into the desktop holder when setting FOMA terminal.
- The battery cannot be charged by the desktop holder alone.
- •FOMA terminal, the battery pack and the AC adapter may become warm while charging but it is not a defect.
- •Use the desktop holder on a flat surface. Fold FOMA terminal when setting on/removing from the desktop holder.
- Remove AC adapter from the outlet when not using for an extended period of time.

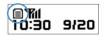
# Checking remaining battery level

#### The icon is displayed to indicate remaining battery level.

The remaining battery level on the screen only indicates an approximate level.



- (Battery level 3) : Enough for use 🗐 (Battery level 2) : Lower
- (Battery level 1) : Almost run out. Change the battery.



- Checking on backside display
- (Battery level 3) : Enough for use
- (Battery level 2) : Lower
- (Battery level 1) : Almost run out. Change the battery.

#### Checking remaining battery level with sound and display

· Checking sound is not heard while charging, under Manner mode or when setting Keypad sound to "OFF".



Battery level is displayed and you hear a charging sound.

Battery level
(ES)

Battery level 3





Battery level 1

Beep sounds 3 times (Battery level 3) : Enough for use Beep sounds twice (Battery level 2) : Lower Beep sounds once (Battery level 1) : Almost run out. Change the battery.

#### When the battery runs out

· No Alarm tone rings under Manner mode or Public mode (Drive mode).



- When the battery almost runs out, a message appears on the screen and an Alarm tone rings.
- After the message appears, the power is turned off in approximately 1 minute.
- · Press any key to stop the Alarm tone immediately.

- When the battery is about to run out during a call, a message appears and the call is disconnected in approximately 20 seconds, and the power turns off approximately 1 minute after disconnection.
- If the battery is almost run out while downloading data, download may be aborted with an Alarm tone.
- When the battery runs out with a message, editing data (such as Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo, Text memo, Profile and Location service clients) are temporarily saved.

# **Turning the power ON/OFF**

ning the power ON		
Hold down	r≡ for over 2 seconds.	
le`1M ⊥ o:∋o Wed 5ep 20	<ul> <li>After an animation is played, Stand-by display appears.</li> <li>The reception level icon appears on the screen. See the ic for an approximate measure.</li> <li> M (Good) → M → M (Poor) → B  </li> </ul>	

#### Stand-by display

#### Information

- ●When "圈外 <out of service area>" is displayed, you are outside the service area or in a place where the radio waves are hard to reach. Move to a place under good radio wave condition.
- Even when displaying M ,calls/transmissions may be disconnected.
- Radio wave is not stable when making a call while moving. As a digital communication feature, the connection may be terminated suddenly. It is recommended to make a call in a place where is displayed.
- When UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted, a message requiring UIM (FOMA card) appears. Turn the power off, insert UIM (FOMA card) correctly, then turn the power on again.
- ●Enter PIN1 code screen appears when Enter PIN1 code is set to "ON". →P139

#### **Turning the power OFF**

# ■ Hold down Example 1 for over 2 seconds on Stand-by display.

#### Information

If you have made the settings below before turning the power off, the power may be turned on automatically.

Default

日本語 <Japanese>

- Auto power ON →P316 - Alarm start →P319

# Select language Switching languages on Screen



# Initial setting

# Press ⊇ﷺ "English".

- ・Display language is set to English. (The function name "Select language" is displayed as "バイリンガル".)
- Restoring the language from English to Japanese

1 Press  $\bullet$   $\bullet$  Settings"  $\bullet$   $\mathscr{I}_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\mathfrak{m}}$   $\bullet$   $\mathscr{I}_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\mathfrak{m}}$ .

②Press ①Press ⑦ "日本語 < Japanese>".

#### Information

Select language setting is saved in UIM (FOMA card) inserted in FOMA terminal. Select language setting may be changed when removing or inserting different UIM (FOMA card).

#### Initial setting

# **Initial setting**

The screens for following settings appear when turning the power on for the first time; Time and date setting, Change security code, Keypad sound, CallerID, and Software update.

- Initial setting cannot be made when you reset the settings.
- Initial setting cannot be made under Keypad dial lock and Lock all.

# Press •.

### Set time and date.

Setting procedure →P50

### **Change the terminal security code.**

Change CallerID notification setting.

- Setting procedure →P140
- The default setting is "0000".

### Set Keypad sound.

• Setting procedure →P120

## 5

Setting procedure →P51



# Press $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ "Start next time" or $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ "Not start".

• To start Initial setting every time the power is turned on, press 1: "Start next time".

# 7

#### Start Software update.

Setting procedure →P387

#### Information

If the setting is aborted by pressing me etc., functions for the completed settings are active.

# Setting time and date

Default Automatic

#### You can set or correct time and date automatically.

- Time and date can be entered between 0:00, January 1st, 2000 and 23:59, December 31st, 2099.
- The set time and date appears on the screen or backside display.



### Press **7** Press **7**

The time and date is set.

 Time and date is corrected automatically, based on the information acquired from DoCoMo network.

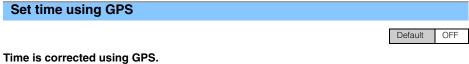
#### Setting manually

#### Press ⊇ "Manual".

#### 2 Enter time and date and press (•).

• Alternatively, press 🐼 to highlight and press dial keys, or press 🔇 to set time and date. (When month or date is a number between 1 and 9, enter 0 to precede the number.)

#### <GPS time setting>





#### Press 7 8 "ON".

Positioning starts, and the time is to be corrected. (Positioning icon does not appear.) • Press (2<sup>™</sup>) "OFF" not to set.

#### Information

- Time correction is not available out of service area or under self mode.
- Under the poor radio wave condition, time correction may not be available.
- The time corrected using GPS may have an error of a few seconds.

Following functions are not available until the time and date is set.

- SSL session (Authentication)\* i-αppli auto start - Starting i-appli DX
- Shooting still image/movie Recording by Voice recorder Periodic notify etc.
- \*Some sites are available without setting time and date.
- The set time and date is to be displayed in the following functions.
- Redial - Received calls - Record message - Recording VoiceMemo-Call - Received/Sent addresses etc.
- The set time and date is saved even after changing the battery pack or after the battery runs out. However, the time and date is reset by leaving the battery being run out for an extended period of time. In that case, make the setting again.
- Time and date is corrected automatically by Time and date setting every time when turning the power on, or by GPS time setting on every positioning for Position location etc.
- Positioning with GPS time setting ON is not saved to Location history.

# Notifying your phone number to the other party

# Display the phone number of your FOMA terminal (Caller ID) on the other party's screen during a call. Refer to "Network Service Operation Guide" for details.

- $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$  Caller ID is important information. Be cautious when you send your Caller ID.
- Caller ID notification is not available to be set when "圈外 <out of service area>" is displayed.
- Refer to "Network Service Operation Guide" for details.



Press *P*<sup>-BC</sup> "Deactivate" not to notify.

**3** Enter the network security code and press ullet.

Checking current setting

①Press ● ► 🕅 "Network services" ► 5 🛣 ► 1 🗐.

Information

- ●If the guidance message requests to notify your Caller ID, change the setting to notify Caller ID, and call again. →P57
- Caller ID is notified when the terminal of the receiver is compatible with Caller ID notification.

# Profile Checking your own phone number

Check the phone number (Phone number of your FOMA terminal) registered in UIM (FOMA card).





- The phone number registered in UIM (FOMA card) appears.
- Only Own phone number is displayed by default.

#### Information

●Alternatively, press ● ► 💽 "private" ► 🖅 "Profile", to check your own phone number.

●You can also register your private information other than phone number on your FOMA terminal. →P326

●Press : ▶ : Press :

# Making/receiving a call

#### Making a call

Making a call
Calling previously dialed number
Setting each time whether to notify your phone number <186/184> 57
Sending push tone quickly
Making an international call
Making a call with specified Sub-address < Sub-address setting> 61
Setting Alarm tone when reconnecting interrupted calls
Suppressing ambient noise to make voice clear < Noise reduction> 62
Using hands-free compatible devices < In-car hands-free> 63
Receiving a call
Answering a call
Setting to answer a call by pressing any key on Keypad
Starting a call by opening FOMA terminal
Ending/holding a call by folding FOMA terminal <closing action=""> 65</closing>
Using Received calls
Adjusting volume of the other party's voice during a call
Talking in small voice
Blocking nuisance calls
Using Dial memo
When missing/missed a call
Putting calls On-hold when calls cannot be answered < On-hold> 70
Setting On-hold tone
Setting Call-on-hold tone
Using Public mode (Drive mode) <public (drive="" mode="" mode)=""> 73</public>
Using Public mode (Power OFF) < Public mode (Power OFF) > 74
Confirming Missed calls
Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer calls
Playing/deleting Record message
riaying/ucicung necolu inessage

# Making a call

Following instructions describe how to make a voice call and the procedure common in making a voice call and videophone call.



# Enter a phone number including the area code, on Stand-by display.

- Include the area code even when calling from the same area.
- Up to 26 digits of a phone number can be displayed on the screen.
- Numbers with 3 to 80 digits are recognized as a phone number.
- Press ( to correct the phone number.
- To reenter the phone number, hold down (BCE) for over a second, or press [PME] and return to Stand-by display.

To a mobile phone : 090	a code-prefix-number )-XXXX-XXX/080-XXXX-XXXX )- XXXX-XXXX
-------------------------	--

Press 🖘.



**090**xxxxxxxx

Store Select Function

Signal tone is heard and dialing starts.

- The busy signal tone is heard when the other party's line is busy. Press rest to end the call, and try to call later.
- Alternatively, press • 🖅 "Dial phone call", to make a call.
- If the guidance message requires Caller ID notification, try to call again after setting Caller ID notification. →P51, 57
- If the other party's mobile phone or PHS terminal is turned off or in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance message informs that the connection cannot be made.
- Hold down ( ) for over a second, and Hands-free is activated immediately after the call is connected.
- Hold down ( ) for over a second during a call, and you can change the mode to Hands-free.

# 3 Press Press to end a call.

- ●A call can be disconnected by folding FOMA terminal while connected, when Closing action is set to "Disconnect". →P65
- Do not cover built-in antenna while dialing/calling.  $\rightarrow$  P29
- When a different screen is displayed during a call, press (1922) to return to the phone-calling screen.
- ■Subscription to Multinumber service enables you to make a call by selecting a phone number from the registered Multinumber. →P342

You can make a call with various functions after entering a phone number on Stand-by display.

# Enter a phone number including the area code when Stand-by display is on the screen, and press i [Function].

# **2** Select an item and press $oldsymbol{igodol}$ .

Caller ID	Sets Notify callerID. (1)Press (7:3) "Notify no callerID" or (2.3) "Notify callerID". • Press (3.3) "Delete callerID" to release the setting.
Add number	<ul> <li>Adds IDD prefix etc.</li> <li>①Press one of <i>I</i><sup>®</sup> to <i>B</i><sup>®</sup>.</li> <li>Select the Prefix code and press , to add Prefix.</li> <li>Add the international access code for international access.</li> <li>Multinumber →P342</li> </ul>
Quote	Quotes Phonebook.
phonebook*	<ul> <li>①Select a Phonebook entry and press ).</li> <li>②Select a phone number and press ).</li> </ul>
Quote history*	Quotes history. ①Press one of II to UII. ②Select a phone number and press ④. ③Press ④.
Font size	Changes the font size for phone number entry. ①Press one of 대회 to (고종).

\* Delete unnecessary numbers after quoting.

• Each function is available during a call, by entering a phone number.

#### <Call-on-hold>

#### Holding the call during a voice call

Hold the current voice call.

# Press 💿 during a call.



The call is held, with On-hold tone played on the other party's side.

• Press • again or press • to release on-hold.

- The call cost while a call is on-hold is charged to the caller.
- •You can hold a call by folding FOMA terminal during the call, when Closing action is set to "Hold".
- ●The melody for on-hold can be changed. →P72

#### Redial Calling previously dialed number

#### Save previously dialed numbers as Redial, to make calls from Redial.

- Up to 30 histories can be saved. The oldest history is deleted when exceeding 30 histories.
- When the same number has been saved in Redial, only the latest call is saved.

# Press 💽



Redial list screen

- The other party's phone number and time/date of dialing are displayed.
- The name is displayed when the number of the other party matches the phone number registered in Phonebook.
- Press 
   to display Received calls list.
- Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook ①Press ③ [Function] ▶ ⓒ "Photo display OFF".
  - Press E M Photo display ON", to display.

#### Sending i-mode mail

- When both the phone number and the E-mail address are registered in a Phonebook entry, the E-mail address is specified as the destination. If no E-mail address is registered, the phone number is specified as the destination.
- ①Select a receiver and press i [function] ► I ? "Compose message".
  - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending imode mail" Step 4 to 6
  - The same procedure is available on Redial detail screen.

# Select a Redial history and press ullet.

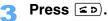


- Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook as background
   ①Press : [Function] ▶ E<sup>™</sup> "Transp display OFF".
   Press E<sup>™</sup> "Transp display ON", to display.
- Sending Push tone during a call
  - Displaying Redial during a call →P315
  - ①Select a Redial history and press [ [Function] >

#### Icons displayed in Redial

lcon	Description	lcon	Description
ľ	Dialed voice call		Dialed call with 付加番号2 <additional number 2&gt; of Multinumber</additional 
F	Dialed videophone call		Dialed international call from Initial number of Multinumber
Ē	Dialed international call	æ	Dialed international call with 付加番号1 <additional 1="" number=""> of Multinumber</additional>
	Dialed call from Initial number of Multinumber	æ	Dialed international call with 付加番号2 <additional 2="" number=""> of Multinumber</additional>
	Dialed call with 付加番号1 <additional number 1&gt; of Multinumber</additional 		

# 186/184



- Press to make a videophone call.
- Press to use various functions. →P193

#### Information

- Redial is not deleted when the power is turned off.
- If the phone number of the other party is registered in several Phonebook entries, the priority in the displayed name etc. is set as follows.
  - ① Phonebook entries registered in Direct call
  - 2 Phonebook entries in which the phone number is registered as Normal use
  - $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{3}}$  The reading in alphabetical order
  - (4) Ascending numerical order by Phonebook number
- ●Selecting a phone number registered as Multinumber →P342
- Redial is not displayed when Redial/Sent adrs in View dialed/received is set to "OFF".

#### **Deleting Redial**

### 



#### Press 1 😨 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

①Press ⊇<sup>∞</sup> "Delete option".

- ②Select a Redial history and press ●.
- Press 

   to release.
- ③Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

1)Press 🖅 "Delete all".

**(2)** Enter the terminal security code and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### Press 1: "Yes".

• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

●Press (i) [Function] ▶ 🖅 "Delete", to delete on Redial detail screen.

#### 186/184

# Setting each time whether to notify your phone number

Add "186" before the phone number to notify your Caller ID to the other party, or add "184" not to notify.

• Caller ID is important information. Be cautious when notifying your Caller ID information.

Sending your Caller ID () Press I B B B B B + The other party's phone number + S () for videophone).

Not sending your Caller ID
 ①Press I ♥ 𝔄 𝔄 𝔄 𝔄 𝔄 𝔄 + The other party's phone number + ⊆ 𝔅 ( )) for videophone).

#### Information

Caller ID notification can also be set with the following procedure.

- Setting Caller ID notification for each call by menu of Function →P55
- Setting Caller ID notification collectively from NW service menu →P51
- Registering the phone number in Phonebook →P95
- Caller ID is notified when the terminal of the other party is compatible with Caller ID notification.
- When making international phone calls, Caller ID may not be able to be displayed even with the code "186" added, depending on the telecommunication career.

If the guidance message requires Caller ID notification, try to call again after setting Caller ID notification.
 When a call is dialed with "186" or "184" added, "186" or "184" is recorded in Redial.

### Pause Sending push tone quickly

By sending push tone, you can send messages to pagers  $^{\ast},$  operate the answering system of your house, reserve tickets, etc.

• Push tone (DTMF) signal can be sent by separating a phone number at the point to enter a pause (P).



# Enter a phone number on Stand-by display, and hold down # # for over a second at the point of entering a pause (P).

"P" is entered.

• A pause cannot be entered at the beginning or entered continuously.

ΟΞΧΧΧΧΧΧΧΡ



## Enter the rest of the number and press **ED**.

• Up to 80 digits can be entered including "P".



## Press $\bigcirc$ when the call is connected.

Numbers after "P" are sent as push tone.

#### Information

The push tone may not be received depending on the terminal of the other party.

Pause

WORLD CALL/Prefix

# Making an international call

#### "WORLD CALL" is an international call service available for DoCoMo mobile phone subscriber.

- "WORLD CALL" subscription is included in FOMA service subscription. (Except for the subscribers who reject to apply the service.)
- Neither subscription fee nor monthly fee is charged.
- The service is unavailable for some billing plans.
- · You can make a call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- "WORLD CALL" fee is charged as the monthly bill for FOMA service.
- Change in dialing procedure for international call

"MY LINE" service is not applied to mobile telephone communications, including "WORLD CALL" service. Along with the introduction of "MY LINE" service, the dialing procedure for international call using a mobile phone has been changed. Note that the previous dialing procedure (excluding prefix "010" from the procedure described below) can no longer be used.

- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details.
  - To use international call company services other than DoCoMo, contact the telecommunication company for details.

### Dialing a phone number for international call

# Enter 009130 - 010 - Country code - Area code - phone number, on Stand-by display.

• Omit "0" of area code starting with 0. (However, "0" may be needed to call some countries or areas, such as Italy.)

# 🔈 Press 💶 ໑).

- Press (PWR= to end a call.
- "International videophone call" to the parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by pressing (a) after dialing in the above mentioned way.
  - Visit DoCoMo's Internet site for more information about the available areas and telecommunication companies.
  - The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be established, depending on the terminal at the other party on the international videophone line.

#### <Auto assist>

Making an international call easily

Default ON

See next page

#### When Auto assist setting is "ON", entered "+" is converted into "009130010" prefix code to make an international call.

• However, when dialing with the Japanese country code "81" after "+", it is not converted into "009130010" even under Auto assist setting "ON".









• Press [24]" "OFF", not to set.

#### Making an international call using Auto assist

Hold down  $\overline{1}$  for over a second on Stand-by display.

"+" is entered.

## Enter Country code - Area code - phone number.

# Press ( >).

A screen appears to confirm the number to dial.



#### Press **1** "Dial w/auto assist".

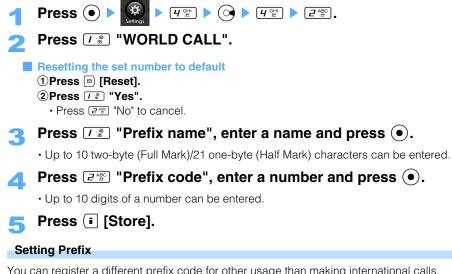
• Press 2<sup>me</sup>, "Dial w/o auto asst" not to add automatically, or press 3<sup>ee</sup>, "Cancel" to cancel.

#### <IDD prefix>

#### Setting another number than WORLD CALL

Default Title: WORLD CALL Prefix: 009130010

- The default prefix is "009130010" for international call.
- Only 1 prefix code can be registered for IDD prefix.



You can register a different prefix code for other usage than making international calls. • Up to 5 entries can be registered.



WORLD CALL/Prefix

# Sub-address setting

# Select "None stored" and press •.

• Select already registered Prefix and press (•) to edit. Press (•) [Detail] to confirm registered contents.

#### Deleting Prefix

- ①Select a Prefix entry and press ☐ [Delete].
- 2 Press I Trans "Delete".

• When you press 2 " "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●. ③ Press ( \* " "Yes".

- Press 2<sup>-</sup> "No" to cancel.
- Benter a name to register and press ullet.

• Up to 9 two-byte (Full Mark)/18 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

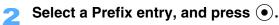
# Enter a prefix code and press •.

- Up to 10 digits of a number can be entered.
- 5 Press 🗉 [Store].

#### Making calls using Prefix

1

# Enter a phone number on Stand-by display and press (i [Function] ▶ ┌☆ ▶ ┌☆ "Prefix".



Prefix is added at the beginning of the number.

- <sub>3</sub> Press ⊆⊃).
  - Press for videophone.

#### Sub-address setting

# Making a call with specified Sub-address



The numbers after " $\star$ " can be set as Sub-address.

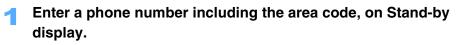
Setting Sub-address allows you to call the specified telephone terminal or communication device.

• Sub-address is used for receiving a call with specified communication devices via ISDN line, or for selecting the contents on "V-Live" movie distribution service.





• Press 2 "" "OFF" not to set.



2

Press 🖅 to enter "\*", and enter Sub-address.

Press ⊆⊅.

• Press 🗿 for videophone.

#### Information

Even when Sub-address setting is "ON", numbers cannot be recognized as Sub-address if "\*" is entered at the beginning of a phone number, "\*" is included in the number added as Prefix or \*59n# ("n" is a number between 0 and 9) is entered. Entering "\*" after a pause causes the same result.

## Reconnect signal

Setting Alarm tone when reconnecting interrupted calls

Default High alarm

Voice/videophone calls interrupted due to poor radio wave condition can be reconnected when good radio wave condition recovers. Set Alarm tone for reconnecting.



• Press 🖅 "OFF" not to set.

#### Information

•The duration of interruption allowing reconnection depends on using condition or radio wave condition. Roughly 10 seconds is the maximum. (Call cost is charged even while the call is interrupted.)

No sound is heard on the other party's side when the call is interrupted.

The call may be cut off without Alarm tone, depending on using condition or radio wave condition.

#### **Noise reduction**

Suppressing ambient noise to make voice clear

Default ON

This setting can suppress the ambient noise and make the voice clearer to the other party.



Making/receiving a call

In-car hands-free

# Using hands-free compatible devices

# Connect FOMA terminal to hands-free devices such as In-car hands-free kit 01 (optional), car navigation system, to dial/receive voice calls with hands-free devices.

• Refer to the instruction manual for operations of each hands-free compatible device. When you use In-car hands-free kit 01 (optional), FOMA In-car hands-free connection cable 01 (optional) is required.

#### Information

- Ouse hands-free function with Stand-by display on the screen.
- ●Set USB mode to "Communication mode". →P346
- Arrival act on receiving calls such as display or Ring tone follows the settings of FOMA terminal.
- Hands-free compatible devices play sounds when being set, even when Manner mode is set or Ring volume is set to "OFF" on FOMA terminal.
- Arrival act under Public mode (Drive mode) follows the setting of Public mode (Drive mode).
- Arrival act of Record message follows the setting of Record message.
- The action when folding FOMA terminal during a call follows Closing action setting, if Ring tone is set to sound from FOMA terminal. If a hands-free compatible device is set to sound Ring tone, the call continues even after the FOMA terminal is folded, regardless of Closing action setting.

# Answering a call

# The common procedure for answering a voice/videophone call is described in this section.

## Press or so when receiving a call.



Ring tone sounds and Incoming call lamp blinks.

- Hold down **Solution** for over a second during a call, and you can change the mode to Hands-free.
- You can answer a call by pressing any key when Any key answer is set to "ON". →P64

# Press Press to end a call.

- ●A call can also be disconnected by folding FOMA terminal. Set Closing action to "Hold" or "Mute", not to disconnect calls by folding FOMA terminal. →P65
- Following information is displayed on the screen, depending on the dialing conditions of the other party or the setting of FOMA terminal.
  - The phone number of the other party is displayed when the number is not registered in Phonebook.
  - When the phone number of the other party is registered in Phonebook, the number, name, and still image/movie image (if registered in Phonebook) are displayed.
  - When the phone number of the other party is not notified, the reason for hiding Caller ID is displayed.  $\rightarrow$  P150
  - When the call is forwarded by Call forwarding, the information of the forwarding source is displayed.
  - When the call is received on 付加番号 <Additional number> of Multinumber, the additional number is displayed.

#### **Operations while receiving calls**

Following functions are available while receiving a call, by pressing (i) [Function].

Call rejection	Rejects and disconnects a call. The call is saved in Rejected calls.
Call forwarding	Forwards incoming calls to the registered forwarding destination. $\rightarrow$ P340
Voice mail	Forwards incoming calls to Voice mail center. →P338
Record message	Records the message of the caller of incoming calls in FOMA terminal.

#### When you hear signal tone (Call waiting ring tone) while talking

With the subscription to one of the services of Voice mail/Call waiting/Call forwarding, the signal tone is heard when receiving another call during a call, and following operations are available.

Voice mail service*	oice mail service <sup>*</sup> Forwards calls to Voice mail center. →P338	
Call waiting	Holds the current call and answer a new incoming call. $\rightarrow$ P339	
Call forwarding	Forwards calls to the registered forwarding destination. →P340	
service*		

\* Available when Set arrival act is set to "Activate service" and Arrival act is set to "Answer".

#### When FOMA terminal is folded

Ring tone sounds and Incoming call lamp blinks when you receive a call. The message "Receiving" appears on the backside display.

- The phone number or the registered name etc. in Phonebook are displayed (when Backside notify is set to "ON").
- The reason for unsent Caller ID is displayed when the phone number is not notified (when Backside notify is set to "ON").

#### Information

- You can reject calls from parties not registered in Phonebook. You can also set to mute for the set duration before Ring tone starts. →P151, 152
- ●By setting Call rejection for the parties registered in Phonebook, you can reject calls from specified parties. →P149

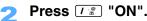
#### Any key answer

Setting to answer a call by pressing any key on Keypad

Default ON

Set to be able to answer incoming calls not only pressing 🖘 or ), but also keys ( 🕮 to 🖅), cursor keys ( 🚯), 🙉, 🔊, 🗯, 🕬.





• Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "OFF" not to set.

#### Information

Any key answer function is valid only for voice calls. However, it is invalid when receiving voice calls during a call.

Any key answer function is valid after approximately 3 seconds since receiving a call.

# Default OFF Set FOMA terminal to receive a call by opening folded FOMA terminal. · Substitute image is displayed when answering a videophone call by Open to talk. Press (•) ► 🛞 $\blacktriangleright (\mathcal{H}_{\mathcal{E}}^{GHI}) \blacktriangleright (\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{X}}^{KL}) \blacktriangleright (\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{B}}^{KL}).$ • Press ⊇ﷺ "OFF" not to set. Ending/holding a call by folding FOMA terminal Default Disconnect Set FOMA terminal to end or hold a voice/videophone call by folding. This function is not applied to 64K data communication or packet communication.



# Select the action when folding and press $(\bullet)$ .

Disconnect	Disconnects a call by folding FOMA terminal.	
Hold	Plays On-hold tone and puts the call on hold by folding FOMA terminal. (Returns to the connected call by opening FOMA terminal.)	
Mute	Puts a call on hold by folding FOMA terminal, without On-hold tone. On a videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party, instead of your self image.	

#### Information

A call continues with FOMA terminal folded regardless of Close action setting, when Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch (optional) is connected.

#### Open to talk Starting a call by opening FOMA terminal



#### **Closing action**

Disconnect	Disconnects a call by folding FOMA terminal.
Hold	Plays On-hold tone and puts the call on hold by folding FOM/ (Returns to the connected call by opening FOMA terminal.)
Mute	Puts a call on hold by folding FOMA terminal, without On-hold

# **Using Received calls**

#### The information of incoming calls, such as phone number, is saved as Received calls.

• Up to 30 histories can be saved. The oldest history is deleted when exceeding 30 histories.





Received calls list screen

- Displays the phone number of the other party, time and date of dialing.
- The name of the other party is displayed when the phone number matches a number registered in Phonebook.
- The reason for unsent Caller ID is displayed when the phone number is not displayed. →P150
- Press 
   to display Redial list.
- Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook

#### 

• Press **E** "Photo display ON", to display.

#### Sending i-mode mail

- When both the phone number and the E-mail address are registered in a Phonebook entry, the E-mail address is specified as the destination. If no E-mail address is registered, the phone number is specified as the destination.
- - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending imode mail" Step 4 to 6
  - The same procedure is available on Received calls detail screen.

# Select a history from Received calls and press ullet.



Received calls detail screen

- If a missed call is selected, Ring time (sec) is displayed on the screen.

Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying Received calls during a call →P315
- ①Select a history from Received calls and press
  - [Function] ► 7<sup>rge</sup> "Send push tone".

#### Description Description Icon lcon Received voice call 64 Incoming 64K data communication Ē. Missed voice call Missed 64K data communication 64 Ē. Missed voice call (confirmed) 64 Missed 64K data communication (confirmed) e Received call on Initial number of Multinumber Received international call . The Received videophone call Received call on 付加番号1 Ē. R <Additional number 1> of Multinumber Missed videophone call Received call on 付加番号2 ma. **R** <Additional number 2> of Multinumber Missed videophone call (confirmed) Received international call on Initial R 儒 number of Multinumber

#### Icons displayed on Received calls

lcon	Description	lcon	Description
æ	Received international call on 付加番号1 <additional 1="" number=""> of Multinumber</additional>	I	New Recorded message
	Received international call on 付加番号2 <additional 2="" number=""> of Multinumber</additional>		

## 强 Press 💶⊃.

- Press (a) to make a videophone call.
- Press to use various functions. →P193

#### Viewing Missed calls, calls w/o sound, and Rejected calls

Up to 30 calls rejected according to Call rejection are saved separately from received calls. The oldest history is deleted when exceeding 30 histories.

# ✓ Press ⊙ ► i [Function].

## ${f >}$ Select a category of Received calls and press ${ullet}$ .

View missed calls	Displays the list of missed calls only.		
View calls w/o snd	Displays received calls disconnected within the set mute seconds.		
View rejected call	Displays received calls from the caller set to Call rejection and other rejected calls. ♥ (rejected manually) or ③ (rejected by setting) is displayed on each history. ①Enter the terminal security code and press ④.		

#### Information

Received calls history is not deleted when the power is turned off.

If the other party uses a dial-in number, a different number from the dial-in number may be displayed.

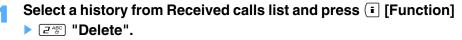
If the phone number of the other party is registered in several Phonebook entries, the priority in the displayed name etc. is set as follows.

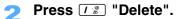
- D Phonebook entries registered in Direct call
- 2 Phonebook entries in which the phone number is registered as Normal use
- ③ The reading in alphabetical order
- (4) Ascending numerical order by Phonebook number
- Received calls are not displayed when Received calls/adrs in View dialed/received set to "OFF".

●Selecting a phone number registered as Multinumber →P342

#### <Delete received calls>

#### **Deleting Received calls history**





#### Deleting by option

①Press ⊇≝ "Delete option".

**②Select a history from Received calls and press** ●.

- Press (•) to release.
- ③Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

1 Press 🖅 "Delete all".

**(2)** Enter the terminal security code and press  $\bigcirc$ .



• Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press (i [Function] > Z\*\*) "Delete", to delete Received calls on Received calls detail screen.
 Rejected calls are not deleted when all of the received calls are deleted.

#### Earpiece volume

Adjusting volume of the other party's voice during a call

Default LEVEL3

You can adjust the volume of the voice of the other party within 5 levels between LEVEL1 (min.) and LEVEL5 (max.) during a voice/videophone call.







During a voice call

#### During a videophone call

# **Press** O to turn up the volume and O to turn down.

· Volume can be adjusted continuously by keeping to hold down the key.

#### Information

The volume level that is set during a call remains after the call is disconnected.
 Earpiece volume setting remains after turning off the power.

#### Adjusting volume during Standing-by



# **Press** O to turn up the volume and O to turn down.

• Volume can be adjusted continuously by keeping to hold down the key.



#### Whisper

# Talking in small voice

# You can set the terminal so that the other party can hear your voice as regular volume when you talk in a small voice.

• Whisper is unavailable under Manner mode or while connecting to hands-free compatible devices.



# Press (i) [Function] during a call $\triangleright$ $\mathbb{Z}^{ABC}_{\mathcal{D}}$ "Whisper".

"Whisper" is displayed on the screen during a call.

#### Releasing Whisper

1 Press 🖻 [Release].

#### Echo

# Blocking nuisance calls

#### You can block nuisance calls by sending the voice back to the caller.

- · Echo function is available only for incoming calls. (Unavailable for calls you made.)
- The caller cannot hear your voice.



#### Press **i** [Function] during a call ► **∃**<sup>∞</sup> "Echo".

"Echo" is displayed on the screen during a call.

Releasing Echo ①Press ▣ [Release].

#### Dial memo

# **Using Dial memo**

# Make notes of phone number etc. during a call. You can refer to or make a call from Dial memo anytime.

- Up to 5 entries can be registered. The oldest is deleted when exceeding 5 entries.
- Up to 26 digits can be registered for each Dial memo.
- · Registered data is not deleted even when the power is turned off.

#### **Registering a Dial memo**

### Enter the number to note during a call.

• Press ( when entering a wrong number.



#### Using Dial memo



- Making a call
  - ①Select an entry and press ⊆ ⊃.
  - Press to make a videophone call.

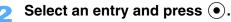
#### Deleting Dial memo

- 2 Press 1 Tolete".
  - When you press  $\mathbb{Z}^{\infty}$  "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .
- 3 Press 1 😨 "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Sending Push tone during a call

• Displaying Dial memo during a call  $\rightarrow$ P315

①Select an entry and press ⓐ [Function] ► 2 m "Send push tone".



Dial memo detail screen appears.

#### Information

●Press (i [Function] ► [1]] "Delete", to delete from Dial memo detail screen.

Press [Function] > 2 Constant Send push tone", to send push tone from Dial memo detail screen.

●Press on Dial memo detail screen, to make a voice/videophone call or to register in Phonebook. →P193

#### On-hold Putting calls On-hold when calls cannot be answered

#### If you are not able to answer incoming calls right now, calls can be put on-hold.

· Call cost is charged on the caller while a call is on-hold.

# Press when receiving a call.



090XXXXXXXX



Voice call on-hold

0:10

#### Videophone call on-hold

Beep sound is heard and you can hold the call.

The other party hears on-hold message.

• Videophone on-hold image is sent to your FOMA terminal and the other party's terminal for videophone calls.

> Pres

# Press ( >>) when you are ready to answer.

• Press ) or <br/>
 to answer with your self image, when receiving a videophone call. Press (•), to answer with the substitutive image.

# On-hold tone

#### Information

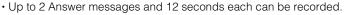
- The guidance message for on-hold can be edited.
- On-hold tone is not heard under Manner mode or when Ring tone volume is set to "OFF". However, On-hold tone is heard when Ring tone volume is set to other than "OFF" in Original manner mode.
- ●When Any key answer is "ON", you can release on-hold of voice call by pressing any key other than (≤). →P64
- The call is disconnected if you press me or the other party disconnects the call during on-hold.
- Press (i) [Function] during a call, to connect to Voice mail center or to forward the call, if you subscribe Voice mail/Forwarding service. However, Voice mail service is not available for videophone call.

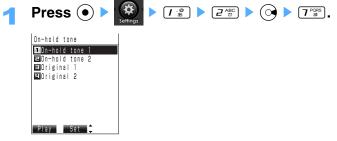
#### On-hold tone

Setting	On-holc	l tone
---------	---------	--------

Default	On-hold tone 1
---------	----------------

Set On-hold tone to be played on the other party, during voice/videophone call on-hold. You can also record your original message and set the recorded voice as On-hold tone.





On-hold tone list

#### 2

#### Press one of $I_{\frac{2}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{2}{2}}$ .

On-hold tone 1	"Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Sonomama omachi ni naruka shibaraku tattekara okakenaoshi kudasai. <i cannot="" take<br="">your call right now. Please hold the line if you do not mind, or try to call again later.&gt;" (Preinstalled On-hold tone in FOMA terminal)</i>
On-hold tone 2	"Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Moushiwake arimasenga mamonaku demasu node yoroshikereba sonomama omachi kudasai. <i call="" cannot="" hold="" now.="" please="" right="" take="" the<br="" your="">line if you do not mind. I will be available to answer the call soon.&gt;" (Preinstalled On-hold tone in FOMA terminal)</i>
Original 1, 2	Recorded On-hold tone

• Press <a>[Play]</a> to confirm On-hold tone. Press <a>)</a> to set while playing.

• You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". Original 1 and 2 are not available before recording.

Select "Original 1" or "Original 2" on On-hold tone list screen.

Press (i) [Function] ► 🛽 👘 "Record".



#### Press 💽.

Recording starts. Start talking to the mouthpiece.

#### Press 💽.

Recording is stopped. Recording automatically stops if the maximum seconds has elapsed.

- 🗟 appears on On-hold tone list screen when the recording is completed.
- Press D [Play] to confirm On-hold tone.

#### Deleting recorded On-hold tone

• The setting returns to the default if "Original 1" or "Original 2" set is deleted.

#### 



#### Press 🛯 😨 "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### Call-on-hold tone

Setting Call-on-hold tone

Default Call-on-hold tone 1

Set Call-on-hold tone to play during Call-on-hold for voice/videophone calls.



# Public mode (Drive mode)

#### **2** Press one of $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

Call-on-hold tone 1	"グリーンスリーヴス <green sleeves="">" (Preinstalled Call-on-hold tone in FOMA terminal)</green>
Call-on-hold tone 2	"愛の挨拶 <sault d'amour="">" (Preinstalled Call-on-hold tone in FOMA terminal)</sault>
Original 1, 2 Recorded Call-on-hold tone	

• Press 🖻 [Play] to confirm Call-on-hold tone.

 You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". Original 1 and 2 are not available before recording. Procedure to record/delete is the same as that of On-hold tone. →P72

#### Public mode (Drive mode)

#### Using Public mode (Drive mode)

Public mode is an auto-answer service for better manners in public places. When setting Public mode, the guidance message is announced to the caller to inform that the receiver is unavailable for driving or being in a public place (on a train or bus, in a theater, etc.), then the call is disconnected.

- Setting/releasing of Public mode is only available while stand-by. (You can also set/release the mode when "圈外 <out of service area>" is displayed.)
- · You can make a call as usual under Public mode.
- This function is not available during data communication.
- When receiving a call with "User unset" while activating Notify callerID service, Caller ID request guidance message is announced. (The guidance message for Public mode is not announced.)

#### Using Public mode (Drive mode)

#### Hold down 🖅 for over a second on Stand-by display.

Public mode is set, and 🙃 appears on Stand-by display.

- The guidance message "Tadaima untenchu moshikuwa keitaidenwa no riyou wo hikaenakereba naranai basho ni irutame denwa ni deraremasen. Nochihodo okakenaoshi kudasai. <I cannot answer the call right now since I am in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted.>" is announced to the caller.
- Public mode setting has the priority to Manner mode setting.

#### Releasing Public mode (Drive mode)

**()Hold down E** for over a second on Stand-by display. After Public mode is released, **(A)** disappears.

#### When setting Public mode (Drive mode)

No Ring tone plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call. Notify icon appears on the screen and the information on the call is saved in Received calls.

The guidance message is announced to the caller, to inform that the receiver is unavailable for driving or being in a public place, then the call is disconnected.

#### Network services under Public mode (Drive mode)

Each network service works as follows under Public mode.

Service	On receiving voice calls	On receiving videophone calls	
Voice mail service	The guidance message is announced to the caller, to inform that the receiver is unavailable for driving or being in a public place, then the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center.	The image guidance for Public mode is not displayed, and the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center. *	
Call forwarding service	The guidance message is announced to the caller, to inform that the receiver is unavailable for driving or being in a public place, then the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The guidance message announced to the caller follows the guidance setting of Call forwarding service. When setting forwarding guidance to "ON", the guidance message for Public mode is announced. When setting forwarding guidance to "OFF", no guidance message is announced.	The image guidance for Public mode is not displayed, and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The call is disconnected when the terminal of the forwarding destination is not compatible with video-phone calls.	
Call waiting	The guidance message for Public mode is announced and the call is disconnected.	When Public mode is set, the image guidance for Public mode is displayed to the caller and the call is disconnected.	
Nuisance call barring service	When the caller is registered in Call rejection, the guidance message informing failure in connection is announced to the caller and the call is disconnected.	When registering the caller in Call rejection, the image guidance informing failure in connection is announced to the caller and the call is disconnected.	
Caller ID request service	<ul> <li>If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the guidance message requesting to send CallerID is announced and the call is disconnected.</li> <li>If the caller notifies Caller ID, the guidance message for Public mode is announced and the call is disconnected.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the image guidance requesting to send CallerID is displayed and the call is disconnected.</li> <li>If the caller notifies Caller ID, the image guidance for Public mode is displayed and the call is disconnected.</li> </ul>	

\* The call is disconnected without forwarding to the Voice mail center, as of May, 2006.

#### Information

The sound below is not available under Public mode (Drive mode).

- Ring tone for voice/videophone call - Mail/Message Ring tone

- Alarm/confirmation sound

## Public mode (Power OFF) Using Public mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (Power OFF) is an auto-answer service for better manners in public places. When receiving a call while powered off after setting Public mode (Power OFF), the guidance message is announced to the caller to inform that the receiver is unavailable for driving or being in a public place (in a hospital, on an airplane, or near the priority seat on a train), then the call is disconnected.

#### Using Public mode (Power OFF)



#### Dial "+25251".

Public mode (Power OFF) is set. (Nothing is changed on Stand-by display.)

 When receiving a call while powered off after setting Public mode (Power OFF), the guidance message "Tadaima keitaidenwa no dengen wo kiru hitsuyou ga arubasho ni irutame denwa ni deraremasen. Nochihodo okakenaoshi kudasai. <I cannot answer the call right now since I am in a public place where use of mobile phone is restricted.>" is announced to the caller.

#### Releasing Public mode (Power OFF)

#### 1Dial "+25250".

Public mode (Power OFF) is released.

#### Confirming the setting of Public mode (Power OFF)

#### ①Dial "★25259".

You can confirm the setting status of Public mode (Power OFF).

#### When setting Public mode (Power OFF)

The setting is held until dialing " $\times$ 25250" to release Public mode (Power OFF). The setting is not released only by turning the power on.

The guidance message for Public mode (Power OFF) is also announced when you are out of service area or under poor radio wave condition.

The guidance message informing that you are where use of mobile phone is restricted is announced to the caller, and the call is disconnected.

#### Network services under Public mode (Power OFF)

Service	On receiving voice calls	On receiving videophone calls	
Voice mail service	The guidance message informing that you are where use of mobile phone is restricted is announced to the caller, and the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center.	The image guidance for Public mode is not displayed, and the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center.*	
Call forwarding service	The guidance message informing that you are where use of mobile phone is restricted is announced to the caller, and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The guidance message announced to the caller follows the guidance setting of Call forwarding service. When setting forwarding guidance to "ON", the guidance message for Public mode is announced. When setting forwarding guidance to "OFF", no guidance message is announced.	<ul> <li>not displayed, and the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination. The call is disconnected when the terminal of the forwarding destination is not compatible with video-phone calls.</li> <li>nce</li> <li>d.</li> </ul>	
Nuisance call barring service	When the caller is registered in Call rejection, the guidance message informing failure in connection is announced to the caller and the call is disconnected.	When registering the caller in Call rejection, the image guidance informing failure in connection is displayed to the caller, and the call is disconnected.	
Caller ID request service	<ul> <li>If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the guidance message requesting to send Caller ID is announced and the call is disconnected.</li> <li>If the caller notifies Caller ID, the guidance message for Public mode (Power OFF) is announced, and the call is disconnected.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>If the caller does not notify Caller ID, the image guidance requesting to send Caller ID is displayed and the call is disconnected.</li> <li>If the caller notifies Caller ID, the image guidance of Public mode is displayed, and the call is disconnected.</li> </ul>	

Each network service works as follows in Public mode (Power OFF).

\* The call is disconnected without forwarding to the Voice mail center, as of May, 2006.

#### **Confirming Missed calls**

#### Only Missed calls in Received calls are displayed by View missed calls.

#### **Confirming on Stand-by display**



If you have Missed calls, 🗟 , Notify icon, and the notice appear on Stand-by display.

• Press (•) to display Missed calls list.

 $\cdot$  🚯 is on the screen until you check all missed calls.

#### Viewing Missed calls

- Press **i** [Function] ► **I \*** View missed calls", on Redial/ Received calls list screen.
  - $\cdot$  Each procedure on Missed calls is the same as that of Received calls.  ${\rightarrow}\mathsf{P66}$

#### Confirming on backside display

· Set Side key operation to valid for confirming.



#### Press 🗹 (ボイス <Voice>) with FOMA terminal folded.

The number of Missed calls is displayed on the backside display and voice-announcement plays.

#### Information

●Press (i [Function] > 🖅 "View missed calls", to display missed calls on Redial screen or Received calls detail screen.

#### **Record message**

Recording voice/video messages when you cannot answer calls

### The caller can leave a voice message after the answer message is played, when you cannot answer a call. Video message is recorded for a videophone call.

• Up to 4 messages and approximately 20 seconds for each message can be recorded.

Record message

The differences between Record message and Voice mail service are as follows.

Item	Record message	Voice mail service
5 / 11		Up to 20 messages, 3 minutes for each
Retention period of messages	Unrestricted	Up to 72 hours
Where messages are stored	FOMA terminal	Voice mail center
Place and condition for recording	Recordable when the receiver is within the service area and the power is turned on.	Recordable anytime when the receiver is within or out of service area, and the power is turned on or off.

#### <Set record message>



#### Information

Recorded messages may be lost due to failure, repair, modification, or other handlings of FOMA terminal. In case the recorded data is erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. We recommend you to make notes of recorded messages for your record.

Answer message and the other party's voice cannot be heard when FOMA terminal is folded.

If there are 4 recorded messages, Voice memo cannot be set. Answer time or Answer message cannot be set, either.

#### When setting Record message

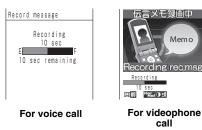
Operations are as follows, when a call is received under setting of Record message.



#### The terminal receives a call.

Answer message plays to the other party after preset Answer time elapsed.

#### The other party's message is recorded.



"Recording" appears on the screen and recording starts. For videophone call, "伝 言メモ録画中 <Recording rec.msg>" appears on the screen and recording starts.

• The other party's voice is not heard while recording. When adjusting the volume with (2), the other party's voice is heard from Earpiece. Once recording starts, it is counted as 1 recorded item regardless of the duration.

#### When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.



(The number means the items of unconfirmed messages), Notify icon, and notices appear on Stand-by display.

- After 4 messages are recorded, the icon color is changed to orange.
- Select notification (Record message) and press 

   to display Record message list screen.

#### Information

- ●You can answer incoming calls while playing Answer message or recording voice/video message. Press ( ) or ( ) for Voice call. When Videophone, press ( ) to call with sending self image, or press ( ) to call with sending Substitute image. The voice/video message in the middle of recording when receiving the call is not saved.
- Record message is not available with 4 messages already recorded. In that case, Ring tone keeps playing. When activating Voice mail/Call forwarding service, the call is connected to each service.
- Calls incoming while recording a message are rejected, and the recording continues. Rejected calls are saved in Received calls.
- Record message function is not available under Public mode (Drive mode).

#### <Answer time>

#### Setting duration before playing Answer message

Default 8 sec

You can set the period of time to activate Answer message after receiving a call.





#### Enter Answer time and press ().

- The duration can be set between 0 and 120 seconds.
- 3 Press i [Define].

#### Information

When setting either of Voice mail service or Call forwarding service, and Record message simultaneously, set Answer time of Record message shorter than the duration of the other service to activate Record message preferentially.



#### Press one of $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

Standard	"Tadaima denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Pi- to iu hasshinon no ato ni niju byo inai de onamae renrakusaki nado wo ohanashikudasai. <i cannot answer the call right now. Leave your name and contact information within 20 seconds after hearing the beep sound.&gt;" (Preinstalled Answer message in FOMA terminal)</i 
Drive	"Tadaima unten chu no tame denwa ni derukoto ga dekimasen. Pi- to iu hasshinon no ato ni niju byo inai de onamae renrakusaki nado wo ohanashikudasai. <for answer="" call="" cannot="" driving,="" i="" leave<br="" now.="" right="" the="">your name and contact information within 20 seconds after hearing the beep sound.&gt;" (Preinstalled Answer message in FOMA terminal)</for>
Original 1, 2	Recorded Answer message

• Press 🖻 [Play] to confirm Answer message.

• You can record any message as "Original 1" and "Original 2". Original 1 and 2 are not available before recording. Procedure to record/delete is the same as that of On-hold tone. →P72

#### 3 Press 🗉 [Define].

#### Setting Answer message image for Record message on videophone

Set an image to display while playing Answer message or recording video message.



#### Press I B "My picture".

• Press 2<sup>m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

 ${f 3}$  Select a still image and press ullet .

#### Information

●Default image ("伝言メモ (テレビ電話) <Record message (videophone)>") is displayed if no Videophone image is set as Answer message.

#### Playing/deleting Record message

#### **Playing Record message**





#### Select a Record message and press $(\bullet)$ .

- Press () to adjust volume while playing.
- Press (•) to stop.

#### Information

- Select a message and press (i) [Function], to make a voice/videophone call or to register a phone number in Phonebook.
- The message cannot be played immediately after disconnecting a call. Wait until Stand-by display returns.
- Videophone record message is played from the speaker.





#### Select an entry and press i [Function] > 7 and "Delete".

#### Press 1: "Delete".

• When you press *Precedence* "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press (•).

#### Press **/** "Yes". Δ

• Press 2<sup>-ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press [I] [Function] > 1 " "Delete", to delete Record message while playing.

### Making/receiving a videophone call

Videophone	.82
Making a videophone call	.83
Answering a videophone call	.85
Setting image screen to send to the other party	.86
Setting videophone hands-free <videophone hands-free=""></videophone>	88
Customizing display settings for videophone call	.88
Changing videophone settings	.90

#### Videophone

#### Videophone call is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. You can send or receive a still image, besides your self image, as Substitute image.

DoCoMo videophone specifications conforms to "3G-324M\*1, an international standard by 3GPP\*2". Videophone call is not available between terminals using different systems.

- The following two connection speeds are provided for videophone:
  - 64K: Connects at 64 kbps connection speed.
  - 32K: Connects at 32 kbps connection speed.\*3
- \*1 3G-324M
  - An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile videophone
- \*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
  - Area Standardization Organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the third generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000).
- \*3 SA702i does not support 32K videophone.

#### Videophone screen



Function	Description	Function	Description
①Main screen	Displays the image of the other party. (Default)	8 Reduce flicker	No icon: Auto-reduce 🔛 50 Hz, 🔛 60 Hz
2Sub-screen	Displays your self image. (Default)		Close-up mode
③Call duration	Displays the duration of a call.	(1) Sending image type	<ul> <li>Self image, <sup>LA</sup> Substitute image</li> <li>Call-on-hold, <sup>CA</sup> On hold,</li> <li>Recording message,</li> <li>Recording VoiceMemo-Call,</li> <li>Playing file</li> </ul>
④Hands-free	Calling with Hands-free	①Sound/Video	<ul><li><b>۩U</b> Image and Sound,</li><li><b>∨</b> Video only, <b>A</b> Sound only</li></ul>
Sending DTMF	EB Sending DTMF	①Special effect	Sepia, Monochrome, 4 colors (Red etc.)
<b>(</b> White balance	<ul> <li>Auto, K Fine weather,</li> <li>Cloudy weather,</li> <li>Lamp light,</li> <li>Fluor(neut.white),</li> <li>Fluor(daylight)</li> </ul>	③Sending image quality	Normal, Prefer motion speed, Prefer image quality
⑦Light	<ul><li>Lighting (black),</li><li>Unavailable (gray)</li></ul>	19 Brightness	Adjustable among 0-5, 0±1, and 0+5

#### Making a videophone call

 International videophone call is available using DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD CALL". →P59



# Enter a phone number including the area code on Stand-by display.

Include the area code even when calling from the same area.
 Up to 26 digits of a phone number can be displayed on the screen.
 Numbers with 3 to 80 digits are recognized as a phone number.
 Press Into correct the phone number.
 To reenter the phone number, hold down Into Stand-by display.



#### Press 🔋.

Signal tone is heard and dialing starts.

- The busy signal tone is heard and "Busy" is displayed, when the other party's line is busy. Press even to end the call, and try to call later.
- Alternatively, press Fail videophone", to make a call.
- Call cost is charged from the time when "Connecting V.phone" is displayed on the screen.

#### Talk to the other party after the videophone call is connected.



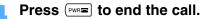
- When Videophone hands-free is set to "OFF", press ( ) to switch the mode to hands-free.
- Connect Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) etc., if you do not use hands-free.
- The substitutive image etc. may be displayed due to the setting of the other party's terminal.

Switching Substitute image and camera image () Press ().

Switching In-camera and Out-camera

#### ①Press 🖻 [Cam Sw].

- You can switch the mode to Close-up mode in Out-camera. →P169
- Displaying images in Data box
  - Images smaller than QCIF can be displayed.
  - ①Press i [Function] ► 5 <sup>∞</sup> "File playback", during a videophone call.
  - **2**Select a folder, and press  $\bullet$ .
  - **3**Select data, and press  $\odot$ .



#### Messages when videophone call is not connected

FOMA terminal displays the reasons for the failure of connection of videophone as a message. Messages vary depending on the other party's terminal model or the subscribed network services.

Message	description
Check number, then redial	You have dialed a phone number not in use.
Busy	The other party is on another line, 64K data communication or packet communication.
Disconnected due to outside of service/ power off	The other party is out of service area or the terminal is powered off.
Set Caller ID to ON	Displayed when you call without Caller ID notification (when dialing to the services such as V-Live or Visual net).
Redial using voice call	Displayed when the receiver sets Call forwarding service and the forwarding destination is not compatible with Videophone.*
Connection failed	Displayed for other cases than above.

<sup>4</sup> Displayed also when the receiver sets Voice mail service, as of May, 2006.

#### <Call-on-hold>

#### Holding videophone

#### 1

#### Press during a videophone call.

Hold 00:00:45 The videophone is held.

#### Releasing On-hold

• Press ⓐ or ⊆⊃).

The call is restarted with your self image.

- Press 
  [Release].
  The call is restarted with the image sent before holding.
- Press 💽.

Substitute image is sent.

#### Information

Communication fee is charged not as call cost but as digital communication fee even when using a still image as Substitute image.

- ●Videophone cannot be connected to Emergency call number (110,119 and 118). FOMA terminal redials the number when Voice call auto switch is set to "ON". →P90
- Videophone call cannot be connected to the terminals not supporting videophone, or to the terminals (even supporting videophone) turned off or located outside the service area. If you set Voice call auto switch to "ON" and attempt to make a videophone call to a videophone-unsupported terminal, the other party's terminal will abort the communication before connected. Then, the terminal redials a voice call automatically. However, the previously mentioned operation may not work when you attempt videophone calls with inapplicable conditions such as at ISDN-sync 64 kbps or via PIAFS access points, with ISDN videophones incompatible with 3G-324M (as of May, 2006), or dial a wrong phone number. Note that communication fee may be charged in some cases.
- SA702i is not compatible with 32K videophone. Videophone call cannot be received by devices that can only receive 32K videophone such as PHS etc. depending on the network environment. When Voice call auto switch is set to "ON", the call is automatically redialed after switching to voice phone call.
- ●The connection may be continued even when communication of either voice or video is cut off during a videophone call and ▲ (Sound only) or ♥ (Video only) is displayed.

Depending on the radio wave condition during a videophone call, the image may be displayed in mosaic.

- Another voice call/videophone call cannot be made during a videophone call. Also, i-mode connection, and sending/ receiving of i-mode mail or MessageR/F are not available. However, SMS can be received during videophone calls.
   Hands-free function is available under Manner mode.
- •Keep FOMA terminal away from your ear when hands-free is set. Rapid increase of the volume may cause damage to your ear. Use FOMA terminal keeping the distance of 20 to 40 cm.

# Answering a videophone cal

#### Answering a videophone call

• You can display a substitutive image instead of camera image when answering videophone calls.

#### Press 🗿 or 🖘 when receiving a videophone call.



The message "Incoming videophone" and the phone number etc. (or reason for not notifying Caller ID) are displayed on the screen.

Press Press to hold the incoming call.

Talk to the other party after the videophone call is connected.

Answering videophone with Substitute image ①Press ④.

#### 2



- When Videophone hands-free is set to "OFF", press (
- Connect Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) etc., if you do not use hands-free.

Switching Substitute image and camera image ()Press ().

#### Switching In-camera and Out-camera

#### Press □ [Cam Sw].

 You can switch the mode to Close-up mode in Out-camera. →P169

#### 3 Press Press to end the call.

#### Operations while receiving videophone call

Press (i) [Function] for following operations during videophone calls.

Call rejection	Rejects and disconnects a call without answering. Information on the call is saved in Rejected calls.
Call forwarding	Forwards a call to registered forwarding destination. $\rightarrow$ P340
Record message	Records voice/video of the other party.

#### Information

- •Videophone call is not connected to Voice mail center, and are disconnected after the ring time has elapsed even when activating Voice mail service, since Voice mail service is not available for videophone calls, as of May, 2006.
- Incoming videophone calls are not forwarded to the devices incompatible with 64K videophone conforms to the 3G-324M standard, even when activating Call forwarding service. Confirm the specifications of the destination device before setting the forwarding destination.
- •When receiving a videophone call from a number registered in Nuisance call barring service, the call is disconnected after displaying the call rejection image guidance.
- Arrival act, such as Ring tone, Vibrator, etc., is not activated if the other party has dialed 32K videophone. The call is not saved in Received calls.
- ●Substitute image turns to be "カメラオフ(テレビ電話) <Camera off (videophone)>" under PIM lock (Multimedia).
- •When making a videophone call when the image size of the other party's terminal is set to Sub-QCIF, the image of the other party is not displayed properly.

#### Setting image screen to send to the other party

#### Set the image screen which is to be sent to the other party during a videophone call.

- When the other party's camera image is set to be displayed on Main screen, the sending image can be confirmed on Sub screen.
- The following settings are not available when sending a still image as Substitute image.
  - Visual preference - Special effect
- White balance
- Brightness

- Light
- Zoom
- Reduce flicker

#### Setting sending image quality



Set the quality of sending image.

videophone call.

#### Press one of $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ to $\exists_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Normal Sets standard quality on both image/motion of the image.	
Prefer motion spdSets priority to motion smoothness over image quality.	
Prefer img quality         Sets priority to image quality over motion smoothness.	

#### Applying special effect onto sending image

Default No effect

Apply special effects onto the sending image. The image with special effects is displayed on the other party's screen.

#### Press (i) [Function] $\triangleright$ $\underline{F}$ $\widehat{}$ $\triangleright$ $\widehat{}$ "Special effect", during a videophone call.

#### Press one of $I \stackrel{\circ}{\ast}$ to $7 \stackrel{\circ}{\ast}$ .

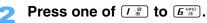
- Special effect →P170
- Press [1] "No effect" not to set special effects.

#### Adjusting White balance

Default	Auto

Adjust White balance of the sending image. White balance can be changed according to the light environment of the location.





Setting item →P170

# Setting image screen to send to the other party

#### Adjusting Brightness

Default Brightness: ±0 Light: OFF

Sets brightness of the sending image to be displayed on the other party's screen.

• Eleven levels of the brightness is available between -5 and +5.

#### Press ⊡ or ⊡ during a videophone call.

The value of **O**<u></u> is changed.

- $\cdot$  The screen becomes brighter each time when pressing igledown.
- $\cdot$  The screen becomes darker each time when pressing igcup.

#### Turning on the light

You can make the sending image brighter, with the light turned on when using Out-camera.

# Press i [Function] ► E<sup>MC</sup> ► I<sup>C</sup> Light", during a videophone call.



#### Press / 😨 "ON".

Press ⊇™ "OFF" to turn off the light.

#### <Zoom> Switching display magnification

Default Normal

Switch display magnification of the sending image to send to the other party.

• Switch In-camera/Out-camera to return to the default zoom.

#### Press 💿 or 🞯 during a videophone call.



- is displayed and the magnification changes.
- The image becomes larger each time when pressing O
- The image becomes smaller each time when pressing 
   O.
   (The reduced image is not displayed.)

#### Sending push tone (DTMF)

Send push tone (DTMF) during a videophone call.



#### Press dial keys during a videophone call.

The entered number is displayed and sent.

#### <Videophone image>

#### Changing image to send

Default	Substitute image :カメラオフ(テレビ電話) <camera (videop<br="" off="">Record message image : 伝言メモ(テレビ電話) <record (vid<br="" message="">On-hold image :応答保留(テレビ電話) <on-hold (videophone<="" th=""><th>deophone)&gt; e)&gt;</th></on-hold></record></camera>	deophone)> e)>
	Call-on-hold image : 通話中保留画像(テレビ電話) < Call-on-hold (V	(deopnone)>

You can change Substitute image or Record message image/On-hold image/Call-on-hold image to display during videophone calls.

- Camera image sending is required to be set to "OFF", to use a selected Substitute image when making videophone calls. →P90
- The image of Record message/On-hold/Call-on-hold is also displayed on your FOMA terminal when displayed on the other party's terminal.
- Images smaller than QCIF image size are available to be set.



**Press one of**  $I_{\mathscr{Z}}$  to  $H_{\mathscr{Z}}$ .

#### Press 🕖 😨 "My picture".

• Press  $\mathbb{P}_{\frac{m}{2}}$  "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

Select an image, and press (•).

#### Videophone hands-free

#### Setting videophone hands-free

Default ON

The mode is automatically changed to hands-free when starting Videophone.



• Press 2 "OFF" not to set.

#### Customizing display settings for videophone call

Set the image screen to display during a videophone call.

 Setting the quality of receiving image

 Default Normal

 1
 Press [Function] ► (IN) ► (IN) ► (IN), during a videophone call.

#### **Press one of** $I_{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}}{\overset$

Normal	Sets standard quality on both image/motion of the image.	
<b>Prefer motion spd</b> Sets priority to motion smoothness over image quality.		
Prefer img quality	Sets priority to image quality over motion smoothness.	

#### Reducing flicker in receiving image

Default Auto

- **Press one of**  $I_{\mathbb{Z}}$  to  $I_{\mathbb{Z}}$ .

Setting the image of Main/Sub screen

Default Main screen: Other side Sub screen: My side Display: Both sides

Switching image of Main/Sub screen

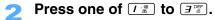
Press (i) [Function] ► (ਭਾਵ) "Disp position chg", during a videophone call.

Your FOMA terminal camera image is displayed on Main screen, and the other party's camera image is displayed on Sub screen.

• The image of Main/Sub screen is switched each time to operate Step 1.

#### Setting the display of Main/Sub screen

# Press i [Function] ► I = "V.phone display", during a videophone call.



Both sides	Both sides Displays the image on both of Main/Sub screens.	
Other side Displays only the image of the other party.		
My sideDisplays only the self image of your self image.		

#### **Changing Main screen size**

Default Large view

If the image is too rough, return to Normal view size.



# Press **[**Function] ► *[*<sup>Agc</sup>] "Normal view", during a videophone call.

Main screen is displayed in the normal view size.

• Press Z<sup>ABC</sup> "Large view" to change into the large view size.

# Changing videophone settings

Sets continuous lighting ON/OFF of the display during a videophone call.

#### Press [i] [Function] > 7 Backlight, during a videophone call.

#### Press 7 3 "ON".

• Press Z<sup>\*\*</sup> "OFF" not to set. The setting follows Display light setting when "OFF" is set.

#### Changing videophone settings

Default Send camera image: ON Voice call auto sw: OFF Videophone display: Both sides Screen size: Large view Visual preference: Normal

Default

ON

#### Set the action when the videophone call is not connected, or set the image screen for Videophone.

• "Voice call auto switch" setting ensures the connection to the other party. Voice call auto switch is a function to automatically switch the call type into Voice call to redial, when the other party's terminal does not support Videophone or the other party cannot receive videophone calls, in such cases as while using mova service through Dual Network Service.



#### Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

Send camera image	<ul> <li>Sets the sending image when making a videophone call.</li> <li>①Press I I ON" or II OFF".</li> <li>When pressed "OFF", sets Substitute image. Following procedure: →P88 "Changing image to send" Step 3 to 4</li> </ul>	
Voice call auto sw	ets to automatically redial a voice call. Press 🖅 "ON" or 🖅 "OFF".	
Videophone display	hanges the display setting during a videophone call. Press one of $\boxed{f_{*}}$ to $\boxed{f_{*}}$ .	
Screen size	Changes the display size of Main screen. ①Press ፲:ঃ "Large view" or ㄹ?? "Normal view".	
Visual preference	Sets the image quality of the sending image. () Press one of (); to ();	
Videophone image	Changes the image to send to the other party. →P88	
Videophone hands-free	Sets hands-free setting to ON/OFF on starting a videophone call. →P88	

# Changing videophone settings

#### Information

- Redial may not be available sometimes, depending on the condition of the receiver, the network, etc., even when Voice call auto switch is set to "ON".
- The voice call fee is charged, when redialing a voice call with Voice call auto switch setting "ON".
- SA702i is not compatible with 32K videophone. A videophone call is automatically switched into a voice call under Voice call auto switch "ON", when the other party's terminal can only receive 32K videophone due to network environment, such as PHS.

### Phonebook

Registering entry to Phonebook from Redial or Received calls101
Editing Group
Making a call with Phonebook
Editing Phonebook
Copying Phonebook
Deleting Phonebook
Protecting Phonebook entry <secret> 109</secret>
Checking memory status of Phonebook < Memory status> 110
Using simple key operation to make a call < Two-touch dial> 110
Contacting specified parties easily

#### Phonebooks available for FOMA terminal

#### You can use FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook in your FOMA terminal.

• UIM (FOMA card) phonebook is available to use in other FOMA terminal by inserting the UIM (FOMA card).

#### Differences between FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook

lcon	Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
		Basic	
No	No. of entries (Phonebook number)	Up to 500 entries can be registered. (Phonebook number are from 000 to 499.)	Up to 50 entries can be registered. (Phonebook number cannot be set.)
NGe	Name	Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/ 21 one-byte (Half Mark)* <sup>1</sup> characters can be entered.
RE	Reading	Up to 32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark) Kana (25 one-byte (Half Mark)* <sup>2</sup> alphanumeric characters or marks) can be entered.
	Phone number	Up to 3 phone numbers can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered. Select the icon of Phone number type from 8 icons.	Only 1 phone number can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 26 digits * <sup>3</sup> can be entered.
Y	E-mail address	Up to 3 E-mail addresses can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered. Select the icon of E-mail address type from 5 icons.	Only 1 E-mail address can be registered for each phonebook entry. Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.
<u> </u>	Group	Select one from 20 groups. Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a group name.	Select one from 10 groups. Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark)* <sup>1</sup> characters can be entered as a group name.
•1	Image	JPEG/GIF/3GP files (Video only i-motion) and Flash movies in "Data box" can be displayed. *4	
$\geq$	Location info	Longitude/Latitude/Datum/Accuracy/ Positioning time and date can be registered.	Unavailable
G	Secret setting	Phonebook entries can be displayed only in Secret mode by setting Secret to "ON".	
<u>لا</u>	Secret code	Secret code can be added to a mail to be sent, when sending it to a receiver with Secret code set.	
		Specify	
	Individual phone incoming	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp can be set.	
F	Individual videophone incoming	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp can be set.	Unavailable
$\mathbf{\Sigma}$	Individual receive mail	Ring tone/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp/Notice time can be set.	
::	Individual message	Individual message can be set.	

lcon	Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
		Others	
URL	Internet site	Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.	
	Free memo	Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	
₩	Blood type	Blood type can be selected.	
225	Birthday	Birthday can be entered in one-byte (Half Mark) number. (Western calendar)	Unavailable
1 <sup>9</sup>	Star sign	Star sign can be selected. Displayed automatically by entering the birthday.	Ollavallable
ZIP	Zip code	A 7-digit number can be entered.	
â	Address	Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	
НО БРЯ	Hobby	Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.	

\*1 Only up to 10 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.

- \*<sup>2</sup> Only up to 12 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed.
- \*<sup>3</sup> Some UIM (FOMA card) may support only up to 20-digit number.

turned on.

\*4 Images may not be able to be displayed due to image size etc.

#### **Display of name**



the screen when receiving a voice call/videophone call. The information is also displayed in Redials, Received calls, etc. • When the caller does not notify Caller ID, registered information is

Name, Phone number, and Image registered in Phonebook appear on

not displayed.
Names etc., registered in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, may not be displayed while reading UIM (FOMA card) or right after the power is

#### Information

When receiving a voice call

• If you register the E-mail address or phone number in Phonebook, the registered name is displayed on received/sent address history when sending/receiving i-mode mail or SMS.

#### Store in Phonebook

Talk Function

#### Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook

You can register basic information such as phone number, E-mail address, and other information including address, birthday, etc. Also individual Ring tone and message can be specified. The procedures to specify the basic information, Ring tone, and additional information is described in this section.

- Up to 500 entries can be registered. Up to 3 phone numbers and 3 E-mail addresses can be registered for each phonebook entry.
  - Hold down 🕭 for over a second.



Press 1: "Phone".



Phonebook entry screen

#### Register basic information.

#### Entering Name

#### $\bigcirc$ **1**Select $\bowtie$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter the name and press ●.

• Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

• Press 2<sup>-AgC</sup> "UIM", and the entry is registered in UIM (FOMA

- Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters, Mark, Picture, and Emoticon can be entered.
- · Be sure to enter the name. Otherwise the data cannot be registered.

card). →P99

- Reading of the name is displayed automatically on 🔛 when entering a name.
- When entering the name in alphanumeric characters, the reading displayed is the same as the name. Picture and some marks entered in name are not displayed in the reading.

#### Entering Reading

You can correct the readings entered automatically.

- **1**Select **ඎ** and press ●.
- ②Enter the reading and press ●.
  - Up to 32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Entering Phone number

**(1)**Select  $\square$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter the phone number and press $\bigcirc$ .

• Up to 26 one-byte (Half Mark) numbers including "\*", "#", "+" and "P" are available to enter.

#### 3Select the Phone number type and press $\odot$ .

- The appears on the screen after entering one of the phone numbers. Up to 3 phone numbers can be registered.
- Select a phone number for normal use when registering more than 2 phone numbers.

#### Entering E-mail address

- **()**Select  $\begin{tabular}{ll} \begin{tabular}{ll} \hline \end{tabular}$  and press  $\begin{tabular}{ll} \end{tabular}$  **()**
- **2** Enter the E-mail address and press  $\odot$ .
  - Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.
- **3**Select the E-mail type and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - 🖼 appears on the screen after entering an E-mail address. Up to 3 E-mail addresses can be registered.
  - Select an E-mail address for normal use when registering more than 2 E-mail addresses.

#### Setting Group

"Group 0" is set without any settings.

#### **(1)**Select $\widehat{}$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

#### **(2)**Select Group and press $\bigcirc$ .

• A group number can be selected from 0 to 19.

#### Setting Image

One image can be set.

**①Select ₽** and press **●**.

2 Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

My picture	(1)Select data from My picture folder and press $igodot$ .		
i-motion	<ul> <li>①Select data from i-motion folder and press ).</li> <li>Video only i-motion can only be set.</li> </ul>		
Snap photo	<ul><li>Shoot a still image to be set.</li><li>①Shoot a still image and press <ol><li>.</li></ol></li></ul>		
Shoot movie	Shoot a movie to be set. ①Shoot a movie and press ④.		
OFF	No image is registered.		

• When Preview screen is displayed, set the position or the size etc. of the image displayed when receiving, and press •.

#### Adding location information

#### **(1)**Select $\geq$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

Following procedure: →P266 "Adding location information" Step 3

#### Setting Secret

The setting is only available in Secret mode.

#### **(1)**Select $\mathcal{P}$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

#### 2 Press 1: "ON".

• Press 2 "OFF" to release.

#### Setting Secret code

When the other party sets a secret code on the E-mail address, set the secret code to the Phonebook entry. Registered secret code is automatically added when composing i-mode mails.

• The setting is unavailable if the E-mail address is not set.

#### **(1)**Select $\bowtie$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

- **2** Enter the terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .
- ③Press [1]: "Set secret code", select an E-mail address, and press ).
  - Press 2<sup>mm</sup>/<sub>m</sub> "View secret code" to confirm the secret code.
  - Press 🖅 "Release" to release.

#### ④Enter a 4-digit number and press ●.

Secret code cannot be set to "0000".

- **5** Press **1** "Yes".
  - Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/
     "No" to cancel.

#### Setting Phonebook number

**(1)** Select **No** and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter the Phonebook number and press $\bigcirc$ .

• Numbers can be entered also by pressing ().

#### Press to set individual Ring tone etc.

#### 1 Select the type and press 0.

- 🔁 : Sets Individual phone incoming.
- Sets Individual videophone incoming.
- 🗹 : Sets Individual receive mail.
- 庄 : Sets Individual message.

#### 2 Press 1 \* "ON".

• Press ⊇<sup>·</sup>#<sup>C</sup> "OFF" to release.

#### ③Set each item.

- 🦻 : Select Ring tone.
  - Following procedure: →P116 "Changing Ring tone or Chaku-motion" Step 3 to 5
- 📑 : Select Vibrator.
  - Following procedure: →P119 "Notifying incoming calls etc. with Vibration" Step 3 to 4
- Select Incoming-call lamp.
  - Following procedure: →P133 "Setting the lamp color of incoming calls" Step 3 to 4
- : Set Notice time (only for Individual receive mail).
  - Enter Notice time and press •.

• Individual answer message  $\rightarrow$  P79 "Setting Answer message" Step 2

#### ④ Press i [Define].

#### Press 🞯 to set other information.

#### Setting URL of Internet sites etc.

**()**Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter the URL and press ●.

• Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

#### Entering Free memo

 $\textcircled{1}Select \blacksquare and press \textcircled{0}.$ 

#### ②Enter a memo and press ●.

• Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Blood type

- (1)Select  $\P$ ) and press (ullet).
- 2 Press one of  $I_{\overline{a}}$  to  $I_{\overline{a}}$ .

#### Setting Birthday

**()**Select  $\cong$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### (2) Enter the date of birth in western calendar, and press $\textcircled{\bullet}$ .

Star sign is entered automatically when entering the date of birth.

#### Setting Star sign

You can change the star sign entered automatically.

- **()**Select  $\mathcal{R}$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- **2**Select a star sign and press  $\odot$ .

#### Setting Zip code

- **()**Select  $\mathbb{IP}$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- ②Enter the zip code and press ●.

# Phonebook

#### Setting Address

#### **(1)**Select **(a)** and press $(\bullet)$ .

#### (2) Enter the address and press $\odot$ .

Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Hobby

#### **()**Select $\blacksquare$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

#### **(2)** Enter the hobby and press $\bigcirc$ .

• Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### 🔓 Press ፤ [Store].

#### Information

- ●Press (i) [Function] > select "Store new entry" and press (•) > [7]; "Phone", to register a new entry from Search phonebook screen.
- When you register the E-mail address of i-mode terminal, domain name after @ ("@docomo.ne.jp") can be omitted. (When registering a Mail address of other than i-mode terminal, enter the whole E-mail address including @ and the domain name.)
- It may take time to display the image, depending on the size and the quantity of the image data registered in Phonebook.
- If registered with "184" or "186" added, the phone number cannot be used as the address for SMS. Also, if the E-mail address is registered as "184 or 186 + Phone number of FOMA terminal @docomo.ne.jp", the address is unavailable for the Receiver of i-mode mail.
- Do not add Secret code directly to the E-mail address in a Phonebook entry, but enter in Secret code setting.
- •When receiving incoming calls or mails from the other party set to Secret, the individual settings are only valid under Secret mode.

#### Notes

- ●It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the Phonebook, or you use miniSD memory card to save. You can backup the data in your PC using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378
- The data registered in your FOMA terminal may not be transferred to a new terminal depending on the model, when transferring the data to a newly purchased terminal at DoCoMo shop.
- Phonebook data may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changing of mobile phone model or other reasons. Also the data remains for about 1 month after the battery pack is removed or runs out, but may be lost after the period of time.

Note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.

#### Store in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook

#### Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook

• Up to 50 entries can be registered.



🤈 Pre	SS 2 <sup>ABC</sup>	"UIM".
-------	---------------------	--------

Phonebook	
🚟 [Name]	
Re	
E	
SaGroup O	

#### Set each item.

#### Entering Name

- ①Select № and press ●.
- ②Enter the name and press ●.
  - Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. [Only up to 10 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.]
  - Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters, Mark, Picture, and Emoticon can be entered.
  - Be sure to enter the name. Otherwise the data cannot be registered.
  - Reading of the name is displayed automatically on 🔢 when entering a name.
  - When entering the name in alphanumeric characters, the reading displayed is the same as the name. Picture and some marks entered in name are not displayed in the reading.

#### Entering Reading

You can correct the readings entered automatically.

**①Select ඎ** and press ●.

#### ②Enter the reading and press ●.

• Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark) Kana or 25 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters/marks can be entered. [Only up to 12 characters can be registered when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed.]

#### Entering Phone number

**()**Select  $\bigcirc$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter the phone number and press $\bigcirc$ .

• Up to 26 one-byte (Half Mark) numbers including "\*", "#", "+" and "P" can be entered.

#### Entering E-mail address

**()**Select  $\begin{tabular}{ll} \begin{tabular}{ll} \blacksquare \end{tabular}$  and press  $\begin{tabular}{ll} \bullet \end{tabular}$ .

#### ②Enter the E-mail address and press ●.

• Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

#### Setting Group

"Group 0" is set without any settings.

**()**Select  $\Re$  and press  $\odot$ .

#### **2**Select Group and press ullet.

• A group number can be selected from 0 to 9.

#### 👍 Press 🖬 [Store].

• 🗐 appears in Phonebook registered in UIM (FOMA card).

#### Information

●Press (i) [Function] > select "Store new entry" and press (i) > 2\*\* "UIM", to register a new entry from Search phonebook screen.

Phone number may be limited to 20 digits in some UIM (FOMA card).

#### Registering entry to Phonebook from Redial or Received calls

#### Press 📀 or 📀.

Redial list screen or Received calls list screen is displayed.

- Registering from Address history ①Press ③ or ◎ ▶ ▣ [AdrsHist].
- Select a phone number or an E-mail address and press •.

#### Press O > select "New to phonebook" and press O.

- Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6,
   →P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- Adding data to a registered Phonebook entry
  - **(1)** Press  $\bigcirc$  > select "Add to phonebook" and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### **(2)** Select a Phonebook entry and press $\bigcirc$ .

Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4

#### Edit group Editing Group

### You can change Group name or Group icon in Phonebook, or set Ring tone/Message for each group of FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Only Group name can be edited in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.
- The Group name "Group 0" cannot be edited.

#### Press 🕭.

• Press • when Search group screen appears.

Press **i** [Function] ► select "Edit group" and press ●.



#### Select Group and press ).

Detailed group ∭com∰ann MedGroup O	<ul> <li>Editing UIM (FOMA card) phonebook group</li> <li>①Press i [UIM].</li> </ul>
MIGOFF MOFF MOFF MOFF MOFF	Resetting to default     ①Press      P     [Reset].
	②Press T: "Reset".
	When pressing 2mm "Reset all", enter the terminal security
	code and press 💽.
	③Press 🖅 🕲 "Yes".
	Press ⊇ﷺ "No" to cancel.

#### Set each item.

#### Setting Icon group

- **1**Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- ②Select Icon group and press ●.

#### Setting Group name

**(1)**Select  $\mathbb{M}$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### ②Enter Group name and press ●.

 Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. [Only up to 10 characters can be registered as group name of UIM (FOMA card) phonebook when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mark) characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.]

#### Setting individual group settings such as Ring tone

#### 1 Select the type and press 0.

- 🔁 : Sets Phone incoming group.
- Sets V.phone incoming group.
- ☑ : Sets Receive mail group.
- 🖃 : Sets Message group.

#### 2 Press 1 \* "ON".

- Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "OFF" to release.
- 3 Set each item.
  - 🦻 : Selects Ring tone.
    - Following procedure: →P116 "Changing Ring tone or Chaku-motion" Step 3 to 5
  - 🔊 : Selects Volume.
    - Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Specify" ► adjust Volume and press ●.
  - Selects image (Not available for Receive mail group).
    - Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "My picture" or *I*<sup>\*</sup> "i-motion" and select data.
  - 📑 : Selects Vibrator.
    - Following procedure: →P119 "Notifying incoming calls etc. with Vibration" Step 3 to 4
  - Selects Incoming-call lamp.
    - Following procedure:  $\rightarrow$  P133 "Setting the lamp color of incoming calls" Step 3 to 4
  - 😨 : Sets Notice time (Available only for Receive mail group).
    - Enter Notice time and press •.
  - Individual answer message →P79 "Setting Answer message" Step 2

#### ④Press i [Define].

#### 5 Press i [Save].

#### Information

When Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp settings are set to "Melody link", the operation of vibration and Incoming-call lamp are linked to Ring tone. However, if setting Ring tone to Melody to which no vibrator pattern is registered, "Pattern 1" is applied.

If the volume is set to "Not specify", the operation follows settings in volume setting.

- Priority in receive actions
  - Ring tone →P117 Vibrator →P120 Receive display →P128 LED →P134

#### Making a call with Phonebook

#### You can make a call using Phonebook search.

· Following search methods are available.

Search method	Description
Search kana column	Searches the column on the list categorized in order of Japanese
	syllabary ("ア <a>" column, "力 <ka>" columnalphabet, and numbers).</ka></a>
Search name	Searches by name.
Search reading	Searches by reading.
Search phonebook no.	Searches by phonebook number.
Search group	Searches by group name.
Search phone no.	Searches by phone number.
Search mail address	Searches by E-mail address.
Search number type	Searches on the list of categorized icons of phone number type.
Quick search	Searches easily by pressing dial keys.

#### Press 🕭.

Srch kana 〈アカサタオ	column -ハマヤラワAB>
None	e stored
Search	
<b>.</b>	

The screen shows Search phonebook screen of previously searched method.

- Search phonebook screen (Srch kana column)
- 2

#### Select the search method and search a Phonebook entry.

Search method can be selected from following methods. (Procedures may differ depending on Search phonebook screen.)

- Press  $\square$  [Search] > select a search method and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Switch search" and press ▶ select a search method and press ●.

Srch ka	ana	column	1/2
		トハマヤ	ラ ワ  48 >
DoCoMo	Ak	iko	$\Omega$
DoCoMo	Fu	/uko	$\Omega$
DoCoMo	Har	nako	$\Omega$
DoCoMo	Ha	ruko	R



#### Search kana column

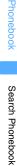
①Press ⊗ and select a column from "ア <A>" to "ワ <Wa>" columns, Alphabet, Number, and None columns.

#### Search name

#### (1) Enter the name and press $\odot$ .

• Enter the top few characters of the name, then all of the appropriate Phonebook entries are displayed. (Entry of all characters is not required.)

Search reading DoCoMB	<ul> <li>Search reading</li> <li>①Enter the reading and press .</li> <li>Enter the top few characters of the reading, then all of the appropriate Phonebook entries are displayed. (Entry of all characters is not required.)</li> </ul>
Search phonebook no OODDoCoMo Saburo OOIDoCoMo Fuyuko OO2DoCoMo Jiro OO3DoCoMo Haruko	<ul> <li>Search phonebook no.</li> <li>Unable to search UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.</li> <li>Enter 3-digit of Phonebook number (003 etc.)</li> <li>Phonebook number is displayed at the upper right corner on the screen and appropriate Phonebook entry is selected</li> </ul>
Search group 1/3 StGroup 0 StGroup 1 StGroup 2 StGroup 4 StGroup 5 StGroup 5 StGroup 7 StGroup 7 StGroup 8 Select∳UIM	<ul> <li>Search group</li> <li>Press (a) each time to switch UIM (FOMA card) phonebook and FOMA terminal phonebook.</li> <li>Select Group and press (a).</li> <li>Press (b) to display next/previous groups.</li> </ul>
Search phone no.	<ul> <li>Search phone no.</li> <li>①Enter the phone number and press ④.</li> <li>You can search by entering the top few numbers of the phone number.</li> </ul>
Search mail adrs docomb <b>il</b>	<ul> <li>Search mail address</li> <li>①Enter the E-mail address and press .</li> <li>You can search by entering a few characters of E-mail address.</li> </ul>
Search no. type 1/2 DOCOMO Akiko DoCoMo Ichiro DoCoMo Shiro DoCoMo Shiro	<ul> <li>Search number type</li> <li>UIM (FOMA card) phonebook is categorized as <sup>®</sup> type.</li> <li><b>Press</b> <sup>©</sup> and select the phone number type.</li> <li>You can also switch the phone number type by pressing dial keys. (<sup>®</sup>: 1<sup>®</sup>: 1<sup>®</sup>, <sup>®</sup>: 1<sup>®</sup>; <sup>®</sup>; <sup>®</sup>: 1<sup>®</sup>; <sup>®</sup>: 1<sup>®</sup>;</li></ul>



#### Select a Phonebook entry and press ullet.

Phonebook 001 <) Basic <mark>Specify Others</mark> ≯ DoCoMo Taro	Using URL     ①Press (i [Function] > ? * URL".     · Following procedure: →P322 "Using URL" Step ②	
	Adding to Direct Call	
BeGroup O	①Press	
	• Press I all "Rel. Direct Call" to release.	
Edit Select ‡Function	2 Press [1] "Yes".	
Phonebook detail screen	Press <i>⊇<sup>™</sup></i> "No" to cancel.	
	Sending Push tone during a call	
	<ul> <li>Displaying Phonebook during a call →P315</li> </ul>	
	<ol> <li>Press i [Function] </li> <li>O &lt;</li></ol>	
	${f @}$ Select a phone number and press $lowblack$ .	
Select a phone number and press 💶 >.		

• Press to make a videophone call.

#### Composing message

#### (1) Select an E-mail address and press $\odot$ .

#### 2 Press **I** "Compose message".

Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

#### Composing SMS message

①Press **i** [Function] ► *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Compose SMS msg".

#### **(2)**Select a phone number and press $\bigcirc$ .

Following procedure: →P235 "Composing and sending SMS (Short Message)" Step 4 to 5

#### Registering Birthday in Schedule

①Press **i** [Function] ► **5**<sup>∞</sup> "Store in schedule".

#### 2 Press 1 \*\* "Yes".

• Press ⊇ "No" to cancel.

#### Adding to Direct Call

#### ①Press **i** [Function] ► **b**<sup>mo</sup> "Add to Direct Call".

• Press E Rel. Direct Call" to release.

#### 

Press <sup>∠→BC</sup>/<sub>#</sub> "No" to cancel.

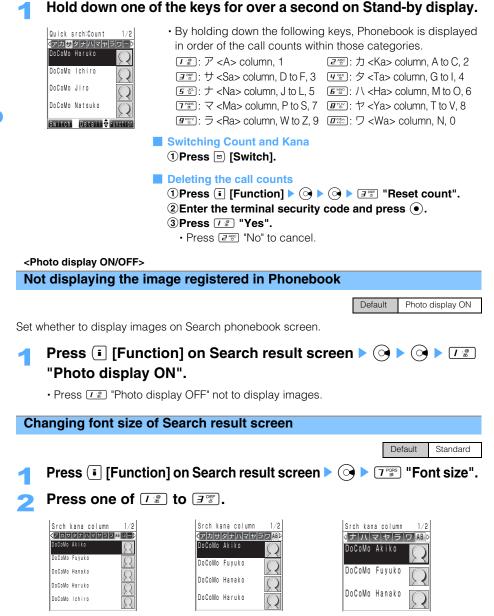
#### Copying phonebook data

- ①Press (i [Function] ► 🗺 "Copy item".
- **(2)**Select an item and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### **Quick search**

You can search an entry quickly by pressing dial keys. Switch Search result screen in order of Count or Kana.

• The number of calls is saved in FOMA terminal and determines the call count. [The call count for UIM (FOMA card) phonebook is saved as zero.]



Small : 16 dots

Large : 24 dots

# **Editing Phonebook**

· Editing is unavailable under Keypad dial lock.





### Edit each Phonebook data item.

Setting each phonebook item →P95, 99

# Press 🗉 [Store].



## Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press Z<sup>arg</sup> "No", enter a new Phonebook number and press (), not to overwrite. Phonebook number is not required when editing UIM (FOMA card) phonebook.

#### Information

Phonebook with Secret setting "ON" can be edited only under Secret mode.

If you delete the first phone number or E-mail address in a Phonebook entry with several phone numbers or E-mail addresses registered, the confirmation screen appears to select an entry as Normal use among the rest of entries. When only 1 item is left, the left phone number or E-mail address becomes "Normal use" automatically.

# **Copying Phonebook**

You can copy phonebook entries between FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card).

### Copying phonebook entry from FOMA terminal to UIM (FOMA card)

· Following items are copied.

ltem	Description				
Name	Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be copied. The characters exceeding that are not copied. Also, up to 10 characters are copied when two-byte (Full Mark) and one-byte (Half Mar characters are mixed or one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.				
Reading	Up to 25 one-byte (Half Mark) characters are copied. The characters exceeding that number are not copied. Also, up to 12 characters are copied when one-byte (Half Mark) Kana is included.				
Phone number	Only the phone number registered as the first is copied. The icon turns to $\bigcirc$ .				
E-mail address	Only the E-mail address registered as the first is copied. The icon turns to ☑.				
Group	When the same group name exists in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, the entry is copied into the same group. If there is no same group name, the phonebook entry is copied into Group 0.				



# 



• When there is any item that cannot be copied, a message appears.

#### Copying by option

①Press ⊇<sup>∞</sup> "Copy option".

- ②Select a Phonebook entry and press •.
- Press 

   to release.
- ③Press i [Exec.]

#### Copying all

Press ∃<sup>™</sup> "Copy all".

### Press 🖊 🛣 "Yes".

• Press ⊇ﷺ "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press (I [Function] > (I) Copy to UIM", to copy data on Phonebook detail screen to UIM (FOMA card).
 Items other than name, reading, phone number, E-mail address, and group (setting for image or individual phone receive call, birthday, etc.), cannot be copied.

### Copying phonebook entry from UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminal

• Following items are copied.

Item	Description				
Name	Copied.				
Reading	Copied, with two-byte (Full Mark) character changed into one-byte (Half Mark) characters.				
Phone number	Copied to the first phone number.				
E-mail address	Copied to the first E-mail address.				
Group	When the same group name exists in FOMA terminal phonebook, the entry is copied into the same group. If there is no same group name, the phonebook entry is copied into Group 0.				



Copying by option

- 1 Press 2 "Copy option".
- ②Select a Phonebook entry and press •.
- Press 

   to release.
- 3 Press 🖬 [Exec.]
- Copying all

(1)Press ⊒<sup>™</sup> "Copy all".

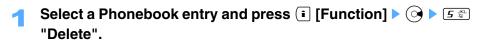
### Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".

• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press i [Function] > 🖅 "Copy to Phone", to copy data from Phonebook detail screen, to FOMA terminal.

# **Deleting Phonebook**



Press **7** "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

①Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup> "Delete option".

- ②Select a Phonebook entry and press •.
- Press 

   to release.
- ③Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

**(1)** Press  $\exists d s$  "Delete all".

#### **2** Enter the terminal security code and press $\odot$ .

 If both FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM (FOMA card) phonebook have the same entry, select the item to delete and press •.

### Press 1 😨 "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### Information

Press : [Function] > (>) > [?]: "Delete", to delete from Phonebook detail screen.
 When "Accept/Reject call" is set to the Phonebook entry to delete, the terminal security code is required.

#### Secret

# **Protecting Phonebook entry**

# You cannot search or display a Phonebook entry set as Secret, except under Secret mode in order to protect your privacy.

- Secret can be set or released only under Secret mode.
- Phonebook entries registered in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook or Direct Call cannot be set as Secret.



Setting procedure →P148

🔈 Select a Phonebook entry and press 💽 🕨 🖾 [Edit].

- 强 Select 🖉 and press 💽.
- 📶 Press 🖅 🖀 "ON".

• Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>□</sub> "OFF" to release.

- 5 Press i [Store].
- 🔓 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".

• Press 🖅 "No", enter the Phonebook number and press 💽, to register as a new entry.

#### Information

- Names of phonebook entries set as Secret are not displayed in Redial or Received calls, except under Secret mode.
- Individual Arrival act is not executed except under Secret mode, when Arrival act for individual or Group is set to a Phonebook entry set with Secret.

#### **Memory status**

# **Checking memory status of Phonebook**

# Display the numbers of registered entries in FOMA terminal/UIM (FOMA card) phonebooks or entries set as Secret.

• The number of phonebook entries set as Secret is displayed only under Secret mode.

# Press **i** [Function] on Search phonebook screen ► ⊙ ► ⊙ ► *⊇*<sup>∞</sup> "Memory status".

Memor y	status
Phone	entries:
No. of	300/500
UIM	entries:
No. of	10/ 50

Memory status of Phonebook in FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card) is displayed.

#### Two-touch dial

# Using simple key operation to make a call

# You can make a call easily with Phonebook number (0 to 99) in FOMA terminal phonebook.

• When several phone numbers are registered, the phone number set as Normal use is dialed.

#### <Example> Calling to the phone number of Phonebook number 3

# 1 Enter the Phonebook number (∃<sup>™</sup>) on Stand-by display, and press ≤ D.

- Entry of "0" before Phonebook number is not needed.
- Enter Phonebook number and press 🗿 for videophone.

#### Information

<sup>●</sup>Alternatively, enter Phonebook number and press ④ ► 🖅 "Dial phone call" or 🖅 "Dial videophone", to make a call.

Direct Cal

# Contacting specified parties easily

Register persons whom you have frequent contacts with to Direct Call, to call or send mails easily. You can display the list of Received calls/Redials or Received/Sent mails between only registered entries.

### **Registering an entry as Direct Call**

Register the person to Phonebook before adding the entry as Direct Call.  ${\rightarrow} \text{P95}$ 

- Up to 5 entries can be registered.
- Entries in UIM (FOMA card) phonebook or entries set as Secret cannot be registered.

# Press ≤> on Stand-by display.



Direct Call screen



# Select a Phonebook entry and press ullet.

# **4** P

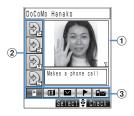
### Press 1: "Yes".

• Dr appears on the phonebook when the entry is set as Direct Call 1.

• Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

Calling/sending a mail with Direct Call

# Press ≤⊃ on Stand-by display.



The selected party
 Registered parties
 Function icons



- Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to  $5_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to select a party.
  - $\cdot$  Alternatively, press ( ) to select a party.

# Press in and select a function icon.

#### Making a call

- **()**Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- ②Select a phone number and press or ≤>.
- Making a videophone call
  - **()**Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - **(2)** Select a phone number and press  $(\bullet)$  or (B).

#### Composing a message

- **1**Select **■** and press **●**.
- **②**Select an E-mail address or a phone number and press **●**.
  - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6
- Sending a mail with the location information URL pasted
  - Location URL →P257
  - **()**Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - ②Select an E-mail address or a phone number and press ④.
  - **③Paste the location information URL.** 
    - Following operations: →P210 "Pasting Location information URL" Step ②
  - 4 Press 1 \* "Yes".
    - Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>□</sub> "No" to cancel.
    - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6

#### <Direct Call box>

#### Displaying call or mail history of Direct Call

You can display Redial, Received calls or sent/received mails of only between parties registered as Direct Call.

#### <Example> Displaying mails with parties in Direct Call

Select the party on Direct Call screen.

# Select s and press •.



Direct Call box (mail) is displayed.

- Press 🚱 and you can switch "mail" and "phone" of Direct Call box.
- The following icons are displayed on the screen of Direct Call box (phone).
  - <: Received : Dialed

Direct Call box (mail)



### Select a mail message and press ().

Mail screen appears.

Direct Cal

#### Information

- Definitions of icons displayed, or operation procedures of functions available on Direct Call box or the detail screen is the same as those of Redials/Received calls/Inbox/Outbox.
- The confirmation screen appears if there is any Mail folder with security set. Press (1.8) "Yes" and enter the terminal security code, to display. Press ZAR "No" not to display.

#### Viewing details from Direct Call icon

Direct Call icon notifies Missed calls/Record message/Mail from the party registered in Direct Call. Direct Call box is also available from Direct Call icons. When you have Record message, Recorded message list is displayed.

#### <Example> Missed call from the party registered as Direct call 1



- **1**Stored name 2 Direct Call icon - DI : From the party registered as Direct Call 1
  - DE : From the party registered as Direct Call 2
  - Di : From the party registered as Direct Call 3
  - **Du**: From the party registered as Direct Call 4
  - DE : From the party registered as Direct Call 5

Press (•).

Direct Call box (phone) appears.

- If there are multiple notify information, press (2) to select one of the information.
- If there are multiple Direct Call icons, press 📀 to select one of the icons.
- Not a Direct Call icon but a normal Notify icon appears under PIM lock (Phonebook).

### Changing/releasing the registered party in Direct Call

Changing a registered party

Select a party on Direct Call screen, and press (i) [Check].

Press (i [Function] > 2<sup>-</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Change Direct Call".

Press / ? "Yes".

 Following operations: →P111 "Registering an entry as Direct Call" Step 3 to 4 • Press 2<sup>-ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

Releasing a registered party

- Select a party on Direct Call screen, and press (i) [Check].
- Press (i [Function] > I "Rel. Direct Call".
- Press / 😨 "Yes".

• Press 2<sup>-ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

# Select a party on Direct Call screen, and press i [Check].



• Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4

# Sound/Display/Light settings

### **Sound settings**

Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone
Changing tone volume of FOMA terminal <volume> 119</volume>
Notifying incoming calls etc. with Vibration
Notifying with vibration that the other party answers the call
<pre></pre>
Setting sound of key operationKeypad sound> 120
Setting OK tone/NG tone
Setting Charging tone
Alarm notification of nearly disconnected call <quality alarm=""> 121</quality>
Setting duration of Mail ring tone etc <notice time=""> 122</notice>
Setting Ring tone to play only through Earphone
<output ring="" to:="" tone=""> 122</output>
Setting FOMA terminal mute < Manner mode> 123
Customizing Manner mode < Original manner mode> 123
Display/Light settings
Changing Stand-by display
Setting Call/receive display <call display="" receive=""> 128</call>
Setting backside display128
Setting Display/Key light
Setting color design of the screen
Changing design of Main menu
Setting the lamp color of incoming calls
Changing Font size

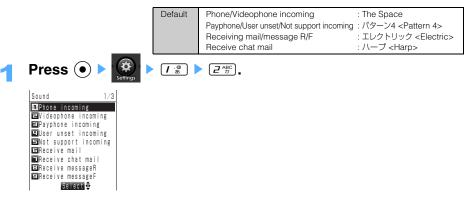
#### Sound

# **Changing FOMA terminal Ring tone**

# You can set the Ring tones for the reception of calls/mails, confirmation tones for operation, or Location provide notify/check tone.

• When i-motion is set as Ring tone, the image and sound of the i-motion plays when receiving calls/mails (Chaku-motion).

### **Changing Ring tone or Chaku-motion**



### Press one of $I_{\mathfrak{B}}^{\mathfrak{Q}}$ to $\mathfrak{g}_{\mathfrak{B}}^{\mathfrak{W}}$ .

Phone incoming	Sets Ring tone for incoming phone calls.		
Videophone incoming	Sets Ring tone for incoming videophone calls.		
Payphone incoming	Sets Ring tone for incoming calls from such as payphone.		
User unset incoming	Sets Ring tone for incoming user unset calls.		
Not support incoming	Sets Ring tone for incoming international phone calls or calls via forwarding services from fixed-line phones. (Caller ID may be displayed depending on the telecommunication career.)		
Receive mail	Sets Ring tone for receiving mails.		
<b>Receive chat mail</b> Sets Ring tone for receiving chat mails.			
Receive messageR	Sets Ring tone for receiving MessageR.		
<b>Receive messageF</b> Sets Ring tone for receiving MessageF.			

### Press one of $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ to $\exists I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

i-motion	Notifies with a movie/i-motion.		
Melody	Notifies with a melody.		
OFF	Ring tone does not play. No further operation is needed.		

# Select a folder, and press 💽.

# Select data and press ().

• Press 🖻 [Play] to confirm the data.

Sound

#### Information

Some i-motion, such as Video only i-motion, cannot be set as Ring tone.

When setting i-motion including image and sound as Ring tone, the image set for Receive display is changed to the i-motion automatically. However, when Sound only i-motion data (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer) is set as Ring tone, the image set for Receive display is not changed but the set image is displayed.

- •When several settings of Ring tone conflict, priority is set as follows.
  - ① The setting for individual settings in Phonebook
  - ② The setting for group settings in Phonebook
  - ③ Ring tone set in Sound settings

However, if you subscribe to Multinumber service and set Additional number, the setting follows the Ring tone setting of the Additional number. →P342

When i-motion with image and sound is set as Ring tone, the i-motion is displayed for incoming calls, having a priority over the still image of the caller set in Phonebook basic information. However, registered still image is displayed if the i-motion is Sound only (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer).

#### <Opening tone/Closing tone>

#### Changing opening/closing tone of FOMA terminal



- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$   $\triangleright$   $\mathbb{P}^{\mathbb{F}}$  "Opening tone" or  $\mathbb{F}$  "Closing tone".
- 强 Press 🖅 🕄 "Melody".

• Press 2mm "OFF" not to play sounds. No further operation is needed.

Select a folder, and press •.

ᇊ Select a melody, and press 💽.

#### **Changing tones for GPS function**



# Press $\bigcirc$ once or twice, select an item and press $\bigcirc$ .

Position location	Sets Ring tone for positioning the present location.					
Notify location	<b>location</b> Sets Ring tone for completion of notifying the present location.					
Periodic notify	Sets Ring tone for executing Periodic notify.					
Loc. prov/ permitSets Ring tone for receiving the request for location information. (When GPS service setting is "許可 <accept>")</accept>						
Loc. provide/ check	Sets Ring tone for receiving the request for location information. (When GPS service setting is "毎回確認 <confirm request="">")</confirm>					

### Press **I** "Melody".

• Press 2 " "OFF" not to play sounds. No further operation is needed.

## Select a folder, and press $\odot$ .

#### Select a melody and press $\odot$ . 5

• Press 
[Play] to confirm the melody.

#### **Preinstalled Melody list**

· Following melodies are stored in the folder named "Preinstalled".

Title	Composer	Title	Composer
パターン1~4	—	コスモス <cosmos></cosmos>	—
<pattern 1="" 4="" to=""></pattern>			
The Space	—	ブザー <buzzer></buzzer>	—
The Rockabilly	—	シロフォン <xylophone></xylophone>	—
The Moment	—	モールス <morse></morse>	—
I Got Rhythm	ガーシュウィン George Gershwin	黒電話 <old ring="" tone=""></old>	—
エンターテイナー <the entertainer=""></the>	ジョプリン Scott Joplin	水のしずく <waterdrop></waterdrop>	_
愛の挨拶 <salute d'amore=""></salute>	エルガー Edward Elgar	にわとり <cock-a-doodle-doo></cock-a-doodle-doo>	—
4羽の白鳥 <dance 4="" of="" swans="" the=""></dance>	チャイコフスキー Pyotr Ilych Tchaikovsky	パトカー <police siren=""></police>	—
ツァラトゥストラはかく語りき <also sprach="" zarathustra=""></also>	シュトラウス Richard Strauss	メールを受信しました <you a="" mail.="" received=""></you>	—
ウィリアムテル序曲 <"William Tell" Overture>	ロッシーニ Gioacchino Rossini	You've got a Mail!	—
交響曲第25番ト短調 <symphony g="" in="" minor="" no.25=""></symphony>	モーツァルト Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart	アラーム音 <alarm tone=""></alarm>	—
ハンガリー舞曲第5番 <hungarian dance="" no.5<br="">in F sharp minor&gt;</hungarian>	ブラームス Johannes Brahms	オープントーン1, 2 <opening 1,="" 2="" tone="">*1</opening>	_
エレクトリック ー <electric></electric>		クローズトーン1, 2 <closing 1,="" 2="" tone="">*<sup>2</sup></closing>	_
ハープ <harp></harp>	—		

\*1 Only available for Opening tone.

\*<sup>2</sup> Only available for Closing tone.

Sound

# Changing tone volume of FOMA terminal

Default OK tone, NG tone : LEVEL1 : LEVEL3 All others

#### Set volume of Ring tone for receiving calls/mails and the operation sound of FOMA terminal.

- You can set the volume in 5 levels from LEVEL1 (min.) to 5 (max.) and OFF (mute). Step tone, increasing/decreasing volume stepwise can be set for some tones.
- Earpiece volume cannot be set to "OFF" or Step tone.





# Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

• Description of each item  $\rightarrow$  P68, 116, 117, 120, 121

#### Adjusting volume settings of all items in one operation

- · Earpiece volume cannot be adjusted with "Set All".
- **(2)** Press ( $\mathbf{x}$ ) to adjust volume, and press ( $\mathbf{\bullet}$ ).
- 3 Press / \* "Yes".
  - Press 2<sup>-</sup>" "No" to cancel.

# R

### Press $(\mathbf{x})$ to adjust volume, and press $(\bullet)$ .

• Press  $\square$  [STEP  $\downarrow$ ] for setting the volume to decrease stepwise. Press (i) [STEP  $\uparrow$ ] for setting the volume to increase stepwise (Step tone).

#### Vibrator

# Notifying incoming calls etc. with Vibration

Default All: OFF

Set FOMA terminal to notify incoming phone/videophone calls, mails, MessageR/F, etc. with Vibrator.





Description of each item →P116, 117

Sound/Display/Light settings

# Press one of $I_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ to $H_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ .

Melody link	Preset vibration pattern of the melody <ul> <li>Melody link may not be available for some melodies.</li> </ul>			
Pattern 1 to 6	attern 1 to 6 Preinstalled vibration patterns in FOMA terminal			
OFF	No vibration. No further operation is needed.			

### Press one of $I_{\frac{2}{5}}$ to $\exists I_{\frac{2}{5}}$ .

#### Information

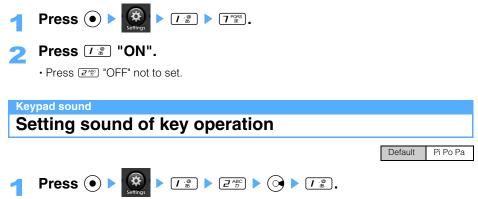
- Vibration under Manner mode follows the Vibrator settings.
- If setting "Melody link" on Vibrator when the setting of Sound is "OFF" or "Melody" without preset pattern, the vibration follows "Pattern 1".
- Be cautious as FOMA terminal may fall off the table etc., because of Vibrator.
- When several settings of Vibrator conflict, priority is set as follows.
  - 1 The setting for individual settings in Phonebook
  - 2 The setting for group settings in Phonebook
  - Vibration set in Vibrator

#### **Connection vibrator**

# Notifying with vibration that the other party answers the call

Default OFF

#### Set FOMA terminal to vibrate when the other party answers the call.

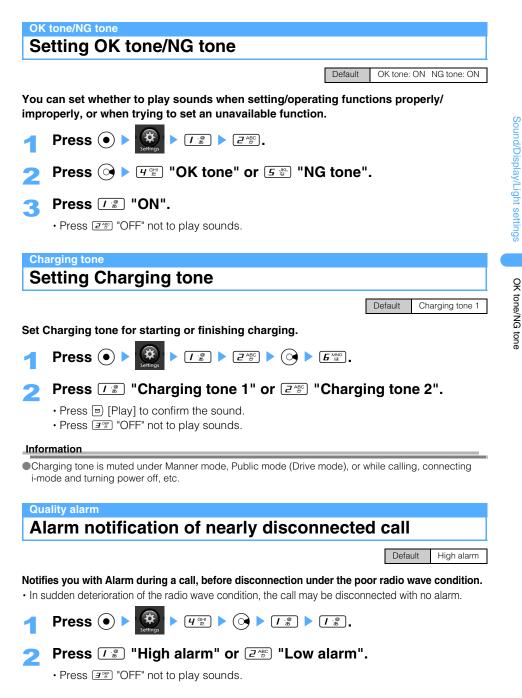


# **Press one of** $I_{\overset{\circ}{\approx}}$ to $\exists_{\overset{\circ}{\approx}}$ .

- Press **use** "OFF" not to play sounds.

#### Information

When this function is set to "OFF", the sound for battery level confirmation is also muted.



# Setting duration of Mail ring tone etc.

Default All: 5 sec

Set duration of Ring tone for Receive mail/MessageR/F, or notifying sound of GPS function.



### Press one of $I_{\ast}$ to $g_{\ast}$ .

### Enter Notice time and press $(\bullet)$ .

· When you set Notice time to 0 second, notices by notifying sound or Vibrator are not activated.

Notice time		

Receive mail, Receive chat mail, Receive messageR/F	Can be set between 1 and 30 seconds.	
Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Loc. prov/permit	Can be set between 0 and 30 seconds.	
Loc. provide/check	Can be set between 0 and 20 seconds.	

#### Output ring tone to:

# Setting Ring tone to play only through Earphone

Default Earphone & Speaker

Set Ring tones not to sound through the speaker when connecting Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch (optional).



# Press **I** "Earphone only".

• To sound Ring tone from the speaker as well, press *regional areas and the speaker*.

#### Information

Ring tones sound through the speaker regardless of Ring tone output setting when Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch (optional) is not connected.

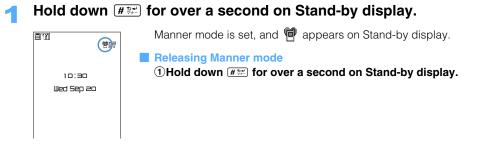
Manner mode

#### Manner mode

# Setting FOMA terminal mute

Default OFF

#### You can set to mute Ring tones or confirmation sounds, not to annoy the people around.



#### Under Manner mode (Silent vibrator)

- You can set to mute Ring tone/Keypad sound/Alarm/GPS tone etc. and to notify with vibration. It sensitizes microphone perception so that a call can be made in a small voice.
- Notification of Ring tone/Alarm/GPS function is substituted by vibration. If the setting of Vibrator is "OFF", vibration works in "Pattern 1" and in "Medium" strength level.

#### Information

- Shutter sound of Camera cannot be muted even under Manner mode. Changing volume of the confirmation tone is not available.
- A confirmation message may appear to confirm whether to play sounds temporarily, for an operation under Manner mode. Select an item and press •.

#### Original manner mode

### **Customizing Manner mode**

Default Manner mode : Silent vibrator Clock timer mode : Continuous mode

You can set Clock timer mode to set/release Manner mode at a specified time, and customize the volume of Ring tone or vibration etc. (Original manner).

#### Setting Manner mode type and Clock timer mode

Press O  $\blacktriangleright$  C C  $\blacktriangleright$  E E E

# 2

## Press one of $I_{\overset{@}{\ast}}$ to $\exists I_{\overset{ef}{\circ}}$ .

Manner mode types and descriptions are as follows.

Туре	Volume	Vibrator	Mic sensitivity	Blackout alarm
Silent vibrator	OFF	ON (Vibrator setting)	High	OFF
Sleep	OFF	OFF	High	OFF
Original manner	Customized setting is available.			

# Set Clock timer mode.

#### Setting/releasing manually

- 1)Press **1** "Continuous mode".
- ②Hold down #∋ for over a second on Stand-by display.
  - reference on Stand-by display.
  - Manner mode is active until you release manually.

#### Setting/releasing automatically at specified time

- 1 Press  $\fbox{Press}$  "Duration mode".
- (2) Enter the time to start, and press  $\odot$ .
- **③**Enter the time to end, and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### (4) Hold down (# 5:=") for over a second on Stand-by display.

🖱 appears on Stand-by display.

• Manner mode is set automatically from the start time to the end time. 🖱 and 矕 appear on Stand-by display under Manner mode.

#### Releasing automatically after the set duration

#### 1)Press 🖅 "OFF as time's passed".

- **2** Enter the duration and press  $\odot$ .
  - The duration can be set from 1 to 999 minutes.

#### ③Hold down #∋ for over a second on Stand-by display.

- 🖱 and 矕 appear on Stand-by display.
- · Manner mode is released automatically after the set duration elapses.

### Setting Original manner mode



# Select "Original manner" and press i [Edit].

# Press one of $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Volume	<ul> <li>Sets Volume.</li> <li>①Select an item.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P119 "Changing tone volume of FOMA terminal" Step 2 to 3</li> <li>②Press </li> <li>[Complete].</li> </ul>
Vibrator	<ul> <li>Sets Vibrator.</li> <li>①Select an item.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P119 "Notifying incoming calls etc. with Vibration" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>②Press (i) [Complete].</li> </ul>
Mic sensitivity	<ul> <li>Sets Mic sensitivity. When it is set to High, small voices can be heard clearly to the other party.</li> <li>(1) Press one of (1) to (3).</li> <li>Mic sensitivity is set to Medium when Manner mode is not set.</li> </ul>
Blackout alarm	Sets whether to ring Alarm tones when the battery is almost run out. (1) Press (1) "ON" or (2)" "OFF".

Stand-by display



#### Stand-by display

# **Changing Stand-by display**

You can change the image on Stand-by display to an image/i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites, or to a still image/movie shot with FOMA terminal. Alternatively, monthly calendar or clock etc. can be set as Stand-by display.

Images preinstalled by default →P363

<wallpaper></wallpaper>	
Displaying still ima	ge
	Default Body color "White & Black" : スプライン <spline> "Black &amp; Blue" : スクエア <square> "Pink &amp; White" : ファンシー <fancy></fancy></square></spline>
Displaying still image	
1 Press 💿 🕨 🕵	$\begin{array}{c} & & \\ & & \\ \hline \\ & & \\ \hline \\ & \\ & \\ \hline \\ & \\ \\ \\ & \\ \\ \\ & \\ \\ \\ & \\$
<b>2</b> Press 🖅 "M	y picture".
• Press 🖅 "OFF",	not to display. No further operation is needed.
3 Select a folder	r and press $ullet$ .
4 Select an imag	ge and press 🖲.
Image	<ul> <li>Press  [Play] to view the image.</li> <li>Set the position and the size and press ), when the preview is displayed.</li> </ul>
SDL 😌 SIZE	<ul> <li>Setting position</li> <li>Press to set.</li> <li>Position of the image shifts by 1 dot each time the key is pressed.</li> <li>Each time the key is holding down for over a second, the position shifts by 10 dots.</li> </ul>
	Changing size

#### Changing size

• Resizing is not allowed if the size of image is equal to the size of the display.

#### 1 Press i [Size].

- - ①Scales the image to fit to vertical line of display.
  - ②Scales the image to fit to horizontal line of display.
  - ③Returns to the original image size.

#### **Displaying movie/i-motion**

- Movie/i-motion are played each time Stand-by display appears. After playing a movie/ i-motion, the first frame is displayed.
- The movie/i-motion does not play under Public mode (Drive mode).
- Some i-motion, such as Sound only i-motion (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer) cannot be set as Stand-by display.



# Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "i-motion".

 $\bullet$  Press  $\fbox{Press}$  "OFF", not to display. No further operation is needed.

# Select a folder and press •.

# Select a movie or i-motion, and press ullet.

• Press 
[Play] to confirm the image.

# F Press *I* <sup>™</sup> "Large" or *P*<sup>™</sup> "Normal".

• Adjust Volume and press (), when Volume adjustment screen appears.

### Information

Frame/stamp cannot be set as Wallpaper.

- Phone To (AV phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions is not available from i-motion set as Stand-by display.
- •The display of Animation GIF/Flash movie downloaded from i-mode sites and set as Stand-by display may be different from that on i-mode sites.

If the image set as Stand-by display is deleted, the default image is displayed.

### <Clock/Calendar>

# Setting Clock or Calendar

Default Digital clock (S)

You can display Clock/Calendar/Schedule for today on Wallpaper on Stand-by display.



# Set Clock or Calendar.

### Setting Digital clock

- 1 Press 1 " "Digital clock".
- - Press 🚱 to adjust the position.
- ③Press ●.

### Setting Analog clock

- 1 Press  $\fbox{Press}$  "Analog clock".
- (2) Press I "Analog clock (S)" or  $\overline{P^{*}}$  "Analog clock (L)".
  - When selecting I analog clock (S)", you can adjust the position to display the clock by pressing 🚱.

3 Press ().

Stand-by display

### Setting World clock

Setting Calendar

1)Press  $\mathcal{I}_{\underline{s}}$  "Calendar".

2 Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

1-month calendar	Displays a calendar of the present month. • Press 🚯 to adjust the position.
1-month calendar (S)	Displays a calendar of the present month. • Press 🚯 to adjust the position.
2-month calendar	Displays calendars of the present and next months. • Press () to adjust the position.
3-month calendar	Displays calendars of the present/last/next months.
4-month calendar	Displays calendars of following 4 months including the present month.

#### 3 Press •.

#### Setting One-day schedule



LO:BOWEd Sepen BuddocoMo Taro's Birthday Mail:0:30 Submission of as Mail:3:00 Test of Japanese Bi/7:00 To hair salon V019:00 Dinner Maisecret base

One-day schedule (with background) One-day schedule (without background)

1 Not setting Clock/Calendar 1 Press **E**<sup>mo</sup> "OFF". Displays up to 7 items registered to Calendar, such as Birthday/ToDo/ Schedule/Image, following the priority preset, in addition to Date/the day of the week/Time.

About the priority →P320

1)Press **5** "One-day schedule".

• Press (i) [Switch] to display/hide the background behind the schedule.

2 Press •.

# Setting Call/receive display

	Default	Phone dial		(音声) <dialing (voice="" call)=""></dialing>
1		Phone incoming	:看信	(音声) <receiving (voice="" call)=""></receiving>
		Videophone dial	: 発信	(テレビ電話) <dialing (videophone="" call)=""></dialing>
		Videophone incoming	:着信	(テレビ電話) <receiving (videophone="" call)=""></receiving>
		Payphone/User unset/Not support incoming	: 着信	(番号表示なし) <receiving (id="" unsent)=""></receiving>

#### You can set images displayed when making/receiving voice/videophone calls.

• Sound only i-motion (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer) cannot be set as Receiving image.



### Press one of $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ to $T_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

# Press 🖅 "My picture" or 2<sup>-</sup>

- i-motion cannot be set as Dialing screen.
- Select "OFF" and press (), not to display an image. No further operation is needed.

# Select a folder, and press 💽.

# Select an image and press $oldsymbol{igstarrow}$ .

• Set the position and the size and press  $(\bullet)$ , when the preview is displayed.  $\rightarrow$  P125

#### Information

- Some i-motion may not be set as Receive image.
- When setting i-motion including video and sound as the image set for Receive display, the Ring tone is changed to the

i-motion automatically. However, when you set Video only i-motion as the image set for Receive display, Ring tone is not changed.

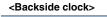
- When the i-motion with Sound only (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer) is set to Ring tone, if setting Flash movie as the image set for Receive display, Ring tone returns to the default.
- When several settings for images on receiving conflict, priority is set as follows.
  - $\textcircled{\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}}$  The image of the caller set in Phonebook basic information
  - 2 The image set in group settings in Phonebook
  - ③ The image set in Call/receive display (i-motion with image and sound may have the first priority.)

# Setting backside display

Information such as the name of the caller can be displayed on the backside display while FOMA terminal is folded. You can select the size of the clock to display.

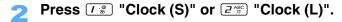
Default

Clock (S)



Setting clock on backside display





10:30	9/20

10:30 9/20 Clock (S)

Clock (L)

<Backside notify>

**⊟¶**íl

Displaying information on a caller of incoming call



The caller's name and phone number are displayed on the backside display when receiving a call.



• Press 2 "OFF", not to display.

#### Information

•The name of the caller registered in Phonebook with Secret setting "ON" is not displayed, except under Secret mode.

#### <Backside display setting>

Setting display duration of backside display				
1 2	Settings	Default       OFF as time's passed         2 ^m       5 m²         uous displaying" or 2 m²       "OFF as time's		
	Continuous displaying	Backside display is always active.		
	OFF as time's passed	Turns off backside display in approximately 60 seconds.		
Backlight				
Setting Display/Key light				

You can set to turn on the light of the display and keypad when operating or unfolding FOMA terminal. The duration of lighting can be specified.

Default

Screen/Key light: ON



Lighting time: 10s

#### Setting Lighting time

#### **(1)** Press $\mathbb{Z}^{\infty}$ "Lighting time" $\triangleright$ enter the duration and press $\bigcirc$ .

• The duration can be set between 1 and 60 seconds.

## 

• Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### <Continuous lighting>

### Setting screen to always light up

Default Videophone: ON All others: OFF

The screen always lights up while videophone calls, connecting i-mode, etc. regardless of lighting time setting.



### Press one of $I_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ to $5_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ .

Charger connected	Lighted up continuously while connecting AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) even after the preset duration in Power saver elapsed.
Videophone	Lighted up continuously during videophone calls.
i-mode	Lighted up continuously while displaying i-mode sites/Screen memo/ Channel list.
Mail	Lighted up continuously while displaying Mail screen/Deco-mail preview screen/Chat mail screen.
i-αppli	Lighted up continuously while activating i- $\alpha$ ppli.

### 

• Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>Agc</sup> "OFF", not to light up continuously.

#### <Power saver>

Setting duration until screen turns off

 Default
 30 sec

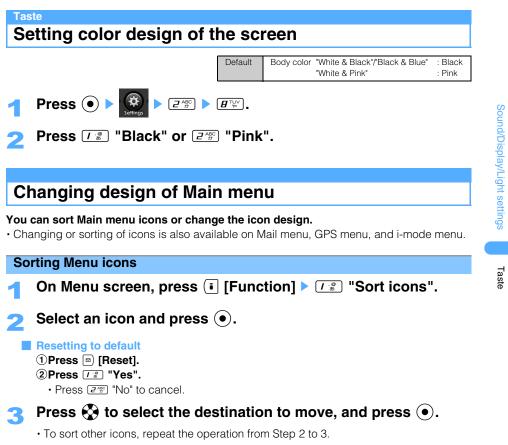
 Screen turns off after the specified duration has elapsed.



#### Information

Screen turns off when the preset duration in Power saver has elapsed, even within the time set in Display time.

Press any key to turn on the Display light before dialing, when it has been turned off.





Default Body color "White & Black"/"Black & Blue" : サークル <Circle> "White & Pink" : パネル <Panel>

"Set of icons" changes all icons on Menu screens, and "Single icon" changes icons individually.

- You can create Set of icons or Single icon with the function of Creating Menu icon ( $\rightarrow$ P277), or download them from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" (→P183).
- Set of icons preinstalled by default →P363

# On Menu screen, press (i) [Function] > 2<sup>ABC</sup> > 1<sup>BC</sup> "Change menu icon".

Menu	icon		1/1
1	サークル(	メインン	( 193
E	サークル	メールン	〈翳
	サークル		
<b>∃</b> ⊞1	サークル	8 <b>モー</b> ト	「闇」
	パネル (メ		
回開	パネル (メ	ールメニ	- 疁
コ田	パネル (GP	Sメニュ	疁
日田	パネル (音	モードン	(蘭)
		26	OKB
Diav	Set	≜ Eune	tinn

- Resetting to default ①Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>-</sup><sup>s</sup><sup>2</sup> "Release menu icon" ▶ <sup>[</sup>/<sup>s</sup>] "Yes". • Press Z MC "No" to cancel.
- Select a set of icons, and press  $(\bullet) \triangleright (\bullet)$ .
  - Press 
     Play] to confirm the icon.
  - Press (i) [Function] > []: "File property", to display icon information.

#### Setting Single icon

#### (1) Select a set of icons, and press $(\bullet)$ > select an icon, and press $(\bullet)$ .

• Press [1] "Yes", to edit the icon in a row. Press [21] "No" to end.

#### Information

Reset the icon setting to default before changing Set of icons, if you have sorted icons.

#### **Displaying Menu definition**

Default Define menu ON

Menu definition appears in approximately 3 seconds after selecting each menu. Setting applies to all menu screens.

# On Menu screen, press (i) [Function] > [] " Define menu ON".

• Press **I**" "Define menu OFF", not to display.

Sound/Display/Light settings

# LED

Setting the lamp color of incoming calls

Default Pattern: Phone/Videophone/Payphone/User unset/Not support incoming, Receive mail/chat mail/messageR/F: Melody link Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Loc. prov/ permit, Loc. provide/check: Pattern 1 Color: All Color 7

You can set the color and the pattern to blink LED when receiving calls/mails or notifying/confirming location information.





• Description of each item →P116, 117

# **Press one of** $I^{\circ}$ to $I^{\circ}$ .

LED

Melody link	<ul> <li>Blinks following the pattern registered to the melody set as Ring tone.</li> <li>Melody link may not be available for some melodies.</li> <li>Melody link cannot be selected in Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify, Loc. prov/permit, Loc. provide/check.</li> </ul>	
Pattern 1 to 3	Blinks following the preinstalled patterns in FOMA terminal.	
OFF	<ul> <li>Does not blink. No further operation is needed.</li> <li>OFF cannot be selected in Periodic notify, Loc. prov/permit and Loc. provide/check.</li> </ul>	

## Select a color and press ullet.

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color every 1 second.
- You can confirm the color with LED while selecting the item.

#### Setting Notice LED

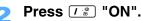
Default OFF

Incoming call lamp blinks approximately every 4 seconds and notifies Missed calls, Receiving mails, Alarm, etc.

When several notifications exist, the latest information is notified.

• Notification of the presence of mails in the i-mode Center has the first priority.





• Press @^m "OFF", not to set. No further operation is needed.

# Press one of $I_{\frac{2}{5}}$ to $I_{\frac{3}{5}}$ .

Missed calls	Notifies Missed calls, Voice mail, and Record message.
Mail	Notifies the reception of i-mode mails, SMS, MessageR/F, or mails being held in the Center.
Alarm	Notifies when you do not respond to Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/ Alarm, Periodic notify, etc. failed.
i-appli	Notifies when i-appli auto start failed.
Software	Notifies the result of Software update etc.

# Select a color and press $\odot$ .

- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color in every blink.
- · You can confirm the color with Incoming call lamp while selecting the item.
- Select "OFF" and press (), not to illuminate Incoming call lamp.

# Press 间 [Save].

#### Information

Missed calls and received mails are notified according to the following priority.

- 1 The setting for individual settings in Phonebook
- ② The setting for group settings in Phonebook
- ③ The setting for Notice LED

### Setting Call illumination

Default OFF

You can set lamp to blink during calls.





### Press / 😨 "ON".

• Press Press "OFF", not to set. No further operation is needed.



- Color can be selected from color 1 to 11, and ALL combined.
- "ALL combined" changes the color every 1 second.
- · You can confirm the color with Incoming call lamp while selecting the item.

ED

134

Font size		
Changing Font size		
	Default	All : Standard

You can change the font size for Character input, Phone number input, or screens to view phonebook list/i-mode/mails/messages.





Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

#### Changing Font size for all items

#### 1 Press 🖻 [Set All].

• Press 🖻 [Switch] to confirm the font size when dialing a phone number.

- (2) Press one of  $I_{\mathbb{B}}^{\mathbb{A}}$  to  $I_{\mathbb{B}}^{\mathbb{A}}$ .
- 3 Press 1 \*\* "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

# **Press one of** $I_{\overline{a}}$ to $\exists J_{\overline{c}}$ .

· <Example> Mail screen



Small : 16 dots

Inbox To	1/4
©12:12 9/20/2006 ©12:00 Jaro ©Congratulation	
Looking forward to g a meal together. e way, I wonder if going to be sunny t ow. I don't want to my new outfits wet,	By th it's comorr

Ť.

Standard : 20 dots

InboxTM 1/4 12:12 9/20/2006 EDoCoMo Taro EDocomortulation Looking forward to h aving a meal togethe r. By the way, I won der if it's going to

Large : 24 dots

\_\_\_\_\_

# Safety settings

### Security code

Security codes for FOMA terminal
Changing terminal security code < Change security code> 140
Setting PIN code
Unlocking PIN code
Restricting mobile phone operations and functions
Various Lock functions142
Preventing unauthorized use
Restricting Call and Transmission functions <self mode=""> 144</self>
Restricting display of personal information <pim lock=""> 145</pim>
Restricting Keypad dial
Preventing inadvertent Side key operation
Setting display of Redial or Received calls <view dialed="" received=""> 148</view>
Restricting dialing/receiving calls and sending/receiving mails
Displaying information set as Secret
Receiving only calls from specified phone numbers
<accept calls="" from="" number="" phone="" specified=""> 148</accept>
Rejecting only calls from specified phone numbers
<reject calls="" from="" number="" phone="" specified=""> 149</reject>
Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification
Muting Ring tone of calls from unregistered phone number
<set mute="" ring="" time=""> 151</set>
Rejecting calls from unregistered phone numbers
Other "Safety settings"
Other "Safety settings"153

# Security codes for FOMA terminal

Security code is required to use some of the convenient functions in FOMA terminal. There are several types of security codes, such as the terminal security code for using some terminal functions, the Network security code for network services, and i-mode password. Use these codes properly for each usage, to make the most of FOMA terminal.

#### Notes on using security codes

- When setting security codes, avoid using numbers such as "birthday", "a part of your phone number", "house number or room number", "1111", "1234", since those numbers are easily guessed by others. Be sure to keep a separate note of the set security codes for reminder.
- Never reveal your security codes to others. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss caused by others who gained your security codes.
- · DoCoMo will never contact you to ask your security codes.
- If you forget your security codes, visit DoCoMo shop with your official identification (driver's license etc.), FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card).

Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for details.

#### **Terminal security code**

Default terminal security code is set to "0000". Change the code to a number you like. →P140

- Note that, if you forget the terminal security code, visit DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal\*, currently used UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).
  - \* If the mobile phone terminal has not been purchased by the subscriber, DoCoMo shop may not accept your request.

#### Network security code

The network security code is required when using  $\[mm] \forall \exists \exists \exists \forall \forall \land b < b \]$  occome e-site> for various applications or using other network services. The 4-digit code you set when subscribing can be changed by yourself.

Users who have "My DoCoMo ID/Password" of "My DoCoMo", the general support site for PC, can make inquiries to change the network security code from PC. From i-mode, you can change the code on "各種手続き <Various applications>" in "ドコモeサイト <DoCoMo e-site>" by yourself.

\* Refer to the back of this manual for information about "My DoCoMo" or "DoCoMo e-site".

#### i-mode password

The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required for such transactions as registering/deleting of sites in My Menu, applying to/canceling message services or charged i-mode services. In addition, other passwords may be required by individual IP (information service provider).

Default i-mode password is set to "0000". Change the password to a number you like.

To change the password through i-mode, select i-Menu  $\rightarrow$  ENGLISH  $\rightarrow \underbrace{\Psi_{\underline{m}}}^{\text{res}}$  "Options"  $\rightarrow \underbrace{\mathbb{Z}^{\text{res}}}^{\text{res}}$  "Change i-mode Password".

#### PIN1 code/PIN2 code

Two security codes of PIN1 code and PIN2 code are set for the security of UIM (FOMA card). Default security codes are set to "0000". Change the code to a number you like. →P140 PIN1 code is a 4 to 8-digit number for preventing malicious use by others, which is required to be entered every time when inserting UIM (FOMA card) or powering on FOMA terminal. You can make/receive calls or operate the terminal only after entering PIN1 code.

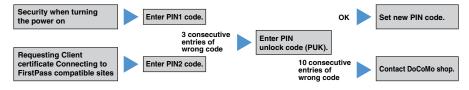
PIN2 code is a security code (4 to 8-digit) used when using/requesting the issue of Client certificate or resetting Total calls cost.

• When inserting currently used UIM (FOMA card) to newly purchased FOMA terminal, use the previous PIN1/PIN2 code.

### PIN unlock code (PUK)

PUK is an 8-digit code to release PIN1/PIN2 code being completely locked. You cannot change PUK by yourself.

• UIM (FOMA card) is locked, after 10 consecutive entries of wrong PUK.



### Authentication password

This password is required when sending/receiving all items through Infrared communication (4-digit).

Sender and receiver must enter the same password for the Infrared communication before starting communication.

#### Information

- •To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code/PIN1 code/PIN2 code/i-mode password after subscription. Be sure to keep a separate note of the set security codes for reminder.
- Avoid using numbers to be guessed easily, such as the last 4 digits of the phone number etc., and do not let others know your password.

# Changing terminal security code

#### Default 0000

Default

OFF

### Change the terminal security code to use FOMA terminal safely.

Enter 4 to 8-digit number as the terminal security code.





• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

## Enter the current terminal security code and press ullet.

• The entered numbers are masked with "X".

Enter a new terminal security code and press ullet.

# **5** Enter the same terminal security code as in Step 4, and press $oldsymbol{igstarrow}$ .

The terminal security code is changed.

#### Information

Some functions of FOMA terminal may require the terminal security code for using or setting. Note that the terminal security code is different from the network security code or i-mode password.

#### UIM (FOMA card)

# **Setting PIN code**

For preventing unauthorized use, you can set FOMA terminal to be disabled unless PIN1 code is entered when powering FOMA terminal on.

Enter a 4 to 8-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code.

#### <Enter PIN1 code>

Setting to enter PIN1 code when powering on





- **Press I** "Enter PIN1 code".
- 📶 Press 1 😨 "ON".
  - Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "OFF" not to set.

# Enter PIN1 code and press (•).

• The entered numbers are masked with "X".

#### Change PIN1/PIN2 code

Default PIN1 code: 0000 PIN2 code: 0000

- PIN1 code cannot be changed unless "Enter PIN1 code" is set to "ON".
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- Rress *[1*<sup>®</sup>] "Change PIN1 code" or *⊇*<sup>^</sup> "Change PIN2 code".
- Enter the current PIN1 (or PIN2) code, and press •.

• The entered numbers are masked with "X".

- Enter a new PIN1 (or PIN2) code and press 
  .
- S Enter the same PIN1 (or PIN2) code as in Step 5 and press ullet.

The PIN1 (or PIN2) code is changed.

#### Information

PIN1 code, PIN2 code and the setting in "Enter PIN1 code" are saved in UIM (FOMA card). When inserting currently used UIM (FOMA card) to newly purchased FOMA terminal, the current settings are effective.

# **Unlocking PIN code**

FOMA terminal automatically locks PIN1/PIN2 code, if wrong codes are entered 3 times consecutively. When PIN1/PIN2 code is locked, unlock the code and set a new PIN1/PIN2 code.

- If you forget the PUK or if PIN1/PIN2 code is completely locked, visit sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop with your UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).
- 1 When "Enter PUK" appears on the screen, enter the 8-digit PIN unlock code (PUK) and press ●.

Enter a new PIN1 (or PIN2) code and press (•).

• The entered numbers are masked with "X".

**3** Enter the same PIN1 (or PIN2) code as in Step 2 and press •.

The PIN lock is released and the new PIN1 (or PIN2) code is set.

#### Information

Making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails are available even when PIN2 code is locked.
 If wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, PIN1/PIN2 code is completely locked. If PIN1/PIN2 code is completely locked, visit sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal, locked UIM (FOMA card) and an ID to identify the subscriber (ex. driver's license).

# Various Lock functions

Use lock functions to prevent other people from viewing/using data in your FOMA terminal. The following lock functions are available.

Types of lock function	Description	Page
Lock all	Sets to prohibit unauthorized use. All functions except for turning the power on/off and making the emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) cannot be used.	P142
self mode	Disables making/receiving calls, sending/receiving mails, and using communication functions.	P144
PIM lock	Disables displaying/editing personal information, such as Phonebook or Schedule.	P145
Keypad dial lock	Disables dialing calls by pressing keys.	P146
Side key operation Valid/Invalid	Sets to invalidate the side key operation when FOMA terminal is folded, to prevent inadvertent operations.	P147
Secret mode	Displays Phonebook entry from the phone number of the entry with Secret setting and Received calls. The name registered in Phonebook is not displayed except under Secret mode. Only the phone number is displayed.	P148

#### Information

Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can be made even when the terminal is locked by any function.

#### Lock all

# Preventing unauthorized use

Default OFF

#### You can set FOMA terminal unable to be operated.

• Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can be made and turning FOMA terminal on/off is available. (Enter the emergency call number on the terminal security code entry screen and press ().)







### Enter the terminal security code and press $\odot$ .



Lock all is set to ON, and "Lock all" and III appears on Standby display.

# Safety settings

# Lock al

#### Operations under Lock all

Operation restrictions are as follows.

- When setting a still image etc. as Stand-by, Stand-by display setting returns to default. By releasing Lock all, the set Stand-by display returns.
- Incoming calls are rejected and Ring tone does not sound.
- · i-mode mails, SMS, and MessageR/F can be received but Ring tones for receiving mails or messages do not sound.
- · Alarm is not activated even when the set time comes.
- Notify icon does not appear. By releasing Lock all, Notify icons for receiving mails/calls/ messages or Alarm, etc. appear.

#### <Remote lock all>

#### Setting Remote lock all

OFF Default

Lock all can be set when dialing from a set phone number or a payphone, within a specified period (monitoring duration).



### Press **I** ON".

• Press 2<sup>-</sup> "OFF" to release.



- Enter the terminal security code and press  $(\bullet)$ .
  - · If you select "OFF" in Step 2, no further operation is needed.



#### Set each item. **^**

#### Setting Monitoring duration

#### 1 Press I " Monitor for :".

(2) Enter the duration, and press  $(\bullet)$ .

• The duration can be set from 1 to 10 minutes.

#### Setting number of calls

- ① Press <sup>2</sup><sup>4</sup>/<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> "No. of incomings :".
- 2 Enter a number and press (•).
  - The number can be set from 3 to 10 times.

#### Entering Phone number

• Up to 3 entries can be registered.

- 1 Press **I** "Permitted no. :".
- **2**Select "None stored" and press (•).

- ③Enter a phone number and press ●.
  ④Press Ⅰ [Complete].
- Setting remote access from payphones
  - 1)Press (4) are "Payphone :".
  - 2 Press 1: "ON".
    - Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sup>□</sup> "OFF", not to set.

### S Press 🗉 [Complete].

#### Activating Lock all by remote access

- Make a call to the FOMA terminal, from a specified phone number or a payphone.
- Disconnect the call after confirming the phone ringing.
  - Repeat Step 1 to 2 specified times within a specified time period.
- 2 Disconnect the call after confirming the answer message.

Lock all is set.

#### **Releasing Lock all**

### Enter the terminal security code on Stand-by display and press ullet.

#### Information

FOMA terminal is powered off when failed to release Lock all 5 consecutive times. Turn the power on again and enter the correct terminal security code.

Lock all is not released by turning the power off.

Number of incoming calls does not start counting under following conditions, even making a call from the preset phone number.

- Making a call without Caller ID
- Under self mode
- When FOMA terminal answers automatically with Record message
- When Voice mail service and Call forwarding service are activated, and Ringing time is set to 0 second
- When making calls from the multiple permitted numbers, only the first answered call from the permitted number is counted as Number of incomings.

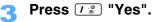
#### self mode

# **Restricting Call and Transmission functions**

Default OFF

Communication functions, such as making/receiving calls, sending/receiving mails, i-mode, or Infrared communication, can be set to be disabled.







Set self mode on, and me appears on Stand-by display.

- "圏外 <Out of service area>" or Ⅲ does not appear.
- Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Voice mail service and Call forwarding service are available under self mode.
 When making emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) under self mode, self mode is released.

#### **PIM lock**

## Restricting display of personal information

Default OFF

# You can set your personal information such as Phonebook, Schedule, etc. not to be displayed, for protecting privacy.

- "Phonebook" setting is unavailable when Reject calls from unregistered numbers is set to "ON".
- The following items can be set. The setting is available alone or by combination.

Item	Functions unavailable	Notification not displayed *	
Multimedia	Data box, Original data, Camera, Voice recorder, Record in FM radio, Music Player	_	
Phonebook	Phonebook, Direct Call	All Direct Call notices are displayed as normal notices. (The notification of Direct Call received before setting PIM lock is not displayed.)	
Redial/Sent adrs	Redial, Sent addresses	-	
Received calls/adrs	Received calls, Received addresses	Missed calls	
Mail	Mail, Sent addresses, Received addresses	New mail	
i-mode	i-mode, i-channel, Software update, Update pattern definitions	MessageR/F, Complete update (Check update)	
i-appli	i-appli	Auto start failed	
GPS	GPS (except Location provide)	Missed location	
Profile	Profile	_	
Calendar	Calendar, Schedule, ToDo	Schedule alarm, ToDo alarm	
Text memo/Dial memo	Text memo, Dial memo	_	
Rec. msg/Voice memo	Record message, Voice memo	Record message	
Alarm	Alarm	Alarm	

\*Each of the notices is displayed when PIM lock is released.



• Press (2<sup>ABC</sup>) "OFF" to release.

Press 🖊 🕄 "ON".

### Enter the terminal security code and press $\odot$ .

• If you select "OFF" in Step 2, no further operation is needed.

PIM lock 1,	/2
Multimedia	
Phonebook	
□Redial/Sent adrs	
Received calls/adrs	
Mail	
🗌 🖯 mode	
🗌 🛙 🕻 🎗 pp l i	
GPS	
Profile	
Select 🤤	

- **4** Select an item and press  $\odot$ .
  - Press 

    to release.

### Press (i) [Complete].

PIM lock is set and 🛺 appears on Stand-by display.

#### When PIM lock is ON

- When "Multimedia" is set while a still image etc. is set as Stand-by, Stand-by display setting returns to default. By releasing Multimedia, the set Stand-by display returns.
- When "Phonebook" is set, the registered names are not displayed in Redial, Received calls, Received/Sent addresses, etc.
- When "Multimedia" and "Phonebook" are set, images are not displayed in Redial, Received calls, and Received/Sent addresses.
- When "Multimedia" is set, file names and titles are displayed as "\*\*\*.
- When "Redial/Sent addresses" is set, Redial/Sent addresses are deleted. When "Received calls/Received addresses" is set, Received calls/addresses are deleted. When "Mail" is set, Received/Sent addresses are deleted. The histories after PIM lock is set to ON are saved.
- When "Calendar" is set, monthly schedule screen of Calendar can be displayed.

#### Information

Release Lock all and then release PIM lock, when both lock functions are set.

#### Keypad dial lock

### **Restricting Keypad dial**

Default OFF

#### You can set making calls with Keypad dialing unavailable.

• Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) can be made.



Side key operation Valid/Invalic

### Press / Press "ON".

• Press 2<sup>-</sup> "OFF" to release.



### Enter the terminal security code and press $(\bullet)$ .

Keypad dial is locked and  $\cancel{1}$  appears on Stand-by display. <u>e</u>`11 IJ 10:30 Wed Sep 20

#### When Keypad dial lock is ON

- Calls cannot be made from the following status.
  - Dial input - Received calls - Profile - Bar code reader
  - i-αppli
- Sent/received mails i-mode
- Screen memo

- Notify icon
- Character reader

  - Phonebook data in miniSD memory card
- Following functions are unavailable.
  - Store new entry/Edit/Delete in FOMA terminal phonebook/UIM (FOMA card) phonebook
  - Phone To/AV Phone To/Mail To function (Phone To from Phonebook is available)
  - Copy of Phonebook data using UIM (FOMA card) or miniSD memory card
  - Sending/receiving of Phonebook data using Infrared communication
  - Network service with dial key entry
- · Redial and Received calls before setting Keypad dial lock are deleted. However, Redial and Received calls after setting Keypad dial lock are saved.
- · Sending i-mode mail or SMS may be restricted.

#### Side key operation Valid/Invalid

# Preventing inadvertent Side key operation

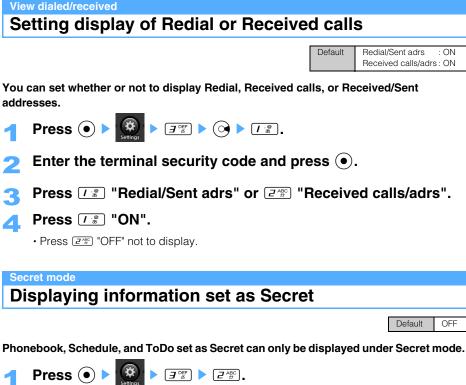
Side key operation while FOMA terminal is folded can be set to be invalid, in order to prevent inadvertent operation in your bag, etc.



### Hold down $(\bullet)$ for over a second on Stand-by display.

Side key operation is set to be invalid and 🔒 appears on Stand-by display.

Setting Side key operation to valid (1) Hold down ( $\bullet$ ) for over a second on Stand-by display.





### Press 🖅 📽 "ON".

• Press Press OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

### **3** Enter the terminal security code and press $oldsymbol{igstarrow}$ .

Secret mode is set to ON, and  $\P$  appears on the screen.

#### Information

Secret mode is released when powering FOMA terminal off.

#### Accept calls from specified phone number

# Receiving only calls from specified phone numbers

# You can accept calls only from the specified phone numbers registered in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- This function is valid to calls from callers notifying Caller ID. It is recommended to set "CallerID request service" together with this function.
- It cannot be set together with Reject call from specified phone number.

#### Specifying phone number for Accept call

- Select a phone number to set Accept call, on Phonebook detail screen.
- 2 Press i [Function] ► 🐼 ► 🖅 "Accept/Reject call".
- **\mathbf{R}** Enter the terminal security code and press  $\mathbf{\Theta}$ .

### 👖 Press 🖅 🖀 "Accept call".

- Press  $\Im_{\underline{s}}^{\text{\tiny DEF}}$  "Not set" to release.
- Follow the procedures of the next section to complete setting "Accept calls from specified phone number" to use the function.

#### Setting to receive only calls from specified phone numbers

Default OFF



### ${f >}~$ Enter the terminal security code and press ullet .

- **?** Press *I* and **B** are a second rest of the seco
- 🖊 Press 🖅 "ON Accept call".
  - Press 🖅 "OFF" to release.

#### Information

When Accept call is set, the phone number is displayed with 🛱 in Phonebook detail screen.

Calls from phone numbers, to which Accept call is not set, are saved as Rejected calls.

Making calls to the phone numbers not set to Accept call is available.

•i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.

•Call rejection setting for other phone numbers than "Registered no." is also available.

### Reject calls from specified phone number Rejecting only calls from specified phone numbers

# You can reject calls only from the specified phone numbers registered in FOMA terminal phonebook.

- This function is valid to calls from callers notifying Caller ID. It is recommended to set "CallerID request service" together with this function.
- It cannot be set together with Accept call from specified phonebook.

#### Specifying phone number for Reject call

- Select a phone number to set Reject call, on Phonebook detail screen.
- 2 Press i [Function] ▷ () ▷ I<sup>™</sup> Accept/Reject call".
- **3** Enter the terminal security code and press  $\bigcirc$ .

Safety settings



### Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "Reject call".

- Press 🗐 "Not set" to release.
- Follow the procedures of the next section to complete setting "Reject calls from specified phone number" to use the function.

#### Setting to reject only the calls from specified phone numbers

Default OFF



- Enter the terminal security code and press ullet.
- Press I "" Registered no."

### Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>∞</sup> "ON Reject call".

• Press 🖅 "OFF" to release.

#### Information

When Reject call is set, the phone number is displayed with I in Phonebook detail screen.

•Calls from the phone numbers set to Reject call are saved as Rejected calls.

Making calls to the phone numbers set to Reject call is available.

•i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.

Call rejection setting for other phone numbers than "Registered no." is also available.

#### Reject calls by reasons for User unset

# **Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification**

Default User unset : OFF Not support: OFF

F Payphone: OFF

# You can set Arrival act of receiving user unset calls according to the reasons for User unset.

• It is recommended to set "CallerID request service" together with this function.



### Enter the terminal security code and press ullet.

### **3** Press one of 🖅 to ५ आ

User unset	The caller has set to make calls without notifying Caller ID.
Payphone	The call is made from a payphone.
Not support	The call is made from a caller unable to send Caller ID; e.g. call received from overseas or from fixed-line phone via call forwarding services. (Note that Caller ID may be sent depending on the telecommunication career.)

### Press 🖅 🖉 "ON".

• Press ⊇ﷺ "OFF" not to set.

#### Information

Calls from a caller with a set reason for Reject call are saved as Rejected calls.

#### Set mute ring time

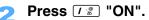
### Muting Ring tone of calls from unregistered phone number

Default OFF

# You can set the duration until Ring tone/Vibrator starts when receiving calls from an unregistered phone number or a caller with Caller ID unset.

- This function is effective to unwanted calls such as one-ring phone scam.
- This function is not available when Call rejection for "Unregistered no." is set to "ON".





- Press 2<sup>-App</sup> "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.
- 3
  - Enter the duration and press ().
    - The duration can be set between 1 and 99 seconds.

Setting not to display calls disconnected during mute seconds on Received calls

Default	ON
---------	----

You can set the calls not to be displayed in Received calls when the caller disconnects the call during the set mute seconds. Notify icon does not appear.



### Press ⊇≝ "OFF".

Calls without sound are not saved in Received calls.

Press I'' "ON" to display Calls without sound on Received calls.

#### Viewing Calls without sound

• Calls without sound cannot be displayed separately. When View calls w/o sound is set to "ON", calls without sound are included in Received calls.

# Press (i) [Function] on Received calls list screen ► (4 ) "Wiew calls w/o snd".

#### Information

- Mute ring time setting is valid even under Manner mode.
- Under PIM lock (Phonebook), this function is valid even for the phone numbers registered in Phonebook.
- This function also works when a call is received from the caller set to Secret, except under Secret mode.

### Rejecting calls from unregistered phone numbers

Default OFF

# You can set the terminal not to receive calls from phone numbers not registered in Phonebook.

- User unset calls are always rejected when Reject calls from unregistered numbers is set to "ON", regardless of the settings of Call rejection by reasons for User unset (User unset incoming, Payphone incoming, and Not support incoming).
- It is recommended to set "Caller ID Request Service" together with this function.
- This function cannot be set when "Set mute seconds" is set to "ON".



- Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- Press 2<sup>-</sup> "Unregistered no."

#### 

• Press ⊇≝ "OFF" to release.

#### Information

•i-mode mails and SMS can be received regardless of the settings of this function.

This function does not work when a call is received from a caller set to Secret, under Secret mode OFF.

# Other "Safety settings"

#### In addition to functions described in this chapter, you can use the following "Safety settings" with your FOMA terminal.

Purpose	Function/Service	Page
Rejecting "unwanted call" such as harassing phone calls or malicious cold-calls	Nuisance call barring service	P340
Rejecting calls without Caller ID notification	Caller ID request	P341
Receiving only specified mails	Receive option	P230
Changing E-mail address	Change Mail Address	
Checking E-mail address	Confirm Mail Address	
Restricting mail size to receive	Limit Mail Size	
Receiving/rejecting only mails sent from the specified domains	Spam mail prevention	
Receiving/rejecting only mails between i-mode terminals	(Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
Receiving/rejecting mails sent from the specified E-mail address		Refer to "i-mode
Rejecting SMS	Spam mail prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	User's Manual".
Rejecting unsolicited Ad mails	Reject 未承諾広告※ <unsolicited Ad mail&gt;</unsolicited 	
Rejecting the 200th and later i-mode mails sent from one i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
Disabling mail function temporarily	Suspend mail service	
Registering/checking safety information of users by i-mode in the event of disaster	i-mode Disaster Message Board service	
Performing safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service "FirstPass" (FirstPass compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P184
Updating software of FOMA terminal when needed	Software update	P387
Protecting FOMA terminal from data having potential risks of system failure	Scanning function	P392
Setting security on folders in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages and Data box	Set security	P225 P294

Other "Safety settings"

# Camera

Before using Camera	
Shooting still image	. <shoot image="" still=""> 163</shoot>
Shooting movie	<shoot movie=""> 166</shoot>
Changing settings for shooting	
Using Bar code reader	. <bar code="" reader=""> 172</bar>
Reading character	. <character reader=""> 174</character>

### **Before using Camera**

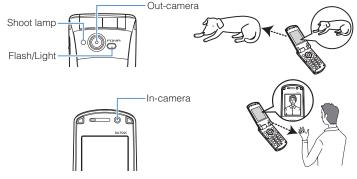
#### You can shoot still images or movie images with built-in Camera of FOMA terminal.

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. →P287
- A miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.

#### Features of Camera of FOMA terminal

#### **Out-camera and In-camera**

Out-camera is useful for shooting another person or scenery, and In-camera for shooting yourself.



#### Shooting still image or movie

- You can enjoy displaying or playing shot still images/movies/recorded sounds on FOMA terminal. In addition, you can also send the data to other FOMA terminals or mobile phones of other providers through i-mode mails or Infrared communication, or to PC by using FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P214, 298, 378
- Shot still images or movies can be set to Phonebook or Stand-by display etc. →P97, 278, 283
- Location information positioned by FOMA terminal can be added to shot still images. →P171

#### Scanning bar code or characters

• Scanning bar code such as JAN code/QR code (Bar code reader) or characters (Character reader) is available with Camera.

#### Using camera

#### Adopting CCD camera for Out-camera, and CMOS camera for In-camera

- Camera equips the state-of-the-art technology, however, there may be some pixels and lines always displayed lighter or darker. And note that more noises, such as pixels/lines/black bar which are colored red/blue/green/white etc., may be seen, especially when images have been shot at places in the low light level.
- If you shoot or save images after leaving FOMA terminal in a hot place for a long time, quality of images may be degraded.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter, and correspondingly images as well, may be discolored.
- White striped line may be seen when high-intensity lights are inserted while shooting with Out-camera, however, this phenomenon is not malfunction.

Camera

Before using Camera

#### Cautions for using camera

- Images shot with FOMA terminal camera may differ from actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions. Note that subjects may be partly distorted with wide-angle lens.
- Also note that shooting in extremely dark places may cause more noises, such as pixels/ lines/black bar which are colored red/blue/green/white etc., on images.
- If FOMA terminal moved with jiggling hands while shooting, shot images may be blurred. Shoot with your hands gripping FOMA terminal tightly, or use Auto timer function placed on stable places. Images may easily be blurred, especially at places without enough light level, such as indoor spaces. Also be aware that images are blurred when subjects move.
- You cannot mute the shutter sound even under Manner mode/Public mode (Drive mode), or when Flatplug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) is connected. Shutter sound volume is fixed.
- Fingerprints or skin oil on the lens cause difficulty in focusing. Clean the lens with soft fabric before shooting images.
- · Be sure not to place fingers, hair or straps on the lens when shooting.
- FOMA terminal contains flash light\*. Do not flash in front of people's eyes. It may cause impaired eyesight.
  - \* Flash is equipped to supplement shooting in dim places, however, the light intensity is not as high as strobe light of general cameras.
- Do not point Flash/Light to people's eyes when using. In addition, do not see the light directly when the light is on. It may cause impaired eyesight.
- When shooting images under the fluorescent lighting condition, the screen may flicker or display black-streaked patterns by not due to malfunction, but fluorescent flicker (subtle blink imperceptible to the human eye).
- Do not cover Microphone with your hand or finger while shooting movies. Note that the sound quality of microphone may be degraded according to the sound volume or surrounding environment of shooting.

#### Copyrights and portrait rights

Being prohibited with the copyright law, the data shot/recorded by FOMA terminal cannot be reproduced/changed/edited without any permission of right holders, except for personal use. Be aware that some cases of personal use may be prohibited as well.

Using/editing personal portraits or names without any permission may also invade portrait rights.

# Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when shooting and sending images with camera-equipped mobile phones.

#### Shooting still image

Shoots still image up to the SXGA size with FOMA terminal built-in camera. Shot still images are saved in JPEG format.

Following operations are available in shooting still images.

- Setting Image size/quality →P168
   Continuous mode →P164
- Shooting with one of 5 settings according to shooting environment and subject (Scene select) →P169
- Shooting with frame (Shoot with frame)  $\rightarrow$  P165
- Close-up shooting →P169
- Shooting with Auto timer  ${\rightarrow}\mathsf{P169}$
- Inserting location information  $\rightarrow$  P171
- Changing Shutter sound →P171
- Saving images in miniSD memory card →P171
- Shooting with special effect added →P170
- Shooting with date stamp inserted  $\rightarrow$ P171
- Adjusting white balance →P170
- Auto save of shot image  $\rightarrow$  P170

- Reducing flicker of screen →P171
- Shooting with Light/Flash →P168

• Zoom →P167

Adjusting brightness →P168

#### Image size/quality of still image (estimates)

Image size	Camera		Image quality	
(horizontal $ imes$ vertical)	Camera	Normal	Fine	Super fine
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	In-camera	Approx. 9 KB	Approx. 10 KB	Approx. 20 KB
	Out-camera	Applox. 5 RB		Approx. 20 NB
QCIF (176×144)	In-camera	Approx. 9 KB	Approx. 10 KB	Approx. 20 KB
	Out-camera	Applox. 5 RB		Approx. 20 NB
Stand-by (240×320)	In-camera	Approx. 20 KB	Approx. 30 KB	Approx. 50 KB
	Out-camera	Approx. 20 NB	Applox. 30 NB	Арргох. 50 КВ
CIF (288×352)	In-camera	Approx. 20 KB	Approx. 30 KB	Approx. 50 KB
CIF (352×288)	Out-camera	Approx. 20 NB	Applox. 30 NB	Арргох. 30 КВ
VGA (480×640)	Out-camera	Approx. 50 KB	Approx. 100 KB	Approx. 150 KB
XGA (768×1024)	Out-camera	Approx. 100 KB	Approx. 150 KB	Approx. 250 KB
SXGA (960×1280)	Out-camera	Approx. 150 KB	Approx. 200 KB	Approx. 300 KB

Still image size/quality available in SA702i are as follows.

#### Number of still image to save (estimates)

- Up to 1,024 still images can be saved in SA702i. However, the maximum number may differ according to settings in image size/quality, data quantity already saved, etc.
- The number of images to save is rough estimates.

Image size	Image quality	FOMA terminal	miniSD m		emory card	
(horizontal $ imes$ vertical)	inage quanty	FOMA terminar	16 MB	32 MB		
	Normal	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 910 sheets	Approx. 1,900 sheets		
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Fine	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 910 sheets	Approx. 1,900 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 910 sheets	Approx. 1,900 sheets		
QCIF (176×144)	Fine	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 910 sheets	Approx. 1,900 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
Stand-by (240×320)	Fine	Approx. 850 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 510 sheets	Approx. 230 sheets	Approx. 470 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 1,024 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
CIF (288×352) CIF (352×288)	Fine	Approx. 850 sheets	Approx. 450 sheets	Approx. 950 sheets		
011 (002/200)	Super fine	Approx. 510 sheets	Approx. 230 sheets	Approx. 470 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 510 sheets	Approx. 230 sheets	Approx. 470 sheets		
VGA (480×640)	Fine	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 130 sheets	Approx. 270 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 170 sheets	Approx. 90 sheets	Approx. 190 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 130 sheets	Approx. 270 sheets		
XGA (768×1024)	Fine	Approx. 170 sheets	Approx. 90 sheets	Approx. 190 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 100 sheets	Approx. 60 sheets	Approx. 120 sheets		
	Normal	Approx. 170 sheets	Approx. 90 sheets	Approx. 190 sheets		
SXGA (960×1280)	Fine	Approx. 125 sheets	Approx. 70 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets		
	Super fine	Approx. 85 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 100 sheets		

#### Information

All still images are saved in DCF format when saving in miniSD memory card.

You can shoot in close-up mode, focusing on subjects in distance of approximately 7 cm.
 In this manual, "horizontal × vertical" is omitted in description of the image size.

#### **Shooting movie**

Shoots movies with FOMA terminal built-in camera. You can shoot or record Video only/Sound only movies as well.

Recorded movies are saved in MP4 format.

Following operations are available in shooting movies.

- Setting Image size/quality →P168
- Close-up shooting →P169

- Shooting with file size restriction  $\rightarrow$  P169
- Shooting only video or recording only sound →P166
- Shooting with special effect added  $\rightarrow$  P170 Shooting with Auto timer  $\rightarrow$  P169
- Setting of microphone sensitivity →P166
- $\cdot$  Changing Start/End tone for shooting  ${\rightarrow} \text{P171}$   $\cdot$  Auto save of shot image  ${\rightarrow} \text{P170}$
- Saving images in miniSD memory card  $\rightarrow$ P171
- Shooting with Light →P168
- Zoom →P167

• Reducing flicker of screen →P171

Adjusting white balance →P170

Adjusting brightness →P168

#### Image size/shooting mode in shooting movie

The details of movie available with SA702i are as follows.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Shooting mode	Video bit rate	Sound bit rate	Frame rate (per second)
	Normal	32 Kbps		7.5 frames
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Prefer motion spd	128 Kbps	12.2 Kbps	15 frames
	Prefer img quality	192 Kbps		10 frames
	Normal	32 Kbps		7.5 frames
QCIF (176×144)	Prefer motion spd	128 Kbps	12.2 Kbps	15 frames
	Prefer img quality	192 Kbps		10 frames

#### Duration of movie to save (estimates)

- Maximum duration of movie that can be saved in SA702i is approximately 24 minutes. However, the duration may differ according to the setting of Shooting mode, Shooting type, Restrict file size or the size of rest in the saving destination.
- The duration of movie to save is a rough estimate.

#### Duration of movie to save in SA702i (estimates)

Image size	Shooting		Restrict file size		
(horizontal × vertical)	mode	Shooting type	Attach i-mode msg (sec)	Atch large vol. msg (sec)	Unrestricted (min)
	Normal	Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 24
	Normai	Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 33
Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Prefer	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 7
000-Q011 (120/00)	motion spd	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 8
	Prefer img	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 6
	quality	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 6
		Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 24
	Normal	Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 33
		Sound only	Approx. 180	Approx. 310	Approx. 85
QCIF (176×144)	Prefer	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 7
	motion spd	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 8
	Prefer img	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 6
qu	quality	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 6

#### Duration of movie to save in miniSD memory card (estimates)

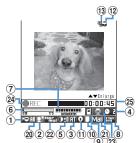
	Image size		Shooting	Restrict file size		
Capacity	(horizontal × vertical)	Shooting mode	type	Attach i-mode msg (sec)	Atch large vol. msg (sec)	Unrestricted (min)
		Normal	Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 42
			Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 60
	Sub-QCIF	Prefer	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 14
	(128×96)	motion spd	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 15
		Prefer img quality	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 11
		quality	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 12
16 MB		Nerreel	Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 42
		Normal	Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 60
			Sound only	Approx. 180	Approx. 310	Approx. 120
	$(176 \times 111)$	Prefer motion spd	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 14
		motion spu	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 15
		Prefer img quality	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 11
		quality	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 12
		Normal	Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 90
			Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 120
	Sub-QCIF (128×96)	Prefer motion spd	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 30
	(120/90)	motion spa	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 30
		Prefer img quality	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 20
		quanty	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 30
32 MB		Normal	Video and sound	Approx. 50	Approx. 80	Approx. 90
		Normal	Video only	Approx. 60	Approx. 90	Approx. 120
			Sound only	Approx. 180	Approx. 310	Approx. 120
	QCIF (176×144)	76×144) Prefer	Video and sound	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 30
	Prefer img quality	motion spu	Video only	Approx. 20	Approx. 30	Approx. 30
		0	Video and sound	Approx. 10	Approx. 20	Approx. 20
		quanty	Video only	Approx. 10	Approx. 30	Approx. 20

#### **Shooting screen**

Start camera and the screen turns to Still image shooting screen. Start movie camera and the screen turns to Movie shooting screen.



Still image shooting screen



Movie shooting screen

Function	Icon and name of the item	Description			
Common in still image/movie					
① Camera-mode	Shoot still image	Shoots still images.			
	Shoot movie	Shoots movies.			
	💽 Sepia	Makes an image tanned-yellowish like an old picture.			
<li>2 Special effect</li>	Monochrome	Makes an image black and white.			
	4 colors (Red etc.)	Adds colors on images (Red/Green/Blue/Purple).			
	AT Auto	Adjusts the color automatically.			
	X Fine weather	Appropriate for shooting in fine weather.			
(3) White balance	Cloudy weather	Appropriate for shooting in cloudy weather.			
	🧕 Lamp light	Appropriate for shooting in the lamp light.			
	Huor(neut.white)	Appropriate for shooting in neutral white fluorescent light.			
	💥 Fluor(daylight)	Appropriate for shooting in daylight fluorescent light.			
(4) Auto timer	● 2 sec, ● 5 5 sec ● 10 sec	Starts shooting automatically after a lapse of the preset time.			
<ol> <li>Brightness</li> </ol>	<b>0−5</b> to <b>0±1</b> to <b>0+5</b>	Sets brightness.			
6 Zoom	JW TD	Enlarges (zooms) the subject.			
<ol> <li>Memory bar</li> </ol>	Memory	Indicates the memory space (remaining space) of the saving destination.			
<ul><li>8 Select size</li></ul>	1382 , 1762 , 3702 , 3827 , 3828 , 3887 , 4888 , 7682 , 1688 ,	The setting is applied when shooting. Only Sub-QCIF or QCIF is available for shooting movie.			
	Auto save ON Save to: Data box	Saves shot still images/movies (sounds) automatically in Data box after shooting (recording).			
<ol> <li>Auto save</li> </ol>	Auto save ON Save to: miniSD	Saves shot still images/movies (sounds) automatically in miniSD memory card after shooting (recording).			
Save to:	Auto save OFF Save to: Data box	Saves shot still images/movies (sounds) in Data box after checking.			
	Auto save OFF Save to: miniSD	Saves shot still images/movies (sounds) in miniSD memory card after checking.			
(10) Restrict file	Restricted	Images cannot be sent/transferred from receiver's FOMA terminal.			
	Unrestricted	Images can be sent/transferred from receiver's FOMA terminal.			
1 Light	Light ON (black)	Light is on.			
U LIYIII	Unable to use (gray)	Light is not available due to extremely low temperature.			

Function	Icon and name of the item	Description	
-	Common in still image/movie		
12 Close-up	🚇 Close-up mode	Shoots a subject close in distance.	
	No display: Auto	Reduces flicker of screen automatically.	
<ol> <li>Reduce flicker</li> </ol>	50 Hz	Reduces flicker due to 50 Hz fluorescent lamp.	
	📆 60 Hz	Reduces flicker due to 60 Hz fluorescent lamp.	
	S	till image	
	5T Standard	Shoots images normally.	
	Portrait	Emphasizes the skin color and focuses on the person with background unfocused.	
① Scene select	📉 Landscape	Emphasizes outlines of subjects.	
	Night scene	Shoots subjects adjusting to the night scene.	
	Backlit	Makes the subject clear, when shooting images against light.	
(15) Continuous mode	12쿄 12-pc.auto 맨쿄 24-pc.auto	Shoots images continuously by pressing ④ once. Number of images to be shot varies depending on the image size.	
	12-pc.manual 24-pc.manual	Shoots images each time pressing $\odot$ continuously. Number of images to be shot varies depending on the image size.	
16 Flash	🚰 Flash AUTO	Flash is activated automatically when shooting the subject in dark place.	
	🗲 Flash ON	Flash is activated always when shooting.	
	Normal	Shoots normal images.	
<ol> <li>Image quality</li> </ol>	FINE Fine	Shoots images in high quality.	
	5-FINE Super fine	Shoots images in the highest quality.	
	Ime and date	Saves shot still images with time and date added.	
18 Date stamp	Date	Saves shot still images with date added.	
	• Time	Saves shot still images with time added.	
(19) Add location info	Add location info	Saves still images with location information added.	
		Movie	
	NU Video and sound	Shoots movies with video and sound.	
② Shooting type	Video only	Shoots Video only movies.	
	A Sound only	Records only sounds.	
	Mail Attach i-mode msg	Restricts the file size for shooting up to approx. 290 KB.	
<ol> <li>Restrict file size</li> </ol>	L-Mail Atch large vol. msg	Restricts the file size for shooting up to approx. 490 KB.	
	O Unrestricted	No restriction of file size is set. (Max. approx. 8 MB)	
	Normal	Shoot images as standard level in both image quality and motion smoothness.	
2 Shooting mode	Prefer motion spd	Priority is on motion smoothness over image quality.	
	Prefer img quality	Priority is on image quality over motion smoothness.	
(2) Mic sensitivity	For conference	Collects sound in wide angle and range.	
Sensitivity	For dictation	Collects sound in small range.	
Under shooting/ recording	●REC	Shooting movies or recording sounds.	
Bemained time for shooting	00:00:00	Displays the remained time available for shooting/ recording.	

#### Shoot still image

#### Shooting still image

#### You can shoot still images with FOMA terminal camera.

 You cannot mute the shutter sound even under Manner mode/Public mode (Drive mode), or when Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) is connected. Shutter sound volume is fixed.

# Hold down (a) (a) for over a second on Stand-by display.



Still image shooting screen

Still image shooting screen is displayed and Shoot lamp blinks in green.

- Press 🖻 [Cam Sw] to switch to In-camera.
- You can change the shooting settings. →P167

#### Displaying in Full-screen

 Full-screen is available when shooting size is Stand-by, VGA, XGA, SXGA or CIF (In-camera).

#### 1 Press 🔇 .

Icons and Soft keys on the screen disappear temporarily.

- Press it again, and the icons etc. appear on the screen.
- Full-screen is also available on Still image confirmation screen with the same operation.

#### Displaying in Large view

• Large view is available when shooting size is Sub-QCIF or QCIF.

#### 1 Press 🔇.

- Alternatively, press (i) [Function] > select "Large view"/"Normal view" and press (), to display in Large/Normal view.
- Press it again to return to Normal view.
- Large/Normal view is also available from Still image confirmation screen with the same operation.

# Direct the lens of camera to the subject and press •.



Still image confirmation screen

After a shutter sound, Shoot lamp lights up in red. Still image confirmation screen is displayed.

• The image is saved if "Auto save ON" has been set, then the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

#### Confirm the shot image.

• Press 🙉 to reshoot.

#### Sending image with mail

 You cannot compose mails if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".

#### 

Images are saved in Data box and Compose message screen with the image attached is displayed.

- If the images are bigger than Stand-by size, convert the image size to Stand-by size.
- Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6 Attaching still image with location information added →P215
- When "Auto save ON" has been set, saved images can be attached to mails from Data box. →P275

#### Adding Date stamp

• Still images with the size of VGA, XGA or SXGA cannot be added.

#### 

 Following procedure: →P171 "Adding Date stamp" Step ②

#### Inserting location information

#### ① Press **i** [Function] ► *⊇*<sup>\*</sup> "Add location info".

- Alternatively, press 🔌 to add location information.
- Following procedure: →P266 "Adding location information" Step 3

#### Setting image as Stand-by display etc.

 Image setting is not available if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".

#### ① Press **i** [Function] ▶ 🖅 "Image".

The images are saved in Data box.
Following procedure: →P278 "Setting image as Stand-by display etc." Step 2

#### Editing title

# Press i [Function] ► 5 to "Edit title". Enter the title and press ●.

• Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Displaying reversed image

- Still images in VGA, XGA and SXGA size cannot be displayed/saved as mirror image.
- (1) Press (i [Function] ► 🖅 "Mirror image view".
  - Press i [Function] > Find Image view", to return reversed image to normal.
  - Press (i) [Function] > (7 \*\*\*) "Save mirror image", to save reversed image. Frame-added images cannot be saved as mirror image.

#### 💶 Press 💽.

The image is saved.

 The image is saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" folder. The saving destination can be changed. →P171

#### Information

- ●Alternatively, press ► 💭 "Life tools" ► Ψ ... ► T:, to display Still image shooting screen.
- The shutter sound is selectable from 3 types, but you cannot set Melody etc. as the shutter sound. →P171
- Saving of images may take time depending on the image size and quality.
- If a call is received or Alarm (including Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm)/GPS positioning is activated, on Still image shooting screen or Still image confirmation screen, shooting is stopped and the data up to the point are kept. The previous screen returns after the call is disconnected, Alarm is stopped, or GPS positioning is ended. If Snooze is set in Alarm, the previous screen returns after releasing snooze mode.
- •You can keep shooting when receiving mails while shooting.
- Camera is terminated automatically if no operation is made for more than approximately 2 minutes on Still image shooting screen.

### <Continuous mode>

#### Shooting images continuously

Default OFF

You can shoot still images continuously. Continuous mode has two types: "Auto" to shoot the preset number of images continuously at regular intervals automatically, and "Manual" to shoot images one by one manually.

- The number of images for continuous shooting varies depending on the image size.
- Continuous shooting is not available to images in VGA, XGA or SXGA size.

#### Press i [Function] ▶ 5 <sup>∞</sup>

"Continuous mode", on Still image shooting screen.

#### Select an item and press •.

#### For image size of Sub-QCIF or QCIF

24-pc.auto(fast)	24 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.2 second intervals.
24-pc.auto (normal)	24 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.4 second intervals.
24-pc.manual	Shoots images one by one by pressing • each time, and still images are displayed as Index after shooting 24 images.
OFF	Does not shoot images continuously. No further operation is needed.

#### For image size of Stand-by or CIF

12-pc.auto	12 still images are shot continuously at approximately 0.4 second intervals.
12-pc.manual	Shoots images one by one by pressing • each time, and still images are displayed as Index after shooting 12 images.
OFF	Does not shoot images continuously. No further operation is needed.

#### 3 Press 💽.





(When stopped in the middle of shooting) Index screens

#### Continuous shooting (auto)

Continuous shooting starts. After shooting the selected number of images, shot images are displayed as Index.

- Press (a) [Stop] to cancel continuous shooting on the halfway. Images shot before the cancellation are displayed as Index.
- When "Auto save ON" has been set, all of the shot images are saved after shooting is finished, and the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

#### Continuous shooting (manual)

You can shoot up to the selected number of images.

- Press 
   Stop] to cancel in the middle of continuous shooting. Images shot before the cancellation are displayed as Index.
- When "Auto save ON" has been set, all of the shot images are saved after shooting is finished, and the screen returns to Still image shooting screen.

#### 4 Select a still image and press •.

#### Saving all images at once

1 Press 🖻 [Save All].

All images are saved and Still image shooting screen returns.

#### Saving Index image

- You can save the index image only when continuous shooting reaches to the maximum number of image to shoot.
- 2 Press 1: "Yes".
  - Index image is saved, and Index screen returns. • Press (ヱ゚゚゚゚゚゚゚) "No" to cancel

164

- The size of saved Index images are as follows.
  - Sub-QCIF : 256×288
  - OCIE · 352×432
  - Stand-by : 240×240
  - CIF (Out-camera) : 352×216
  - CIF (In-camera) : 288×264

#### Confirm the shot image and press (•).

The selected image is saved and Index screen returns.

Save all of the necessary images.

 Press (i) [Function] and you can add location information or edit the title etc. →P163

#### Sending image with mail

- You cannot compose mails if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".
- 1 Press 
  Figure (CompMsa).
- 2 Press I Save all or I Save selected only".

Images are saved in Data box and Compose message screen is displayed with the image attached.

- Press **J**<sup>\*\*</sup> "Cancel" to cancel.
- If the images are bigger than Stand-by size, convert the image size to Stand-by size.
- Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6 Attaching still image with location information added →P215

#### Setting image as Stand-by display etc.

- Image setting is not available if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".
- ① Press (i [Function] ▶ 2<sup>-</sup> "Image".
- 2 Press I T Save all or I Save selected only".
  - The images are saved in Data box.
  - Press **3** "Cancel" to cancel.
  - Following procedure: →P278 "Setting" image as Stand-by display etc." Step 2

#### Information

- Click" is applied to the shutter sound automatically in continuous shooting, regardless of the setting.
- Only the setting of Light ON/OFF is available while shooting continuously.
- "Night scene" is not selectable from Scene select in continuous shooting. "Night scene" setting is replaced by "Standard".
- After selecting and saving a still image from Index screen, the image is not saved again even executing "Save all".
- Shooting is suspended when FOMA terminal is folded while continuous shooting. Open FOMA terminal and images shot before folded are displayed as Index. Images are saved automatically when "Auto save ON" is set.
- If there is an incoming call while continuous shooting, shooting is suspended and Receiving screen is displayed.

Images shot before the incoming call are kept, and Index screen is displayed after the call is disconnected.

Continuous shooting keeps activated when receiving mails while shooting.

#### <Shoot with frame>

#### Shooting still image with frame

Default No frame

You can shoot images with frames preinstalled in FOMA terminal or downloaded.

- Images in the size of VGA, XGA or SXGA cannot be shot with frames.
- You cannot add the frames on the different size of image.
- Frames preinstalled by default →P363
- Press (i) [Function] > [Find the second seco with frame", on Still image shooting screen.

#### Select a frame and press (•).

The frame is displayed.

- Press 
   o
   to display the previous and the next frames.
- Press 
   [Release] to release. Still image shooting screen returns.

#### Displaying frames as Index for selection

Press (i) [4-for-1] to display 4 images each in a screen. Press (i) each time to switch between Index/List.





List

4-for-1



#### 12-for-1

#### Press (•). R

 Following procedure: →P163 "Shooting still image" Step 2 to 4

#### Information

- Frames alone cannot be sent through Infrared communication or as attachments to mails.
- You can download frames from the site "どこでも SANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>". →P183

Shoot still image

#### Shoot movie

#### Shooting movie

# You can shoot movies with sound by FOMA terminal camera.

 You cannot mute Start/End tone for shooting, even under Manner mode/Public mode (Drive mode), or when Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) is connected. The volume of Start/End tone for shooting is fixed.

#### Hold down (a) (a) for over a second on Stand-by display.

#### Press i [Function] ► / \* "Cameramode" ► 2\* "Shoot movie".



#### Movie shooting screen

Movie shooting screen is displayed and Shoot lamp blinks in green.

#### Displaying in Large view

#### 1 Press 🔇.

- Alternatively, press (i) [Function] ▶ select "Large view"/"Normal view" and press (), to display in Large/Normal view.
- Press the key again to return to Normal view.
- Alternatively, the same procedure is available to switch to Large/Normal view on Movie confirmation screen.

#### Setting shooting type

- ② Press one of *Γ*. to *∃*.

#### Setting microphone sensitivity

- ① Press i [Function] ► ⊙ ► I I "Mic sensitivity".
- ② Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "For conference" or *Z*<sup>\*</sup> "For dictation".

	Collects sound in wide range.
For dictation	Collects sound in small range.

# 3 Direct the lens of camera to the subject and press •.

The shooting start tone rings, "●REC" is displayed and shooting starts. Shoot lamp lights up in red while shooting.

• Press <a>[Pause]</a> to pause shooting. Press the key again to restart shooting.

🖪 Press 🛈.



Movie confirmation screen

End tone plays, and shooting stops.

- Press @cur to reshoot.
- When "Auto save ON" or Restrict file size is set to "Unrestricted", the movie is saved and Movie confirmation screen returns.

#### Sending movie with mail

- You cannot compose mails if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".

The movie is saved in Data box and Compose message screen is displayed with the movie attached.

- Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
- File size of the attachment to i-mode mail is restricted. The setting "Restrict file size" is useful for attaching movies to mails.
- When "Auto save ON" has been set or Restrict file size has been set to "Unrestricted", you can attach saved images from Data box to mails. →P281

#### Confirming movie

#### ① Press **i** [Function] ▶ *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Play".

- Plays the recorded movie.
- Press () to rewind, and press () to fastforward. Press () to adjust the volume.
- Press or wait till movie playing is completed, and Movie confirmation screen returns.

# Setting movie as Stand-by display, Ring tone, etc.

- "i-motion setting" is not available if the saving destination is set to "miniSD".
- ① Press i [Function] ► 2<sup>-m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "i-motion setting".
  - The movie is saved in Data box.
  - Following procedure: →P283 "Setting movie/ i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

#### Editing title

- ② Enter the title and press ●.
  - Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### <sub>5</sub> Press 💽.

The movie is saved.

 Movies are saved in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera" folder. The saving destination is changeable. →P171

Shoot movie

#### Shooting still image while shooting movie

- When Shooting type is "Video and sound" or "Video only", 9 still images can be shot during movie shooting, and when "Sound only", 1 image before recording.
- "Click" is applied to the shutter sound automatically regardless of the setting.
- When setting Shooting type to "Video and sound", the shutter sound for still image shooting is added in the recorded movie.

# Press (a) while shooting a movie or before starting sound recording.

- · Image size is the same as movie size being set.
- Still images can be shot during pause in shooting.

#### Information

- Alternatively, press ► 💭 "Life tools" ► 4 🐨 ► 2 👘, to display Movie shooting screen.
- Movie shooting is suspended when FOMA terminal is folded while shooting. Open FOMA terminal and Movie confirmation screen is displayed. When "Auto save ON" is set and "Restrict file size" is set to "Unrestricted", Movies are saved automatically.
- End tone plays when you stop movie playing or sound recording.
- Key operation sound may be recorded if you operate keys during movie shooting.
- If a call is received, or Alarm (including Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm)/GPS positioning is activated, on Movie shooting screen or Movie confirmation screen, shooting is stopped and the data up to the point are kept. The previous screen returns after the call is disconnected, Alarm is stopped, or GPS positioning is ended. If Snooze is set in Alarm, the previous screen returns after releasing snooze mode.
- Shooting (recording) is not interrupted by mail receiving.
- Movie shooting and Voice recorder are unavailable during a call.
- Camera is terminated automatically if no operation is made for more than approximately 2 minutes on Movie shooting screen.

### Changing settings for shooting

#### Modify FOMA terminal camera settings to fit into the shooting situation. You can change the saving destination or use Auto timer to shoot images/movies, etc.

- Start operation from Still image shooting screen or Movie shooting screen.
- Refer to "Shooting still image" to display Still image shooting screen. →P163
- Refer to "Shooting movie" to display Movie shooting screen. →P166
- You cannot change the setting for some items depending on Shooting type, or when Camera is activated from Phonebook entry screen or from i-αppli.

- The following settings are saved even after terminating Camera. Settings return to default, by executing Reset settings or Delete all data.
  - Select size
    - Start/End tone
  - Restrict file size
  - Shooting mode

- Shutter sound

Date stamp\*
Save to:

- Image quality

Mic sensitivity

- Auto save ON/OFF
- Reduce flicker
- \* The color setting of Date stamp is not saved.

#### Using Zoom

Default	Wide

Images in SXGA size cannot be zoomed.

#### Press on Still image/Movie shooting screen.



Zoom bar indicated as a stress slides right and left, and the view is enlarged (reduced).

- The screen can be zoomed up even while shooting movies or pausing on movie shooting.
- · Zoom magnification is as follows.

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Camera	Zoom (Scale)
	Still image	)
Sub-QCIF	In-camera	Up to approx. 2 times (6 scales)
(128×96)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 7 times (27 scales)
QCIF	In-camera	Up to approx. 1.6 times (4 scales)
(176×144)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 5.45 times (19 scales)
Ctand by	In-camera	-
Stand-by (240×320)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 4 times (13 scales)
CIF (288×352)	In-camera	_
CIF (352×288)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 2.7 times (6 scales)
VGA (480×640)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 2 times (5 scales)
XGA (768×1024)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 1.2 times (2 scales)

Image size (horizontal × vertical)	Camera	Zoom (Scale)
	Movie	
Sub-QCIF	In-camera	Up to approx. 2 times (6 scales)
(128×96)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 7 times (13 scales)
QCIF	In-camera	Up to approx. 1.6 times (4 scales)
(176×144)	Out- camera	Up to approx. 5.45 times (11 scales)

#### **Setting Brightness**

Default ±0

Sets Brightness of images.

#### 

- You can set Brightness of the screen within the 11 levels of -5 to +5.
- The screen varies from 0-5 to 0±1 to 0+5

#### Turning Light (Flash) on

Default

:	Still image	: Flash AUTO	
	Movie	: OFF	

Light is available for shooting images/movies in dark places. For shooting still images, you can use as Flash.

- Flash is on when Light setting is "ON" in still image shooting.
- Flash is not available in movie shooting.
- Flash is also not available for continuous shooting or under "Night scene" setting from Scene select. ("Light" replaces "Light/Flash" on the menu.)
- When the temperature is extremely low (under approximately – 10 °C), Light/Flash is unavailable.

# Turning Light/Flash on (for shooting still images)

- Press i [Function] ▷ (④ ▷ (④ ▷ ) "Light/Flash", on Still image shooting screen.
- **Press one of**  $I_{\mathcal{B}}^{\mathfrak{s}}$  to  $\mathcal{I}_{\mathcal{E}}^{\mathfrak{s}}$ .

Flash AUTO	Flash automatically lights on when the subject or surroundings to shoot are in the dark.	
Flash ON	Flash lights on always when shooting.	
Light ON	Light/Flash is on.	
OFF	Light/Flash is off.	

#### Switching Light/Flash easily

- (1) Press # ... on Still image shooting screen.
  - Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Turning Light on (for shooting movies)

- Press 1: "ON".
  - Press <sup>2<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>η</sub> "OFF" not to light on.

#### Switching Light easily

- 1 Press # on Movie shooting screen.
  - Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Information

 Use Light to add the light level when it is dim. However, Light is not for shooting images in complete darkness.

#### Selecting image size/quality

Default	Still image	Select size	: Stand-by display
		Quality	: Normal
	Movie	Select size	: QCIF
		Shooting mode	e : Normal

#### Selecting image size to shoot

- Press i [Function] ► 2<sup>-</sup> "Select size", on Still image/Movie shooting screen.
- Select the image size and press •.

#### Switching the image size easily

- 1 Press I: on Still image/Movie shooting screen.
  - Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Selecting image quality of still image to shoot

#### **Press one of** $I_{\mathfrak{B}}$ to $\exists I_{\mathfrak{S}}$ .

Normal	nal Shoots images in normal quality.	
Fine	Shoots images in high quality.	
Super fine	Shoots images in the highest quality.	

- Switching the image quality easily
  - Press 2<sup>-fr</sup> on Still image shooting screen.
     Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Selecting image quality of movies to shoot

#### **Press one of** $I^{\circ}$ to $\exists s^{\circ}$ .

Normal	Sets images standard in quality and motion.
Prefer motion spd	Sets priority to motion smoothness over image quality.
Prefer img quality	Sets priority to the image quality over the motion smoothness.

Camera

#### Switching shooting mode easily

#### 1 Press 🖅 on Movie shooting screen.

· Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### <Restrict file size>

#### Restricting file size

Default Attach i-mode msg

Setting "Restrict file size" is useful when attaching movies to mails.

Press i [Function] ► I arease "Restrict file size", on Movie shooting screen.

#### ? Press one of $I^{\circ}$ to $\exists S^{\circ}$ .

Attach i-mode	Restricts duration of movies to
msg	make the file size
	approximately 290 KB.
Atch	Restricts duration of movies to
large vol.msg	make the file size
	approximately 490 KB.
Unrestricted	The maximum file size to save differs from the saving destination; approximately 8 MB in "Data box", and approximately 40 MB in "miniSD". Movie file size that can be saved varies depending on the remaining space in FOMA terminal.

#### Switching File size restriction easily

#### **1** Press $\mathbb{P}_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\infty}$ on Movie shooting screen.

· Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Information

- "Unrestricted" cannot be set when remaining space in the saving destination is less than approximately 390 KB.
- Set "Unrestricted" and movie (sound) is saved automatically after shooting (recording) is completed. "Auto save ON/OFF" setting cannot be changed.

#### <Scene select>

#### Selecting the scene to shoot

Default Standard

You can select camera settings to fit into the shooting situation, for such shooting as focusing on the person, night scene etc.

- You cannot select "Night scene" when Continuous mode (auto) is set. When switching to Continuous mode (auto) in "Night scene" setting, the setting is changed into "Standard".
- Flash is not available with "Night scene" setting.
- 1 Press : [Function] ► 색 🖭 "Scene select", on Still image shooting screen.

**Press one of**  $I \circledast$  to  $\mathfrak{s} \circledast$ .

Standard	Shoots images with the standard setting.
Portrait	Emphasizes the skin color and focuses on the person with background unfocused.
Landscape	Emphasizes outlines of subjects.
Night scene	Shoots subjects adjusting to the night scene.

#### Switching Scene select easily

(1) Press  $\square$  on Still image shooting screen.

Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Information

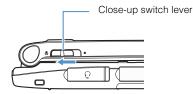
White balance is set to "Auto" with "Night scene" setting.

#### Shooting a subject close in distance

Default Standard mode

You can shoot images, focusing on subjects in distance of approximately 7 cm.

- Close-up is only available when shooting by Out-camera.
- 1 Move Close-up switch lever to "♥", on Still image/Movie shooting screen.



• Move Close-up switch lever to "•", when shooting in Standard mode.

#### **Using Auto timer**



Shooting images/movies starts automatically when the preset time in Auto timer is passed. This function prevents you from jiggling hands by key operation since no key operation is needed.

- 1 Press ⓐ [Function] ► ④ ► T: auto timer", on Still image shooting screen.
  - In movie shooting, press [Function]
     Tree "Auto timer".

#### **2** Press one of $I_{::}$ to $\exists ::$ .

● I appears (in the case of 5 seconds). • Press ④말 "OFF" not to use Auto timer. No further operation is needed.

#### Set the position and press •.

Auto timer starts. The number (remaining time) shown in **S** decreases, and shooting starts when the preset time is passed.

 Shoot lamp blinks in green at 1 second intervals. Shoot lamp changes into red and flashes faster, 3 seconds before shooting. The timing of shooting is informed with 3 beeps, a second each, 3 seconds before shooting.

#### Setting Auto timer easily

- 1 Press 5 an Still image/Movie shooting screen.
  - Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### Information

- Press 
   [Cancel] or 
   is active.
- The countdown stops with incoming calls/Alarms (including Schedule and ToDo alarm)/positioning by GPS. The count is reset after a call is disconnected, alarm stops, or GPS positioning ends.
- Auto timer is not interrupted by receiving mails.

#### <Special effect>

#### Setting Special effect

Default No effect

You can add special effects, such as adding colors, to images.

# Press i [Function] ► 7<sup>™</sup> "Special effect", on Still image shooting screen.

#### Press one of $I_{\overline{a}}^{\mathbb{O}}$ to $\overline{B_{\overline{a}}}^{\mathbb{O}}$ .

Preview is displayed.

- Press 💿 on Preview screen, to switch Special effect.
- Press 
   [Release] to release. No further operation is needed.

Sepia	Makes an image tanned-brownish
	like an old picture.
Monochrome	Makes an image black and white.
Red	Makes an image red-tinged.
Green	Makes an image green-tinged.
Blue	Makes an image blue-tinged.
Purple	Makes an image purple-tinged.

#### <sub>3</sub> Press 💽.

The selected special effect is set.

#### Setting special effects easily

- ① Press 대한 on Still image/Movie shooting screen.
- 2 Press to select the special effect, and press .

#### 

#### **Adjusting White balance**

Default	Auto
---------	------

Color difference may occur in images, depending on the lighting conditions and types of lights. You can edit images by adjusting color tones.

#### Press (i) [Function] ► (i) ► (I) ► (III) "White balance", on Still image shooting screen.

#### > Press one of $I_{:::}$ to $E_{:::}$ .

Auto	Adjusts the color automatically.
	, ,
Fine weather	Sets images to be adapted to
	fine weather lighting.
Cloudy	Sets images to be adapted to
weather	cloudy weather lighting.
Lamp light	Sets images to be adapted to
	the light condition in lamp
	light.
Fluor	Sets images to be adapted to
(neut.white)	fluorescent (neut. white)
	lighting.
Fluor	Sets images to be adapted to
(daylight)	fluorescent (daylight) lighting.

#### Switching White balance easily

- (1) Press Exercise on Still image/Movie shooting screen.
  - Press the key each time to switch icons.

#### <Auto save ON/OFF>

Saving shot still image/movie automatically

Default Auto save OFF

- In movie shooting, press 
   [Function] 
   ⊙
   [### "Auto save ON".
- If not saving data automatically, press I [Function] > select "Auto save OFF" and press (•), on Still image shooting/Movie shooting screen.
- Set "Auto save OFF" to attach the image to a mail immediately after shooting.

#### Information

Set Restrict file size as "Unrestricted" in shooting movie, and movies (sound) are saved automatically after shooting (recording). "Auto save ON/OFF" setting cannot be changed.

#### <Set saving destination>

# Setting the saving destination of shot still images/movies

Default	Still image: "Data box" → "My picture"	
	→ "Camera" Movie : "Data box" → "i-motio	n" →
	"Camera"	

- You cannot set "miniSD" as the saving destination if no miniSD memory card is inserted. Inserting miniSD memory card →P287
- When the saving destination is set to "miniSD", functions such as composing mails or setting images as Stand-by display are not available from Still image/Movie confirming screen.
- Press i [Function] ▷ ⓒ ▷ 7ﷺ "Save to:", on Still image shooting screen.
  - In movie shooting, press [ [Function] ► ③
     ► ⑤ \* "Save to:".
- 2 Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Data box" or *∠*<sup>\*</sup> "miniSD".

Data box	Saves images in any folder in Data box. ① Select a folder and press ④.
miniSD	Saves images in "DigCam" folder (for still image) or "i-motion" folder (for movie) in miniSD memory card.

#### File name/title of saved still image/movie

The file names/titles of shot images are given as "year-month-day\_hour-minute" of the day and time of shooting.

# <Example> When recording at 10:30 on September 20th, 2006

File names/titles are set as "2006-09-20\_10-30".

 In continuous mode, the file names/titles of still images are given by the shooting date of the first image and the serial numbers are added after the shooting date. In continuous shooting at 10:30 on September 20th, 2006, the file name of the third image is given as "2006-09-20\_10-30\_03". The serial number of Index image is "00".

#### Information

- You can confirm the file names of still images or the file names/titles of movies in "File property". →P296
- When the folder set as the saving destination is deleted, settings return to default.
- ●When saving in miniSD memory card, the file name differs from the title. File names when saving in miniSD memory card →P289
- Do not pull out miniSD memory card while saving the data in miniSD memory card. Images or miniSD memory card may be damaged.
- You can order DPOF print the images saved in miniSD memory card.

•When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in miniSD memory card, the data is saved in Data box.

# Referring to still images/movies in shooting

- Press i [Function] ▷ ③ ▷ ③ ▷ 5 "Ref to My picture", on Still image shooting screen.
  - In movie shooting, press i [Function] 
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
     ○
- Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> ∎ "Data box" or *I*<sup>\*</sup> "miniSD".
- 3 Select a folder and press •.

#### Select an image and press •.

- Still image playing screen →P276
- Movie play screen →P282

#### Information

Refer still images or movies in miniSD memory card when the saving destination is set to "miniSD", and the saving destination is changed to "Data box".

# Referring to still images/movies after shooting

- Displaying saved images →P275
- Playing movie/i-motion →P281

#### Changing other settings

Date stamp	: OFF : Click
onution sound	. Olicit
Start/End tone	: Beep
Restrict file	: Unrestricted
Reduce flicker	: Auto
	Shutter sound Start/End tone Restrict file

Various functions are available, such as inserting Date stamp of shooting or changing the shutter sound.

#### 1 Press i [Function] on Still image/ Movie shooting screen.

#### 2 Select an item.

#### Adding Date stamp

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.
- You cannot add still images in VGA/XGA/ SXGA size.
- 2 Press one of  $I_{\mathfrak{s}}$  to  $\mathfrak{s}$ .
  - Press <u>use</u> "OFF" not to add Date stamp.
  - Press (i) [Color] to change the color of Date stamp.

#### Inserting location information

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.
- Press 
   ▶ I = T = Add location info".
  - Alternatively, press is to add location information, on Still image shooting screen.
  - Following procedure: →P266 "Adding location information" Step 3

#### Changing Shutter sound

- The function is executable on Still image shooting screen.
- 1 Press 🕜 🕨 🖅 "Shutter sound".
- ② Press one of I not a to and a set of a set
  - Press 
     Play] to confirm the shutter sound. Sound plays even under Manner mode.

#### Changing Start/End shooting tone

• The function is executable on Movie shooting screen.

#### 

- 2 Press one of I'm to I'm.
  - Press 
    [Play] to confirm Start/End tone. Sound plays even under Manner mode.

#### Setting file restriction

You can set still images/movies unable to be sent or forwarded from FOMA terminal that received the mail.

- The function is executable on Still image/ Movie shooting screen.
- 1 Select "Restrict file" and press ().
- 2 Press I: "Restricted".
  - Press 2<sup>-ABC</sup> "Unrestricted" to release.

#### Reducing flicker on screen

- The function is executable on Still image/ Movie shooting screen.
- Select "Reduce flicker" and press ●.
- 2 Press one of  $I_{\mathfrak{s}}$  to  $\mathfrak{s}$ .

#### Displaying Operation guide

- The function is executable on Still image/ Movie shooting screen.
- ① Select "Operation guide" and press ().
  Press () to end.

#### Bar code reader

#### Using Bar code reader

Scans JAN code or QR code using FOMA terminal built-in camera. You can make a phone call, send a mail, or connect to a site using functions such as Phone To(AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To with the scanned data.

- Up to 18 scanned codes can be saved.
- Readable codes are JAN code and QR code only.

#### JAN code/QR code



JAN code is a type of bar code that consists of vertical lines with various width and spaces. FOMA terminal can recognize 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) codes.

• The bar code on the left represents the numeric data "4123578369877".

QR code is a highly information-contained type of two-dimensional code which represents numerics/alphabets/ Chinese characters/Kana/ Picture/melodies/images etc. with horizontal and vertical patterns.

 The QR code on the left represents the text data "株式会社NTTドコモ <NTT DoCoMo, Inc.>"

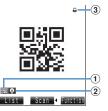
#### Scanning codes

Scan JAN code or QR code using FOMA terminal built-in camera.

- · Codes can be scanned with Out-camera only.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code scanning.
- Codes may not be scanned depending on the type, version and size of bar codes.
- Sound for scanning completion follows Phone ring tone in the volume setting. →P119

#### Switch to Close-up mode.

- Switching to Close-up mode →P169
- 2 Hold down (a) (a) for over a second on Stand-by display.
- 3 Press i [Function] ► / : Cameramode" ► 3 " Bar code reader".



#### Bar code reader screen

1 🗱
2 0 (bla
0 (gra

3 📮

- : Bar code reader is active.
- ick) : Light is on.
- ay) : Light is not available due to extremely low temperature.

: Reads in Close-up mode.

Bar code reade

- Hold FOMA terminal tightly with your hands to operate.
- Scanning is available by switching Normal/ Large view with 😒.



#### Scanning codes with light turned on

- ① Press : [Function] ► ਟੋਲੋ "Light" ► (\*) "ON".
  - Press <sup>PABC</sup>/<sub>π</sub> "OFF" not to turn on the light.





After "Scanning" is displayed, the scanned result is displayed.

#### 🔓 Press 🖻 [Save].

The scanned data is saved.

- You can use scanned data without saving. Following procedure: →P173 "Using scanned data" Step 3, →P174 "Using scanned text" Step 2
- Press (Dec.) ► [1:8] "Yes" not to save data.

#### Scanning multiple split QR codes

You can combine split QR codes (up to 16 pieces).

 If scanned QR code is split into some pieces, the message "Scan next bar code" appears.
 Scanning starts automatically as the next code is displayed. The scanned result is displayed after all of the QR codes have been scanned.

#### Information

Alternatively, press • •

"Life tools" > 1 😨, or

press • Filter tools" • 4 to display Bar code reader screen.

Turn Light on before scanning in a dark place.

- The title of saved data is named as the scanned date and time (year-month-day\_hour-minute). For example, when scanned at 10:30 on September 20th, 2006, the title is to be "2006-09-20\_10-30". The title of saved data is editable.
- You cannot save scanned data in miniSD memory card or Data box.

#### Using scanned data

Bar code reader	1/1
2006-09-20_10-30 2006-07-10_12-40	
■2006-05-24_17-30 ■2006-05-20 12-25	
Start Detail 🗘 Fun	ction

Bar code reader list screen

Press 
 Start] to return to Bar code reader screen.

#### 2 Select data and press •.

#### Editing a title

- ① Select data and press **[Function]** ► **I S** "Edit title".
- Enter the title and press •.

• Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### 3 Use data.

 Phone to (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions are available for the scanned data of phone number/mail address/URL. →P193

#### Registering to Phonebook

You can register the scanned data to Phonebook.

#### (1) Select "Store in phonebook" and press $\odot$ .

- Register the scanned data to Phonebook. Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, →P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- Some entries are not available to be registered to Phonebook.

#### Composing message

Send a mail to the "address" on the data.

 Select "Compose message" and press ●.
 Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6 Camera

#### Registering to Bookmark

Registers URL or the title name on the data as Bookmark.

#### **1** Select "Store bookmark" and press **•**.

 Following procedure: →P188 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

#### Starting i-αppli

- Select "Start i-αppli" and press ●.
  - i-αppli does not start if the applicable software is not saved in FOMA terminal.
- 2 Press 1 " Yes".
  - Press 2 Mo" not to start.

#### Playing/saving images and melodies in data

#### (1) Select one of image/melody and press $\textcircled{\bullet}.$

- The selected image/melody is played.
- Images are saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "Data exchange" folder. And melodies are saved to "Data box" → "Melody" → "Data exchange" folder.

#### Using scanned text

# Select data on Bar code reader list screen and press •.

# Press i [Function] ► select an item, and press ●.

Сору	Drage at the start point to
	<ol> <li>Press          <ul> <li>at the start point to copy              <ul> <li>at the end point.</li> <li>Copied data is registered as Paste data.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Store in user dict	<ul> <li>⑦ Press ● at the start point to register ▶ ● at the end point.</li> <li>• Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> <li>⑧ Enter Reading and press ●.</li> </ul>
Dictionary	<ul> <li>Press (•) to define the start point of a word to look up (•) (•) to define the end point.</li> <li>Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> </ul>
Reading check	<ul> <li>⑦ Press ● to define the start point of a word to look up ▶ ● to define the end point.</li> <li>Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> <li>A sentence is split into each segment. Select a segment, and press ●.</li> </ul>

#### **Deleting saved code**

- Select data and press i [Function] ► 2<sup>-∞</sup> "Delete", on Bar code reader list screen.
- Press I: "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2 "Delete option".
- 2 Select data, and press •.
- Press 

   to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press IT "Delete all".
- (2) Enter the terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

#### <sub>3</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <sup>Z<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

You may find some data unable to link to each function even using scanned phone number/E-mail address/URL. (Characters without the underline and colored cannot be linked.)

#### Character reader

#### **Reading character**

#### Scans JAN code or QR code using FOMA terminal built-in camera. You can use scanned characters for Phonebook entry or composing mails. You can also look up English words easily with scanned characters.

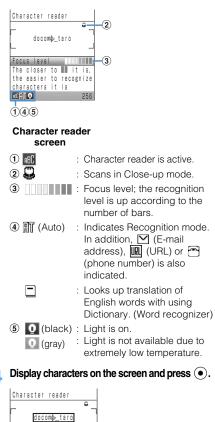
- Up to 18 scanned characters can be saved. (Characters scanned with Word recognizer cannot be saved.) Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be registered for each.
- Up to approximately 49 characters can be scanned at a time. (Up to 16 for Word recognizer)
- Only Out-camera supports scanning to read characters.
- Only the following characters are readable: "Alphabets", "Numerics" or "one-byte marks" in font of "Mincho", "Gothic", "Serif", "Sans Serif" (excluding Italics).
- The data cannot be recognized correctly when scanning on PC display or in some shooting conditions.
- Characters in vertical writing cannot be recognized.
- Sound for scanning completion follows Phone ring tone in the volume setting. →P119

#### Switch to Close-up mode.

- Switching to Close-up mode →P169
- 2 Hold down (a) (a) for over a second on Stand-by display.

Character reader

Press i [Function] ► 1 \* Cameramode" ► 4 \* Character reader".



 CitateCter Feader

 Comp\_taro

 Focus level

 docomo\_taro

 tmprilo
 245

 Edit
 OK

#### Scan result screen

Scanned part is framed in red and recognized character texts are displayed.

- Scanning is available when [OK] is displayed on the screen.
- Scanning is available by switching Normal/ Large view with 😒.

Scanning codes with light turned on

- ① Press (i [Function] ▶ 🖅 "Light" ▶ []: "ON".
  - Press <sup>Z→BC</sup>/<sub>π</sub> "OFF" not to light up.

#### Editing characters

1 Press 🖻 [Edit].

#### 2 Edit the characters.

 You can select the characters from possible texts if scanned results include texts colored in red. Select a character and press (). Then select a text from possible texts and press () or ().

#### 6 Press I ... "Yes" or ∠... "No".

	Scans and adds characters continuously. Repeat Step 4 to 5.
No	No additional scanning. Go to Step 7.

Character confirmation screen		
Save	Function	
docomo_taro		
Character read	e r	

#### 7 Press 🖻 [Save].

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available when scanning phone number/E-mail address/URL. →P193
- Press (i) [Function] and you can use scanned characters to other function.
   Following procedure: →P176 "Using scanned data" Step 3
- Press 🙉 🕨 🕼 "Yes", not to save data.

#### **Setting Recognition mode**

Set Recognition mode and scanning is optimized for preset items.

- Press **i** [Function] ► *⊇*<sup>Agc</sup> "Recognition mode", on Character reader screen.
- **Press one of**  $I_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbb{Q}}$  to  $\mathcal{I}_{\mathbb{Z}}^{\mathbb{Q}}$ .

Auto	Recognizes by character type.	
Mail address	Optimizes for scanning mail addresses.	
URL	Optimizes for scanning URL.	
Phone numberOptimizes for scanning phone numbers.		

#### **Deleting saved data**



You can use the scanned English words to look up the meaning in Japanese.

# 1 Press : [Function] ► (4 cm) "Word recognizer", on Character reader screen.



# Display English words on the screen and press (•).

The scanned English word and the meaning are displayed

- When applicable English words are not in Dictionary and the meaning is not displayed, press (•), select an English word from translation options and press (•).
- Scanning is available by switching Normal/ Large view with O.

#### Using scanned data

Press 
[List] on Character reader screen.

#### Select data and press •.

 Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available when scanning phone number/E-mail address/URL. →P193

#### 3 Press i [Function] ► select an item, and press i.

Edit	1 Edit characters and press $0$ .
Сору	<ol> <li>Press          <ul> <li>at the start point to copy              <ul> <li>at the end point.</li> <li>Copied data is registered as Paste data.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Store in user dict	<ul> <li>⑦ Press ● at the start point to register ▶ ● at the end point.</li> <li>• Up to 40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> <li>② Enter Reading and press ●.</li> </ul>
Dictionary	<ul> <li>Press          <ul> <li>to define the start point of a word to look up</li> <li>to define the end point.</li> <li>Up to 32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

#### Information

- Turn Light on before scanning in a dark place.
- Scanned character data cannot be saved in Data box or miniSD memory card.
- You may find some data unable to link to each function even using scanned phone number/E-mail address/URL. (Link is not available when scanned data is not highlighted.)
- Character reader is not available during a call.

Jamera

# i-mode/i-motion

i-mode
Displaying i-mode Menu183
Displaying sites
Displaying sites
Viewing sites and operations185
Registering sites to My Menu < My Menu> 187
Changing i-mode password < Change i-mode password> 187
Displaying Internet sites <connect internet="" to=""> 187</connect>
Registering Internet/i-mode sites for quick browsing <bookmark> 188</bookmark>
Saving site contents
Downloading images or melodies from sites
Downloading images from sites or messages < Save image> 192
Downloading i-melody from sites
Downloading Menu icons or data from sites
Useful functions of i-mode
Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions
Setting i-mode
Setting i-mode
Using Message service
When receiving MessageR/F <receive message=""> 196</receive>
Checking MessageR/F
Displaying MessageR/F stored in message boxes
<messager messagef=""> 197</messager>
Using Certificate
Using SSL certificate
Setting FirstPass
Changing the host for certificate
Using i-motion
i-motion
Downloading i-motion from sites
Setting whether to play i-motion automatically
<i-motion auto="" play=""> 202</i-motion>

#### i-mode

i-mode allows you to use online services to connect to i-mode sites (Programs), Internet or i-mode mail with the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

#### Connecting to sites (Programs)

Select Menu List from i-mode menu, then you can use various online services such as weather forecast and news provided by IP (information service providers). Games or stand-by images are also available to download and enjoy.

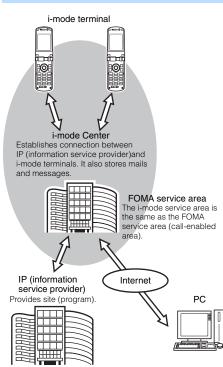
#### Connecting to Internet

Enter an Internet site address (URL) directly to i-mode terminal, and you can browse various sites applicable to i-mode.

#### i-mode mail

E-mail containing up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark) characters can be transferred to/from anybody who has an Internet E-mail address, as well as between i-mode terminals. You can also exchange enjoyable Deco-mails or mails with still/movie images attached.

#### Service schematic



 i-mode is an optional charged service which requires additional subscription. For further information, please contact the number on the backside of this manual.

#### Information

- When newly subscribing to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.
- The contents of "My Menu" is carried over when you have changed services from mova (i-mode subscribed) to FOMA. Some sites may not be carried over to "My Menu" in the FOMA service. In that case, registration is required again. Also, you can find applicable sites to carry over "My menu" in "お知らせ & ヘルプ
- i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of service charge, refer to "i-mode User's Manual" handed on i-mode subscription.
- As i-mode services are subject to change, refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

#### Connecting to sites (Programs)

Various online services are available by accessing sites provided by IP (information service providers) with simple key operations. For example, following services are available such as checking the bank balance/making a remittance, reserving tickets, watching news, searching dictionaries or downloading ringer melodies, etc.

#### **Displaying sites**

When connecting to the i-mode Center, i-Menu is displayed first. Access sites (Programs), "週刊ガイ ド <What's New>" etc. from this menu. • To browse sites →P183



Menu name	Function
゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙゙	Register favorite sites and you can quickly access to the site later. →P187 Charged sites in i-Menu are automatically registered to My Menu. Up to 45 sites can be registered.
②週刊iガイド <what's New&gt;<sup>*</sup></what's 	The information of new sites and recommended sites is released and updated every Monday to Friday.
③メニュー リスト ⊲Menu List>*	Lists to display all sites by categories or regions, Desired sites can be selected from here.

I-mode

Menu name	Function
④とくする メニュー <value Menu&gt;</value 	Provides enjoyable information on campaigns, gifts and discount coupons. Information is updated every week. (Provided by D2 Communications Inc.)
≦iエリア <i-area></i-area>	Weather, map, town information or the sites applicable to GPS in the place or neighborhood can be retrieved.
⑥かんたん検索 <quick Search&gt;</quick 	The desired sites can be easily searched for through keyword search from categories such as "Games" or "Stand-by display".
i アプリサーチ <i-αppli></i-αppli>	The menu introducing i-appli on a subjective basis like free-charged, Games, etc.
便利サイト サーチ <useful Sites Search&gt;</useful 	Introduces convenient sites categorized by daily life situations from Menu List.
⑦マイボックス <my box=""></my>	Service for membership access to shop information or sites through registration in advance.
<sup>8</sup> オプション設定 <options><sup>*</sup></options>	Sets i-mode mail, changes i-mode password etc.
<sup>9</sup> お知らせ&へ ルプ <info &="" help=""></info>	Provides information from DoCoMo, operation procedure and rules on use of i-mode.
■料金&お申込 <charge &<br="">Subscription&gt;</charge>	Fee confirmation, payment, change or subscription to services.
ENGLISH	Change language to English on i-Menu.

- The screen shown is an example. The screen may differ depending on the settings.
- \* These menus are available in English after selecting "ENGLISH" on i-Menu.

#### Information

- Some sites may charge information fee to access (i-mode charged sites).
- Some services provided by IP (information service providers) may require separate subscriptions.
- Packet communication fee is not charged except in communicating with the i-mode Center, even when the i-mode icon blinks.
- i-Menu or other menus may differ for Dual Network Service subscribers.

#### Other convenient functions

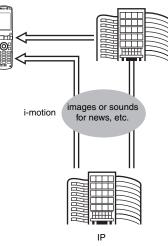
#### i-motion

You can download images or sounds from sites to i-mode terminals, to play or set them on Stand-by display.

- Retrieving i-motion →P201
- Playing i-motion →P281
- Setting i-motion auto play →P202

i-mode terminal

i-mode Center



#### Chaku-motion/Chaku-uta®

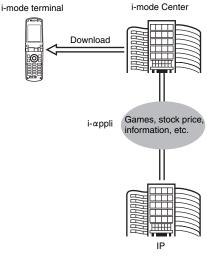
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to i-mode terminals for setting as Ring tone or Receive image. You can set the vocals of favorite singers to Ring tone as well as melodies. (Some

- i-motion cannot be set as Chaku-motion.)
- Setting Chaku-motion →P116
- "Chaku-uta<sup>®</sup>" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

#### 📕 i-αppli

Downloading i-appli from the sites allows more convenient use of i-mode terminals. For example, you can download enjoyable games or i-appli to check stock prices automatically and periodically. Furthermore, Map i-appli downloads only minimum of necessary data, so that it provides smooth scrolling operation.

- Downloading i-αppli →P241
- Starting i-αppli →P242
- Starting i-αppli automatically →P244



#### i-αppli stand-by display

 $i-\alpha$ ppli stand-by display uses  $i-\alpha$ ppli as a stand-by display, which also allows receiving messages and making phone calls directly.  $i-\alpha$ ppli stand-by display enables Stand-by display to indicate the latest news or weather forecast, or to inform such as incoming messages and alarms with favorite characters.

Setting i-αppli stand-by display →P245

#### 📕 i-αppliDX

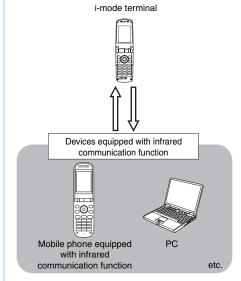
i-αppliDX makes i-αppli more convenient and enjoyable. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as message, Call history or Phonebook data), i-αppliDX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of a caller of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also i-αppliDX, engaged with mail, updates desired information on stock price, game progress or other information, in real time.

• i-αppliDX →P240

#### Infrared communication function

You can exchange Phonebook data/mails/ Bookmarks etc. with mobile phones or PCs equipped with Infrared communication function.\* In addition, i-appli with Infrared communication function allows more enhanced use by interfacing with devices with Infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone can also be used as a remote controller for TV or a member ID card.

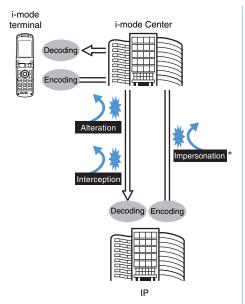
- \* Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the devices of the other party, even with infrared communication function.
- Activating Infrared communication mode →P300



#### SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method using certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal user information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged safely. There are 2 types of SSL communication; one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate saved in i-mode terminal without special operations, and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the downloaded Client certificate from the FirstPass center. The certificates to be used differ depending on the sites. →P199

- Using the CA certificate saved in i-mode terminal →P199
- Using Client certificate of FirstPass →P199



\* Impersonation denotes that a false site made up by a third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain user information illegally.

#### UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction

Insert UIM (FOMA card) retaining user information (such as Phone number or Phonebook, partially) to i-mode terminals, and that restricts operation of melody/still image files downloaded from the sites or retrieved with mails. The function also prohibits to play or display the obtained files, when turning on the power of an i-mode terminal with another UIM (FOMA card) or no UIM (FOMA card) inserted. →P40

- \* This function does not support still images or movies shot with the camera function, or files saved to the terminal from external memory.
- \* If any of Ring tone, Stand-by display or other settings is set to the i-mode terminal, this function resets the settings.

#### i-melody

You can download latest or favorite music to i-mode terminals and set to Ring tone. →P192

#### i-anime

You can download favorite animations from sites to i-mode terminals and set as Stand-by display or Receiving screen. →P125, 128, 192

#### Flash<sup>®</sup>

Flash is an animation technology using images and sounds. Displays various animations and expressive sites. Movies using Flash (Flash movie) can also be downloaded to i-mode terminals and set as Stand-by display.

Some Flash movies can quote the terminal information data of the user's i-mode terminal. The terminal information data is listed below:

· Battery level

→P195

- Reception level Ringer volume
- Time information
  - Model information
- Select language

#### Message service

Message service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (message) to user's i-mode terminal. Message service provides 2 types of the services: MessageR (Request) and MessageF (Free).

(Request)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message service.
	Messages to be delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Receiving Message service →P196, 197, 218
- ・MessageF (Free) is set as "受信する <Receive>" by default, when newly subscribing to the FOMA service with i-mode service after the 1st of October, 2004. Change the setting for MessageF to "受信しない <Not receive>", if it is unnecessary to receive MessageF.
- \* Except in the case noted above, preliminary setting for receiving in "オプション設定 <Options>" is required. "受信しない <Not receive>" is set by default.
- · When the terminal is powered off or out of service area and unable to receive mails. MessageR/F is to be stored in the i-mode Center.

#### Information

The list below shows the number and the period of MessageR/F to be stored in the i-mode Center. When exceeding the maximum number of messages to be stored, MessageR/F is deleted in order from the oldest.

Message	Maximum number stored	Maximum storage period
MessageR	300 items	72 hrs
MessageF	300 items	72 hrs

MessageR/F stored in the i-mode Center can be received by Check new message. →P197, 218

#### ■ トクだねニュース便 <Convenient News>

This service is provided by DoCoMo to distribute information such as news and weather forecast to i-mode terminals using MessageR (Request) function.

This is a charged service, requiring a separate subscription. After subscription, the service is automatically registered to My Menu and the same information is also available by accessing from My Menu.

MessageR screen →P198

#### i-mode password

"i-mode password" is required to apply for charged sites, to register/release it to/from My Menu, or to make i-mode mail settings. The default password is set to "0000". Be sure to change to a unique 4-digit number. →P187

For your own security, do not reveal your i-mode password to others.

#### **Connecting to Internet**

Enter the address of Internet sites (URL), connect to Internet and display i-mode compatible sites.

Viewing Internet →P187

#### Information

- ●i-mode incompatible Internet sites may not be displayed correctly. i-mode compatible sites are created with i-mode compatible tags. →P187
- The displayed screen of the Internet sites may differ from that of PC.
- Some Internet sites may not be displayed with more than 512 characters of URL.

#### Before using i-mode

- The contents of sites (Programs) and Internet sites are usually protected by the copyright laws. All or any portion of texts, images or other data downloaded to the i-mode terminal from sites (Programs) or Internet sites cannot be altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Data saved in i-mode terminal (Mail, MessageR/F, Screen memo, i-αppli and i-motion) and registered contents of Bookmark should remain for about 1 month with the battery pack removed or empty battery level, but may be lost if the terminal is in such condition for more than 1 month. Data may be lost due to malfunction, repair or other handling of FOMA terminal. It is recommended to maintain a separate record of the data registered in your FOMA terminal. In case that saved or registered data is lost, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss.
- When an i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the downloaded information using i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with the copyright laws with some exceptions. Still images/i-motion/ melodies downloaded from sites, attached files sent/received with mails (still images/movies, melodies), Screen memos and MessageR/F for some models cannot be displayed, when inserting another UIM (FOMA card) and turning on the power of FOMA terminal without UIM (FOMA card).
- When replacing UIM (FOMA card) to another or turning the power on with no UIM (FOMA card) inserted, files restricted to display/play by UIM (FOMA card) to Stand-by display or Ring tone, the settings returns to default.

#### Information

- Saved data may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, or other reasons. As DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data, it is recommended to backup the data in your PC by using the data link software and FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378
- You can save data such as mails and Bookmarks to miniSD memory card (optional).

#### **Displaying i-mode Menu**

Press (i).



Menu	Function	Page
i-mode setting	Sets functions regarding i-mode.	P194
MessageR	Displays received MessageR.	P197
MessageF	Displays received MessageF.	P197
Screen memo	Displays Screen memos saved in FOMA terminal.	P190
i-Menu	When connecting to the i-mode Center, i-Menu is displayed first. Accesses to each site (program) from here.	P183
Bookmark	Accesses directly to registered favorite sites.	P189
Last URL	Accesses to the site displayed last.	P184
Go to location	Enters URL to access to Internet sites.	P187
Check new message	Checks the storage of i-mode mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center.	P197, 218

#### Information

Alternatively, press • • i-mode Menu.

6 "i-mode", to display

#### **Displaying sites**

Connect to i-mode to display various sites for using various services.

Press (i) QM X 10:30 **N**Z/X=--



blinks, and 🔂 blinks after connection is established.

• Press D [Cancel] or Gal to cancel while retrieving pages.

Select "ENGLISH" at the bottom of the 2 list and press (•), then select "Menu List" and press (•).

•	News/Info
1	Asahi Shimbun
2	DAILY YOMIURI
	Nikkei News
4	CNN
	Dow Jones/WSJ
6	FOLHA ONLINE JAPAN
7	PLACAR MOVEL
8	Bloomberg
9	Contigo! Movel
	REUTERS
	TheChosunlibo
	Pannla'e Nailv

#### Select an item of the site to browse, and press $(\bullet)$ .

Connection to the site is established.

#### Ending i-mode

1 Press PWRE. 2 Press /: "Yes". disappears.

#### ■ "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>"

Download original data (Menu icons, National holidays, Dictionary data, category icons) or Deco-mail templates etc. from the site "どこで €SANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" for various usages.

Accessing the site:

"i-Menu" → "メニューリスト <Menu List>" → "ケー タイ電話メーカー <Mobile phone manufacturer>" → "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>".



QR code to browse



- Information
- Press (i) [Function] > [13] "i-Menu", to return to i-Menu while displaying sites.

- ●Press : [Function] > ③ > ③ > ③ > ਭ "i-mode menu", to return to i-mode Menu while displaying sites.
- When images are not displayed successfully, I or appears.
- Pages failed to be displayed properly may be recovered by operating "Convert char. code".
- ●Under "圈外 <out of service area>" or self mode, i-mode is not available.
- Some sites may display the message to notify sending the Product serial number of the i-mode terminal/UIM (FOMA card).
- "Product serial number of i-mode terminal/UIM (FOMA card)" to send is used by the IP (information service provider) to identify the user, to provide customized information or to judge whether your mobile phone supports the contents provided by the IP.
- "Product serial number of the i-mode terminals/UIM (FOMA card)" is sent to the IP (information service provider) via Internet, and there is a possibility to be captured by the third parties during transmission. However, no user information of the phone number, address, age or gender is to be informed to the IP with this operation.

#### Connecting to SSL compatible page

You can display SSL compatible pages (SSL page).

 Establishment of SSL sessions requires the electronic information called "certificate" issued by the same certification organization for both the connected site and FOMA terminal. →P199

#### Connecting to SSL page

When connecting to SSL pages, a message to start SSL communication is displayed.



- 📓 appears when the SSL page is displayed.
- If the safety cannot be confirmed in communication with the site, a message is displayed to confirm whether to connect to the site. Press [7] "Yes" to connect. Press [24] "No" to cancel connection.

#### Information

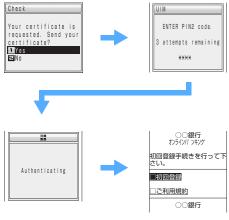
#### Browsing normal pages from SSL pages

When moving to normal pages from SSL pages, a message is displayed to confirm whether to end SSL sessions.

• Press *I*: "Yes" to display a normal page, and disappears.

#### Connecting to FirstPass compatible page

Follow the operation as below, to connect to FirstPass compatible pages.



#### Press 🖅 "Yes".

#### Enter the PIN2 code and press •.

The Client certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

#### <Last URL>

Reconnecting to the page last displayed

The URL displayed last is recorded when ending i-mode. You can reconnect to the last URL easily.

#### 👖 Press 🗊 🕨 鼠

The last URL is displayed.

• When no last URL is recorded, a message is displayed.

#### <sub>2</sub> Press 💽.

#### Copying URL

#### Deleting Last URL

- ① Press **i** [Function] ► **Z**<sup>\*</sup>/<sub>7</sub> "Delete".
- 2 Press 1: "Yes".
  - Press <sup>2<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Viewing sites and operations

## This section describes the operations while displaying sites.

#### **Displaying images**

Flash, an animation technology using images and sounds, is supported. Flash movies facilitate displaying expressive sites. You can also set Flash movies as Stand-by display.

- If making the display setting to "Not display", Flash movies are not displayed.
- When Flash movies are displayed, display operation may differ from the normal operation.
- Some Flash movies may be displayed differently from the graphics displayed on the site, even when the movies are saved as images or screen memos.
- Even if a Flash movie is displayed, it may not work properly. And when the Flash movie is not displayed properly, it may not be able to be saved.
- Some Flash movies play sound effects. Set Sound effect to "Not play", not to play any sound effect.
   Some Flash movies may not play any sound effect.
- Some Flash movies are available for the operation even when ► ◀▲ ▼ are not displayed on the bottom of the screen.
- If no operation is executed for over 30 seconds while playing Flash movies, playing is to be paused temporarily. To resume playing, press one of , , , The second se
- If a Flash movie fails to play, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminals while playing. Note that terminals vibrate even when Vibrator is set to "OFF".
- Some Flash movies may use the terminal information data. For setting movies to use the terminal information data, set "Use the terminal information data" to "Use". →P195 Default setting is "Use". Flash movies use the terminal information data listed below:
  - Battery level Reception level
  - Time information Ringer volume
  - Select language Model information
- The melody of the Flash movie set to Stand-by display is not played.

#### Selecting Link and items

Following operations are available in some sites while connected to i-mode.

#### Links

Link is an item of the function to jump to the related page, from the currently displayed page. Link is highlighted when selected.

- Links may be set upon some images. Those images are enclosed with a frame when selected.
- Move to the linked pages with corresponding numbers by pressing number keys such as 1 or
   I or
   However, some sites do not support to move to the linked pages with those numbers.

#### Check box

You can select multiple items from the option.

- : Not selected
- C: Selected
- Switch Select/Release by pressing ①.

#### Radio button

You can select an item from the option.

- O: Not selected
- C: Selected
- $\bullet$  Switch items to select by pressing  $\bigodot.$

#### Pulldown menu

You can select an item from the option list. Press O to display the option list. Press O to select an item and press O.

 Some sites allow you to select multiple items by repeating the operation of selecting from the pulldown menu. After selecting, press •
 [Complete] to complete the operation.

#### Textbox

You can input characters. Select textbox, and Character input screen is displayed.

- When entering password etc., "#" may be displayed.
- When entering characters, scanned data can be inserted by activating Bar code reader or Character reader.

#### Button (Sent/Reset, etc.)

You can send or reset the contents entered/ selected on the page. Selected buttons are enclosed with the full line. Press () to start sending/ resetting.

#### Moving to the previous/next pages

You can move to the previous or the next page stored in cache memory. Cache is the storage area in the terminal, to temporarily store data of Internet sites, etc. once displayed. By pressing  $\bigcirc$ , pages stored in cache can be displayed without making any communication.

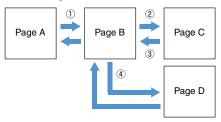
However, note that when exceeding the terminal cache size or when displaying a page set (or created) to forcibly read the latest information, communication is started by pressing  $\mathfrak{O}$ .



- Alternatively, press (and to return to the previous page.
- Characters or settings previously entered are not displayed when displaying the page in cache.
- When ending i-mode, the page information in cache is to be cleared.
- Display operation may differ when Flash movies are displayed.

#### Information

When you display Page A → Page B → Page C (①,
 (②), return to Page B (③) and proceed to Page D (④), then the display history of Page B → Page C is erased. You can return, Page D → Page B → Page A, but not to Page C.



#### Scrolling screen

Scroll the screen with (2) while displaying i-mode sites or Internet sites.

<ul> <li>①速報</li> <li>②△△新聞</li> <li>③△△素問</li> <li>③□□スポーツ</li> <li>⑤明日の天気</li> <li>⑤世界の天気</li> <li>⑦一週間のニュースと天気</li> <li>⑧海外メディア</li> <li>⑤ビジネス情報</li> </ul>
Selec()

When the whole site is not displayed, or Links are

- selectable,  $\blacktriangle$  or  $\checkmark$  is displayed.
- Hold down () for over a second to scroll continuously.
- Lines to scroll when pressing ③ can be set.
- Press or to display the previous/next screen.
- The operation is the same in MessageR/F, i-mode mail and SMS. →P197, 221

#### <Reload>

#### **Reloading data**

Reload the page data properly or update to the latest data.

#### 

The page data is reloaded and the page is redisplayed.

#### Information

Press [Function] Or Transformation (Construction) Press [Function] Press (Press, to play Flash movies again while displaying sites.

#### <View URL>

#### Displaying URL

Displays the site URL on the screen.

Press (i [Function] > 7<sup>rge</sup>/<sub>±</sub> "View/ Copy URL", while displaying a site. • Press (i) [Copy] to copy URL.

#### Information

- When operating from URL history list/Bookmark list/ Screen memo list, press (i) [Function] > select "View/Copy URL" and press (•).
- Press I [Function] > ( > 13 "Compose message", to copy URL on the screen to the mail. The displayed URL of the site is pasted in the text field, and Compose message screen is displayed.

#### My Menu

#### **Registering sites to My Menu**

#### Save frequently accessed sites to My Menu, and you can access to the site easily.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered to My Menu.
- i-mode password is required to register sites to My Menu.
- · Only i-mode sites are available to be registered. However, some sites cannot be registered. To register Internet sites, register them to Bookmark.
- · When submitting to charged sites, the site is automatically recorded in My Menu.
- Select "マイメニュー登録 < Register My Menu>" and press (•), while displaying a site.
- Select the i-mode password field and press (•) • enter i-mode password and press  $(\bullet)$ .

The entered i-mode password is masked with "X".

- · It is configured as "0000" by default.
- Move the cursor to "決定 <Set>" and press (•).

Displaying sites registered to My Menu



Select a site and press  $(\bullet)$ .

#### Change i-mode password

#### Changing i-mode password

i-mode password is required to register/delete entries to/from My Menu, subscribe/cancel Message service or i-mode charged sites, or to make mail settings. i-mode password is set as "0000" by default. Be sure to change to another unique number. For your own security, do not reveal your i-mode password to others.

- Enter a 4-digit number for the i-mode password.
- In case you forgot i-mode password, the password is to be reset to "0000" at the sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop, after confirming your driver's license or other official identifications.
- Press (i ) select "ENGLISH", and press  $(\bullet) \models \underline{\mathcal{H}}_{\underline{m}}$ .
- Press 2 "Change i-mode 2 Password".
- Select the i-mode password field and 3 press (•) • enter i-mode password and press  $(\bullet)$ .



The entered i-mode password is masked with "X".

- Select the new i-mode password field Δ and press (•) • enter a new i-mode password and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- Select the new i-mode password field 5 for confirmation and press (•) • enter the i-mode password at Step 4 again and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- Move the cursor to "Select" and press (•).
  - A message is displayed if the entered password is incorrect.

#### Connect to Internet

#### **Displaying Internet sites**

#### Enter a URL and access to Internet.

- i-mode incompatible Internet sites may not be displayed correctly.
- · Basic operations on Internet sites are the same as that on i-mode sites



#### Select "New entry" and press (•), then enter URL and press (•).

 Up to 512 one-byte (Half Mark) characters including "http://" or "https://" can be entered.

#### Information

- Press (i) [Function] > [E<sup>N</sup>] "Go to location", to operate while displaying i-mode sites or Internet sites.
- A message appears when the receiving data exceeds the maximum data size for 1 page, and only the received data is displayed.

#### <URL history>

#### Displaying pages using URL history

List of URLs connected from "Go to location" is displayed in order by date from new to old.

· URL is recorded up to 10. The oldest URL is overwritten when the number of URLs exceeds 10.

Press i 🕨	Go to scation
Go to location	-1/1
🛄 [New entry]	
∎http://www. 123ab	C.CO.
∎http://www. 123de	
∎http://www.123gh	
🗳 http://www. 123jk	I.CO.
⊑http://www.123mn	O.CO.

**URL** history list

#### Select a URL and press (•).

🔫 Press 🛈.

#### **Deleting URL in history**

Select a URL to delete on URL history list screen and press (i) [Function] > 5 # "Delete".

🤈 Press / 🕄 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2<sup>-</sup> "Delete option".
- Select a URL and press (•).
- ③ Press : [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press IT "Delete all".
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- 🔁 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".
  - Press Press "No" to cancel.

#### <Convert char. code>

#### **Displaying characters properly**

When characters in a site is displayed incorrectly, the site may be displayed properly by converting the character code.

- Press (i) [Function] (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) "Convert char. code", while displaying the site.
  - Repeat the operation of Step 1 and ShiftJIS → JIS  $\rightarrow$  EUC  $\rightarrow$  UTF8 is switched in order. Repeat the operation 4 times, to return to the original character code.
  - Characters may be displayed incorrectly even if converting the character code.
  - · Characters may be displayed incorrectly, if converting the character code when characters are displayed properly.

#### **Bookmark**

#### **Registering Internet/i-mode** sites for quick browsing

Registering Internet/i-mode sites to Bookmark allows quicker and more convenient browsing.

#### **Registering in Bookmark**

- Up to 100 entries can be registered.
- · Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters including "http://" or "https://" can be registered. URLs exceeding the number of maximum characters cannot be registered.
- · Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.
- Press (i) [Function] > 249 "Store bookmark", while displaying site to register.
- Select a folder to register and press (•).
- Enter the title and press  $(\bullet)$ .
  - Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
  - · Characters exceeding the maximum character number are to be deleted.
  - When registering Bookmark without entering a title, the URL of the site is displayed on the Bookmark list.

#### Information

- Press [Function] > 27 "Store bookmark", to register from URL history list.
- When the entry in Bookmark exceeds the maximum recordable number, the confirmation screen appears. Select a Bookmark to overwrite.
- Bookmark exported to miniSD memory card can be copied to other devices. (Some devices do not support the function.)

Bookmark

#### **Displaying Internet/i-mode sites from Bookmark**

- Press (i 🕨
- Select a folder and press (•).
- Select a Bookmark to display and press (•).

#### Displaying/copying URL of Bookmark

- ① Press ( Function ) ► I T View/Copy URL".
- URL is displayed. Press (•) to connect. Press (I) [Copy] to copy.
- Composing mails with attached URL of **Bookmark** 
  - 1 Press (i) [Function] > 4 2 "Compose message".
    - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing" and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

#### Information

Press (i) [Function] > 3. "Bookmark list", to operate from the displayed site on the screen.

#### **Creating folder**

- · Up to 8 folders can be created including Main folder.
- Press (i)



Press [ [Function] > 1 Create folder".

#### Enter a folder name and press (•).

 Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Sorting folders

- · Main folder cannot be sorted.
- ① Press (i [Function] > IT "Sort folders".
- 2 Select a folder, and press •.
- 3 Select a destination to move and press (•).
  - When sorting other folders, repeat Step (2) to 3.
- 4 Press (i) [Complete].

#### Displaying all Bookmarks in folders

log".

#### Moving Bookmark to folder

Select a Bookmark and press [IFunction] ▶ I " Move to folder". Press / . Move".

#### Moving by option

- 1 Press 2 "Move option".
- Select a Bookmark and press (•). • Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Moving all

- 1 Press **J** Move all in folder".
  - Press I "Move all" while displaying Bookmark log.
- Select the destination to move in and press (•).

#### 🖊 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".

• Press 2mm "No" to cancel.

#### Editing title of Bookmark/folder

The name of Main folder cannot be changed.

#### Select a Bookmark and press (i) [Function] > 2<sup>-</sup> "Edit title".

 Select a folder and press (i) [Function] ZAR "Edit folder name", to edit the folder name.

#### Enter a new title and press $(\bullet)$ .

 Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a title. Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a folder name.

#### **Deleting Bookmark/folder**

#### **Deleting folder**

- · Main folder cannot be deleted.
- · Bookmarks saved in folders are also deleted.
- Select a folder and press (i) [Function] >  $\mathcal{I}_{\mathfrak{L}}$  "Delete folder".
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- Press / : "Yes".
  - Press [24]" No" to cancel.

#### **Deleting Bookmark**

Select a Bookmark and press (i) [Function] > ( > 2<sup>4</sup>) "Delete".

#### Press Is "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- ① Press ⊇≝ "Delete option".
- ② Select a Bookmark to delete and press •.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all in fldr".
  - Press 🖅 "Delete all" while displaying Bookmark log.
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.

Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <sup>ZABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Screen memo

#### Saving site contents

The contents currently displayed on the screen can be saved as Screen memo.

#### Saving Screen memo

The number allowed to save varies according to the data size of saved Screen memo.

Up to 100 entries can be registered.

- Press (i [Function] ▶ प<u></u> ""Screen memo", while displaying the site to save.
- Select a folder to save and press •.

#### 3 Enter the title and press O.

- Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Characters exceeding the maximum character number are to be deleted.
- A screen memo without a title is saved as "No title".

#### Information

When the data in Screen memo exceeds the maximum data in size or number, the confirmation message is displayed. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete Screen memo in FOMA terminal, until the required space becomes available.

#### **Displaying Screen memo**



Select a folder and press •.

#### 3 Select a Screen memo and press •.

- Basic operation of Screen memo function is the same as that on the original site, with some exceptions such as function menu. →P185
- Icon definitions are as follows.
  - 🗐 : Normal Screen memo
  - 📰 : Protected Screen memo
  - 🖷 : No UIM (FOMA card)
  - Protected Screen memo with no UIM (FOMA card)

#### Displaying the property of the selected Screen memo

Press i [Function] ► *G*<sup>MOD</sup> "File property".

• Press (i) [Function] ► 🖅 "File property", while displaying Screen memo.

#### **Creating folders**

- Up to 8 folders can be created including Main folder.
- 2 Press i [Function] ► I = "Create folder".

#### Enter a folder name and press •.

• Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Sorting folders

- Main folder cannot be sorted.
- **②** Select a folder, and press ●.
- ③ Select a destination to move and press ●.
   Repeat Step ② to ③ to sort other folders.
- 4 Press i [Complete].
- Displaying all Screen memos in folders
  - ① Press : [Function] ► 5 ☆ "Screen memo log".

#### Moving Screen memo to folders

- Select a Screen memo and press
   (i) [Function] ▶ (∃) "Move to folder".
- 🤈 Press 🖅 "Move".

#### Moving by option

- 1 Press 2 "Move option".
- 2 Select a Screen memo and press •.
  - Press 

     to release.
- 3 Press 间 [Exec.]

#### Moving all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Move all in folder".
  - Press **I** "Move all" while displaying Screen memo log.

# Screen memo

- Select the destination to move in and press (•).
- 👖 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".
  - Press 24 "No" to cancel.

#### Changing the title of Screen memo or folder

- The name of Main folder cannot be changed.
  - Select a Screen memo and press [Function] > 1 "Edit title".
    - · Select a folder on Screen memo folder list screen and press (■ [Function] > 24 "Edit folder name", to edit the folder name.



#### Enter a new title and press (•).

· Up to 12 two-byte (Full Mark)/24 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a title. Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered as a folder name

#### Information

● Press ( Function ) ► [ ] "Edit title", to edit the title while displaying Screen memo.

#### Deleting Screen memo or folder

· You cannot delete protected Screen memo. Even if deleting all, protected screen memo are not deleted. Also folders with protected Screen memos cannot be deleted. Release the protection of Screen memo first to delete.

#### Deleting folder

- · Main folder cannot be deleted.
  - Select a folder and press [Function] ▶ 𝒵 "Delete folder".
- Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- Press / Pres".
  - Press 2<sup>-</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### **Deleting Screen memo**

- Select a Screen memo and press (i) [Function] ▶ 7<sup>™</sup> "Delete".
- Press **/** "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2\* "Delete option".
- Select a Screen memo and press (•). Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press IT "Delete all in fldr".
  - Press I" "Delete all" while displaying Screen memo log.
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- Press / \* "Yes". 3
  - Press 2<sup>-</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press 🚺 [Function] > [4] "Delete", to delete Screen memo displayed on the screen.

#### Protecting Screen memo

- Up to 50 Screen memos can be protected.
- Select a Screen memo and press
  - [Function] ▶ ⊇<sup>A</sup> "Protect".
  - appears on the icon.
- Releasing the protection
  - 1 Select a Screen memo and press [Function] ▶ 2<sup>A</sup> "Release".
  - 2 Press I: "Release".

 Press 2<sup>-</sup>
 Release all and press 1<sup>\*</sup> "Yes", to release all the protected Screen memos.

#### Information

Press (i) [Function] > 277 "Protect", to protect the displayed Screen memo. Press (■ [Function] > 279 "Release", to release protection.

#### <Sort>

#### Sorting Screen memo

Sort Screen memos temporarily.

- Press (i [Function]] >  $\underline{422}$  "Sort", on Screen memo list screen.
- Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $E_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Svg date (new→o)	Sorts by saved date in order from new to old.
Svg date (old→n)	Sorts by saved date in order from old to new.
Title(asc.)	Sorts by titles in ascending order.
Title(des.)	Sorts by titles in descending order.
Prot/ unprot order	Sorts Screen memos in order from protected to unprotected.
Unprot/ prot order	Sorts Screen memos in order from unprotected to protected.

#### Information

●When closing Screen memo list, the sorting order returns to "Svg date (new → o)".

#### Save image

## Downloading images from sites or messages

Save images from the sites or MessageR/F displayed on the screen and you can set them as Stand-by display etc.

Display a site with images and press (i) [Function] ► 5 ± "Save image".



The image is framed.

• Press (Bar) to return to the screen of the site or MessageR/F.

#### 

- Press (i [BG. Img] ► Is "Yes", to save the background image.
- Press <sup>→</sup> <sup>ABC</sup> <sup>→</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Select a folder and press •.

- Selectable folders are "i-mode", "Deco-mail picture" or "User folder" in My picture.
- Only "Item" folder is available to select for Frame of Stamp image.

#### ✓ Press 1<sup>\*</sup> "Yes" or 2<sup>\*</sup> "No".

- Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Yes" and the list available to set images is displayed. →P278
- You can select another image to save after saving an image. Press (Built to end the screen, and returns to the site screen.

#### Information

- The number of data allowed to save in FOMA terminal → P274
- The maximum size for 1 file to be saved in FOMA terminal is approximately 100 KB.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- When the size of a still image is larger than the screen, the images are reduced to display.
- Some GIF images cannot be saved when the size is over 640 × 480 (or 240 × 320 in animation GIF format), in width and height or height and width. Also some JPEG types may not be saved.
- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

#### i-melody

## Downloading i-melody from sites

Download i-melody from sites displayed on the screen, and you can set the melody to Ring tone.

- Select a melody to download from a site and press •.
  - Download is canceled by pressing

    [Cancel].
- 2 Press one of  $I^{*}$  to  $5^{*}$ .

Play	Plays melodies.
Save	Saves melodies. The melody is saved in "Data box" → "Melody" → "i-mode" folder.
Set	Sets melodies. (1) Select an item to set, and press ().
File property	Displays the property.
Back	Returns to the site screen. • A confirmation screen appears when not saving the data. Press [f] "Yes" or [2 <sup>-m</sup> ]" "No".

#### Information

- ●The maximum number of data to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size for each data →P274
- Some melodies may not be played correctly.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

## Downloading Menu icons or data from sites

Download the original data (Menu icon, National holidays, Dictionary data, Category icons) or Deco-mail templates from the site "どこでも SANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" for various usages.

## Select data to download from a site and press ().

• Download is canceled by pressing (Cancel].

Save image

#### **2** Select an item and press $\odot$ .

View	Displays data. • "Preview" appears for Deco-mail template.
Save	Original data is saved in "Life tools" → "Original data". • Press (7.3°) "Yes" or (2.4°)" "No" for Deco-mail template. The image is saved in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Deco-mail picture" folder.
Set	<ul> <li>Uses data.</li> <li>③ Select an item to set, and press ④.</li> <li>* "Compose message" appears for Deco-mail template.</li> </ul>
File property	Displays the property.
Back	Returns to the site screen. • A confirmation screen appears when not saving the data. Press [**] "Yes" or [2**]" No".

#### Information

- The maximum number of data to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size for each data →P274
- ●About the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" →P183
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

#### Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions

By using phone numbers/mail addresses/URL displayed on sites, functions of Voice phone/ Videophone (Phone To/AV Phone To), composing i-mode mails (Mail To) or connecting to sites (Web To) are available. You can also save the data in Phonebook.

- Some functions may not be supported in some sites.
- When receiving mails from PC etc., Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function may not be available.

## Functions available by selecting the phone number

• Up to 26 digits of numbers are available as a phone number.

Select a phone number and press •.

#### 2 Select an item and press •.

Dial phone call Dial videophone	Makes a voice call.         ① Press [] "Dial" or [] """         "Cancel".         • Caller ID/Add number settings*         →P55         Makes a videophone call.         ① Press [] "Dial" or [] """         "Cancel".
	<ul> <li>Caller ID/Add number settings*</li> <li>→P55</li> </ul>
New to phonebook	<ul> <li>Registers a new entry to</li> <li>Phonebook.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P95</li> <li>"Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to</li> <li>6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Add to phonebook	<ul> <li>Registers an additional entry to Phonebook.</li> <li>③ Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Copy phone number	Copies phone numbers.

\* Select "Reset" and press 
 on Add number menu, to delete the added number.

## Functions available by selecting E-mail address

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters are available as an E-mail address.
- Select an E-mail address and press ●.
- 2 Select an item and press •.

Compose message	Composes a new message. • Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i- mode mail" Step 4 to 6
New to phonebook	Registers a new entry to Phonebook. • Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
Add to phonebook	<ul> <li>Registers an additional entry to Phonebook.</li> <li>⑦ Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P107</li> <li>"Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Copy mail address	Copies mail addresses.

#### Functions available by selecting URL

#### Select a URL and press •.

#### $\mathbf{2}$ Select an item and press $\mathbf{O}$ .

-	-
Connect to	Connects to sites.
site	<ol> <li>Press i [Connect].</li> </ol>
Store	Stores a new Bookmark.
bookmark	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P188</li> <li>"Registering in Bookmark"</li> <li>Step 2 to 3</li> </ul>
New to	Registers a new entry to
phonebook	Phonebook.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Add to	Registers an additional entry to
phonebook	Phonebook.
	<ol> <li>Select a Phonebook entry and press ●.</li> </ol>
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P107</li> </ul>
	"Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
Copy URL	Copies URLs.

#### Information

- When several addresses are listed, Mail To function may not be available.
- Press ( [Function] > 5 ( "New to phonebook" or ( ) "Add to phonebook", to register from Bookmark list screen.

#### i-mode setting

#### Setting i-mode

#### Sets functions regarding i-mode.



Menu	Function	Page
Scroll	Sets the number of scrolling lines to display sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.	P196
lmage display	Sets whether to display images when displaying sites, Screen memo or MessageR/F.	P196
Message auto- display	Sets MessageR/F to display automatically on receiving.	P197
Melody att. message	Sets whether to play melodies attached to MessageR/F automatically.	P197

Menu	Function	Page
i-motion auto play	Sets whether to play downloaded i-motion automatically.	P202
Use phone information	Sets whether to use the terminal information for displaying sites or Flash movies.	P195
Sound effect	Sets whether to play Sound effect with Flash movies on sites or Screen memo.	P195
Check new message	Checks the storage status of i-mode mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center. The setting is the same as Check new message setting in Mail setting.	P230
Connection timeout	Sets the timeout to connect to the i-mode Center.	P194
Host setting	Sets Host for other services than i-mode.	P195
Certif. Center host	Sets Host to use other services than FirstPass.	P201
Certificate	Sets Valid/Invalid of Certificates which is required for SSL connection, and confirms details.	P199
Client certificate	Enables a user to apply to issue or download Client certificate form the FirstPass center.	P199
Check i-mode setting	Enables a user to check "i-mode setting".	P196
Reset i-mode setting	Resets "i-mode setting" to the default.	P196

#### <Connection timeout>

#### **Setting Connection timeout**

Default 60 seconds

Sets the time to terminate the connection automatically when no reply returns from the site.



#### Press one of $I_{\Re}$ to $\exists_{\Re}$ .

60 seconds	Terminates the connection automatically after 60 seconds without any reply.
90 seconds	Terminates the connection automatically after 90 seconds without any reply.
Unlimited (no setting)	Does not cancel connection.

#### Information

Even being set to "Unlimited (no setting)", connection with the i-mode Center may be terminated under the poor radio wave condition.

#### <Host setting>

#### Changing Host from i-mode (ISP connection communication)

	Default	i-mode (UIM)
--	---------	--------------

No setting change is needed for general use.

Sets Host for other services than i-mode.

- · Up to 10 Hosts can be registered.
- · Default Host on subscribing i-mode differs according to the region where the subscription is made.
- Separate subscription to the provider is required to use ISP communication. Some provider services may charge the optional fee.
- i-mode service is unavailable when Host is changed.
  - Press (i 🕨 😡

Select "None stored" and press (i) [Edit].

Changing to the host previously set

(1) Select the preset Host and press  $(\bullet)$ .

Returning settings to use i-mode

1 Press I "I "i-mode (UIM)".

#### Deleting the preset Host

- 1 Select the preset Host and press [Delete].
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press ().
- 3 Press / \* "Yes".
  - Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

#### Enter the title and press (•).

 Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Enter the Host name and press (•).

• Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

#### Enter the Host address and press $(\bullet)$ .

· Up to 30 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

#### Enter the Host address 2 and press $(\bullet)$ .

- · Up to 30 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and marks can be entered.
- Confirm the contents and press [Complete].

Host is changed.

#### Information

- Note that the packet communication fee is not included in the Pake-Houdai service when connecting to other services than i-mode.
- You cannot set or change Host during communication.

#### <Use phone information>

#### Setting whether to use registered data for displaying Flash movies

Default	Use

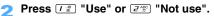
Sets whether to use the terminal information for displaving Flash movies of Screen memo or sites. Following terminal information is used by Flash movies.

- Battery level

- Select language

- Reception level - Time information
  - Ringer volume
  - Model information





#### <Sound effect>

#### Setting whether to play Sound effect of Flash movies



Sets whether to play Sound effect with Flash movies of sites or Screen memo.

- Press (i) **7**<sup>PORS</sup>
- Press I \* "Play" or Play".

#### Information

- Press [] [Function] > () > () > [] "Sound effect". to operate while displaying sites.
- Sound effects may not be played with some Flash movies, even being set to "Play".

#### Setting not to display the images

Default Display

1-line

Sets whether to display images when displaying sites/Screen memo/MessageR/F.

Press (i) 4 Z^ABC.

Press I : "Display" or I I Not display".

B appears on sites in substitution for the undisplayed images.

· Flash movies are not displayed when "Not display" is set.

#### Information

- Images attached to MessageR/F are displayed, even when "Not display" is set.
- Press (I) [Function] > () > (I) "Image display", to operate while displaying sites.
- Some images may not be displayed correctly even when "Display" is set.

#### <Scroll >

#### Setting scrolling lines



Press (i) > 1.0

Press one of 1 to 5 to .

#### <Check i-mode setting>

Checking the setting status of i-mode function



<Reset i-mode setting>

Resetting each setting to default

Press (i) 

- Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- Press 18 "Yes".
  - Press 2 "No" to cancel.

**Receive message** 

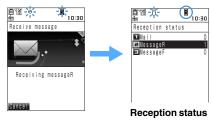
#### When receiving MessageR/F

#### MessageR/F is received automatically when FOMA terminal is within the service area. The received MessageR/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 MessageR/50 MessageF can be saved.
- MessageR/F sent under following conditions are stored in the i-mode Center:
  - During a videophone call
- Under self mode
- Exchanging infrared data
- During data communication
- The power is off
- Out of service area
- When MessageR/F list is full of protected/ unread messages
- Connecting to FirstPass center

#### **Receive MessageR/F.**

and **R**/**F** blink while receiving messages. When completing receiving messages, S blinks and R or F appears. MessageR/F ring tone plays, and the number of received message is displayed with lighting/ blinking incoming call lamp.



- screen Press 
   [Cancel] to cancel receiving messages. However, MessageR/F may be
- received depending on the receiving condition. With no key operation for about 30 seconds after displaying Reception status, the screen automatically returns to the screen before receiving. When receiving messages set in Message auto-display, unread MessageR/F contents are automatically displayed without any key operation before returning from
- Reception status screen. Under Multitask, auto-display function is unavailable.

#### Displaying new MessageR/F

#### <Example> Displaying received MessageR

- Press 2<sup>-</sup> "MessageR" on Reception status screen.
  - Press I'' "MessageF" to display MessageF.
- Select a MessageR.
  - Reading MessageR/F →P198

Receive message

#### Information

- Receiving screen and Reception status screen may not be displayed depending on Display priority setting. →P232
- When FOMA terminal receives MessageR/F, the MessageR/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size for MessageR/F, unprotected read MessageR/F are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect necessary MessageR/F to keep.
- When MessageR/F remains in the i-mode Center, appears. Note that there may be some conditions that the icons are not displayed when Message R/F are stored in the i-mode Center (ex: when powered off or out of service area). Also if the number of stored messages (→P181) reached to the maximum size in the i-mode Center, (i orange) or (orange) appears.
- If you failed to receive mails, retry receiving by checking new message.

#### <Message auto-display>

#### **Displaying MessageR/F automatically**

Default MessageR preferred

Sets MessageR/F to display automatically on receiving.

- Press (i ► 🙀 ► 🖅.
- **2** Press one of  $I^{*}$  to  $5^{*}$ .

MessageR preferred	Auto-displays MessageR preferentially.
MessageR only	Auto-displays MessageR only.
MessageF preferred	Auto-displays MessageF preferentially.
MessageF only	Auto-displays MessageF only.
Not auto display	Does not display MessageR/F automatically.

#### <Melody att. message>

#### Auto-playing melody attached to MessageR/F

Default Auto play melody

When displaying MessageR/F with a melody attached, set whether to play the melody automatically.



2 Press *[*'\$] "Auto play melody" or *⊇*<sup>∞</sup> "Not auto play melody".

#### Check new message

#### **Checking MessageR/F**

## Check whether new MessageR/F is stored in the i-mode Center while the terminal has been out of service area or powered off.

• Note that new messages cannot be checked under the poor radio wave condition.



MessageR/F is received when messages are stored in the i-mode Center.

• The operation for checking i-mode mails is the same as for checking MessageR/F.

#### Information

- ●You can also check messages by pressing ► [Check]].
- If any MessageR/F is saved in the i-mode Center, appears. Note that there may be some conditions that the icons are not displayed when Message R/F are stored in the i-mode Center (when powered off or out of service area).
- The default setting of checking new message is to receive all mails of i-mode mail/MessageR/ MessageF. To avoid receiving MessageR or MessageF, release the setting.

#### MessageR/MessageF

#### Displaying MessageR/F stored in message boxes

The received MessageR/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

#### <Example> Displaying MessageR

- Press i 🕨 🔤
  - Displays MessageR list screen.
  - Press 
     Message F" to display MessageF.

#### **2** Select a MessageR and press **()**.

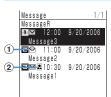
Displays the MessageR screen.

#### Information

- When setting "Attach melody setting" to "Auto-play" and displaying MessageR/F with melodies, melodies automatically start playing with the volume of Ring tone set for each of MessageR and MessageF. Press
   to stop playing the melody halfway.
- Press [Function] > I Check attachment", to check attachment files of received messages.
- Images displayed on received messages can be saved in FOMA terminal. →P220
- Melodies can be saved in FOMA terminal. The operation is the same as saving melodies from i-mode mails. →P219
- The function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To are available to use.

#### List screen/display screen of MessageR/F

#### MessageR/F list screen



#### 1 Message type

- M: Unread message
- 💁: Read message
- 📲 appears when the message is protected.

#### Attachment type

- 💵 : Still image\*
- D: Melody\*
- \* I still image/Melody [without inserting UIM (FOMA card), etc.]
- 🛛 : Invalid file
- w appears when the message is deleted.

#### MessageR/F display screen



#### 1 Message type/Attachment file type

• The icons are the same as MessageR/F list screen.

#### Item type

- (L): Received date **sb**: Subject and time
- 🖌 : Message

#### <Reload images>

#### Reloading images in MessageR/F

Reloads an image in a message which is failed to retrieve.

- Some images may not be displayed even attempted reloading.
- 1 Press i [Function] on MessageR/F list screen ► 4 2 "Reload image".

#### <Protect>

#### Protecting MessageR/F

- You can save up to the maximum recordable number of MessageR/F with protection.
- Select a MessageR/F on MessageR/F list screen, and press (i) [Function] ► 2<sup>m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Protect".
  - Pappears on the icon.

#### Releasing the protection

#### ① Select a MessageR/F and press [Function] ► Zmp "Release".

- Press 1: "Release".
- Press 2<sup>+</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" "Release all" and press 1<sup>\*</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"
   "Yes", to release all the protected
   MessageR/F.

#### Information

● Press (I [Function] ▶ *T* "Protect", to protect on MessageR/F screen. Press (I [Function] ▶ *T* "Release", to release protection.

#### <Sort>

#### Sorting MessageR/F

Sorts MessageR/F list temporarily.

- **Press one of**  $I \stackrel{\text{\tiny OP}}{=} to$   $I \stackrel{\text{\tiny OP}}{=} t$ .

Rcptn date (new→o)	Sorts mails by Received date from new to old.
Rcptn date	Sorts mails by Received date
(old→n)	from old to new.
Subject	Sorts Subjects in ascending
(ascend.)	order.
Subject (descend.)	Sorts Subjects in descending order.

#### Information

When MessageR/F screen is closed, the sorting order returns to "Rcptn date (new → o)".

#### <Search>

#### Displaying MessageR/F after searching

You can search MessageR/F by specifying the search requirement from MessageR/F list screen.

Press i [Function] ► Is "Search", on MessageR/F list screen.

#### **Press one of** $I_{\frac{\infty}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{\infty}{2}}$ .

Search unread	Extracts unread MessageR/F.
Search read	Extracts read MessageR/F.
Search protected	Extracts protected MessageR/F.
Search attached	Extracts MessageR/F with attachments.

#### Re-searching after the search

- Press i [Function] ▶ I<sup>\*</sup> "Search" ▶
   I<sup>\*</sup> "Re-search".
  - The following operation is the same as Step 2 above.
  - · The first search result is deleted.

#### Returning from the search result

① Press i [Function] ► I: "Search" ► ਟ☆ "Release search".

#### <Delete>

#### **Deleting MessageR/F**

• Protected MessageR/F cannot be deleted. Release the protection and delete messages.

#### Press I "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2 "Delete option".
- Select a MessageR/F and press .
  Press to release.
- ③ Press 🔋 [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all".
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.
  - Press **J**<sup>\*</sup> "Delete all srchd" while displaying searching log.

<sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <sup>→</sup> <sup>ABC</sup> <sup>\*</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Press (i [Function] ) 5 "Delete", to delete from MessageR/F screen.

### SSL certificate

Using SSL certificate

Default All selected

## Sets Valid/Invalid of Certificates which is required for SSL connection, and confirms details.

All certificates are set to Valid by default.

- When you have not downloaded any Client certificate, "Client certificate" is not displayed.
- When blue UIM (FOMA card) is inserted in FOMA terminal, "DoCoMo certificate" or "Client certificate" is not displayed.



#### 2 Select a certificate.

- Press (•) to switch between Valid/Invalid.
- Select the certificate and press 
  [Detail], to confirm the contents.

#### **Press i** [Complete] to complete the setting.

#### Information

- Certificates are issued by the certifiers, and saved in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate is required to connect to the FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites, and saved in UIM (FOMA card) of green color.
- Client certificate is required to connect to FirstPass compatible sites and can be downloaded from the FirstPass center. The downloaded certificate is saved in UIM (FOMA card) of green color.

#### **Client certificate**

#### Setting FirstPass

#### You can apply for issuance of Client certificate or download it from the FirstPass center.

- For connecting to FirstPass compatible sites, download Client certificate and save it to the green UIM (FOMA card). Connection to the sites is not available when blue UIM (FOMA card) is inserted.
- Set the date and time before connecting to the FirstPass center.
- The screens and operations displayed on the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- While connecting to the FirstPass center, you cannot send/receive the mails or receive MessageR/F.





#### Press 1: "Request your certificate".

```
FirstPass
You have requested a cer
tificate.
Refer to the usage regul
ation for more details.
Continue/Menu
```

#### Using FirstPass for the first time

Read "The usage regulation" carefully and agree to use FirstPass.

#### Revoking the request of certificate

Select "Other settings" and select "Revoke your certificate".

Enter PIN2 code and follow to the screen indication.

#### 4 Check the contents on the screen, select "Yes" and press ●.

- ᇊ Press 💽.
- S Enter the PIN2 code and press ().
- 7 Confirm the message, select "Download" and press •.
- Confirm the contents on the screen, select "Continue" and press ●.

#### Information

- Packet communication fee for connecting to or using the FirstPass center is free of charge.
- Packet communication fee is included in Pake-Houdai service for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites under i-mode.
- For issuing Client certificate newly or for update, be sure to download after requesting to issue. Client certificate without requesting issuance cannot be downloaded.
- Client certificate is the proof of your subscription to the FOMA service. Downloaded Client certificate is saved to the green UIM (FOMA card) and used in the FirstPass compatible sites (supporting Client certificate).

Install the FirstPass PC software in PC from the attached CD-ROM, and FirstPass communication is established by connecting FOMA terminal to PC. Refer to "FirstPass Manual" in CD-ROM for details. To view "FirstPass Manual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is needed. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site. (Communication fee is separately charged for download.) Refer to Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site for details.

#### Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authentication.
- You can use FirstPass in Internet communication from a FOMA terminal or in the condition that FOMA terminal is connected to a PC. To use the FirstPass with PC, FirstPass PC software bundled in the CD-ROM is needed.
- Before requesting Client certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass usage regulation" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate.
- All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as user's operations. Be cautious not to let the UIM (FOMA card) or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM (FOMA card) is lost or stolen, contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual so that you can revoke the Client certificate.
- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for any sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Settle any issue that between the user and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certifiers provide any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

#### Certificate center host

#### Changing the host for certificate

Default DoCoMo

Sets the Host for downloading Client certificate. If changing the setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

No setting change is needed for general use.



- Select "None stored" and press
   i [Edit].
  - Changing to the preset user-defined host ① Press 2\*\* "User defined host".
  - Resetting the setting to use FirstPass
    - 1 Press I "DoCoMo".

#### Deleting the user-defined host

- ② Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- ③ Press (1) ""Yes".
   Press (2) "No" to cancel.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ().
- Enter the Host name and press •.
  - Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

Enter the Host address and press •.

- Up to 100 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.
- Confirm the contents and press
   i [Complete].

Host is changed.

#### i-motion

Download movies or sounds (i-motion) from i-mode/Internet sites to FOMA terminals, and you can play or set the data to Ring tone (Chakumotion). (Some i-motion does not support Chaku-motion function.)

#### i-motion type

i-motion is divided into two main types. The type of downloaded i-motion depends on sites.

#### Standard type

Enables a user to save to FOMA terminal.

- You cannot save some standard type i-motion.
- Playable after downloading (up to approximately 500 KB)
- Playable while downloading (up to approximately 500 KB)
- Streaming type (not applicable to this FOMA SA702i)

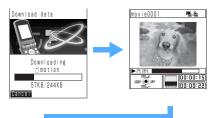
Streaming is the type to play and download data simultaneously, and the data is to be deleted after being played. Data up to approximately 2 MB is playable, however, cannot be repeated or saved to FOMA terminal.

#### Download i-motion

#### Downloading i-motion from sites

- Some downloaded i-motion may not be saved to FOMA terminal.
- Unable to download or play i-motion in ASF format. i-motion only in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and/or played.

#### Select i-motion and press •.



i-mode/i-motion



- When i-motion auto play is set to "Auto play", i-motion starts playing automatically. If not set, Downloaded data menu is displayed.
- Press 🖻 [Cancel] to stop downloading.
- i-motion that is playable while downloading and i-motion auto play is set to "Auto play", the data is played while downloading.





- Following operations are available while playing:
  - 💽: Pause/Resume
- 💿: Rewind
- 🖻: Stop
- (): Adjust volume
- (): Fast-forward
- Following operations are available while pausing:
  - 💽: Step-forward
  - 💿: Step-rewind
- Unable to play with the functions of fast-forward, rewind, step-forward and step-rewind while downloading.

#### Saving i-motion

#### Press <sup>∠ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "Save".

i-motion is saved in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "i-mode" folder.

#### Setting i-motion as Stand-by display, etc.

#### 1 Press 🖅 "Set".

• Following procedure: →P283 "Setting movie/ i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3

#### Displaying the property of i-motion

1 Press  $\underline{\Psi}_{\underline{\pi}}$  "File property".

#### Returning without saving

- ① Press 5 號 "Back" ▶ 7 號 "Yes".
  - Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝑘</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- ●The maximum number of data to save in FOMA terminals, and the maximum size for each data →P274
- Some i-motion may not be playable while downloading data.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not play properly.
- i-motion with Play restriction
- Play count/Play period/Play duration may be set to some i-motion data. i-motion restricted by Play period cannot be played before or after the period. The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for a long period of time. In the case, you cannot play i-motion restricted by Play period or Play duration.
- Before playing i-motion restricted by Play count/ Play period/Play duration, you can confirm the status of Play count/Play period/Play duration.

- When playing i-motion while downloading, playing may stop temporarily in wait for data reception. In this case, playing is automatically resumed when starting to receive data.
- When playing i-motion while downloading, playing may stop or images may be blurred depending on the poor radio wave conditions. In this case, playing is resumed after completion of downloading i-motion.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297
- If you play i-motion which exceeds the bit rate\* as below, dropping frames or sounds may occur.
  - The types playable after downloading

Image	: 128 Kbps
Sound	: 128 Kbps

- The types playable while downloading

Image	:	64	Kbp
Image	:	64	Kbp

- Sound : 80 Kbps
- \* Bit rate indicates the data size of compressed image/audio data per second.

#### i-motion auto play

## Setting whether to play i-motion automatically

Default Auto play



Press *I* <sup>®</sup> "Auto play" or *I*<sup>™</sup> "Not auto play".

## Mail

i-mode mail
Displaying Mail menu
Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail
Composing and sending i-mode mail < Compose/send i-mode mail> 209
Composing and sending Deco-mail
Using Template
Attaching file < Melody/Still image/Movie image/i-motion mail> 214
Saving i-mode mail and sending later
Composing i-mode mail quickly
Receiving and handling i-mode mail
When receiving i-mode mail
Selecting i-mode mail to receive
Checking i-mode mail
Replying to i-mode mail
Forwarding i-mode mail to other address. <forward i-mode="" mail=""> 219</forward>
Playing/saving melody on i-mode mail
Displaying/saving images attached to mails < Save image> 220
Playing/saving i-motion attached to i-motion mails <i-motion mail=""> 220</i-motion>
Operating mail box
Displaying mails in Inbox/Outbox
<pre></pre>
Procedure on list screen/message screen
Useful functions of mail227
Searching mails by quoting Phonebook 228
Using mail history
Using mail history < Received address history/Sent address history > 228
Setting Mail
Setting Mail function of FOMA terminal
Using Chat mail
Composing and sending Chat mail <compose chat="" mail="" send=""> 232</compose>
Using SMS (Short Message)
Composing and sending SMS (Short Message)
When receiving SMS (Short Message)
Checking whether SMS (Short Message) is stored <check sms=""> 236</check>
Setting SMS (Short Message)
Saving SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card)

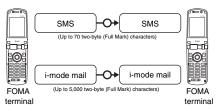
#### i-mode mail

## FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode mail and SMS.

- Application for i-mode service is required for using i-mode mail.
- · SMS is available without applying i-mode.

#### Sending/receiving mails

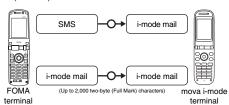
#### FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



#### FOMA terminal → mova i-mode terminal

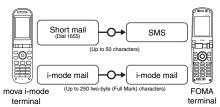
SMS sent from FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at mova i-mode terminal.

\* SMS cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova i-mode terminal when "SMS report request" (→P236) is set.



#### mova i-mode terminal → FOMA terminal

You can receive i-mode mail and Short Mail sent from mova i-mode terminal. Short Mail is received as SMS.



- \* Short Mail is the service for the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.
  - FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova i-mode terminal as SMS.

#### Overview of i-mode mail

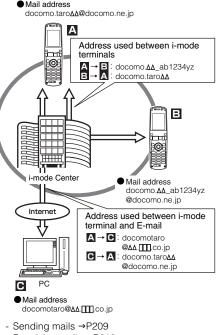
Application for i-mode service allows to exchange E-mails between i-mode terminals (including mova) or through Internet.

i-mode mail address primarily assigned with the contract is as follows.

#### Newly applying for i-mode service

Random alphanumeric characters are set to the address before the symbol "@". Be sure to check your E-mail address after applying for i-mode. <<u>Example> abc1234\_789xyz@docomo.ne.jp</u> <Checking your E-mail address> i-Menu → ENGLISH → (T) Options → (T) Mail Settings → Confirm Mail Address

- When exchanging mails between i-mode terminals (including mova), the mails can be sent only by the part before the symbol "@" in the address.
- When receiving E-mail from PC etc., the entire address including "@docomo.ne.jp" is required.



Receiving mails →P216

#### Receive option

Check the subject of mails stored etc. in the i-mode Center, and you can select mails to receive or delete mails in the center before receiving. →P217

a

#### **Operating mail settings**

Following mail settings are available.

#### Setting procedure

 $\begin{array}{l} \text{i-Menu} \rightarrow \text{ENGLISH} \rightarrow \underbrace{\varPsi_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{ans}}}_{\mathbb{C}} \text{ Options} \rightarrow \underbrace{\intercal_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{ans}}}_{\mathbb{C}} \end{array}$ Mail Settings  $\rightarrow$  each setting

\* Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" handed when applying for i-mode service.

## Changing E-mail address [Mail Settings (Change Mail Address)]

For example, you can change the part of preceding "@" to other address like

"docomo.taro\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp".

## Checking E-mail address [Mail Settings (Confirm Mail Address)]

Checks the current setting of E-mail address.

## ■ Registering Secret code [Mail Settings (Other Settings) → Register a Secret Code]

Secret code (4 digits) can be set in addition to E-mail address when quoting Phonebook. Mails without the Secret code are rejected on receiving, so that you can avoid receiving unnecessary mails.

#### ■ Resetting E-mail address [Mail Settings (Other Settings) → Reset Mail Address]

Renames "(mobile phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" as your mail address.

#### Spam Mail Prevention

Make Reject/Receive mail settings in one of the following procedure, and you can restrict incoming mails.

- Reject/Receive Mail Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → Reject/Receive Mail Settings]
  - Receives mails from the specified provider of DoCoMo, au, Vodafone, TU-KA or Willcom.
     In addition, receives mails from specified domains on addresses other than above providers. You can reject Internet mails impersonated as from mobile or PHS domains.
- ② SMS Rejection Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention) → SMS Rejection Settings]
  - Select a setting from "Reject All SMS", "Reject Anonymous SMS", "Reject Intl. SMS" and "Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS" to make restrictions for incoming SMS messages. You can also check the status of the setting.

#### ③ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) → Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

 Rejects the 200th and later i-mode mails sent from a single i-mode terminal (including a mova terminal) on the same day. Default setting is "Reject", and no further setting is required to reject messages from mass i-mode mail senders.

#### ④ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail [Receiving mail (Other Settings) → Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

 Rejects unsolicited ad mails with "未承諾広告※" at the beginning part of mail subject, sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receiver's consent. Default setting is "Reject", and no further setting is required to reject unsolicited ad mails. (Senders are required by law to add "未承諾広 告※" (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning part of mail subject.)

## Restricting mail size [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

Restrict i-mode mail size to receive by presetting the size.

## Checking mail setting status [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

Checks the current settings including receiving/ rejecting mails etc.

Suspend mail service [Suspend Mail]

Suspends mail service in the i-mode Center if unnecessary.

#### Number of characters to send/receive

The number of characters allowed to be sent/ received in i-mode mails is as follows.

Item	Two-byte (Full Mark) characters (Kanji, Hiragana, Picture, etc.)	One-byte (Half Mark) characters (Alphanumeric, Katakana, etc.)
Subject	15 characters	30 characters
Mail Address	-	50 characters
Message	5,000 characters	10,000 characters

#### Information

- Message of i-mode mail can include up to 5,000 of two-byte (Full Mark) characters (10,000bytes), however, the number of characters may become smaller depending on the size of attachment files.
- When the number of characters in Message exceeds the limit, "/" or "//" is inserted at the end and remainders are deleted automatically.
- When sending i-mode mails to mova i-mode terminal, messages can contain up to 2,000 two-byte (Full Mark) characters. i-shot and i-motion mails are sent with linked URL on Message, and other attachment files are deleted.
- When the subject exceeds the limited number of characters to receive, the remainders are deleted.
- Avoid using one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana characters or Picture, except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova). Mails may not be displayed correctly on the receiver's terminal.

#### When failed to receive mails

i-mode mails received in the i-mode Center are sent to receiver's i-mode terminals immediately. However, when receiver's i-mode terminal is disconnected due to outside of service area or power off, i-mode mails are stored in the i-mode Center. Stored messages are resent up to 3 attempts at certain intervals. You can also receive only the selected i-mode mails from the i-mode Center with Receive option setting.

#### Information

• The maximum number of i-mode mails or the storage period in the i-mode Center are as follows.

Item	Maximum messages stored	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 mails (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hrs

- i-mode mails which exceed the maximum storage period are automatically deleted.
- The maximum number of mails stored depends on the mail size. When exceeding the maximum number of mails to store, the i-mode Center rejects to accept i-mode mails and returns to the sender with error messages. In this case, appears on the i-mode terminal. However, when Receive option setting is "ON", does not appear even if stored mails exceed the preset maximum number.
- Mails stored in the i-mode Center can be received by Check new message (→P218) or Receive option (→P217). You can receive new i-mode mails with other stored i-mode mails and MessageR/F.
- ●i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center are deleted after received by i-mode terminals. The received i-mode mails are saved in i-mode terminal. →P216
- i-mode mails of extremely large volume may not be accepted in the i-mode Center.

#### Other convenient functions

#### Mail with attachment

#### Mails with melody attached

You can send/receive i-mode mails with melody file downloaded from i-mode/Internet sites. (Unable to send melody files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals.)

- On sending →P214
- On receiving →P219

#### Mails with image attached

You can send/receive i-mode mails with still image files downloaded from i-mode/Internet sites, or the external memory. (Unable to send still image files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals).

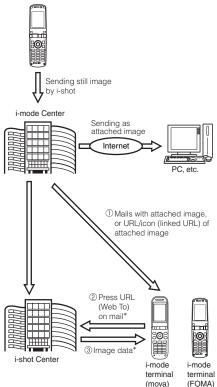
- On sending →P214
- On receiving →P220

#### i-shot

You can send/receive still images shot with Camera as attachment files between i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs and other mobile carriers. A still image is sent as the mail with the attachment file format, linked URL to browse the image (or icon) and the expiration date given automatically, then the image is downloaded by pressing the received URLs. The maximum number of characters of mails to send to mova i-mode terminal is 184 two-byte (Full Mark) (369 bytes). If multiple files are attached to mails, the attachments are deleted and only Message is notified.

- On sending →P214
- On receiving →P220

i-mode terminal (FOMA)



- \* On receiving mails containing URL of attached image
- The i-shot Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after the expiration period.
- You can send still images up to 500 KB from i-mode terminal. When sending the mails attaching the image of the size exceeding 20 KB, the receiver retrieves the image automatically compressed in size.

#### i-motion mail

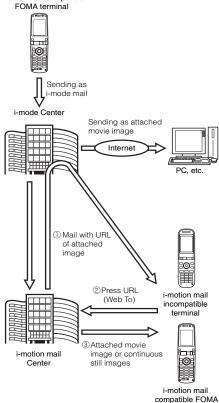
You can send/receive movie files shot with i-motion mail compatible terminals or downloaded from sites between i-motion mail compatible terminals, PC or terminals of other mobile carriers. (Unable to send movie files prohibited to be attached to mails or output from FOMA terminals).

- Sending i-motion mail →P214
- When receiving i-motion mail  ${\rightarrow}\mathsf{P220}$
- Service schematic

Movie files attached to i-motion mails are sent to the i-motion mail Center and stored. (If the destination is set to PC, the files are directly sent as attachment files.)

When receiving mails with i-motion mail compatible terminals, movies can be downloaded by selecting URL displayed in Message. When the mails are sent to i-motion incompatible terminals, i-motion is converted to a continuous still image and received as a mail with URL in the messages. The receiver selects the displayed URL and retrieves continuous still images.

#### i-motion mail compatible



• The i-motion mail Center stores images for up to 10 days and deletes the images automatically after the expiration period.

terminal

 Receivable movie images are up to 500 KB by i-motion mail compatible terminals. Retrieved movie images are to be automatically resized depending on the display size of i-motion mail compatible terminals.

#### Deco-mail

You can compose and send unique mails and receive delightful decoration mails, by changing the character size or background color or by pasting images in Message in editing i-mode mail. (Some decorated mails received from PCs may not be worked the same as on PCs since some decorations are incompatible to i-mode terminals.) When Deco-mail is sent to a terminal that does not support decorations, it is received as a message with URL. The receiver selects the displayed URL in the message and browses Deco-mail.

- Editing Deco-mail →P211
- Sending Deco-mail →P211
- Compatible model: Available for Deco-mail compatible terminals. Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

#### Sending a mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode mails to multiple (up to 5) addresses at the same time.  $\rightarrow$  P209

#### Information

 The communication fee is the same as sending only one mail. (However, the communication fee increases corresponding to the data volume for additional addresses.)

#### Sending/receiving Cc and Bcc

When editing i-mode mails, sending addresses can be set as To, Cc and Bcc in the same way as on PC. Note that at least 1 address for To is required to be specified to send mails.  $\rightarrow$ P209

#### Chat mail

You can exchange Chat mails like making conversation between multiple addresses.

#### Information

Communication fee is the same as sending mails to multiple addresses simultaneously.

#### SMS (Short Message)

Exchanges text messages between FOMA terminals.

- · You can save SMS received/sent in UIM (FOMA card). →P237
- · SMS report request is available to inform whether the other party has received SMS that you sent. →P236
  - Sending procedure →P235
  - Receiving procedure →P236
  - Inquiry procedure →P236

#### SMS (Short Message) address

The SMS address is the phone number given in the registration of service of DoCoMo.

#### Number of characters to send/receive

The number of characters to send/receive in SMS is as follows.

The maximum number of characters differs depending on Font type setting. →P237

Item	Font type "Japanese"	Font type "English"
Receiver	20 characters (only	numeric, +, +) *1
Message	70 characters regardless of one-byte (Half Mark)/ two-byte (Full Mark)	160 one-byte (Half Mark) characters * <sup>2</sup>
$*^1$ 21 characters when entering "+" in one bute at		

- \*1 21 characters when entering "+" in one-byte at the beginning of text.
- \*2 One-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters and symbols can be sent (excluding ',  $[ ], \cdot$ '). When symbols  $(| \{ \} [ ] \cong Y)$  are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

#### Information

- Subject of the mail cannot be sent with SMS.
- If using one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana or Picture in the message of SMS, the other party, may not be able to display characters correctly.

#### When being unable to receive SMS (Short Message)

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. If your FOMA terminal fails to receive mails by powering off or being outside of service area, the SMS is stored in the SMS Center.

#### Information

- SMS is stored in the SMS Center for up to 72 hours. You can specify the storage period for sent SMS. →P236
- SMS exceeding the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- SMS stored in the SMS Center can be checked by Check SMS. →P236
- SMS stored in the SMS Center is to be deleted after received by FOMA terminal. Received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal. →P236

#### Mail menu

#### **Displaying Mail menu**

#### Press .



Menu	Function	Page
Mail setting	Sets various functions about mails.	P229
Search personal	Selects a phone number or an E-mail address from Phonebook, and searches the relevant mail from Inbox/Outbox.	P228
Compose SMS message	Composes and sends new SMS.	P235
Check new message	Checks the storage of mails or MessageR/F in the i-mode Center.	P197, 218
Inbox	Displays received mails.	P221
Compose message	Composes and sends a new i-mode mail.	P209
Receive option	Receives selected mails from the i-mode Center.	P217
Outbox	Displays sent mails.	P221
Chat mail	You can exchange Chat mails like making conversation between multiple addresses.	P232
Check SMS	Checks the storage of SMS in the SMS Center.	P236
Unsent messages	Displays the mails saved without sending, or mails failed to be sent.	P221
Deco-mail template	Displays contents of templates and composes mails. You can also create new templates.	P213

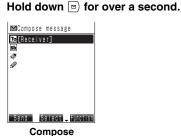
#### Information

● Alternatively, press ● ► 💭 "Mail", to display Main menu.

#### Compose/send i-mode mail

#### Composing and sending i-mode mail

Attaching files →P214



message screen

Select To "Receiver" and press (•).

#### Press **E** "Direct input", enter an address and press $(\bullet)$ .

• Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Quoting address from Phonebook

#### 1 Press II "Quote phonebook".

- · To specify an address for a mail using Multitask while editing Phonebook, you can quote Phonebook after you finish editing Phonebook.
- Select a Phonebook entry and press (•).
- 3 Select an E-mail address and press (•).
- Quoting address from Sent/Received addresses history
  - 1 Press 2 " Quote sent adrs" or 3 "Quote rcvd adrs".
  - Select an address history and press (•). 3 Press (•).

#### Quoting address from Sending group

- · Register the Sending group in Mail setting in advance.
- 1 Press 4 Cluote sending grp".
- 2 Select a group by pressing 😔.
- 3 Select "Receiver".
  - Press (•) to release an unnecessary receiver.
- 4 Press i [Complete].

#### Quoting address from Profile

- 1 Press 5 "Quote profile".
- Select an E-mail address and press •.

#### Editing address

(1) Select an E-mail address and press (•).

2 Press I: "Change receiver".

#### Changing To, Cc and Bcc

- (1) Select an E-mail address and press (•). 2 Press one of ∠<sup>4</sup> to 4<sup>4</sup>.
  - "To" is the main receiver address. You cannot send mails without specifying any address for "To".
  - · "Cc" is the address for sharing contents of mails with other receivers in addition to the main receiver.
  - · "Bcc" is the address for sharing contents of the mail without showing the address to other receivers. The E-mail address entered in "Bcc" is hidden to other receivers.

#### Deleting address

#### (1) Select an E-mail address and press (•). ② Press 5 ℃ "Delete receiver" > 1 ℃ "Yes".

#### Adding Receiver

Receiver field is automatically added after entering a receiver. Up to 5 receivers can be entered in the fields of To, Cc, and Bcc, and you can send the mail all together (Multiple address).

- · The communication fee is the same as sending one mail. (However, the communication fee increases corresponding to the data volume for additional addresses.) · You cannot add the same address.

#### 📶 Select 🖬 "Subject", press 💽, enter Subject and press $(\bullet)$ .

• Up to 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Select *P* "Message" and press (•), 5 then enter the message and press $(\bullet)$ .

- Up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 onebyte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- You can insert line feeds within the message. Press # to enter line feeds in 5-touch method. Line feeds are included in the character counts of Message.
- Message can be decorated as well. →P211

#### Entering blank spaces

#### 1 Press (i) [Function] > 7 " "Input space", while entering the messages.

 Press () to enter a space of one-byte (Half Mark) at the end of Message. Spaces are also included in the character counts of Message.

#### Inserting Signature

- · Signature requires to be created in advance.
- 1 Press (i) [Function] (i) (i) (i) (ii) (ii) (ii) (iii) (iii "Signature", while entering Message.
  - Alternatively, press i [Function] > III "Insert signature", on Compose message screen to insert Signature.

#### 2 Press one of I to IT.

 The number of characters of Signature is also included in the total character counts of Message.

Mail



#### Pasting Location information URL

- URL is included in the total character counts when pasting Location information URL.
- When sending a mail with Location information URL to mova i-mode terminals and the mail exceeds the character size of Message, be aware that the exceeded characters are deleted even in the middle of the whole URL.
- Press i [Function] ► ③ ► 7<sup>mm</sup> "Quote loc. info", while entering the message.
   Press one of 1<sup>mm</sup> to 5<sup>mm</sup>.

Position location	<ul> <li>Retrieves and pastes the present location information.</li> <li>Press  <ul> <li>on Position location result screen.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
From loc. history	Selects and pastes location information from Location history. ① Select Location history, and press ● ▶ ●.
From phonebook	<ul> <li>Selects and pastes the location information registered in Phonebook.</li> <li>① Search a Phonebook entry and press ● ▶ ●.</li> </ul>
From profile	Pastes location information registered in Profile. ① Press ● ▶ ●.
From image data	<ul> <li>Selects and pastes location information inserted to image data.</li> <li>① Select a file from a folder and press ● ▶ ●.</li> </ul>
From schedule	Pastes location information registered in Schedule. ① Select a schedule and press ● ▶ ●.

3 Press / \*\* "Yes".

Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>t</sub> "No" to cancel.
 ④.

#### 斉 Press 🖻 [Send].

• Press Discrete [Cancel] while connecting to cancel connection. However, the mail may be sent depending on some operation timing.

#### Information

- Alternatively, press ► Compose message", to display Compose message screen.
- Under the poor radio wave condition, characters may not be displayed properly on the other party's terminal.
- Even when i-mode mail has been sent normally, the error message "Transmission failed" may appear under the condition of poor radio wave condition.
- Avoid using one-byte (Half Mark) Katakana characters or Pictures, except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova). Characters may not be displayed correctly.
- Depending on the model of i-mode terminal used by the other party, some Pictures may not be displayed properly.
- ●When transmission fails, the error message appears and the i-mode mail is saved in Unsent messages. i-mode mail can be edited/sent from Unsent messages. →P216
- When transmission is completed properly, the i-mode mail is saved in Outbox. When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Outbox, unprotected Sent messages are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Sent messages that you need to keep. →P227
- Some error messages for unknown address etc., may not be received when messages are sent to E-mail addresses other than DoCoMo.
- When the other party registers the Secret code, enter the 4-digit Secret code after entering the phone number of the other party's i-mode terminal.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size for unsent or protected mails, i-mode mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode mails and/or SMS from Outbox/Unsent message box. →P227
- The E-mail address entered in To and Cc is displayed on the other party. However, To and Cc may not be displayed depending on terminals, devices, mailing software, etc. used by the other party.
- Signature is added automatically if registered and set in "Signature" at Mail setting.

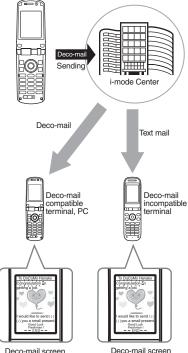
#### Deco-mail

#### Composing and sending Deco-mail

Deco-mail allows you to compose and send more expressive mails with variable Font color/ size, Deco-mail picture, and inserted images shot by Camera.

Deco-mail can be composed in two ways: entering characters after specifying decorations, or setting decorations after entering characters. →P212

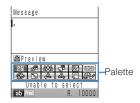
Images preinstalled by default →P363



Deco-mail screen

#### Entering characters after specifying decoration

- Select 🖉 "Message", press (•) and 🖻 1 [Decorate], on Compose message screen.
- Select a decoration from Pallet.



Place the cursor on the mark on Palette and press then the decoration is selected. Multiple decorations can be set by selecting multiple marks. Note that "Ticker", "Swing" and "Word alignment" cannot be selected at the same time.

#### Changing Color of characters or lines (ruled lines)

- ① Select All and press > select Font color, and press (•).
  - Font color can be selected from 30 colors.
  - The color of Picture is also changed. Select the range and "指定なし Default", to release the settings. →P212
- 2 Press 
  [Message], enter the message, and press (•).

#### Changing Font size

- ① Select 🛞 and press ► select Font size, and press (•).
  - · Select size from "Large", "Standard" or "Small".
- 2 Press 
  [Message], enter the message, and press (•).

#### Inserting images

- ① Select and press > select a folder, and press (•).
- Select an image and press (•). The image is inserted to the position designated by
  - Still images up to 10,000 bytes in JPEG or GIF format can be attached, including Message.
  - · Location information URL is added after the still image, when the still image with location information is attached. When sending a mail attaching still images with the location Information, the location information is deleted. However, location information URL in Message is not deleted.
  - Press 
     [Function] 
     O 
     O 
     U
     Trile property" with the cursor pointing on the inserted image while entering Message, the file property of the image is displayed.

See next page

≦ai

<sup>(</sup>Displayed by connecting to the URL on the mail.)

#### Blinking characters

- ① Select 🕅 and press ●.

The entered characters are blinking. Blinking is stopped after a certain period of time.

## Displaying ticker characters or images (Ticker display)

- (1) Select  $\square$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### Displaying characters or images swinging right and left (Swing display)

- (1) Select  $\square$  and press ( $\bullet$ ).
- Changing alignment of the word or the image
  - Select select Word alignment, and press ●.

· Select from "Left", "Center" or "Right".

Inserting line (ruled line) to the message

Select ■ and press ●.

#### Changing Background color of messages

- Select and press > select
   Background color and press ●.
  - Background color can be selected from 30 colors.
  - URL may not be recognized if Background color of URL to retrieve the images/ i-motion is overlapped.
- Canceling the previous operation

#### (1) Select $\blacksquare$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

Prior entry of the decoration, character, etc. is canceled.

#### Copying/cutting

- Select and press > select
   "Copy" or "Cut", and press ●.
- ② Select the start point and press •.
- 3 Select the end point and press  $\odot$ .

#### Pasting

① Select ∰ and press ● > select "Paste", and press ●.

 Following procedure: →P355 "Pasting characters" Step 2

#### Changing Decoration

- 1 Select 🔡 and press •.
- Select the start point and press •.
- **3** Select the end point and press **•**.
- Select a decoration from Pallet.

#### 3 Press i [Close].

#### Canceling the previous operation

1 Press : [Function] ► 📀 ► 🐼 "Undo".

#### Confirming Decoration

- Press i [Function] ► () ► () ► () ► ()
   "Preview".
  - Confirm an accurate byte of the decoration set and the data space to be left to enter.
  - Alternatively, press I to confirm the decoration.

#### Resetting all decorations

- Press i [Function] ► I = "Decorate mail" ► ③ ► U = "Reset all".
- 2 Press / \* "Yes".
  - Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

Alternatively, press (i [Function] > (i) "Decorate mail", to operate the function while entering messages.

## Decorating characters after specifying the range

You can change the preset decorations of characters or prior decorated characters.

- Functions such as Insert line/Insert image/ Background color/Copy/Cut/Paste are not available.

<sup>2</sup> Select the start point and press •.



• Press : [SelectAll] ► [\*] "Yes", to select all the text. Go to Step 4.

#### **3** Select the end point and press $oldsymbol{\Theta}$ .

Message C Decorate mail 1/2 MiFont color MiFont size 

Deco-mai

#### Select the decoration option.

- Changing Color of characters or lines (ruled lines)
  - Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Font color" ▶ select the font color and press ●.

#### Changing Font size

1 Press  $\mathbb{Z}_{\frac{n}{n}}^{\text{ABC}}$  "Font size" > one of  $\mathbb{Z}_{\frac{n}{n}}^{\text{BC}}$  to  $\mathbb{Z}_{\frac{n}{n}}^{\text{BC}}$ .

#### Blinking characters

- Press 4 m "Blink" ► 1 m "Select".
   Press 2 m "Reset" to release.
- Displaying ticker characters or images (Ticker display)
  - Press 5 號 "Ticker" ▶ 1 號 "Select".
     Press 2 號 "Reset" to release.
- Displaying characters or images swinging right and left (Swing display)
  - Press 𝔅<sup>™</sup><sub>I</sub> "Swing" ► 𝔅<sup>™</sup><sub>𝔅</sub> "Select".

Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup> "Reset" to release.

#### Changing alignment of the word or the image

Press T<sup>™</sup><sub>2</sub> "Word alignment" ▶ one of T<sup>™</sup><sub>2</sub> to T<sup>™</sup><sub>2</sub>.

#### Information

- Deco-mail takes over only the decoration property of "Font color", "Font size", "Blinking", "Image" and "Line" cut/copied from original sources. Decoration property other than above is not taken over but applied to the setting of pasting destination.
- Copied/cut Deco-mail messages can be directly pasted only within the same Message input screen. When pasting data other than on Message input screen, decoration is released and only text data is pasted. Decorations are also released with other operations such as displaying Preview or inserting Signature.
- When copying/cutting the decorated message of Decomail, only the latest copied/cut contents are taken over with decorated data. Decorations are released and only the text data is to be pasted with previous data.
- Even if the decorated characters are deleted, the decoration setting may remain and the number of characters to enter may be fewer. Delete characters after canceling the decoration. When deleting characters by holding down (and for over a second, characters including decoration data are deleted.
- When sending a Deco-mail to an incompatible terminal, the URL to browse Deco-mail data is attached to Message of the mail. The receiver accesses the URL and display/view the Deco-mail. Note that Deco-mail may not be received/displayed properly, depending on the terminal type of the other party.
- Even though forwarding Deco-mail with a URL to browse Deco-mail from incompatible terminals or inputting the URL directly, you cannot view Deco-mail from another terminal than the receiver terminal.
- When replying to the Deco-mail by quoting, or when forwarding the Deco-mail, the message of the mail is displayed with the decoration and the inserted images quoted.

- When receiving mails with decoration from PC etc., the decoration may not be properly displayed.
- When copying the data with only images or lines, "Decomail data" is displayed on the paste data list screen.

#### **Using Template**

Composes Deco-mail using templates stored in FOMA terminal. Template is the preset patterns for Deco-mail with layouts or decorations. You can compose and send Deco-mail easily by using Template.

Images preinstalled by default →P363

#### Information

- ●You can save sent/received Deco-mails as templates. Press (i [Function] ▶ select "Save to template" and press (), on Mail screen for sent/ received mails.
- ●Templates can be downloaded from the sites. Downloaded templates are saved to "My picture" → "Deco-mail picture", and you can also edit the templates. →P183

#### <Select template>

## Composing Deco-mail by using templates

- Press i [Function] ▶ ress i [Function] ▶ resplayer, on Compose message screen.
- 2 Select a template, and press •. The contents of the template are set to

Compose message screen.

 The confirmation message appears when loading a template onto the mail where an attachment are added or Message is entered. Press (?) "Yes", and select a template to overwrite the mail. Press (?) "No" to cancel. Mai

#### **3** Add/edit the contents and send.

#### Information

 Alternatively, press (i [Function] > 2<sup>-10</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Template", to operate the function while entering messages.
 Template itself cannot be attached.

#### Composing template

- 🗧 Press 🖻 🕨
  - Deco
- Compose a template and press •.

- Composing procedure →P211
- <sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

## Displaying template list and composing templates

Displays preset template lists, and you can check the contents to set on Compose message screen or edit templates.

Press

#### Select a template and press •.

#### Editing title

Press i [Function] ► Ψ = "Edit title".
 Enter the title and press •.

• Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Displaying template property

 Press i [Function] ► 5 i "File property".

#### Editing file name of Deco-mail picture

- Press i [Function] > () > I = I = I = I
   I = I = I = I
   I = I = I = I
   I = I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
   I = I
- ② Enter a file name and press ●.
  - Up to 36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Sorting template

- ① Press i [Function] ► ④ ► Ψ = "Sort files".
- 2 Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $\overline{I_{\frac{1}{2}}}$ .

Date ord(new→old)	Sorts by saved date in order from new to old.
Date ord(old→new)	Sorts by saved date in order from old to new.
Title(asc.)	Sorts by titles in ascending order.
Title(des.)	Sorts by titles in descending order.
File size(asc.)	Sorts by the file size in ascending order.
File size(des.)	Sorts by the file size in descending order.
Download sources	Sorts download sources in descending order. • Only created folders by user (user folder) can be sorted by download sources.

#### Composing message

The contents of the template are set to Compose message screen.

2 Add/edit the contents and send.

#### Editing template

- 1 Press (•) while displaying a template.
- 2 Add/edit the message, and press ().
- ③ Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Overwrite" or *Z*<sup>\*</sup> "Save new entry".

#### **Deleting template**

Select a template and press
[i] [Function] ▶ ○ ▶ ○ ▶ 2<sup>-4</sup>/<sub>7</sub>

"Delete".

🔈 Press / 🕄 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- ① Press ⊇≝ "Delete option".
- Select a template, and press •.
  Press to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all in fldr".
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- 🍾 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".
  - Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

Melody/Still image/Movie image/i-motion mail

#### Attaching file

Sends i-mode mail with still images and melodies attached. You can also send a mail with movies or i-motion shot with FOMA terminal or downloaded from the sites, as an i-motion mail.

Attachable files are as follows.

Melody in SMF format		Up to 10 still images or melodies in total, and
Still image up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)	Up to 10 attachments	up to 10,000 bytes including the mail text can be attached. The number of attachable files may vary depending on the size of the attachment.
JPEG still image from 10,001 bytes to 500 KB (Large still image) Movie, i-motion image less than 500 KB	1 attachment only	Only a file of either large still image or movie image/ i-motion can be attached to one mail.

Select @ "Attachment" on Compose message screen, and press •.

### Attach the file.

- Select an item from still images, movies/ i-motion, or melodies, and press 
   [Play], to play. Press 
   @ on to return to the list screen.
- Still images/movies/i-motion/melodies unable to attach cannot be selected.

#### Attaching still image

- Press *[right]* "Attach image", select a folder, and press ●.
- (2) Select a still image and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - When attaching the still image with location information, a confirmation message appears. Press []" Paste" and the location information URL is attached onto the mail. Press []" Attach image only" to attach only the image. Press []" "Cancel" to cancel.
  - For a still image over the QVGA size, the confirmation screen appears. Press I: "Yes" ) (•), to attach images. JPEG still images exceeding 500 KB are displayed after converted to the file size of under 500 KB automatically. Press (•) to save to Data box, and an image file is attached.

#### Attaching movie/i-motion (i-motion mail)

- Press <sup>2→</sup><sup>m</sup> "Attach i-motion", select a folder, and press ●.
- ② Select a movie or i-motion, and press ●.
   When the i-motion exceeds 500 KB, the confirmation screen appears. Press [...]
   "Yes" and cut out a movie image. →P286

#### Attaching Melody

- Press , and press ●.
- **(2)** Select a melody, and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- Attaching still image/movie immediately after shooting
  - Press 𝒵
     Snap photo" or 𝔄
     Shoot movie".
  - Shoot and press •.

Shot images are saved in "Data box" → "My picture" (still image) or "i-motion" (movies) → "Camera" folder.

 When attaching one or more files and attaching shot photos or movies, a confirmation message appears. Press

 *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Yes" and attachments are released.

#### Attaching the data in miniSD memory card

- Press *E*<sup>∞</sup> "miniSD", select a folder and press ●.
- Select the data and press •.

#### Information

- When attaching movies/i-motion/large still images, the number of characters to enter is reduced by 100 twobyte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) for mail messages, and 200 two-byte (Full Mark)/400 one-byte (Half Mark) for Deco-mails.
- You cannot attach the files which are prohibited to output from FOMA terminals.
- Only one JPEG still image can be attached to the mail with mova i-mode terminals. In that case, mova i-mode terminals receive the mails as i-shot mail with linked URL.
- mova i-mode terminals cannot receive the mails with melody or still images in GIF format.
- i-motion mail supports up to 500 KB of shot movies as attachments except the message texts. i-motion cannot be attached when exceeding the maximum size. Some i-motion cannot be attached.
- When the receiver has the terminal except SA702i, sent melodies may not be played properly.
- Still images can be reduced to (240 × 320) in QVGA.
   (→P279) QVGA is the size for Stand-by display and is suited for sending to i-mode compatible terminals.
- When sending mails with JPEG still image exceeding 10,000 bytes to i-mode compatible terminals, the size is converted into the appropriate size for i-mode compatible terminals in the i-shot Center.
- A GIF still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mails.
- When sending i-motion mails, movies may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images on some terminal models of receivers.
- When sending a mail attaching still images with the location Information, the location information is deleted. However, location information URL in the message is not deleted.

# Playing/changing/displaying file property of/ releasing attachments

#### Select an attachment file on Compose message screen, and press ●.

## 2 Select an item ▶ press ●.

Play	Plays an attachment file.
Change	Changes an attachment file. • Following procedure: →P214 "Attaching file" Step 2
File property	Displays File property of the attachment.
Release	Releases an attachment file. ① Press () "Yes". • Press () "No" to cancel.

≦ai

#### Save i-mode mail

## Saving i-mode mail and sending later

 Up to 400 sent/unsent i-mode mails and SMS can be saved to Outbox and Unsent messages in total.

#### Saving i-mode mail

Saves composed i-mode mails in Unsent messages without sending.

#### 1 Press i [Function] ► I's "Save" on Compose message screen.

- Entering one of Subject/Receiver/Message, or attaching files allows to save mails.
- 🄈 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>D</sub> "No" to cancel.

# Editing/sending i-mode mail in Outbox/Unsent messages

You can edit/send i-mode mails or SMS in Outbox, or saved without sending or failed to send.

 The saved i-mode mails or SMS can only be sent one by one.



Select a folder and press •.

Select a mail and press O.

#### Edit and send the mail.

• Press 🖻 [Edit] to edit a sent mail.

#### Two-touch mail

# Composing i-mode mail quickly

You can compose i-mode mails to the addresses with Phonebook number of 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal phonebook, by simple operations.

• If multiple E-mail addresses are registered, the first address is set as the Receiver.

#### <Example> Sending an i-mode mail to Phonebook number 27

- Press Phonebook number ( 2<sup>∞</sup>, 7<sup>∞</sup>, in this case) on Stand-by display.
  - No prefix such as 0 before Phonebook number is required to add.
- Press Farmer Compose message".
  - Composing/sending i-mode mail →P209

#### Information

When no Phonebook data is registered in the entered Phonebook number, composing mails is unavailable.

#### Mail auto receive

# When receiving i-mode mail

#### i-mode mails are received automatically when FOMA terminal is within the service area. Received i-mode mails are saved to Inbox.

- Up to 1,000 i-mode mails and SMS in total are saved to Inbox.
- Mails sent under following conditions are saved in the i-mode Center.
  - During a videophone call
  - Under self mode
  - Exchanging infrared data
  - During data communication
  - With the power off
  - Out of service area
  - Receive option "ON"
  - When Inbox is full of protected or unread mails
  - Connecting to FirstPass center

#### Receive an i-mode mail.

Message ring tone sounds, the incoming-call lamp lights up/blinks and the number of received messages is displayed.



- 🖶: Unread i-mode mails and SMS
- 🖶 : Unread i-mode mails
- Press 
   [Cancel] to cancel receiving mails.

   Mails may be received depending on the receiving condition.
- Reception status screen is displayed for approximately 30 seconds. With no key operation, the screen automatically returns to the same as before receiving.

#### Displaying newly-received i-mode mail

- Press *[13]* "Mail" on Reception status screen.
  - Press 2<sup>-m</sup>/<sup>1</sup> "MessageR"/<sup>2</sup> "MessageF" to display MessageR/F.
- 2 Select a folder and press •.
- Select a mail and press •.
  - Received mails →P222

#### Information

- Characters, which are not properly displayed, are substituted by such as spaces.
- Receiving/Reception status screen may not be displayed depending on Receive preference setting.
- Set "ON" on Receive option setting, and you can receive only the desired messages without automatically receiving all.
- When a new i-mode mail arrives, other i-mode mails or MessageR/F stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode mails are received by FOMA terminal, mails stored in the i-mode Center are deleted.
- ●When receiving mails from the terminal that can specify To, Cc and Bcc, you can confirm to which of To, Cc, Bcc you have been specified. →P222
- Extremely large i-mode mails may be returned to the sender with error messages without being accepted in the i-mode Center.
- Melodies and still images can be sent/received as attachments of i-mode mails. The i-mode Center deletes unsupported attached files. If the attachment is deleted, a message "添付ファイル削除 <Delete attachment>" is inserted onto message text.
- When the data size (in total of characters and attached file size) of the received mail exceeds the number of characters (data size) set to "Limit mail size" in Option settings, the attachments will be deleted in the i-mode Center and may not be received any more.
- When Receive attachment is set to "Not receive", attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center. Deleted attachment is not received any more.
- When two or more i-mode mails and MessageR/F are received at the same time, Ring tone/Vibrator/ Incoming-call lamp are activated according to the settings for the mail received at the last.
- When i-mode mail cannot be automatically received, the messages are stored in the i-mode Center. Stored mails are attempted up to 3 times to resend after certain period of times.
- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size for received mails, unprotected received messages are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Received mails that you need to keep.
- When the storage space is full with unread or protected mails and unable to overwrite, reception of i-mode mails is stopped and mappears.
- When i-mode mails are left in the i-mode Center, appears. However, i-mode mails may not be displayed in some conditions. (Example: when powered off or out of service area.) In addition, if the number of stored messages reached to the maximum size in the i-mode Center, (corange) appears.
- When mails are failed to be received, receive mails again by Check new message or Receive option.

#### **Receive option**

### Selecting i-mode mail to receive

Check the subject etc. of mails stored in the i-mode Center, and you can select mails to receive or delete mails in the center before receiving. Set Receive option to "ON" in advance to select mails to receive. If the setting is activated, you cannot receive i-mode mails automatically.

#### When an i-mode mail arrives



When receiving mails in the center, you can check the message that indicates i-mode mails are saved in the center. In this case, Ring tone or Vibrator is not activated.

• Press (•) to return to Stand-by display or the previous screen.

# Receiving i-mode mails with Receive option



Mai

When setting Receive option to "OFF"

# Press (1) "Yes" > (1) "ON". Press (2) "OFF" not to set.



Connects to i-mode and the list of i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center is displayed.

- Icon definitions of the end of a mail are as below:
  - 🖾 : Attaches a still image
  - J : Attaches a melody file
  - 🖀 : Attaches i-motion

- Select one of "受信 <Receive>", "削除 <Delete>" or "保留 <Hold>" from the pull-down menu for each mail.
  - When selecting "保留 <Hold>", the mails are stored in the i-mode Center. You can receive the stored mails by Check new message etc.
  - When there are multiple pages, select "前 ページ<Previous Page>" or "次ページ <Next Page>" at the end of the mail list and press
     to display the previous and next page.

### 3 Select "受信 <Receive>/削除 <Delete>" and press ●.



#### Deleting all mails stored in the i-mode Center

 Select "削除 <Delete>" on "iモードセンター から全てのメールを <All mails from i-mode Center>", and press ●.

# 4 Move the cursor to "決定 <Set>" and press ).

#### Information

● Even if Receive option setting is "ON", all mails are received when checking new message. To avoid receiving unnecessary mails, clear "Mail" item from the settings in Check new message. →P230

#### Check new message

# Checking i-mode mail

#### Checks the status whether an i-mode mail is arrived in the i-mode Center while you are out of service area or turning the power off.

• Note that new messages cannot be checked under the poor radio wave condition.



Receives i-mode mails when mails are stored in the i-mode Center.

• The procedure of checking MessageR/F is the same as of checking new i-mode mail.

#### Information

- Alternatively, you can check mails by pressing 
   ▷ [Check ].
- When i-mode mails are left in the i-mode Center, appears. Note that may not appear even when the mails are stored in the i-mode Center. (Example: when powered off or out of service area)
- ●Default setting is receiving all mails of i-mode mail/ MessageR/MessageF. To avoid receiving MessageR or MessageF, release the settings. →P230

#### Reply to i-mode mail

# Replying to i-mode mail

Replies to the received i-mode mails or SMS. When replying to i-mode mails, you can enter only replying addresses or messages with the quoted received i-mode mail.

• Some received mails may not be available to reply.

### Select a mail on Received mail list screen and press i [Function] ► [...] "Reply".

🕅 Compose message
™docomo.taro∆∆@docomo
To SoBRe:Congratulation
🖉 [Message]
<b></b>
Send Select Function

"Re:" is entered to the subject field of the received mail in advance (only for i-mode mail).

- Press 2<sup>mb</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "Reply w/quotation" to quote messages of the received i-mode mail.
- Press I : Sender or Z<sup>\*</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "All" for received mails sent to multiple addresses.

#### Edit and send the mail.

• When replied, the icon turns to 🦛.

#### Information

- Press Press (Reply) to reply from Received mail message screen. Press (Reply) / Reply w/ quotation, to reply with the quoted messages.
- You can specify a quote-mark preceding the quoted message for Reply with quotation. →P230
- You cannot reply to SMS with quotation.
- Attachments of the received message are not added on the replying mails.
- You cannot reply to received SMS with reasons for user unsent ("ID unsent", "Payphone" or "Not supported") on sender fields.
- When the data to activate i-appli (i-appli To) is attached to the mail messages, i-appli To cannot be quoted to replying/ forwarding mails. i-appli To cannot be quoted while using data-link software or Infrared connection as well.
- If a file, which is prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals, is inserted to Deco-mail messages, the file is deleted when quoting in replying.
- If the number of characters in the subject field exceeds 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark) including "Re:", the exceeded characters are deleted (only for i-mode mail).
- "Re:" is not added when replying to the mail which already has "Re:" on the beginning of Subject field (only for i-mode mail).

#### Forward i-mode mail

# Forwarding i-mode mail to other address

# Forwards received i-mode mails or SMS to other addresses.

- · Received mails are forwarded each by types.
- Attachments on the received mails are also attached to forwarding mails.
- Select a mail on mail list screen and press i [Function] ► I are "Forward".

<b>₽</b> C omp o	se message
To [Rece	iver] ngratulation
∮ ₽ Looking	R. 9902Bytes forward to havin together. By the
way, I	wonder if it's g be sunny tomorro
Send	Select Eurotion

"Fw:" is entered to the subject field of the received mail in advance (only for i-mode mail).

# 2 Enter the forwarding addresses and send the mail.

When forwarded, the icon turns to A.

#### Information

- Press (i) [Function] > Z<sup>\*</sup>/<sub>2</sub><sup>\*</sup> "Forward", to forward mails from the Received mail message screen.
- Regarding attachments (still image and melody) to received mails, files prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals cannot be attached to forward mails.
- If forwarding the received mail without downloading the attachment of still images exceeding 10,000 bytes (large still images), the image is not attached to forwarding mails.
- When the data to activate i-appli (i-appli To) is attached to the mail messages, i-appli To cannot be quoted to replying/forwarding mails. i-appli To cannot be quoted while using data-link software or Infrared connection as well.
- If files prohibited to attach to mails or output from FOMA terminals are inserted to Deco-mail messages, the files are deleted when quoting in forwarding.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the mail message is displayed with the decoration and quoted images. When the mail size is over the limit during transmission, a message appears.
- If the number of characters including "Fw:" exceeds 15 two-byte (Full Mark)/30 one-byte (Half Mark), the exceeded characters are deleted (only for i-mode mail).

#### Save melody

# Playing/saving melody on i-mode mail

# Plays/saves a melody which is attached or pasted to received i-mode mails.

- If the other party uses the terminal other than SA702i, received melodies may not be played properly.
- Melody is not played while playing BGM with Music Player.
- 1 Display an i-mode mail with a melody attached.



- Attachment type icons →P222
- To avoid playing melodies automatically when displaying mails, set Melody auto play setting to "Not auto play".

#### Displaying Attachment list

- ① Press i [Function] ► 7 · Check attachment".
  - Select a melody and press (), to play.
  - Select a melody and press 
     [Save], to save.

### 2 Select a melody and press •.

### 3 Select an item and press •.

Play	<ul> <li>Plays a melody.</li> <li>Press          <ul> <li>[Stop] to stop playing the melody halfway.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Save	<ul> <li>Saves a melody.</li> <li>Saves as "Data box" → "Melody" → "i-mode" folder. In the case that mails are imported from miniSD memory card etc., some mails may be stored in "Data exchange" folder.</li> </ul>
Set	Sets as Ring tone etc. ① Select an item to set to and press ④.
File property	Displays the property.
Delete	Deletes a melody. ① Press 了書 "Yes". • Press ⊇書 "No" to cancel.

a

#### Information

- Select a melody from Attachment list and press i [Function], to set Ring tone etc., display File property or delete while playing melodies.
- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

#### Save image

# Displaying/saving images attached to mails

Displays/saves a still image which is attached on received mails.

**1** Display an i-mode mail with still images attached.



- Attachment type icons →P222
- · Displays the first attachment file automatically.

#### Displaying Attachment list

- Press i [Function] ▶ 7<sup>∞</sup> "Check attachment".
- Select an image and press  $\odot$ , to display.

#### Select an image and press •.

#### Select an item and press •.

Play	Displays a still image.
Save *	<ul> <li>Saves a still image.</li> <li>Saves as "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" folder. In the case that mails are imported from miniSD memory card etc., some mails may be stored in "Data exchange" folder.</li> </ul>
Set	Sets as Stand-by display etc. ① Select an item to set to and press ●.
File property	Displays the property.
Delete*	Deletes an image. ① Press () "Yes". • Press () "No" to cancel.

\* The functions are not available for large still images.

#### Information

- Press (i) [Function] on Attachment list screen and press (i) [Function], to set the still image as Stand-by display, display the file property or delete. However, large still images are not deleted.
- You can download still images up to 100 KB in JPEG or GIF format. When receiving a mail with a JPEG still image up to 500 KB (large still image), the image is converted to the receivable size.
- A JPEG still image (large still image) over 10,000 bytes, which is attached to an i-mode mail, is automatically downloaded. The large still image downloaded automatically is saved to "Data box" → "My picture" → "i-mode" folder.
- When failed to download large still images automatically, select III "Image attached" in i-mode mails, then press ● ► T T Download data" to download the images. Press ● ► Z "View URL" to display the URL of the source.
- When the size of a still image is larger than the screen, the image is reduced to the display size. If the size is too big to the screen, still images may not be displayed.
- Some still images may not be displayed properly. The maximum screen size is up to 240 in width × 320 in height. If the size exceeds the maximum, you can receive but cannot display still images.
- Still images attached to the sent mails can also be saved by the same procedure.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297

#### i-motion mail

# Playing/saving i-motion attached to i-motion mails

Movie images or i-motion sent with i-motion mails are stored in the i-motion Center, and you receive mails with only URL to browse i-motion.

- The receivable i-motion file size is up to 500 KB.
- 1 Display an i-mode mail with i-motion URL attached.
- Select the i-motion URL and press •
   I:: "Connect to site".

### 3 Press i [Connect].

- When Auto play setting for i-motion is set to "Auto play", i-motion starts playing automatically after download.
- Press 🖻 [Cancel] to cancel downloading.

# 4 After completing download, select an item and press •.

Play	Plays i-motion. • The procedure of the playing screen →P281
Save	Saves i-motion. • The i-motion is saved in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "i-mode" folder.
Set	Sets as Stand-by display etc. • Following procedure: →P283 "Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc." Step 3
File property	Displays the property.
Back	Returns to Mail screen. • When i-motion data is not saved yet, the confirmation screen appears. Press <b>[</b> ]"Yes" to return to the URL screen without saving i-motion data.

#### Information

- Press () [Function] to display the file property or play in large.
- You can also play movies/i-motion which are attached to sent mails in the same way. Note that you cannot play the movies/i-motion if the files have been deleted from FOMA terminals.
- When sending i-motion mails to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each of URL to browse i-motion which is saved in the i-motion Center. i-motion will not be downloaded more than 50 times.
- To play the i-motion attached to mails on PC, the compatible software is required. Refer to DoCoMo Internet site for details.

#### Inbox/Outbox

### Displaying mails in Inbox/ Outbox

Received mails are saved in Inbox, and sent mails are saved in Outbox. Mails saved unsent or failed to be sent are saved in Unsent messages box.

 Up to 400 i-mode mails and SMS in total can be saved in Outbox and Unsent messages box. And up to 1,000 mails can be saved in Inbox. (The number available to save is subject to change by the data size.)

#### <Example> Displaying received mails

- 🛉 Press 🖻 🕨
  - Press

s 🛄 "Outbox" for sent mails, and press

"Unsent messages" for unsent mails.

# **2** Select a folder and press $\odot$ .

Inbox mail list is displayed.

## $\mathbf{3}$ Select a mail to display and press $\mathbf{O}$ .

Received message screen is displayed.

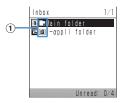
Displays the previous/next mails by pressing .

#### Information

- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Inbox or Outbox, unprotected read mails are overwritten in order from the oldest. It is recommended to protect mails to keep.
- Press (1) [Function] ▶ select "Check attachment" and press (1), to check the attachments of Received/Sent mails.
- Select a folder for Mail link type i-appli, and the i-appli software starts automatically.
- To display mails in Mail link type i-αppli folder without starting software, press (i) [Function] ▷ () ▷ [2<sup>∞</sup>)<sup>∞</sup>
   "Folder file log", while selecting Mail link type i-αppli folder.
- When receiving mails with decoration from PC etc., the decoration may not be properly displayed.
- If the URL to download images and i-motion are displayed in the same color as the background color of Deco-mail displayed, the URLs may not be visible.
- ●You can save sent/received Deco-mails as templates. Press (i [Function] ▶ select "Save to template", on Mail screen for sent/received mails and press ●.
- You can also copy mails exported to miniSD memory card to other devices. (Some devices do not support the function.)

#### Folder list screen

#### Inbox folder list screen



- 1 Folder type
  - Line : Normal folder ("M" is added to Main folder.)
     Δ: Folder for Mail link type i-αppli
- · Folders with unread messages turn blue.
- When the folder is secured, 👚 is added on the icon.

#### Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



#### 1 Folder type

- In: Normal folder (M is added to Main folder.)
- 🖪: Folder for Mail link type i-αppli
- When the folder is secured, 🚹 is added on the icon.

#### List screen/message screen of Inbox/ Outbox/Unsent messages

#### Inbox message list screen



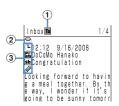
#### 1 Mail type

- 🗹: Unread mail
- 🗠: Read mail
- \Lambda: Replied mail
- Rorwarded mail
- 🔓: Unread SMS
- G: Read SMS
- 🔄 : Replied SMS
- 着: Forwarded SMS
- 📲 appears when the message is protected.
- 2 Attachment type
  - 🔝 : Still image\*
  - 🛺 : Melodv \*
  - 🔝 : Large still image
  - 🔜 : Large still image (deleted)
  - 🔝 : Large still image (not downloaded)
  - 🖾 : Invalid file
  - um : SMS in UIM (FOMA card)
  - 10 (FOMA card) restricted file
  - 🔀 : Message i-αppli
  - 🕱 : Linked i-αppli
  - \* 💞 appears when the attachment file is deleted.
- In Received date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other day.
- When the sender is registered in Phonebook, the name is displayed.

#### Information

- If the E-mail address of the sender/receiver matches to Phonebook address, the registered name in Phonebook is displayed. For SMS, if the phone number of sender/receiver matches to Phonebook phone number, the registered name in Phonebook is displayed.
- When attaching images over 10,000 bytes (large still image), appears even when still images or melodies are attached. When multiple number of still images or melodies are attached, only the icon of the first attached file appears.

#### **Received message screen**



#### 1 Receive type

- To : Mails addressed as "To" from senders
- cc : Mails addressed as "Cc" from senders
- Bcc : Mails addressed as "Bcc" from senders

#### Message type/Attachment file type

• The icons are the same as Inbox mail list screen. (3) Item type

- (L): Received date and time

- CC : Receiver (Cc)\*

- 🚮 : Sender\*
- **sb** : Subject - 🖉 : Message
- To: Receiver (To)\* -
- Turns gray if reply is not available.

#### Outbox/Unsent messages list screen



#### 1 Mail type

- M: Sent mail\*
- 🛛 : Sent SMS\*
- Mail failed to send
- 🔀 : SMS failed to send
- \* Turns blue when the mail is unsent.
- appears when the message is protected.

Inbox/Outboy

#### 2 Attachment type

- 🛃 : Still image\*
- 🔊 : Melody\*
- 📕 : i-motion
- 📰 : i-motion (deleted)
- 🔜 : Large still image
- 🛃 : Large still image (deleted)
- 🛐 : Invalid file
- 🖷 : UIM (FOMA card) restricted file
- une : SMS in UIM (FOMA card)
- 😿 : Message i-αppli
- \* 😻 appears when the attachment file is deleted.
- In Sent date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other day.
- When the address in Receiver field is registered in Phonebook, the name is displayed.

### Outbox/Unsent message screen



### 1 Message type/Attachment file type

The icons are the same as Inbox mail list screen.

### 2 Item type

- (L): Sent date and time Brr : Receiver (Bcc)\*
- To: Receiver (To)\* 50: Subject
- Cc: Receiver (Cc)\* 🖌 : Message
- \* X appears when sending a mail is failed. (only for unsent mails)

# Creating/editing/deleting folder

### **Creating folder**

- You can create up to 24 folders in Inbox/Outbox, including Main folder and Mail link type i-αppli folder. Mail link type i-αppli cannot be downloaded, if 24 folders had been already created in total.
- When redownloading Mail link type i-αppli, the folder left without Mail link type i-αppli can be utilized. However, if the folder is secured, download starts after entering the terminal security code. If any remained folder is unnecessary, delete the folder and you can create a new folder. However, you cannot download Mail link type i-αppli without creating a new folder.
- $\mathbf{>}$  Enter the folder name and press  $\mathbf{\odot}$ .

• Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

### Editing folder name

- · Main folder cannot be renamed.
- Enter a new folder name and press •.

### Information

When downloaded a Mail link type i-appli, a folder is automatically created for the i-appli mail, in each of Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folders are named the same as the title of the software, and cannot be changed.

### Deleting folder

- Main folder cannot be deleted.
- Folders with protected mails cannot be deleted. Delete the folders after releasing the protection.

# Select a folder and press i [Function] ► E<sup>we</sup> "Delete folder".

Enter the terminal security code and press •.

# <sub>3</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press ⊇ﷺ "No" to cancel.
- Mail link type i-αppli folder cannot be deleted if applicable i-αppli is saved. Delete the software and you can delete the created Mail link type i-αppli folders in Sent/Unsent messages list screen.

## Procedure on list screen/ message screen

#### <Auto sort>

### Sorting mails to each folder automatically

Sorts received/sent i-mode mails or SMS into the specified folder automatically according to the sort setting.

- You cannot specify Main folder.
- Up to 8 sort requirements for each folder are available to set.

#### Setting sort requirement

#### <Example> Setting to Inbox

Select a folder and press
 i [Function] ▶ ∃ description:



Rule list screen



#### Set a sort requirement.

# Setting a sender address as sort requirement

Press I and "Sender address".
 Press one of I and to Employ.

Quote phonebook	<ol> <li>Select a Phonebook entry, and press ● &gt; select an E-mail address, and press ●.</li> </ol>
Quote sent	<ol> <li>Select an address history and</li></ol>
adrs	press ● ► ●.
Quote rcvd	<ol> <li>Select an address history and</li></ol>
adrs	press ● ► ●.
Quote sending grp	<ol> <li>Select an E-mail address and press •.</li> </ol>
Quote	<ol> <li>Select an E-mail address and</li></ol>
profile	press ().
Direct	<ol> <li>Enter the E-mail address and</li></ol>
input	press ().

#### Setting Subject as sort requirement

- 1 Press 24 "Subject".
- Enter the subject and press •.
- Setting All inbox messages as sort requirement

1 Press 🖅 "All inbox messages".

#### 📶 Press 间 [Complete].

#### Information

- When setting Auto sort to Outbox, sort requirements are displayed as (I) "Receiver address", (I) "Subject" and (I) "All outbox msgs".
- Sort requirement is executed by the following priority:
   ① Subject
  - Sender (Receiver) address
  - 3 All Inbox (Outbox) mails
- When a sort requirement has been already set to other folders, the confirmation screen is displayed. Press T: "Yes" to set to the current folder.

- Sort requirements of "Sent address" or "Subject" are not applied to SMS which you receive as the notification of Voice mail service.
- When setting Auto sort to folders for Mail link type i-αppli, the confirmation screen is displayed. Press (<u>τ</u>) "Yes" to set to Mail link type i-αppli folder.
- You can also sort usual mails automatically to Mail link type i-αppli folder. In this case, the priority is on the sort requirement for Mail link type i-αppli.
- When sending and receiving mails with Mail link type i-appli, the mails are placed into Mail link type i-appli folder automatically.

#### **Editing sort requirement**

Select a rule on Rule list screen, and press •.

#### 🔈 Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press ⊇<sup>™</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.
- Following procedure: →P224 "Setting sort requirement" Step 3 to 4

#### Deleting sort requirement

- ① Select a rule, and press □ [Delete] ▶ ( ? "Delete".
  - To execute *Z*<sup>ABC</sup> "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.
- 2 Press / 😨 "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

When setting "All inbox (outbox) messages" to the folder that has been already set "Sender (Receiver) address" or "Subject", the confirmation message is displayed. Press [II] "Yes" to release the previous setting of sort requirement, and "All inbox (outbox) messages" is set.

#### **Resorting mails after setting Auto sort**

Moves the mails to the folder with the current sort setting, after changing the setting of Auto sort or moving between folders.

• This function is applied to mails in all folders.

# 1 Press i [Function] on the folder list screen ► 4 😤 "Re-sort messages".

#### 🔈 Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press <sup>2</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.
- The confirmation screen appears if there is any secured folder. Press () "Yes", enter the terminal security code, press (), and mails are resorted. Press ()"No", and all but the secured folders are resorted.

#### Sorting folders

· Main folder cannot be sorted.

#### <Example> Sorting Inbox

- 1 Select a folder and press ↓ [Function] ▶ 도쿄 "Sort folders".
- Select a folder and press •.
- **3** Select the destination to move to and press  $\odot$ .
  - When sorting other folders continuously, repeat the procedure from Step 2 to 3.

### 🛃 Press 🗉 [Complete].

#### **Setting Security on folders**

Sets the security code on folders, and entering the terminal security code is required for viewing/ deleting/setting Auto sort on secured folders, to prevent others from checking your data.

• Unable to execute Auto start or i-αppli Stand-by display with Mail link type i-αppli, if the security is set to the folder.

#### <Example> Setting Security ON to Inbox folder

Select a folder and press
 i [Function] ▶ ○ ▶ [] "Set security".

• Press () • I: "Release security", to release.

# 2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

#### Information

When mails are moved to secured folders by Auto sort, the terminal security code is not required.

#### <Folder file log>

#### Displaying all mails as a list

Displays each folder file log in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages.

#### <Example> Displaying Folder file log of Inbox

- Select a folder and press (■ [Function] > (>) > (≥\*) "Folder file log".
- Press 
   After confirmation.

#### Displaying all mails in Inbox

 Press i [Function] > ○ > IIIbox message log".
 Inbox message log is displayed.

### **Resetting folder setting**

Resets the settings in folders. Mails saved in folders are still remained.

- · Resets as follows.
  - Folder name: New folder
  - Security setting: OFF
  - Auto sort: No rule

#### <Example> Returning the setting of Inbox

- Select a folder and press
   i [Function] ▶ ③ ▶ ④ .
   i [Function] ▶ ③
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- <sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### <Check address>

#### Checking E-mail address

Displays E-mail addresses of Sender/Receiver from Received/Sent/Unsent mails.

#### <Example> Checking the address of received mails

#### Select a mail and press i [Function] ► ⊙ ► T: "Check address".

# Select the address and press Detail].

- Press 🖻 [List] to return.
- Displays the details of the previous/next addresses by 🚱.

### **3** Press ullet, select a function and press ullet.

Compose message*	Composes a new message. • Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i- mode mail" Step 4 to 6
New to phonebook	Registers a new entry to Phonebook. • Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
Add to phonebook	<ul> <li>Registers an additional entry to Phonebook.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Auto sort	Sets a sort requirement. ①Select a folder and press ④.
Store sending grp	<ol> <li>Select a group and press .</li> <li>For SMS, the address cannot be registered to Sending group.</li> </ol>
Copy mail address*	Copies an address.

\* For SMS, each menu is displayed as "Compose SMS msg" and "Copy phone number". ≤ai

#### Information

- Press (i [Function] > select "Check address", and press (), to operate from Message screen of sent/ received mails.
- When the E-mail address is registered in Phonebook, the registered name is displayed.

#### <Move to folders>

# Moving received/sent mail to another folder

You can move saved mails to other folders.

#### <Example> Moving a received mail to another folder

Select a mail and press i [Function] ► <u>
<u>
</u> *E*<sup>∞</sup><sub>a</sub>
"Move to folder".</u>

🤈 Press 🖅 "Move".

#### Moving by option

- ① Press ⊇ﷺ "Move option".
- Select a mail and press ●.
- Press 

   to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Moving all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Move all in folder".
  - When displaying Searched result list, press I move all searched", and press
     Image: "Move all" on Message list screen.

# Select the destination to move in and press $(\bullet)$ .

#### 🖊 Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 2. "No" to cancel.

#### <Switch display>

#### Setting display style of mail list

Sets the display style of Sent/Received/Unsent mails.

#### <Example> Switching the display style of Inbox message list

- Press ⓐ [Function] ▶ 7<sup>r</sup> "Switch display", on Mail list screen.
- **Press one of**  $I_{::}^{\circ}$  to  $\exists_{::}^{\circ}$ .

Date/Subj./	Displays Date/Subject/Sender
Sender	on the list.
Date/	Displays Date/Sender on the list.
Sender	
Subject/	Displays Subject/Sender on the
Sender	list.

• The field of "Sender" is displayed as "Receiver" for sent mails/unsent messages.

#### <Sort>

#### Sorting received/sent mails

Sorts the mail list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent temporarily.

#### <Example> Sorting received mails

- Press 
  [Sort] on Mail list screen.
- **Press one of**  $I^{\circ}$  to  $E^{\circ}$ .

-	
Rcptn date	Sorts mails by Received
(new→o)	date from new to old.
Rcptn date	Sorts mails by Received
(old→n)	date from old to new.
Subject(ascend.)	Sorts Subjects in
	ascending order.
Subject(descend.)	Sorts Subjects in
	descending order.
Sender(ascend.)	Sorts Senders in
	ascending order.
Sender(descend.)	Sorts Senders in
	descending order.

- The field of "Rcptn date" is displayed as "Sndg date" for sent mails, and "Svg date" for unsent messages.
- The field of "Sender" is displayed as "Receiver" for sent mails/unsent messages.

#### Information

● When Mail list screen is closed, sorting returns to "Rcptn date (new→o)".

#### <Search mail>

# Searching mails and displaying the results

You can search mails to specify the sort requirements from the mail list of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent.

#### <Example> Searching received mails

### **Press one of** $I_{\frac{2}{8}}$ to $H_{\frac{2}{8}}$ .

Search unread	Extracts unread mails.
Search read	Extracts read mails.
Search protected	Extracts protected mails.
Search attached	Extracts mails with attachments.

- You can select sent mails from "Search protected" or "Search attached".
- Unsent mails can be selected from "Search sndg failed", "Search unsent" or "Search attached".

#### Re-searching after the search

- Press i [Function] ► 4<sup>max</sup> "Search" ►
   Is "Re-search" on Mail list screen.
  - The following procedure is the same in Step 2.
  - The first search result is deleted.

#### Returning from the search result list

① Press ⓐ [Function] ▶ ५ 🐑 "Search" ▶ ८४४४ विक्र "Release search" on Mail list screen.

#### <Protect mails>

#### Protecting sent/received mail

- You can protect up to 500 of received mails, and up to 200 of sent mails. (The number to protect mails is subject to change by the data size.)
- Unable to protect SMS in UIM (FOMA card).

#### <Example> Protecting a Received message

- - Releasing the protection
    - ① Select a mail and press i [Function] ► 5 · Release".
    - Press [1]: "Release".
       Press [2]: "Release all" and [1]: "Yes", to release all of the protected mails.

#### Information

● Press ( [Function] > ] " Protect", to protect mails from Message screen. Press ( [Function] > ] "Release", to release the protection.

#### <Delete mail>

#### **Deleting sent/received mails**

• Protected mails cannot be deleted. Delete mails after releasing the protection.

#### <Example> Deleting a received mail

- Select a mail and press i [Function]
   > 5 = "Delete".
- 🤈 Press 🖅 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2 "Delete option".
- 2 Select a mail and press (•).
- 3 Press (i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all in fldr".
  - When displaying Searched result list, press I "Delete all srchd", and press
     "Delete all in fldr" on Mail list screen.
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.

```
🥆 Press 🖅 "Yes".
```

Press <sup>2</sup><sup>-</sup><sup>∞</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

#### Deleting all mails in mail boxes

You can delete all mails in the current mailbox of any folder.

 Protected mails and SMS in UIM (FOMA card) are not deleted.

#### <Example> Deleting all mails in Inbox

- 1 Press i [Function] ► 7<sup>mg</sup> "Delete all rcvd".
- **2** Enter the terminal security code and press  $(\bullet)$ .

#### 🤫 Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press <sup>2<sup>-</sup><sup>m</sup></sup>/<sub>π</sub> "No" to cancel.
- The confirmation screen appears if there is any secured folder. Press [I] "Yes" and all mails are deleted. Press [I]" No", and all mails but in the secured folders are deleted.

# Useful functions of mail

#### Setting the font size of message

- Display a mail and press i [Function]

   ▶ ▶ २००००००००००००००००००००००००००००
- **Press one of**  $I^{\circ}$  to  $\exists s$ .

#### Copying message etc.

You can copy such as Message of i-mode mail and SMS.

- When copying received Deco-mail, only text data is copied.
- 1 Display a mail, and press [Function] ► ④ ► 🖅 "Copy".
- 2 Select an item and press •.

Address	Copies the mail address. • Select an E-mail address and press (•), if several E-mail addresses are registered in Phonebook.
Subject	Copies the subject.
Message	Copies the message text. • Up to 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/ 10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be copied.

#### Using entered message

You can use message text to register to user dictionary, search with Dictionary or check the readings of words.

#### <Example> Using the message text in received mail

Display a mail and press i [Function]

### Select an item and press •.

Store in user dict	<ul> <li>Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.</li> <li>① Select the start point and press <sup>①</sup>.</li> <li>③ Enter Reading and press <sup>①</sup>.</li> </ul>
Dictionary	<ol> <li>Select the start point and press ●.</li> <li>Select the end point and press ●.</li> <li>If there are multiple predicted translations, select a word and press ●.</li> </ol>
Reading check	<ol> <li>③ Select the start point and press ●.</li> <li>③ Select the end point and press ●.</li> <li>A sentence is split into each segment. Select a segment, and press ●.</li> </ol>

#### Saving URL as Bookmark

You can register URL in Message of i-mode mail/ SMS/MessageR/F to Bookmark.

# <Example> Registering URL in the received mail to Bookmark

1 Display a mail including URL, select the URL and press ●.

#### Press 2<sup>\*</sup> "Store bookmark".

 Following procedure: P188 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3

#### Information

The function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To is available.

#### Search personal

## Searching mails by quoting Phonebook

# Selects a phone number or an E-mail address from Phonebook, and searches the relevant mail from Inbox/Outbox.

: Searches the first receiver (To).

- · Received mail : Searches senders.
- Sent mail



Select a Phonebook entry and press  $\bullet \bullet$ .

# 3 Select a phone number or an E-mail address, and press ●.

- Press 💿 to release.
- All the mail addresses are selected.
- Press i [Search].

Srch	pers.	1/2
Inbox	(	
1	9/16	Congratula
Dol	CoMo Har	iako
ΞM	9/9	Fw:Tomorro
Dol	CoMo Har	iako
ΕM	9/7	Re:
Dol	CoMo Har	iako
4 🗠	9/4	Re:
Dol	CoMo Har	ako

- Press 🖻 [Cancel] to cancel searching.
- The confirmation screen appears if there is any secured folder. Press **[**] "Yes", enter the terminal security code, press **()**, and searching starts. Press **[**]" "No", and all but secured folders are searched.

#### Received address history/Sent address history

# Using mail history

Received/sent addresses (or phone numbers) are registered automatically to lists of received/ sent addresses. Up to 30 addresses are recorded to each received/sent address history.

#### **Displaying mail history**

👖 Hold down 😔 for over a second.



- Hold down 

   for over a second to display Received address history, and hold down 

   for over a second to display Sent address history.
- M indicates i-mode mail, and M indicates SMS.
- 2 Select an address history and press •.

Address history detail screen is displayed.

- 👔 Press 💽.
  - Following procedure: →P193 "Functions available by selecting E-mail address" Step 2

Mai

#### Not displaying the image registered in Phonebook as background

- Press i [Function] ► Ψ<sup>w</sup><sub>2</sub> "Transp display OFF".
  - Press 🖅 "Transp display ON" to display.

### Using mail history

 Select an address history on Address history list screen and press

 [Function].

### $\mathbf{2}$ Select an item and press $\mathbf{O}$ .

Dial phone call*	Makes a voice call.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure:</li> </ul>
	→P193 "Functions
	available by selecting the
	phone number" Step 2
Dial videophone*	Makes a videophone call.
-	<ul> <li>Following procedure:</li> </ul>
	→P193 "Functions
	available by selecting the
	phone number" Step 2
Photo display	Selects to display the
OFF	image or not.
	<ul> <li>Select "Photo display ON"</li> </ul>
	and press 💽, to display.
Send push tone	Sends push tone.
*	<ul> <li>Displaying address</li> </ul>
	history during a call.
	→P315

\* The same procedure is available from Address history detail screen.

#### Information

To use "Dial phone call" or "Dial videophone" etc. from Received/ Sent addresses, received/dialed (sent) phone numbers or addresses must be registered in Phonebook in advance.

#### <Delete mail history>

**Deleting mail history** 

Select an address history and press
 i [Function] ▶ ∃<sup>∞</sup> "Delete".

#### 🤈 Press 🖅 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete option".
- ② Select a mail and press ●.
- Press to release. 3 Press • [Exec.]
- 3 Press 🕛 [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 240 "No" to cancel.

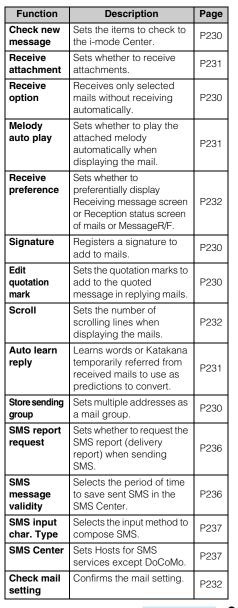
#### Information

Press () [Function] > () "Delete", to delete from Address history detail screen.

#### Mail setting

# Setting Mail function of FOMA terminal

# 1 Press 🖻 🕨 🥵



Function	Description	Page
Reset mail setting	Initializes mail settings to the default.	P232

#### <Signature>

#### Attaching Signature to mail

Default OFF

Register a signature to add to i-mode mail message automatically. You can set 3 signatures.

Press □ ► Mail setting ► E .....

#### **Press one of** $I_{\stackrel{\circ}{\ast}}$ to $\exists I_{\stackrel{\circ}{\ast}}$ .

• Press (4) "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.

#### Editing signature title

- Select a signature and press i [Title].
   Enter the title and press (•).
  - Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte
    - (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### 3 Enter a signature and press •.

- Up to 128 two-byte (Full Mark)/256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Signature is not added to SMS and Chat mails.

#### <Edit quotation mark>

#### Setting quotation marks to add in reply

Default > (one-byte)

Sets the quotation marks to add to the quoted message in replying mails.

Press ▷ ► Mail setting ► 7<sup>roce</sup>.

### Enter a quotation mark and press •.

 Up to 5 two-byte (Full Mark)/10 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### <Check new message>

Setting the item to check in the Center

Default All

Specifies the items to receive from stored i-mode mails and MessageR/F, when checking the i-mode Center.

The setting is the same as Check new message setting in i-mode setting.

Set to if not receiving.



### Select an item.

• Press • each time to switch Select/Release.

### 3 Press i [Complete].

#### <Receive option>

#### Receiving selected mails



🔈 Press 🕼 "ON".

• Press ⊇ BC "OFF" not to set.

#### Information

- When setting Receive option to "ON", you cannot receive mails automatically. Mail ring tone or Vibrator are also unable to be activated.
- If an i-mode mail is arrived in i-mode Center when Receive option setting is "ON", a message appears.

#### <Store sending group>

#### Registering an address to a mail group

Register multiple E-mail addresses in a mail group, and you can compose a mail and specify Receiver by a simple operation.

- Sending group can be registered up to 10. Up to 5 E-mail addresses can be registered for one mail group.
- You cannot register the same address within one group. However, registering in different groups is allowed.



Select a group and press •.



#### Editing group name

- ② Enter Group name and press ●.
  - Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Deleting all mail addresses in mail group

- ① Select a group and press i [Function] ► <sup>2</sup><sup>∞</sup> "Delete".
- Press [1] "Yes".
   Press [2<sup>4</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"] "No" to cancel.

### Select "None stored" and press ().

#### Editing E-mail address

- Select an E-mail address and press ●.
- - · Go to Step 4.
  - Press ⊇<sup>™</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Deleting E-mail address

- 2 Press / 🚏 "Delete".
  - To execute 2<sup>4</sup>/<sub>7</sub> "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

#### 3 Press / \* "Yes".

Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

# Press E<sup>we</sup> "Direct input", enter an E-mail address, and press •.

The E-mail address is registered.

- Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- E-mail addresses registered in Phonebook are displayed by the registered name. If the address is not registered in Phonebook, the E-mail address appears.
- To add other E-mail addresses, repeat the operation from Step 3 to 4.

#### Quoting address from Phonebook

- 1 Press I'm "Quote phonebook".
- 2 Select a Phonebook entry and press (•).
- 3 Select an E-mail address and press ().
- Quoting address from Sent/Received address history
  - ① Press ⊇<sup>∞</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "Quote sent adrs" or ∃<sup>∞</sup>/<sub>s</sub> "Quote rcvd adrs".
  - 2 Select an address history and press (•).
    3 Press (•).

#### Quoting from Profile

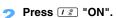
- 1 Press 5 "Quote profile".
- ② Select an E-mail address and press ●.
- 롥 Press 🗉 [Complete].

<Auto learn reply>

# Quoting words from received mails when composing replying mails

Default ON

When replying to a mail, learns words or Katakana in the original mail temporarily to use as predictions to convert.



```
• Press 2 "OFF" not to quote.
```

#### <Melody auto play>

# Setting whether to play melody automatically



Sets whether to play the melody automatically when displaying i-mode mails or MessageR/F with attached melody.

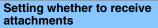


Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Auto play" or *P*<sup>\*</sup> "Not auto play".

#### Information

When multiple melodies are attached, the melody plays in the attached order. However, melodies do not play in order in such cases as a melody in different format is attached.

#### <Receive attachment>



Default Image and melody

Sets whether to receive still images and melodies attached to i-mode mails.

- Press one of I to I to I.
  - Press **4** and **1** Not receive not to receive any attachment.

#### Information

- Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and to be unreceivable.
- When setting not to receive images, you cannot receive the inserted images of Deco-mail as well.
- Melodies in MFI format attached to mails can be received regardless of Receive attachment setting.

a

#### <Receive preference>

#### Setting the operation priority when receiving mail

Default Prefer receive notice

Sets whether to preferentially display Receiving/ Reception status screen on receiving mails or MessageR/F during operations.

Press 🖻 🕨 **5** <sup>JKL</sup>

### Press **1** "Prefer receive notice" or Prefer user operation".

Prefer	On receiving mails, stops
receive	activated functions temporarily
notice	to display Receiving/Reception
	status screen.
Prefer user	When any function is activated
operation	while receiving mails, Receiving
	or Reception status screen is not
	displayed. Receiving is notified
	only by the icon, while Ring tone
	or Vibrator are not activated.

### Information

Receiving screen and Reception status screen are not displayed in following conditions, even when setting "Prefer receive notice".

- During a voice call
- During a videophone call (Only when receiving SMS)
- While shooting still image/movie
- While activating Voice recorder
- While activating Chat mail
- While activating i-αppli

#### <Scroll>

Setting scrolling lines

Default 1-line

Sets the number of lines to scroll when pressing  $(\mathbf{S})$ , while displaying the mail messages.



>	Press	one	of	I :@ 35	to	<b>5</b> <sup>JKL</sup>	•
---	-------	-----	----	------------	----	-------------------------	---

#### Information

To change Scroll setting while Received/Sent mails are displayed, press (I [Function] > select "Scroll" and press (•).

#### <Check mail setting>

Checking mail setting status



<Reset mail setting>

#### Resetting each setting to default

- Press  $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $7^{\text{PORS}}$ .
- Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- Press / ?? "Yes".
  - Press [2<sup>\*</sup>] "No" to cancel.

#### Information

SMS message validity, SMS input character type, and SMS Center setting do not return to default even when resetting mail settings.

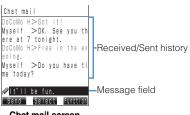
#### **Compose/send Chat mail**

# Composing and sending Chat mail

#### You can exchange Chat mails like making conversation between multiple addresses.

- Chat mail is not available when Receive option in Mail setting is set to "ON".
- Communication fee for exchanging Chat mails among multiple addresses is equivalent to that of sending mails to multiple addresses.
- · Mails under the following conditions are recognized as Chat mails.
  - i-mode mails from addresses registered as Chat members
  - Mails including "Chat mail" [all in one-byte (Half Mark), or all in two-byte (Full Mark)] in Subject
  - Mails other than Deco-mails

## Chat mail screen



Chat mail screen

#### <Register Chat member>

#### **Registering Chat member**

- Registers members to exchange Chat mails.
- Up to 5 Chat members can be registered.
- A registered address cannot be registered as another entry.



 When there is any registered Chat member, Chat mail screen is displayed. Press (i) [Function] ► (I) Set member", and go on to Step 2.

Press [] [Function] > 1 and 1 and

#### Editing Chat member

- ① Select a Chat member and press
  - (i) [Function] ► ⊇♣ "Edit".

#### ② Select a field to edit and press ●.

- Go on to Step 4 for editing Nickname, to Step 3 for editing Receiver, and to Step 5 for editing Display color.
- You can also edit Nickname and display color of "Myself".
- ③ Press [Complete].

#### Deleting Chat member

- Select a Chat member and press
   i [Function] ► I area
   I area
- 2 Press 1 🖀 "Delete".
  - When you press *erging* "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press •.
- ③ Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press Z<sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

# **3** Press <u>5</u> <sup>∞</sup> "Direct input", enter an address, and press ●.

• Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Quoting address from Phonebook

- 1 Press II "Quote phonebook".
- 2 Select a Phonebook entry and press •.
- 3 Select an E-mail address and press  $\bullet$ .
- Quoting address from Sent/Received address history
  - ① Press ⊇<sup>∞</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "Quote sent adrs" or ∃<sup>∞</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "Quote rcvd adrs".
  - (2) Select an address history and press  $\odot$ .
  - 3 Press 🖲.

### Quoting address from Sending group

- Register the Sending group in Mail setting in advance.
- 1 Press 🖅 "Quote sending grp".
- 2 Select a group by pressing  $\Theta$ .
- 3 Select "Receiver".
- Press (•) to release an unnecessary receiver. (4) Press (•) [Complete].
- Select the Nickname field and press •
   enter a nickname and press •.
  - Up to 4 two-byte (Full Mark)/8 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
  - When Nickname is not entered, the first 8 one-byte (Half Mark) characters in Receiver substitutes the nickname.
- 5 Select the Display color field and press select a Display color and press ●.

# **Composing and sending Chat mail**

- Sent Chat mails are saved in Outbox.
- Chat mails failed in sending are saved in Unsent messages box. Try to resend the mails from Unsent messages box.
- 🚽 Press 🖻 🕨 🎑
- 🤈 Press 💽.

### Setting member to send Chat mail

#### ① Press **i** [Function] ▶ 🖅 "Set member".

- (2) Select a member and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - Press () to release.

#### 3 Enter Message and press •.

• Up to 250 two-byte (Full Mark)/500 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

### 👍 Press 🖻 [Send].

Message of the sent Chat mail is displayed in Chat mail screen.

#### <Receive chat mail>

#### **Receiving Chat mail**

- Up to 50 of the current Chat mails are displayed.
- Received Chat mails are saved to Inbox. Chat mails received on Chat mail screen are displayed as read in Inbox.
- You can set Ring tone to Chat mail. The i-motion set as Ring tone does not play when receiving Chat mails while displaying Chat mail screen. The Ring tone set to the last received mail is activated, when receiving multiple mails including a Chat mail simultaneously on Stand-by display.

≦ai

- Up to 250 two-byte (Full Mark)/500 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be displayed on the screen.
- When there is any attachment file to the received Chat mail, Chat mail screen only displays the message.
- When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URL are included in the message of the received Chat mail, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is not available from Chat mail screen. When accessed from Inbox, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available from the Chat mail.

### Receive a Chat mail while displaying Chat mail screen.



After Ring tone plays, Message is displayed on the top of Chat mail screen. Message is also displayed in the same way when receiving Chat mail while composing Chat mail.

# Receiving Chat mail on screens other than Chat mail screen

- From Received mail list, select i-mode mails including "Chat mail" [all in onebyte (Half Mark), or all in two-byte (Full Mark)] in the Subject, and press ().
- Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - If the sender has not been registered as Chat member, the sender is registered. When 5 entries have already been registered, registration is not available.
  - Press ZARC "No" to cancel.

# Available operations from Chat mail screen

#### **Receiving unreceived Chat mail**

You can receive unreceived Chat mails which are stored in the i-mode Center.

Press (i) [Function] ► [1] "Refresh", on Chat mail screen.

#### Checking the address of the current Chat mail

#### Setting new Chat member

- 1 Press 🖻 [Set].
- (2) Select a member and press  $\bigcirc$ .
  - Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press <a>[Complete]</a>.

#### Switching Font size

- - To return to the original font size, press [Function] ► E<sup>we</sup> "Switch font size".

#### <Delete chat mail>

#### **Deleting Chat mail**

- Deleted Chat mails are also erased from Inbox/ Outbox.
- 1 Press i [Function] ► Ψ · Delete chat mail", on Chat mail screen.
- 🔈 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### Information

- Delete a Chat mail from Inbox, when the mail is received on other than Chat mail screen.
- Protected Chat mails remain in Inbox/Outbox even after deleted from Chat mail screen.

#### <End chat mail>

#### Ending Chat mail

- Press @c.n or Press on Chat mail screen.
  - Press 🖅 "Yes" when there is an unsent Chat mail. Press Z<sup>A</sup>

### > Press I <sup>\*</sup> "Yes" or Z<sup>\*</sup> "No".

Yes	Deletes Chat mails and ends the function. In this case, deleted Chat mails are also erased from the message list.
No	Ends Chat mail without deleting Chat mails. The last Chat mail is displayed next time you activate Chat mail.

#### Information

- Alternatively, press (i [Function] > 도 "End chat mail", on Chat mail screen to end Chat mail.
- Unsent Chat mails are deleted.

#### Compose/send SMS

# Composing and sending SMS (Short Message)

- One-byte Katakana or Picture character may not be displayed properly on the receiver. In addition, characters cannot be decorated.
- You can transfer SMS between the overseas service providers other than DoCoMo. Visit DoCoMo Internet site for more details about the connectable areas and telecommunication companies.
- Received/Sent/Unsent SMS list and screen →P221
- Press 🖻 🕨 compose

Compose SMS screen is displayed.

- Select To "Receiver" and press •.
- **3** Press *E*<sup>max</sup> "Direct input", enter an address, and press **•**.
  - When the phone number has been registered in Phonebook, the name in Phonebook is displayed in **To** field.
  - When a destination is via an overseas service provider other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (hold down [] for over a second), "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order. Omit "0" if the mobile phone number begins with "0". You can also send SMS by entering "010", "country code" and "mobile phone number of the destination" in this order. (Enter "010" to reply to an SMS received from overseas.)

#### Quoting the number from Phonebook

- 1 Press II "Quote phonebook".
- 2 Select a Phonebook entry and press (•).
- 3 Select a phone number and press ().

# Quoting address from Received/Sent addresses

- ① Press *∠*<sup>-∰</sup> "Quote sent adrs" or *∃*<sup>™</sup> "Quote rcvd adrs".
- 2 Select an address history and press .
  3 Press .

#### Quoting the number from Profile

- 1 Press 5 "Quote profile".
- Select a phone number and press •.

## 

- The number of characters to input differs depending on SMS input character type setting.
- You can insert line feeds within the message. Press I to enter line feeds. Line feeds are included in the character counts.
- Press () to enter a space of one-byte (Half Mark). Spaces are also included in the character counts of Message.

### 5 Press 🖻 [Send].

#### Saving without sending mails

#### 

The mail is saved in Unsent messages box. • If neither Receiver nor Message is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

#### Information

- Under the poor radio wave condition, characters may not be displayed properly on the other party's terminal.
- ●When transmission fails, the error message appears and SMS is saved to Unsent messages box. SMS in Unsent messages box can be edited or sent. →P216
- When transmission is completed properly, SMS is saved in Outbox. When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Outbox, unprotected sent mails are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect sent mails to keep.
- ●Font type for outgoing mails or whether to receive an SMS report can be set in SMS settings in advance (→P236). Alternatively, "SMS report request" or "Message validity" can be changed by pressing [] [Function] while composing SMS. The setting is valid only for SMS currently in process.
- If SMS is sent when SMS report request is set to "ON", an SMS report notifies that SMS has reached to the receiver. SMS reports are saved to Inbox.
- Even when "Notify no callerID" has been set, Caller ID is sent to the receiver when sending SMS.
- You cannot send some font types. →P208
- SMS cannot be composed when data volume or number of unsent or protected mails is to reach the maximum size. Delete unnecessary i-mode mails and/or SMS from Outbox/Unsent message box.
- When subscribing to Multinumber service, set Initial number to the default in set multinumber.

# Editing or sending sent/saved SMS (Short Message)

You can edit or send SMS, which is sent/saved without sending/failed to send. →P216

# When receiving SMS (Short Message)

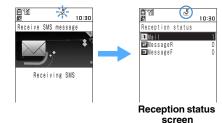
# SMS is received automatically when FOMA terminal is within service area. Received SMS is saved to Inbox.

- Inbox can save SMS and i-mode mails up to 1,000 in total.
- SMS which is sent under following conditions are to be saved in the SMS Center:
  - Under self mode
  - Exchanging infrared data
  - With the power off
  - Out of service area
  - When Inbox is full of protected or unread mails
  - When UIM (FOMA card) is full of saved SMS

#### Receive SMS.

Bilinks and "Receiving SMS" is displayed. The icon stays on the screen after finishing receiving mails.

Message ring tone sounds, the incoming-call lamp lights up/blinks and the number of Received messages is displayed.



- B: Unread i-mode mails and SMS
- 🖶: Unread SMS
- Reception status screen is displayed for approximately 30 seconds. With no key operation, the screen automatically returns to the same as before receiving.

#### Displaying new SMS (Short Message)

- Press (1) "Mail" on Reception status screen.
- Select a folder and press •.

### 3 Select a mail and press •.

- Compose SMS screen is displayed.
- Received mails →P222
- Replying to the received SMS →P218
- Forwarding a received SMS →P219

#### Information

- SMS stored in the SMS Center is deleted after received by FOMA terminal.
- Short Mails sent from mova i-mode terminal are received as SMS in FOMA terminal.

- You cannot reply to the received SMS with reasons for user unsent ("ID unsent", "Payphone" or "Not supported") on sender fields.
- If failed to receive SMS, execute Check SMS to receive the SMS.
- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size for received mails, unprotected received messages are overwritten in order from the oldest. Be sure to protect Received mails to keep. →P227
- When mails cannot be overwritten as the storage space is full of unread or protected mails, reception of SMS is canceled and appears.
- When UIM (FOMA card) stores 20 (maximum) SMS, SMS may not be received even when there is space available in Inbox. In this case, appears on the screen. Move SMS to FOMA terminal or delete SMS in UIM (FOMA card).

#### Check SMS

# Checking whether SMS (Short Message) is stored

# Checks whether SMS was delivered while the terminal has been out of service area or the power has been off.

• Note that you cannot activate Check SMS under the poor radio wave condition.



SMS is to be received if any message is stored in the SMS Center.

#### SMS settings

# Setting SMS (Short Message)

Sets various requirements for SMS.

SMS (Short Message) report request

Default	OFF

Sets whether to request SMS reports when sending SMS.



- 2 Press 🖅 "ON".
  - Press ⊇ﷺ "OFF" not to set.

#### SMS (Short Message) message validity

Default For 3 days

Sets the storage period in the SMS Center for unreceived mails when FOMA terminal is disconnected due to out of service area etc. You can select the storage period from 0 to 3 days.





#### Press one of $I_{\Re}$ to $H_{\Re}$ .

· If setting "For 0 day", the SMS Center deletes stored SMS after resending for a certain period.

### SMS (Short Message) input char. type

Default Jananese

Selects the input method to compose SMS. The maximum number of characters for sending

- mails differs depending on Font type. →P208
  - Press
    - ► 4 GHI
  - Press **I** "Japanese" or **I** "English".

Japanese	Up to 70 characters can be entered regardless of one-byte (Half Mark) or two-byte (Full Mark).
English	Up to 160 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumerics and marks can be entered (except 'o [J, · * ° -).

# SMS (Short Message) Center setting

		Default	DoCoMo
NI -			
NO	setting change is r	leeded for gei	heral use.
1	Press 🖻 🕨 🕅	), • 🔿 • 5	JKL Z
	SMS Center DoCoMo EOthers	Ī	

#### Press *∠*<sup>\*</sup> "Others", enter the SMS 2 Center number, and press (•).

- Up to 20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered. When adding "+" at the beginning of the message, up to 21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Hold down I for over a second and add "+" to the beginning of the SMS Center number, to set "international". "unknown" is applied without adding any prefix.

### Information

- Press i [Function], to operate from Compose SMS screen. In this case, only the setting of "SMS report request" or "Message validity" is available. Contents set from Compose SMS screen is valid only for the SMS currently in process.
- The settings in SMS message validity/SMS input char. type/SMS Center are saved in UIM (FOMA card), when the card is inserted in FOMA terminal. Inserting different UIM (FOMA card) may change the settings.

#### **Operate UIM (FOMA card)**

### Saving SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card)

Move or copy SMS stored in FOMA terminal to UIM (FOMA card) to save. In addition, SMS in UIM (FOMA card) can be moved or copied to FOMA terminal.

#### Moving/copying SMS (Short Message) to UIM (FOMA card)

- You can save up to 20 Received/Sent/Unsent SMS in total in UIM (FOMA card). Received/Sent/ Unsent SMS, which is moved or copied, is displayed in each Main folder.
- By moving or copying sent SMS, the corresponding SMS report is not moved or copied to UIM (FOMA card).

#### <Example> Moving one of received SMS

- Select SMS, and press (i) [Function] > () ► ㄹ聲 "UIM".
- Press **I** "Move to UIM".
  - Press ⊇ "Copy to UIM" to copy.
- Press / \* "Yes".

is added to SMS in UIM (FOMA card). Press 2<sup>-</sup> "No" to cancel.

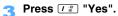
#### Information

Press [Function] > select "UIM" and press (), to operate from SMS message screen.

Moving/copying SMS (Short Message) in UIM (FOMA card) to FOMA terminal

#### <Example> Moving one of received SMS

- Select SMS, and press (i) [Function] > 🔿 🕨 🖅 "UIM".
- Press **I**" Move to Phone". • Press 49 "Copy to Phone".



• Press ⊇∰ "No" to cancel.

#### Information

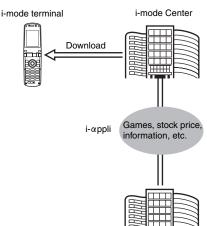
● Press (i) [Function] > select "UIM" and press (), to operate from SMS message screen.

# i-αppli

i-αppli
i-αppliDX
Downloading i-αppli from sites
Starting i-appli
Starting i-appli automatically244
Starting i-appli from sites or mails
Operating i-αppli stand-by display <i-αppli display="" stand-by=""> 24</i-αppli>
Managing i-αppli
Using various functions of i-appli

# i-appli

Downloading i- $\alpha$ ppli from sites allows you more convenient use of FOMA terminal compatible with i-mode (i-mode terminal). For example, you can download enjoyable games or i- $\alpha$ ppli to check stock prices automatically and periodically. Furthermore, Map i- $\alpha$ ppli downloads only minimum of necessary data, so that it provides smooth scrolling operation. In addition, some i- $\alpha$ ppli help to register data directly to Phonebook or Schedule, and also can be linked to "Data box" to save/obtain images directly.



- Downloading i-αppli →P241
- Starting i-αppli →P242
- Starting i-αppli automatically →P244

#### Information

- Some software may require the serial number of the i-mode terminal/UIM (FOMA card).
- Some i-αppli may connect to network when starting. You can also set for not connecting to network. →P243

#### Using registered data

Some i- $\alpha$ ppli enable you to view/register/operate registered data (Phonebook, Bookmark,

Schedules, images and icon information) in your i-mode terminal. Registered data is available in the following operations:

- Store to Phonebook
   • Use icon information
- Store Bookmark
  - Store to Schedule

IP

- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save images in Data box

# i-αppliDX

i-appliDX allows you more convenient and enjoyable use of i-appli in conjunction with the information of i-mode terminal (Mail, Dialed/ Received call history, Phonebook data etc.) Ex: Changing Compose message screen into the one with characters you like, notifying you the caller/sender on receiving calls/mails with characters' comments, revising up-to-date information on stock prices or on the status of the game in progress, and indicating the present location on the map and searching the route to the destination by using GPS function.

### Using registered data

Some i- $\alpha$ ppliDX enable you to view/register/operate registered data such as Mails, Redials, Received calls and Ring tones in addition to the registered data available with standard i- $\alpha$ ppli (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images and icons). Registered data is available in the following operations:

- Store to PhonebookUse icon information
- Refer to Phonebook
- Store Bookmark
- Store to Schedule
   Use Mail menu
- Use i-mode mail compose screen
- · Refer to latest Redial
- Refer to latest Received 
   Refer to latest unread calls
   mails
- Save Ring tone
   Save i-motion
- Change Ring tone (call, mail, MessageR/F)
- Retrieve images from Data box
- · Save images in Data box
- Change image settings (Stand-by display, Dialed/ Received calls, Menu icons)

#### Information

- i-appliDX may attempt connecting to confirm the validity of the software regardless of the network transmission setting of the software. The timing and frequency to attempt to connecting differ, depending on the software.
- To start i-appliDX, setting time and date in advance is required.

#### Mail link type i-appli

Mail link type i- $\alpha$ ppli is one of i- $\alpha$ ppliDX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of software by providing real-time update on desired information such as stock prices, or on the status of the game in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

 i-appli mails used with Mail link type i-appli may not be correctly displayed.

i-α ppi

### GPS i-αppli

GPS i- $\alpha$ ppli allows more convenient and enjoyable software use such as providing the town-information of the present location quickly, indicating the present location and searching a route to the destination with GPS function.

- FOMA terminal sends location information to the information service provider (IP) of software to use or GPS service provider while operating GPS i-appli.
- When using GPS function through GPS i-αppli, "Use location info" of the software to use is required to be set to "Send".

## Other convenient functions

#### i-αppli stand-by display

i-αppli stand-by display uses i-αppli as a stand-by display, and you can receive messages or make phone calls directly. i-αppli stand-by display enables Stand-by display to indicate the latest news or weather forecast, or to inform incoming messages and alarms, etc. with favorite characters. →P245

• This function is only available with software compatible with i-αppli stand-by display.

#### 📕 i-αppli Auto start

You can start software automatically at the userspecified time, on the date or the day of the week, etc. Some software support the function to autostart at the preset intervals. $\rightarrow$ P244

#### Shooting with Camera

You can shoot images with FOMA terminal camera from the software.  ${\rightarrow}\text{P249}$ 

• This function is available with software compatible with shooting with Camera.

#### Infrared communication

Infrared communication is available from the software to the devices with infrared communication function. Enhanced applications are available in conjunction with the devices with infrared communication function. →P249

- This function is available with software compatible with infrared communication function.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged even if the devices of the other party supports infrared communication function.

#### Infrared remote control

Operates various devices and electrical appliances compatible with infrared remote control from the software.  $\rightarrow$  P300

• This function is available with software which supports infrared remote control function. And the software is required to be compatible with the device of the other party.

# Downloading i-appli from sites

#### You can download software from sites and store in FOMA terminal.

- Up to 100 software including preinstalled software can be saved. (The number available to save is subject to change depending on software size.)
- i-αppli already saved in FOMA terminal cannot be redownloaded. However, up-date is available if a new version is released.
- If download has failed due to poor radio wave condition, etc., the software will not be saved in FOMA terminal.
- Download requires packet communication fee.
- Select software to download on a site and press •.

Selected software is downloaded. • Press 
(Cancel] to stop downloading.

When Software information setting is set to "Display"

Information of the software, such as the name and the version, is indicated.

Press ● ► [\*\*] "Yes".
 • Press 2\*\* "No" to cancel.

# When the selected software is already downloaded into the other UIM (FOMA card)

# 1 Press I's "Yes" on the screen to confirm whether to overwrite.

#### When downloading software that uses the serial number or the registered data of FOMA terminal/UIM (FOMA card)

#### 1) Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>ℬ</sub> "No" to cancel.
- Press 
   [Detail] to confirm registered data to use as a list, if software uses registered data.
- Personal information such as address, age, or sex is never informed to the information service provider (IP).

## **2** Select a folder to save in and press $\odot$ .

# 3 Make i-αppli settings.

• Items to be set vary according to the software. Go to Step 5 if no item is needed to be set.

# Setting whether to connect in starting software

① Select "Network transmission" and press ●.
 ② Press 「<sup>\*</sup><sub>3</sub>" "Yes" or <sup>Z<sup>AD</sup></sup>/<sub>2</sub>" "No".

i-αppli

#### Setting i-appli stand-by display

Select "i-αppli stand-by" and press ●.
 Press [1:3] "Yes" or [2\*9] "No".

# Setting whether to permit to send location information

- Select "Use location info" and press ●.
- ② Press IS "Send loc. info" or Z<sup>m</sup> "Not send loc. info".
- 1 Press i [Complete].

#### < Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".

i-appli starts.

- The confirmation screen appears when starting the software that requires the location information. Press [13] "Yes" to start.
- Press 2 Mo" not to start.

# i-appli software starting from sites immediately

Some i-*a*ppli start immediately after downloading (Instant start i-*a*ppli).

• You cannot save some Instant start i-αppli in FOMA terminal.

#### Information

- The confirmation screen appears when no space is left in i-αppli saving space or when 100 software have been already saved. Press (I) "Yes" to delete the data and save new software. Press (I) "No", and the screen returns to Stand-by display without saving the software. Deleted software cannot be restored even when download is failed.
- When connection is not successfully accomplished, try to download again by pressing real "Retry".
- If FOMA terminal is not the compatible model or the software has errors, a message appears and download is not available.

#### <Software property>

Viewing i-appli information in downloading

Default Not display

Press i [Function] ► 🖅 "Software info set", on i-αppli folder list screen.

Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Display" or *P*<sup>™</sup> "Not display".

#### Information

- i-αppli cannot be renamed.

# Starting i-appli

#### Hold down i for over a second.

i-appli folder list screen is displayed.

### Select a folder and press •.

#### Icons on i-appli list screen

#### i-appli type

- 🕰 : i-αppli 👷 : i-αppliDX
- <sup>Δ</sup>: i-αppli stand-by display is set.
- 🕒 : Auto start is set.
- Δ : i-αppli stand-by display and Auto start are set.

#### 2 Data type

- Added on i-αppli/i-αppliDX icon.
- 🖥 : Downloaded in SSL
- 📓 : Message i-αppli

#### Select i-αppli and press ●.

 The confirmation screen appears when Network transmission is set to "Check every start". Press () () "Yes" or () "No".

#### Information

- ●Alternatively, press ► 🔐 "i-αppli", to display i-αppli folder list screen.
- Some software attempt connecting on starting even after download is completed. You can preset whether to make connection. →P243
- When a voice call is coming while starting i-appli, Receiving screen is displayed and you can answer the call.
- Icons notify the reception of mails and messages when i-αppli is activated. Viewing mails is available without ending i-αppli. →P315
- 3-dimensional images in i-appli can be displayed by 3D polygon\* engine.
  - \* By combining polygons (triangles or squares, etc.), deep 3-dimensional images can be represented.
- Images used in i-appli\* or the data you entered may be sent to the server through Internet automatically.
  - \* Images shot with Camera activated from the software or the images retrieved by using Infrared function.
- The message appears as "Software terminated due to security error", if the software attempts to activate the function which is not permitted. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to Security error.
- Melody while using i-αppli plays in the volume level set by Phone receive call. When setting Volume to Step tone, i-αppli plays in LEVEL3. →P119
- Some software may not play any sound.

Starting i-αppl

#### Setting i-appli

Select i-αppli, and press i [Function]
 ▶ ○ ▶ I = Software act.

### 2 Set items.

#### Setting network transmission

- 1 Press 🖅 "Network trans".
- 2 Press one of I'm to I'm.
  - Communication fee is charged for network transmission. Note that network transmission starts automatically when setting "Yes".
  - When Network transmission setting is set "No" to the software requiring transmission, software may not perform properly.

#### Setting icon information

- 1 Press 5 The set icons".
- - When presetting the software as i-αppli stand-by display and additionally setting as "Use", the information of FOMA terminal, such as the presence or icons of unread mails/messages, remained battery, Manner mode, in or out of service area, as well as the product serial number and ID number of your FOMA terminal, may be informed to information service provider (IP) through Internet, and a third party may access to the information.
  - Software which requires icon information may not be started if Icon setting is set as "Not use".

# Setting the permission on change in Ring tones or images

- 1 Press **E** "Chg ring tone/img".
- - When setting "Yes" to the i-appli which can be switched the permission setting, Ring tone or images may be changed automatically.
  - When you select "Yes", set whether to display the confirmation screen on each change. Press (1) "Yes" or (2)" "No".

#### Setting the permission on change in Phonebook or History

- The setting is not available for the software which does not refer to Phonebook, Redial/ Received calls or latest unread mails.
- 1 Press 7 See phonebook/hist".
- - When setting "Yes" to the i-αppli which can be switched the permission setting, i-αppli refers to Phonebook, Redial/Received calls automatically.

# Setting whether to use/send location information

Press 
 ▶ I : Use location info".
 Press I : Send" or Z : Not send".

#### Starting software from other software

You can start new software without returning to i-αppli software list while activating other software. Procedure to start or register software depends on each software. Follow the guidance on the display.

- Download software which is available to start the other application.
- Some software may require to register the applications to start in advance.

#### Information

Download the software which is specified to be started, if the software is not saved in FOMA terminal.

#### Software preinstalled by default

Software of "AGE of EMPIRES II MOBILE" and "Gガ イド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV Program Remote Control>" are preinstalled.

- ・If you delete the preinstalled software by default, download from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>". →P183
- Both of preinstalled i-αppli are provided only in Japanese.

### AGE of EMPIRES II MOBILE

"AGE of EMPIRES II MOBILE" is a real-time tactic game to build an empire, fight and conquer others. Player enlarges the power in order to build the enormous empire back in the Middle Age of the declined Roman Empire.

The goal of the game is to repulse the invasion by others but achieve the own prosperity.

For details, refer to the instruction, Help or tutorials in the game.



©2006 In-Fusio, Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved. Published by Media Socket Inc.

プレイ <play></play>	Selects the mode and starts the
	game.
スコア	Checks the highest score of each
<score></score>	scenario in キャンペーンモード <campaign mode="">.</campaign>
操作方法 <instruction></instruction>	Checks the operation which is allocated to each key.
オプション <option></option>	Checks Help, sound setting of ON/OFF, or your credit status.
終了 <end></end>	Ends the game.

#### ゲームモード <Game mode>

チュートリアルモード <Tutorial mode> The mode to learn the operating instruction through playing the actual game. キャンペーンモード <Campaign mode> The mode to play the series of the story scenario. The game does not proceed unless you win. ランダムマップモード <Random map mode> When completing the game, a new map is created and you can refresh the game each time.

#### Hints for beginners

Here is the hints of this game for the beginners who play ランダムマップゲーム <Random map game>. ランダムマップゲーム <Random map game> starts from the dark period, that a player possesses only 2 of residents and 1 guard, and begins establishing a powerful civilization.

- First, a player needs to collect resources such as wood/stone/gold. Cut down the trees from nearby forest with 2 residents.
- Bigger number of residents are required to collect stone or gold, however, a player can only create a unit within 5 people if buildings are localized in the center of the town. Therefore, use the trees which residents have cut down to build houses and gather more people who help.
- Start creating residents after building up houses. Created residents start mining stone and gold.
- A player also needs to prepare for the attack from the enemy side. Build a training camp for fighters with collected resources, create spear fighters and defend your town.
- The period is upgraded from the dark one to the load period if a player build "House" and "Training camp". Select the center of the town and upgrade the civilization.

#### Gガイド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV Program Remote Control>



 The screen shown is an example. Contents may differ the actual screens. Displayed channels differ according to the area you live.

This application provides useful functions of both television program table and AV remote controller. You can download the information of television programs anywhere, anytime. The application informs you the titles, contents, starting time/ending time, and G-code<sup>®</sup>, etc., of the programs available at the local television stations in your area. "おすすめ メール <Recommendation>" function allows you to send your favorite program information such as titles, schedules to your friends immediately.

You can also use the application as a remote controller of your television. (Some models do not support the function.)

- ・Monthly fee of "Gガイド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV Program Remote Control>" is free of charge. However, packet communication fee is required separately.
- · Refer to "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

#### Information

- Both software are not restricted by UIM (FOMA card). However, when redownloading after deleting or when overwriting by upgrade, both software are restricted by UIM (FOMA card) as regular software downloaded, UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction →P40
- Followings are the default settings.
  - Network transmission : Yes
  - Set i-αppli To : Yes\*1
  - : Yes\*2 - Standby disp trans
  - : No\*2 - Stand-by display
  - Set icons
  - : Use\*2 : Yes\*2 Chg ringtone/image
  - : Yes\*2 - See phonebook/hist
    - : Use\*2 Use location info
  - Auto start
- \*1 Unable to change the settings in "AGE of EMPIRES II MOBILE".

: No

\*2 Unable to change the settings of both software.

# Starting i-appli automatically

Default Software : Not set User setting: Not set

#### Sets time and date/Repeat to make i-appli software to start automatically.

- Auto start settings are valid up to 30 of software and user settings in total.
- i-αppli cannot be started automatically when FOMA terminal is turned off, under Lock all, or under PIM lock (i-appli).

#### <Auto start>

#### Setting whether to start automatically

- · When the software is set to be activated automatically in a certain interval, sets whether to activate the software at the interval preset in the software.
- · Some software cannot be set to start automatically.
- Select i-appli, and press (i) [Function] Auto start".

Auto start	
9/20/2006	10:30
Software	Not set
⊒User setting	Not Set
<b>E</b> Repeat	Once only

# Press *L*<sup>\*</sup> "Software" or *∠*<sup>\*</sup> "User setting".

Software	Sets whether to start software automatically with the preset time and date/Repeat setting.
User setting	Sets whether to start software automatically with the time and date set in Auto start.

#### <sub>3</sub> Press / 🕄 "Set".

Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "Not set" not to set Auto start.

### Press i [Complete].

(L) appears on the application list screen. In some cases, the icon may not appear even after setting Auto start.

#### <Store Auto start>

#### Setting the start time and date

- The conditions that can be set depend on the software.
- Auto start is not activated when settings of the software and the user setting are set to "No" in Auto start.

### Select i-αppli, and press i [Function] ► ⊙ ► ⊇∰ "Auto start".

Press 3 "Repeat".

Press one of *I* <sup>\*</sup> to *∃*<sup>™</sup>.

Once only	Starts automatically just once on the registered time and date.
Daily	Starts automatically at the same time every day.
Day of week	<ul> <li>Starts automatically at the registered time on the selected day of every week.</li> <li>① Select the day of the week to start software automatically and press  <ul> <li>to set/release.</li> </ul> </li> <li>② Press  <ul> <li>[Complete].</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### 4 Enter time and date and press •.

# 5 Press i [Complete].

#### Information

- If i-appli auto start and Alarms, such as Schedule alarm, are set at the same time, the priority goes to Alarm setting and i-appli is not activated. In addition, software may not start while operating other functions such as composing mails.
- Failed Auto start is recorded and saved in Auto start failure history.
- Multiple software cannot be started automatically at the same time. The error message appears in an attempt to enter the same time as another software.
- Software may not be activated automatically if the same software has been started automatically within the last 10 minutes. Set the interval time between auto start settings more than 10 minutes.

#### i-appli To function

# Starting i-appli from sites or mails

You can start i- $\alpha$ ppli software from other functions, such as sites/mails/infrared communication/Bar code.

- **1** Select the item linking to the software and press  $\bullet$ .
- 🔈 Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 2m "No" not to start.

#### Information

- Save the software to start in FOMA terminal in advance. However, some i-*a*ppli which are executed from sites start immediately after download is completed (Instant i-*a*ppli). In this case, the software is not saved yet, and the confirmation screen appears. Some Instant start i-*a*ppli cannot be saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the software to start is not saved in FOMA terminal, a message "No requested software" appears.
- When activating Instant start i-appli, the message screen may appear confirming whether to attempt connecting to network.
- i-αppli does not start when i-αppli To setting is set to "No".
- After i-appli ends or is terminated by errors, the screen returns to the previous place where the i-appli started.

#### <i-appli To setting>

#### Setting whether to start software by i-appli To function

Sets each i- $\alpha$ ppli whether to be started from sites or mails etc.

- Some software may not support i- $\alpha \mbox{ppli}$  To function.

- Select i-αppli, and press i [Function]
   > 글 : "Software act" > Ψ : "Set i-αppli To".
- 2 Press *I*<sup>\*</sup><sup>®</sup> "Yes" or *Z*<sup>\*</sup><sup>™</sup> "No".

#### i-appli stand-by display

# Operating i-appli stand-by display

# Set i-appli as Stand-by display, and you can start and operate i-appli from Stand-by display.

- Before setting i-αppli stand-by display, download the software for Stand-by display.
- Some software may not be applied to i-appli stand-by display.
- i-αppli stand-by display setting is prior to Wallpaper in Stand-by display setting.
- Only 1 software can be set as i-αppli stand-by display.

### Setting i-*appli* stand-by display



- 2 Press I: "Set".
- 3 Select i-αppli and press •.
- ▲ Press 1 \* "Yes" or 2 \* "No".

#### Setting from i-appli

- > Press I <sup>\*</sup> "Yes" or Z<sup>\*</sup> "No".

# Starting i- $\alpha$ ppli from i- $\alpha$ ppli stand-by display

# Press @cm while displaying i-αppli stand-by display.

i- $\alpha$ ppli starts and  $\cancel{R}$  or  $\cancel{R}$  is changed into blinking  $\cancel{R}$  (orange) or  $\cancel{R}$  (orange).

- Ending/releasing i-appli stand-by display while activating software
  - Press while activating i-αppli standby display.
    - Following procedure: →P246 "Releasing i-αppli stand-by display" Step 3

#### Information

- When Lock all or PIM lock (i-appli) is set while activating i-appli stand-by display, i-appli stand-by display is terminated and the default Stand-by display returns under Lock all, and the Stand-by display preset before setting i-appli stand-by display returns under PIM lock (i-appli). Release Lock all or PIM lock (i-appli) to redisplay i-appli stand-by display.
- When turning the power off, and on again while activating i-appli stand-by display, the confirmation message appears. Press III "Yes" to activate i-appli stand-by display, and IIII "No" to display Stand-by display. i-appli stand-by display starts after approximately 5 seconds of no operation.
- i-appli stand-by display which requires connection to the network may not work correctly under the poor radio wave condition.
- When the software icon setting of i-appli stand-by display is set as "Use", the information of FOMA terminal, such as the presence or icons of unread mails/messages, remained battery, Manner mode, in or out of service area, as well as the product serial number and ID number of your FOMA terminal, may be informed to information service provider (IP) through Internet, and a third party may acquire the information.

#### <Transmission setting of i-appli stand-by display>

# Setting i-appli stand-by display transmission

- Select i-αppli, and press i [Function] ▷ ③ ▷ 글 ᠃ Software act ▷ ⊇ … "Standby disp trans".
- Press I : "Yes" or Z<sup>A</sup> "No".

#### Information

When stand-by display transmission is set to "No", up-to-date information may not be available on the screen.

#### Releasing i-appli stand-by display

- Press 2<sup>-</sup> "End/Deactivate".

#### 3 Press 2<sup>-</sup> "Deactivate".

- Press <u>[]</u> "End" to end i-αppli stand-by display temporarily. i-αppli stand-by display is activated at next time displaying Stand-by display.
- Press 𝔅<sup>™</sup> "Cancel" to cancel.

#### Releasing from i-appli

- Select i-αppli, and press i [Function]
  - ▶ ▶ ∃<sup>∞</sup> "Software act" ▶ I<sup>∞</sup>
     "Stand-by display".
  - When selecting another software while activating i-αppli stand-by display, the confirmation message appears.

#### ഉ Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <a>Press</a> <a>Press</a

# Managing i-appli

# You can upgrade or sort software for comfortable use, and also check the error history when i-appli start fails.

#### Information

- For i-αppli developers;

Managing i-*appl* 

#### <Upgrade>

#### Upgrading i-appli

When software saved in FOMA terminal is upgraded at the site, you can upgrade by downloading.

# Select i-αppli, and press i [Function] I grade I Upgrade I Upgrade

#### 🄈 Press / 🕄 "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- The confirmation screen may appear depending on settings in Software act or each software. The confirmation screen in downloading →P241

#### Information

- Some software may confirm weather to upgrade automatically and displays the confirmation screen when starting the software. Press I "Yes" to start upgrading.
- If the folders in Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages used by the software are with Security ON, when upgrading Mail link type i-appli, the screen is displayed to confirm whether to change the corresponding folder name. Press [r] "Execute" and enter the terminal security code to start upgrading.
- Mail link type i-appli cannot be upgraded under PIM lock (Mail), when the i-appli has corresponding folders and the folder names are changed by Upgrade.

#### **Creating folder**

- Up to 9 folders can be created including Main folder.
- 1 Press i [Function] ► *L*: "Create folder", on i-αppli folder list screen.

Enter the folder name and press (•).

• Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Changing the name of created folder

- · Main folder cannot be renamed.
- 2 Enter the folder name and press •.

#### Sorting folder

- · Main folder cannot be sorted.
- Select a folder and press ●.
- ③ Select the destination to move in and press ●.
- Repeat Step 2 to 3 to sort other folders.
- 4 Press i [Complete].

#### Moving i-appli to folders

Select i-αppli and press i [Function] ► ਟੋ™ "Move to folder". 🔈 Press 🖅 "Move".

#### Moving by option

- Press 2<sup>\*</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Move option".
   Select i-αppli and press (•).
   Press (•) to release.
   Press (•) [Exec.]
- Moving all

1 Press 🖅 "Move all in folder".

**3** Select the destination to move in and press  $\odot$ .

#### 📶 Press 🖅 🕆 "Yes".

• Press 2mm "No" to cancel.

#### Deleting i-appli or folder

#### **Deleting folder**

- · Main folder cannot be deleted.
- 1 Select a folder and press [Function] ►  $\P_{\mathbb{R}}^{\text{st}}$  "Delete folder".
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press ().
- - Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Deleting i-appli

- Select i-αppli, and press i [Function] ► ○ ► / :: "Delete".
- Press I "Delete".
  - Deleting by option
    - Press 2<sup>m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Delete option".
       Select i-αppli and press (•).
       Press (•) to release.
    - 3 Press (i) [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all in fldr".
- ② Enter the terminal security code and press •.

#### 强 Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- When i-appli to delete is set as i-appli stand-by display, the confirmation screen appears. Press I: "Yes" to delete and return to Stand-by display preset in Wallpaper.
- Mail link type i-appli cannot be deleted, if any mails are protected in the folders of Inbox/Outbox.

- When deleting Mail link type i-appli, you can select whether to delete folders together, which have been created automatically. However, under PIM lock (mail) or when the folder contains protected mails. neither the software nor the folder can be deleted.
- If security is set to the folders of Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages that Mail link type i-appli uses, the confirmation screen appears. Press [1:8] "Execute" and enter the terminal security code, to delete.
- When redownloading Mail link type i-appli, the folder left without Mail link type i-appli can be utilized. However, if the folder is secured, download starts after entering the terminal security code. If any remained folder is unnecessary, delete the folder and vou can create a new folder. However, vou cannot download Mail link type i-appli without creating a new folder or under PIM lock (Mail).
- When deleting Mail link type i-αppli, i-αppli mails may be deleted from folders depending on the software type.
- While operating Mail link type i-appli folder with Multitask, the linked Mail link type i-appli cannot be deleted.

#### <Sort>

#### Sorting i-appli

Select i-appli, and press [] [Function] I Sort".

#### Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

	1	
Run times(asc.)	Sorts by activated	
	frequency in ascending	
	order.	
Run times(des.)	Sorts by activated	
	frequency in descending	
	order.	
Start date	Sorts by activated date in	
(new→o)	order from new to old.	
Start date	Sorts by activated date in	
(old→n)	order from old to new.	
Svg date	Sorts by saved date in	
(new→o)	order from new to old.	
Svg date	Sorts by saved date in	
(old→n)	order from old to new.	
αppli name	Sorts by i-appli name in	
(asc.)	ascending order.	
αppli name	Sorts by i-appli name in	
(des.)	descending order.	
appli size(asc.)	Sorts by software size in	
	ascending order.	
αppli size(des.)	Sorts by software size in	
	ascending order.	

#### Information

Sorting may not work when frequency of executions or the file size are the same in several software.

<View certificate>

#### Confirming the certification of i-appli

When downloading i-appli with SSL communication, the certificate of the site is displayed.

#### Select i-appli, and press i [Function] Is a "View certificate".

#### <View history>

### Confirming the information such as errors

You can confirm the errors, such as failures in starting.

Select a folder and press (i) [Function] > 5 🖑 "View history".

## Press one of $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ to $H_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Auto start failure	Confirms the software title or the time/date of Auto start failure.
End w/ stand-by err	Confirms the software title or the time/date of the failure with i-appli stand-by display.
Security error	Confirms the title of the software or the time/date of the forced termination for attempting network transmission or reference etc. that are not allowed.
Trace info	Creates the trace information of the character strings on the error report written in while executing software or the saved contents at exceptional terminations.

#### Deleting History or Trace information

- 1 Press (i) [Delete] on History list screen or Trace info. screen.
- 2 Press / \* "Yes".

• Press 2mm "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- Press (I [Function] > E " View history", to confirm from i-appli list screen.
- Up to approximately 1 KB for each history can be saved in Auto start failure history/End with stand-by error history/Security error history/Trace information.
- If a new history is to reach the maximum size to save, the oldest messages are deleted to save the new history.

#### <Software info>

#### Confirming the information of i-appli

You can confirm the software title, version, and settings of i- $\alpha$ ppli.

#### 1

#### Select i-αppli, and press i [Function] ▶ प "Software info".

#### Information

●Alternatively, the setting is also available to confirm the information on downloading. →P242

#### <System property>

#### Confirming system status of i-appli

Displays occupied/open memory space and the number of saved i- $\alpha$ ppli in number and graph.

Select a folder and press i [Function] ► 🖅 "System property".

#### Information

● Press (i) [Function] ▶ 7 " "System property", to confirm from i-appli list screen.

## Using various functions of i-appli

Some i- $\alpha$ ppli provide various functions, such as making calls, connecting to sites, Camera, Bar code reader, and Infrared communication etc.

Download i-αppli applicable to each function in advance.

#### Making a call from i-appli

- Select the phone number field and press 

   following the guidance on the screen.
  - Following procedure: →P193 "Functions available by selecting the phone number" Step 2
  - When you make a call, the software is interrupted.
  - Some software may require different operations or are unable to make calls.

#### Connecting to sites from i-appli

Select a link item and press •, following the guidance on the screen.

#### Press i [Connect].

The software ends and the site is displayed.

 Some software may require different operations or are unable to connect to sites.

#### Using camera function from i-appli

- Shoot a picture by Camera using the software.
  - Some software may automatically start Camera.

#### Information

- When Camera is activated from software, the shot image is not saved in "Camera" folder in My picture or i-motion folder, but saved/used as a part of i-appli.
- Setting change of the size, continuous shot, image quality or frame is available depending on the software.

#### Using Bar code reader/Character reader from i-appli

Activate Camera from i-αppli, and you can read JAN/QR code or characters.

#### Read a code using the software.

 A message appears to indicate that the scanned data is saved and used by software.

#### Using infrared communication from i-appli

 Infrared communication may not work depending on devices of the other party, even if they support Infrared communication.

# Perform Infrared communication using the software.

249

i-αppli

# i-channel

i-channel	
Displaying i-channel	
Setting i-channel	

# i-channel

i-channel is the service that DoCoMo or IP (information service providers) provide graphical information such as latest news or weather reports. The service is only available for the i-channel compatible models. Information is provided periodically. Latest information is displayed as ticker on Stand-by display, or Channel list which becomes available by pressing i-channel key. (To display Channel list →P253) In addition, you can retrieve enriched detailed information by selecting your favorite channel from Channel list.

- Refer to "i-mode User's manual" for precautions and details for using i-channel.
- The i-channel service is provided only in Japanese.

#### Before subscription



# When you have not subscribed to i-channel

 After subscription to i-channel, a ticker appears automatically

on Stand-by display

displaying Channel list.

when receiving

information or

#### After subscription

10:30 Wed Sep 20







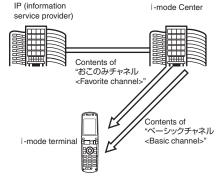
- Press 
   to display Channel list. You can check a variety of channel information as a list, which appears as a ticker.
- Select each channel, and you can browse detailed information screen.
- ----ス 夏の風物詩,花火大 会に20万人の未嶋。 夏の夜で応いしれ
- \* These screens shown are examples. Contents may differ from the actual screens.

# Type of channels

The service provides 2 types of channels, " $(- \\ightarrow \\ \\ightarrow \\ight$ 

Only the information of "ベーシックチャネル <Basic channel>" appears as a ticker on Stand-by display.

- Some channels registered as "おこのみチャネル <Favorite channel>" charge information fees for use.
- Additional subscriptions to IP (information service providers) may be required for registering some of "おこのみチャネル <Favorite channel>".
- When browsing detailed information from Channel list of "ベーシックチャネル <Basic channel>" or "お このみチャネル <Favorite channel>", additional packet communication fee is charged.



i-channel is the charged service with additional subscription. (i-mode subscription is required.)

- Operation procedure →P253
- Models supporting i-channel: Series of 701i/702i/ 902i, P851i, and D851iWM

## **Trial service**

If using i-channel compatible terminals with i-mode subscription and not subscribing to the i-channel service, users can enjoy "ベーシックチャネル <Basic channel>" free of charge for a certain period. Note that browsing detailed information from Channel list charges users for the packet communication fee.

• Refer to "i-mode User's manual" for precautions and details for using Trial service.

Trial service generally starts automatically after a certain period of time, when you start using an i-channel compatible terminal with UIM (FOMA card) inserted. Press the i-channel key to start when the service does not start automatically. Trial service is only available once for each

subscriber's phone number.

Trial service is terminated automatically after a certain period of time since started. Refer to "i-mode User's manual" for detailed procedures to terminate the service halfway.

## Ticker

After the subscription to i-channel, information is displayed automatically as a ticker on Standby display on receiving information.



• 🖨 blinks while receiving information.

## Information

- Information reception may be interrupted when turning off the power of FOMA terminal, out of service area, or under poor radio wave condition.
- When setting animation or i-motion as Stand-by display, Ticker returns after playing is ended.
- Ticker does not appear in the following conditions.
  - No UIM (FOMA card)
  - When UIM (FOMA card) cannot be recognized
  - When PIN is completely locked
  - Under PIM lock (i-mode)
  - Under Lock all
  - Under Public mode (Drive mode)
  - Under lower battery level
  - When setting i-appli stand-by display

# **Displaying i-channel**

# Displays Channel list and accesses to information site of i-channel.

**Press .** Channel list screen is displayed.

2 Select the information.

#### Information

 Information may be received on displaying Channel list, depending on your conditions using the service.

# Setting i-channel

Default	Ticker display : Display
	Ticker speed : Normal

Sets whether to display a ticker on Stand-by display, or the scrolling speed when displaying a ticker.

Press i [Function] on Channel list screen.

## 2 Set items.

#### Setting whether to display

- 1 Press 🖅 "Ticker display".
- ② Press (?) "Display" or 2 m "Not display".

#### Setting scrolling speed

- 1 Press 2\* "Ticker speed".
- (2) Press one of  $I_{\ast}$  to  $\exists S$ .
- · You can select from "Fast", "Normal" or "Slow".

#### Information

- Any of Ring tone/Vibrator is not available even when receiving information. In addition, LED does not light up or blink.
- Ticker does not appear when Ticker display setting is set to "Not display" by user's operation.
- Ticker does not appear without subscription of the service, even when Ticker display setting is set to "Display".
- Ticker does not appear after canceling the subscription of the service.
- When you cancel the i-mode service subscription before canceling i-channel service, a ticker still remains but no latest information is updated.
- A confirmation message appears to indicate whether to release i-αppli stand-by display when Ticker display setting is set to "Display" with i-αppli stand-by display. Press (*i*:) "Yes" to release i-αppli stand-by display setting.
- You can change the i-channel host, however, no change is needed for usual use. →P195

- When Ticker does not appear in cases below, press (a) to display Channel list and receive the latest information, and Ticker returns on the screen. Ticker for some information site may appear without displaying Channel list to receive the latest information.
  - When changing the host to connect
  - When resetting all the settings or deleting all data
  - When replacing UIM (FOMA card) to other i-channel applicable terminals
- Information may not be updated automatically after changing the host. Press (2) and display Channel list, to receive the latest information.

# **GPS** function

GPS function
Positioning your location
Setting Position location <position loc.="" settings=""> 257</position>
Using Navigation
Using GPS software
Providing location information upon the request
<location provide=""> 260</location>
Notifying present location <notify location=""> 262</notify>
Displaying the history of confirmed location information
<location history=""> 265</location>
Using location information from each function
Using GPS function

# **GPS** function

GPS (Global Positioning System) is the system developed and operated by Department of Defense of USA. The system notifies current position (longitude and latitude, etc.) using the radio wave for positioning location radiated from the orbiting satellites of the earth. Retrieve location information (longitude/latitude) of FOMA terminal to use radio waves radiated from GPS satellites for positioning location. Varieties of services are available with retrieved location information.

#### Services available with GPS function

Displaying map or searching surrounding information of the present location (Position location)

Sends retrieved location information to search map or surrounding information.

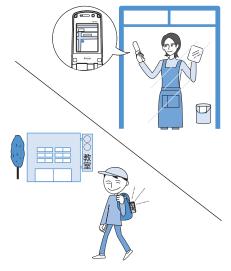
#### Using Navigation (Navigation)

Navigation is available to go to the destination by using location information.

#### Using GPS applicable i-αppli (GPS software)

Useful i-*a*ppli is available by using location information. For example, you can check traffic information.

#### Providing location information upon the request from the other party (Location provide)



#### Notifying location information of the present location (Notify location/Periodic notify)

Notifies location information of the present location to others. You can also set the function to notify location information periodically.

#### Adding location information to shot still images

Adds location information to shot still images. Displaying map or navigation from added location information is also available.

Sending the present location or favorite places by mails

Attaches location information to mail messages. Receivers can check the maps of neighborhood by using location information URL.

#### Registering location information to Phonebook or Schedule

The retrieved location information is available to use after registering to Phonebook or Schedule.

Using GPS function →P268

#### **Position location**

# **Positioning your location**

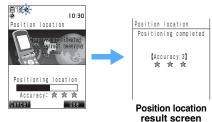
#### Position the present location and you can check your place. You can also send the positioned location information with mails or register to Phonebook.

- Positioning location may be activated with FOMA terminals out of service area, however, may take more time. In addition, positioning may not be available depending on the surrounding condition.
- Positioning the location may be completed with FOMA terminals out of service area, however, viewing map or Navigation is not available.



blinks and positioning starts.

 Press [] [Use] to use the displayed location information of Accuracy as the position location result, while positioning location.



- Accuracy level is the rough estimation of the error range of accuracy.
- Accuracy level 3 ( 🚖 🚖 🚖 ) : Error is less than 50 m.
- Accuracy level 2 (☆ ☆ ☆): Error is over 50 m, less than 300 m.

Accuracy level 1 ( 🌟 🏠 🏠 ) : Error is over 300 m,

\* Accuracy is the rough estimation. The accuracy result may differ from the actual location.

#### Canceling Position location

Press (•).

# Select an item and press (•).

Deede	Connects to the site and
Read a	Connects to the site and
map	displays the map. ① Press
Deete te	
Paste to mail	Pastes location information URL onto mail messages.
man	Location information URL is the
	site URL of maps or
	surroundings, which contains
	location information (longitude/
	latitude)/Geographic
	coordinate system*/Accuracy.
	You can display the sites for the
	use of location information by
	accessing to location
	information URL.
	1 Press I 🕄 "Yes".
	Compose message screen is
	displayed.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P209</li> </ul>
	"Composing and sending i-
	mode mail" Step 2 to 6
Navigation	Executes Navigation. Follows the
	instruction on the screen. →P258
Run GPS	Displays GPS software list.
software	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P260</li> </ul>
	"Using GPS software" Step 2
New to	Registers location information to
phonebook	Phonebook.
-	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P95</li> </ul>
	"Storing entry in FOMA terminal
	Phonebook" Step 3 to 6
	<ul> <li>Registration to UIM (FOMA</li> </ul>
	card) Phonebook is unavailable.
Add to	Adds location information to
phonebook	Phonebook.
	① Select a Phonebook entry and
	press ).
	A confirmation screen is
	displayed if the location
	information has been already added.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P107</li> </ul>
	"Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
New to	Registers location information to
schedule	Schedule.
concure	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> </ul>
	"Registering schedule" Step 3
	to 5
Add to	Adds location information to
schedule	Schedule.
	① Select a schedule and press ④.
	A confirmation screen is
	displayed if the location
	information has been
	already added.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure:</li> </ul>
	→P321 "Registering
	schedule" Step 4 to 5

\* Geographic coordinate system is the standard rule to display positions on the earth with latitude and longitude.

## Information



"Position location", to position the location.

Position location is also activated by holding down i over a second.

- Any tone/vibrator/incoming-call lamp is not activated when positioning location under Public mode (Drive mode).
- Accuracy is the rough indication. The result differs depending on the radio wave condition of the surroundings.

## Position loc. settings

**Setting Position location** 

After positioning location, you can display a map with simple operation or start GPS software automatically.

#### Setting GPS key

Default Read a map

Sets the operation after positioning location (holding down GPS key for over a second).



# Select an item and press (•).

Read a map	Connects to the site and displays a map.
Paste to mail	Pastes location information URL onto mail messages.
Navigation	Starts Navigation. →P258
Run GPS software	Displays GPS software list. →P260
Store in phonebook	Registers a new or an additional entry to Phonebook. →P95, 107
Store in schedule	Registers a new or an additional entry to Schedule. →P321
Check every position	Selects each item to use on every positioning.

## Setting Positioning mode for **Positioning location**

	Default	Standard mode
Press 🔌 🕨		ac _
Press / : இ "Standard mode" or (ਟੋ * இ) "Quality mode".		

mode	Positions location prior to shorter duration.
Quality mode	Takes longer time to position location. Consequently the accuracy of positioning location may be superior to that of Standard mode.

#### Navigation

# **Using Navigation**

#### Navigation is the function to search and navigate the route, etc. from the present location with voices. You can search the route to the destination etc. with simple operation.

- FOMA and i-mode service are required to be subscribed for using Navigation.
- Navigation information is free of charge, however, requires additional packet communication fee.
- Preinstalled GPS Navigation service will be unavailable at the end of September, 2009. Please be forewarned.
- · Navigation screen in this manual is an example.

### **Starting Navigation**

# 🚹 Press 🔌

#### Starting Navigation for the first time

Displays the product agreement screen of Navigation.

- Select "確認/利用規約承諾 <Confirmation/ Agreement for Terms of Use>" and press ●. The initial check screen of Navigation application appears.
  - · Please confirm the Terms of use and precautions.

#### Make the initial setting.

- Displays Check screen for starting Navigation every time when 通信設定 <Network transmission> is set to "起動ごとに確認 <Check every session>".
- Displays Check screen for positioning location every time, when 位置情報利用設定 <Using location information setting> is set to "送信ごとに確認 <Check every session>".
- Displays Check screen for referring Phonebook or Location history every time, when 電話帳 / 履歴参照 <Referring Phonebook/Location history> is set to "参照ごとに確認 <Check every session>".
- ③ Select "確認(次へ進む) <Confirm (Go to next)>", and press ●.

#### Navigation start screen

○目的地へ音声ナと
<ul> <li>現在地の地図</li> <li>周辺スポット検索</li> <li>最寄り駅案内</li> </ul>
ーション

(C) SANYO Powered by NAVITIME JAPAN

#### ①かんたんナビ <Easy navigation>

Set the destination, and navigation starts searching the route and voice navigation.

②現在地メニュー <Present location menu> Confirms the present location. Displays a map of surroundings from the present location information, and searches spots in neighborhoods or the closest station.

③インフォメーション <Information> Notifies important information/terms of use/expiration date of Navigation/communication fee/FAQ.

#### ④各種設定 <Other settings>

Configures various settings of Navigation (volume/ vibration), displaying aerial photos, communication, using location information or quoting Phonebook/ History.

#### Information

- No communication is activated when starting Navigation. Connection starts when accessing Easy navigation/Present location menu/Information (partially), and additional packet communication fee is required. For rough estimates of communication fee, refer to the guide from Information menu.
- Be sure to read and agree Terms of use and Precautions before use.

## **Using Navigation**

- GPS signal condition may expand positioning error or cause the service suspended.
- Only the positioned present location can be set as the start location.

#### <Example> Searching Tokyo tower

1 Start Navigation and press ፲ ゜かん たんナビ <Easy navigation>".

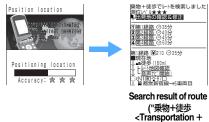
## 2 Search the destination.



#### **Destination screen**

• You can search the destination by various keywords such as address or phone number. Follow the instruction on the screen.

# Select transportation, and press O.



On foot>")
Positions the present location and the search

result of the route is displayed.

- Navigation of "徒歩のみ <Only on foot>" is unavailable when the route to the destination is over 10 Km.
- You can confirm the route when selecting "自動車 <Automobiles>" on the designation screen. (In this case, voice navigation is unavailable.)
- Select "地図アイコン凡例 <Map legend>" and press 

   , and explanation of the icons on the map is displayed.

#### Select "音声ナビ開始! <Start voice navigation!>" and press ●.



 Navigation engine by NAVITIME JAPAN Map: Shobunsha Publications, Inc.

Displays the neighborhood map of the present location and voice navigation begins after starting Vibrator. (Vibrator is not activated when "OFF" is set to each setting.)

- Voice navigation plays only once and cannot be repeated.
- It may take time before starting voice navigation.
- Voice navigation is only available when setting to 徒歩 <On foot>.
- When 電子コンパス <Electronic compass> is set to ON, the map rotates automatically as your direction is always displayed upward of the screen. The direction of 電子コンパス <Electronic compass> is not set properly by default. Hold and shake FOMA terminal in a big action for about 5 seconds, twisting your wrist in a figure-of-eight to set the proper direction.

#### Checking the route on map

- ① Select "ルート地図確認 <Check the route map>" and press ●.
  - · Voice navigation is not activated.

#### Information

- ●When starting voice navigation or selecting "地図を確認する <Check the map>" from the present location menu, 電子コンパス <Electronic compass> is ON.
- When using 電子コンパス <Electronic compass>, open FOMA terminal completely with the operation keys kept horizontally.
- Please be forewarned that any accuracy or immediacy cannot be assured when using map, navigation or route information.
- Drive or walk in accordance with actual traffic regulations. Do not operate a mobile phone or check screens while driving/walking.
- Any unauthorized reproduction, copy or revise of the map is prohibited.
- 電子コンパス <Electronic compass> calculates the direction by detecting subtle magnetic fields of the earth.
   Following conditions may cause the difficulty to display the correct directions.
- Near buildings, ironware (such as steel-made desks, especially), radios, televisions, high-tension wires, magnetic solid rocks
- While using straps/watches/rings with magnetic materials, or near/inside trains/buses/cars
- Environment with extreme change in temperature
   Hold and shake FOMA terminal in a big action for about 5 seconds, twisting your wrist in a figure-of-eight to set the proper direction, if leaving FOMA terminal under following conditions for a long period of time; immediately after activating 電子コンパス <Electronic compass>, when opening/closing FOMA terminal, inserting/removing miniSD memory card, bringing or placing near radio/ television/ironware/magnetic materials, or placing for long under environments with extreme change in temperature.

## Map viewer

Map viewer displayed in Navigation provides Standard mode (Present location/Destination map)/ View route mode/Navigation mode.



Standard mode (Present location/ Destination)



View route mode (On foot/Automobiles)

Displays when selecting

"ルート地図確認 <Check

the route map>" on

Search result screen.

Displays when selecting "地図を確認する <Check

the map>" on Present/ Destination location.



Displays when selecting "音声ナビ開始! <Start Voice navigation!>" on Search result screen.

#### Navigation mode

#### Map viewer operation key

Use the following keys to operate Map viewer.

	<b>a</b>
Key	Operation
$\boldsymbol{\otimes}$	Scrolls upward/downward and left/right.
<ul><li>● [拡大</li><li><enlarge>]</enlarge></li></ul>	Enlarged.
▣ [縮小 <reduce>]</reduce>	Reduced.
<b>X</b>	Rotates counterclockwise.
<b>#</b> ≒+	Rotates clockwise.
(ĭ) [メニュ- <menu>]</menu>	Function menu appears.
	The crosshair cursor is the center of the screen.
<b>B</b>	Switches ON and OFF of Skyview function.
() an	Close the map. The crosshair cursor returns to the original position while the cursor is moving. Returns to the map screen while displaying function menu or each pop-up screen.

## Map viewer function menu

You can operate Map viewer from function menu. Menu/order to display differs depending on the type of Map viewer.

 "航空写真 <Aerial photo>" and "ナビモードON <Navigation mode ON>"/"現在地更新ON <Refresh the preset location ON>"/"スカイビュー ON <Skyview ON>" cannot be set simultaneously.

Function menu	Display mode of map	Description
ナビモード ONOFF <navigation mode ON/ OFF&gt;</navigation 	ルート表示 (徒歩) ナビ <view route<br="">navigation (On foot)&gt;</view>	Navigation starts when setting "ナビモードON <navigation mode<br="">ON&gt;" in View route (On foot) mode. Switches to View route mode when setting "ナビ モードOFF <navigation mode OFF&gt;" in Navigation mode.</navigation </navigation>
リルート (再探索) <reroute (Re-search)&gt;</reroute 	ルート表示 (徒歩) ナビ <view route<br="">navigation (On foot)&gt;</view>	Searches the route again by changing the start point to the present location or the crosshair cursor position.
現在地更新 ON/OFF <refresh the<br="">present location ON/ OFF&gt;</refresh>	通常(現在地) <standard (Present location)&gt; ルート表示 (自動車) <view route<br="">(Automobiles)&gt;</view></standard 	When setting "現在 地更新ON <refresh the present location ON/OFF&gt;", Notify location starts and the screen scrolls automatically to the present location.</refresh 
場所を修正する <change location&gt;</change 	通常(現在地 /目的地) <standard (Present location/ Destination)&gt;</standard 	Changes the map to crosshair cursor point.
地図の縮尺変更 <change map<br="">scale&gt;</change>	All mode	Selects the map scale. Select "航空写真 <aerial photo&gt;", and aerial photo map is displayed.</aerial 
電子コンパス ON/OFF <electronic compass ON/ OFF&gt;</electronic 	All mode	Displays map as your direction is upward of the screen.
ナビゲーション 設定 <navigation setting&gt;</navigation 	ルート表示 (徒歩) ナビ <view route<br="">navigation (On foot)&gt;</view>	Adjusts Volume and Vibrator.
スカイビュー ON/OFF <skyview <br="" on="">OFF&gt;</skyview>	All mode	Sets ON and the map turns 3D such as bird-eye view.
地図操作方法 <map instruction&gt;</map 	All mode	Describes the procedure or menu of map.
地図を閉じる <close map=""></close>	All mode	Close the map.

#### Information

When using aerial photos, packet communication fee to download aerial photomap of 400 m square is charged for approximately 50 KB (approx. 400 packets).  If taking a wrong way or reaching behind buildings, the screen and voice may not navigate correctly.

### GPS software

# **Using GPS software**

GPS software is i- $\alpha$ ppli applicable to GPS function. You can display map of surroundings etc. by using the location information retrieved by FOMA terminals.

- Download i-αppli applicable to GPS function in advance.
- Service procedures of location information differ depending on software.



- Select GPS software and press •.
  - Only the software applicable to GPS is displayed.

#### Location provide

# Providing location information upon the request

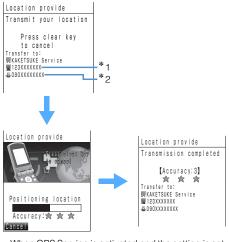
# Provides the present location information upon the request from the other party.

- Set Location provide setting to "Loc. provide ON" to use this function. (→P261) Location provide setting is set as "Loc. provide OFF " by default. In addition, the function may require the service settings (GPS service setting) in the Location provide menu. →P262 [For users of "イマドコサー チ <Searching position>", 位置情報利用設定 (イマ ドコサーチ設定) <Use location information setting (Search position setting)> in i-mode option setting)> in
- Location provide may require the additional service subscription. GPS services or "イマドコ サーチ <Searching position>" may be charged under some conditions.
- For using Location provide service, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo.
- Location information may be sent without any operation under "Loc. provide ON".

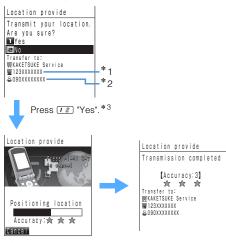
#### When the location information is requested

Location provide starts upon the request to provide the location information from the registered host.

- W blinks and positioning starts.
- When making or talking on a phone/videophone call, Notify/Check tone, or vibrator are not activated, and only signal tone, incoming-call lamp and the screen are active.
- When GPS Service is activated and the setting is set to "許可 <Accept>", location is provided without users' confirmation.
- When "イマドコサーチ <Searching position>" is activated and 位置情報利用設定 (イマドコサーチ 設定) <Use location information setting (Searching position setting)> in i-mode option setting is set to "許可 <Accept>", location is provided without users' confirmation.



- When GPS Service is activated and the setting is set to "毎回確認 <Confirm request>", location is provided by confirming to users upon each request.
- When "イマドコサーチ <Searching position>" is activated and 位置情報利用設定 (イマドコサーチ設定) <Use location information setting (Searching position setting)> in i-mode option setting is set to " 毎回確認 <Confirm request>", location is provided by confirming to users upon each request.



- \*1 " (Host ID for Location provide)" may not appear.
- \*2 If \* & (Requestor ID for Location provide)" matches to a phone number or an E-mail address registered in Phonebook, the name registered in Phonebook is displayed. And if ID matches to a phone number of Location service client and does not match to a number in Phonebook, Location service client name is displayed. In this case, the icon turns \* & ".
- \*<sup>3</sup> Press (21) "No", not to send. Location is not provided if no operation is made for over 20 seconds.

#### Terminating Location provide

- - Location information may be sent depending on the operation timing.
  - Under the poor radio wave condition, sent location information may not reach GPS service providers or Location service clients of "イマドコサーチ <Searching position>".

### Information

When the phone number or the E-mail address of the receiver to provide Location information is registered to the Phonebook data set as Secret, the name is not displayed except under Secret mode.

# Setting permission for Location provide

Displays Loc. provide ON/OFF setting screen.

- Press [1] "Loc. provide ON".
   Press [2] "Loc. provide OFF" not to permit.
- **3** Enter the terminal security code and press ().

#### Setting Permission schedule onto Location provide

- Actions when setting Permission schedule →P269
- 1 Press ਭ<sup>™</sup> "Permission schedule" on Location provide ON/OFF screen.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press •.

3 Set the period.

## Setting start time

Select <sup>(i)</sup>/<sub>min</sub> and press ●.
 Enter the start time, and press ●.

## Setting end time

Select <sup>(1)</sup>/<sub>mb</sub> and press ●.
 2 Enter the end time, and press ●.

## Setting Repeat

Daily	Permits to provide location information at the set time every day.
Day of week	Permits to provides location information on specified days of the week. ① Select a day of the week and press ④. • Press ④ to release. ② Press   [Complete].
No repeat	Permits to provide location information only during the set period.

#### Setting Valid period

- Valid date setting is not available when setting "No repeat".
- No operation is required not to set Valid period.
- **1** Select  $\square$  and press **()**.
- 2 Press 1 \* "Set".
  - Press 🖅 "Not set", not to set.
- ③ Enter the start date and press ▶ enter the end date and press ●.

# 👍 Press 间 [Define].

### <Service settings>

## **GPS Service settings**

Connect to GPS service settings, and make the settings on search permission or password in Location provide.

 To use "イマドコサーチ <Searching position>", "位置情報利用設定(イマドコサーチ設定) <Use location information setting (Search position setting)>" in "モードオプション設定 (i-mode option setting) is required to be set, instead of GPS service settings in FOMA terminal. Refer to DoCoMo Internet site for details about Use location info. setting.



Connects to GPS Service settings.

## Configure the required settings.

• Please contact GPS Service providers for the setting details.

## Information

Functions (such as registering Bookmark/Screen memo, etc.) are not available except View certificate or converting character code while connecting to GPS Service setting. No URL history is recorded.

- Location provide function under Public mode (Drive mode) works as follows.
  - When GPS Service setting is set to "毎回確認 <Confirm request>", location information is not provided upon the request.
  - When "許可 <Accept>" is set in GPS service settings, the notification for location appears on the screen without any sound, vibration or lamp. Only notification screen is displayed and provides the location.

# Setting Positioning mode of Location provide

Default

Standard mode

- Press 🔌 🕨 🖉 🕨
- Following procedure: →P257 "Setting Positioning mode for Positioning location" Step 2

# Setting Host

Default Initial host

Set a host to GPS Service settings except the Initial host.

No setting change is needed for general use.

- 1 Press 🚵 ► 💏 ► 🖅 ► 🖅 .
- Select "None stored" and press
   i [Edit].
- Changing back to the initial host 1 Press [] "Initial host".
- Changing to the preset user-defined host
  Press 2% "User defined host".
- Deleting the user-defined host

  - Enter the terminal security code and press •.
  - 3 Press I "Yes".
     Press Press "No" to cancel.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press •.

# **4** Enter the Host name and press **()**.

- Up to 99 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.
- 5 Enter the Host address and press ().
  - Up to 100 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.
- 6 Confirm the contents and press i [Complete].

Host is changed.

• Press () to edit again.

#### **Notify location**

# **Notifying present location**

#### Notifies the present location information to specified service clients (via GPS service providers).

- Notify location may require the additional subscription to GPS service providers. GPS service may be charged under some conditions.
- For using Notify location/Periodic notify, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo. These functions are charged services.

# **Registering Location service client**

• Up to 9 entries can be registered.



Location service client list screen

#### Registering Service client to Phonebook

#### 1 Select a service client and press

- [Function] ► 5 🐨 "New to phonebook".
- Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4

#### Editing Service clients

- (1) Select a service client, and press  $\textcircled{\bullet}$ .
- 2 Press
- 3 Edit an item and press  $\odot$ .
- ④ Press i [Store].
- Press i [Function] ► I = "Store new entry".

# 3 Enter the contents.

#### Entering Service client name

- (1) Select  $\blacksquare$  and press ( $\bullet$ ).
- 2 Enter the service client name and press •.
  - Up to 16 two-byte (Full Mark)/32 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
  - You can enter a service client name by quoting from Phonebook etc. →P353

#### Entering Service client ID

Service client ID is the number which is informed by GPS service providers after applying to the service.

# Select ■ and press ●.

- ② Enter the service client ID and press ●.
  - Use one-byte (Half Mark) numeric characters up to 12 digits. "\*" and "#" are also available.

#### Entering phone number

Select <sup>™</sup> and press ●.

#### 2 Enter a phone number and press •.

- Up to 26 one-byte (Half Mark) digits are available to enter including "\*", "#", "+" and "P".
- When the phone number is already registered as Location service client, the number cannot be added.
- You can enter phone numbers by quoting from Phonebook etc. →P353

### Setting Notify location on dialing

Sets whether to notify the present location information to the service client when dialing a voice/videophone call to the registered number.

- Location is not notified when Caller ID notify setting is set to "Notify no callerID" on dialing. Notify no callerID setting →P55
- Location is not notified if the other party is under Public mode (Drive mode) or rejects calls.
- The setting is not available without entering any phone number.

Select and press .
 Press one of *[1]* to *[3]*.

💶 Press 间 [Store].

### **Deleting Service client**

- Select a service client on Location service client list screen, and press
   i [Function] ► 7<sup>∞</sup> "Delete".
- 🔈 Press 🖅 "Delete".

## Deleting by option

- Press <a>2<sup>∞</sup></a>
   "Delete option".
- (2) Select a service client, and press  $\odot$ .
- Press (•) to release. ③ Press (•) [Exec.]

### Deleting all

Press ∃<sup>™</sup> "Delete all".
 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

# <sub>3</sub> Press 🕼 "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

Setting Positioning mode of Notify location



 Following procedure: →P257 "Setting Positioning mode for Positioning location" Step 2 Notify location

# Notifying location information

Notify present location information to the selected service client.



 $\mathbf{>}$  Select the client and press  $\mathbf{\odot}$ .



blinks and positioning starts.

- Entering service clients to notify
  - ① Select "Direct input" and press ④.
  - ② Enter the service client ID and press •.

#### Canceling Notify location

- - Location information may be sent depending on the operation timing.
  - Under the poor radio wave condition, sent Location information may not reach GPS service provider.

### <1-touch notify>

## Notifying the present location easily

Notify location information with easy operation by setting the service client.

• Set 1-touch notify to use the function.

## Hold down 📼 for over a second.

After completing Position location, location information is notified to the service client which is registered as 1-touch notify.

# Setting 1-touch notify client

Register service clients to notify with 1-touch notify.1-touch notify setting is released when deleting the set service client.

## Select the service client on Location service client list screen, and press [Function] ► 2<sup>-m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "1-touch notify".

 Press 2<sup>m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Reset 1-touch" to release the setting.

# Notifying the present location periodically

Set periodical notification to notify at the certain set time.

- Up to 2 schedules can be registered.
- Actions when setting Periodic notify →P270



- Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Schedule 1" or *Z*<sup>\*</sup> "Schedule 2".
  - Valid/Invalid is displayed for each schedule.

# 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

# 🕂 Press 🖅 "Valid".

### Canceling the setting

#### 1 Press 2m "Invalid".

• Previous schedule setting remains even after changing the setting to "Invalid".

# Set each item.

### Setting Service clients

- ① Select G and press ●.
- (2) Select a service client, and press  $\bigcirc$   $\triangleright$   $\bigcirc$ .
  - Set Location service client in advance.
     →P263

## Setting start time

- (1) Select  $\bigcirc$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- (2) Enter the start time, and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### Setting end time

- The setting is not available when Notification interval is set to "Once only".
- 1 Select 🔛 and press 💽.
- (2) Enter the end time, and press  $\bigcirc$ .

## Setting Notification interval

- Select ₿ and press ●.
- ② Press T: "Notification interval" or "Once only".

Notifies the location for each	
preset time between the start	
time and the end time.	
① Enter the interval and	
press 💽.	
<ul> <li>Unable to set the time less</li> </ul>	
than 5 minutes.	
Notifies the location at the	
preset time for starting.	

#### Setting Repeat

# (1) Select $\overline{\mathbb{Z}}$ and press ( ).

Daily	Notifies the location at the preset time every day.			
Day of week	<ul> <li>Notify location is activated on the specified days of the week.</li> <li>① Select a day of the week and press •.</li> <li>• Press • to release.</li> <li>② Press • [Complete].</li> </ul>			
No repeat	Notifies the location only during the set period.			

#### Setting Valid period

- Valid period setting is not available when setting "No repeat".
- No operation is required not to set Valid period.
- 1 Select  $\bigcirc$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- 2 Press / 📱 "Set".
  - Press 2 Mot set" not to set.
- ③ Enter the start date and press ▶ enter the end date and press ●.

# 🔓 Press 间 [Store].

#### Information

- Periodic notify under Public mode (Drive mode) does not activate Notify tone (including OK tone and NG tone)/Vibrator/Incoming-call lamp, and only notification screen is displayed to notify the location.
- While dialing or during voice/videophone calls, Notify tone and vibrator are not activated. Only signal tone, incoming-call lamp, and the screen are activated to notify the location.

#### Location history

# Displaying the history of confirmed location information

Display the history of location information. You can display a map or paste to a mail using location information in the history.

• Up to 50 Location histories are saved and the oldest history is to be overwritten when exceeding 50.



Location history list screen

- You can check the date and the result of Position location/Notify location/Location provide.
  - Position : On confirming the present location
  - Notiry : On notifying the present location
  - Frowde: On receiving position location request (Displayed even when Location provide has not been executed.)
- > is displayed when Location history contains location information.

# $\mathbf{2}$ Select the location history and press $\mathbf{O}$ .



#### Location history detail screen

① Positioning date

The date/time of positioning

② Types

Displays one of Position location/Notify location/Periodic notify/Location provide.

#### 3 Location info

Longitude (degrees/minutes/seconds), Latitude (degrees/minutes/seconds) "N" indicates North latitude, and "E" indicates East longitude.

#### ④ Datum

- wgs84 (World Datum), Tokyo (Tokyo Datum)
- Datum is the standard rule to specify the location on the earth with longitude/latitude.

#### **5** Accuracy

Error range of accuracy

lcon	Description		
G	Positioning date		
$\geq$	Location info		
	Service client name for Location notify/ Host name for Location provide		
	Service client ID for Location notify ID/Host ID for Location provide		
<u>گ</u>	Requestor name for Location provide		
â	Requestor ID for Location provide		
$\Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow$	Error is less than 50 m. (Accuracy level 3)		
<b>☆☆</b> ☆	Error is 50 m or more, and less than 300 m. (Accuracy level 2)		
★ជជ	Error is 300 m or more. (Accuracy level 1)		

 Even if location information is indicated on Location history screen, sent data may not be reached GPS service providers or Location service clients of イマドコサーチ <Search position> depending on the radio wave condition.

## Available functions in Location history

- History failed to position is unusable for each function (except for "Mail to requestor" or "Delete").
- Select the location history on Location history list screen and press i [Function].

# 2 Select an item and press •.

Read a map	Connects to the site and displays a map.			
	1 Press 🖅 "Yes".			
Paste to mail	Pastes location information URL onto mails. ① Press [			
Mail to requestor	When Requestor ID is the mail address, composes a mail setting Requestor ID as the mail address. • Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6			
Navigation	Navigation starts. →P258			
Run GPS software	Displays GPS software list. • Following procedure: →P260 "Using GPS software" Step 2			
New to phonebook	Registers location information to Phonebook. • Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 3 to 6 • Registration to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook is unavailable.			
Add to phonebook	Adds location information to Phonebook. ③ Select a Phonebook entry and press ●. • Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4			
New to schedule	Registers location information to Schedule. • Following procedure: →P321 "Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5			
Add to schedule	<ul> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>③ Select a schedule and press ④.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321 "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> </ul>			
Add to image	Adds location information to a still image.			
Delete	Deletes location history.			

# Adding location information of Location history to images

You can add the location information onto JPEG images. Added location information is available for viewing a map or attaching to a mail.  $\rightarrow$  P267

- Location information may not be able to be added to some images shot with other than SA702i.
- 2 Press *[ris]* "My picture:Databox" or *⊇™* "Digital cam:miniSD".
- 3 Select a folder and press •.
- Select a still image and press (•).
  - A confirmation screen is displayed if the location information has been already added.

Save	Copies the image and		
new entry	adds location information.		
Update	Overwrites location		
loc. info	information which has		
	been already added.		
Cancel	Does not add location		
	information.		

## **Deleting location history**

- Press i [Function] ► O ► U = "Delete", on Location history list screen.
- 🔈 Press 🖅 🕄 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- ① Press ⊇<sup>A</sup> "Delete option".
- (2) Select the location history and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press 🖬 [Exec.]

## Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all".
- (2) Enter the terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

# 3 Press 1: "Yes".

Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>77</sub> "No" to cancel.

# Using location information from each function

You can display a map or paste a map to mails by using location information added to Phonebook/Schedule/images.

# Adding location information

Location information can be added to UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook/Schedule/still image/Profile.

#### Display Edit screen of FOMA terminal Phonebook/Schedule/Profile, Still image shooting/confirmation screen, or the image list/display screen.

- Editing FOMA terminal Phonebook →P107
- Editing Schedule →P322
- Editing Profile →P326
- Displaying Still image shooting/confirmation screen →P163
- Displaying image list/display screen →P275

#### ${f 2}~$ Select " ${iarrow}$ No location info" and press ${igledow}$ .

- Press (i) [Function] > select "Add location info" and press (i), on Still image shooting/ confirmation screen.
- Press (i) [Function] ▶ select "Location info" and press (i) ▶ [/] "Yes", on image list/ display screen.

### Select an item and press •.

· Items to be displayed differ depending on data.

Position location	<ul> <li>Positions the present location and adds location information.</li> <li>Press  <ul> <li>on Position location result screen.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
From loc. history	<ul> <li>Adds the location information from Location history list.</li> <li>① Select a location history, and press ● ▶ ●.</li> </ul>
From phonebook	<ul> <li>Adds the location information stored in Phonebook.</li> <li>① Search a Phonebook entry and press ● ▶ ●.</li> </ul>
From profile	Adds the location information stored in Profile. ① Press ● ▶ ●.
From image data	Adds the location information         which is already added onto         still images.         ① Press [] "Digital cam:miniSD".         ② Select a folder, press ● >         select a still image and press ●.         ③ Press ●.
From schedule	Adds the location information stored in Schedule.         ① Select a schedule and press         ● ▶ ●.

## Using added location information

## Select data.

- Displaying FOMA terminal phonebook →P103
- Displaying Schedule →P322
- Displaying image list/display screen →P275
- Displaying Profile →P326
- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Location info", and press •.
  - For FOMA terminal Phonebook/Schedule/Profile, following operations are also available by selecting
    - "  $\geq$  Loc. info acquired" and pressing  $\odot$ .

# Select an item and press 💽.

• Some of the data may not be selectable.

Read a	Connects to the site and displays
map	a map.
-	1 Press I * "Yes".
Paste	Pastes location information URL
to mail	onto mails.
	1 Press I T T TYes".
	Compose message screen is
	displayed. • Following procedure: →P209
	"Composing and sending i-
	mode mail" Step 2 to 6
	<ul> <li>Location URL →P257</li> </ul>
Navigation	Navigation starts. →P258
Run GPS	Displays GPS software list.
software	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P260</li> </ul>
	"Using GPS software" Step 2
New to	Registers location information to
phonebook	Phonebook.
	Following procedure: →P95
	"Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 3 to 6
	Registration to UIM (FOMA card)
	Phonebook is unavailable.
Add to	Adds location information to
phonebook	Phonebook.
	①Select a Phonebook entry and
	press •.
	Following procedure: →P107
	"Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
New to	Registers location information to
schedule	Schedule.
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> </ul>
Add to	"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5 Adds location information to Schedule.
Add to schedule	"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5 Adds location information to Schedule. ① Select a schedule and press ④.
	"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5 Adds location information to Schedule. ① Select a schedule and press ④. • Following procedure: →P321
	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>• Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step</li> </ul>
schedule	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> </ul>
schedule Add to	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the</li> </ul>
schedule	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> </ul>
schedule Add to	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>• Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> </ul>
schedule Add to	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information of Location history to images"</li> </ul>
schedule Add to image	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul>
Schedule Add to image Add	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information</li> </ul>
Add to image Add location	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321 <ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> </ul> </li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266 <ul> <li>"Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> </ul> </li> <li>Overwrites location information which has been already added.</li> </ul>
Schedule Add to image Add	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> </ul>
Add to image Add location	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information     which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information</li> </ul>
Schedule Add to image Add location info	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information     which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information     which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information     which as been already added.</li> </ul>
Add to image Add location	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information     which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information</li> </ul>
Schedule Add to image Add location info Detailed	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321     "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266     "Adding location information" Step 3</li> <li>Displays details of the location information added. →P265</li> </ul>
Schedule Add to image Add location info Detailed loc. info	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information of Location history to images"</li> <li>Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information" Step 3</li> <li>Displays details of the location</li> </ul>
Add to image Add location info Detailed loc. info	<ul> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P321</li> <li>"Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5</li> <li>Adds location information to the still image.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information of Location history to images" Step 2 to 4</li> <li>Overwrites location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information which has been already added.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P266</li> <li>"Adding location information" Step 3</li> <li>Displays details of the location information added. →P265</li> <li>① Press []]" Yes".</li> </ul>

# **Using GPS function**

## Using GPS function

- GPS service uses the function of Location provide and Notify location.
- The service may require the subscription or the additional charge to use.
- To use Location provide and Notify location, follow the information on Internet sites of GPS service providers or DoCoMo. The functions are charged services.
- Some of GPS function may require the application to i-mode service.
- GPS is the service in charge of Department of Defense of USA, therefore, GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degradation or radio wave abort, etc.) for the US national security reason.
- Note that GPS is using the radio wave from satellites, and following conditions may cause the radio wave abort or difficulty to receive.
  - In or under buildings
  - In bags or boxes
  - In or under densely trees
  - Inside moving cars or trains

- In densely area with buildings or residence
  Near high-tension wire
- In bad weather with heavy rain/snow

- In basement, tunnel, underground or water

- When blocking mobile phones by people or objects
- When covering Screen/Keypad/Microphone/Speaker of mobile phones with hands
- In these cases, the error of retrieved location information may be more than 300 m.
- GPS function of FOMA terminal is not available out of service area except Position location function.
- When FOMA terminal is out of service area, positioning location may take more time or act differently than within the service area.
- 24 GPS satellites are on the satellite orbits at the altitude of approximately 20,000 km, and each satellite orbits around the earth in 12 hours. Therefore, note that the radio wave condition differs depending on the date even in the same environment, and retrieved location information may have significant errors or positioning may not be executed.
- GPS function is not available under Lock all mode/PIM lock (GPS) mode/Self mode/when UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted or PIN lock is all locked. However, Location provide is available to operate under PIM lock mode.
- Preinstalled GPS Navigation service will be out of service at the end of September, 2009. Please be forewarned.
- Positioning may be failed while dialing/receiving phone calls or receiving mails.
- Note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the user's disadvantage even if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with failure/repair or other handlings.
- FOMA terminal cannot be used as the navigation system for professional use of aircrafts, vehicles, person, etc. Therefore, note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the trouble caused by the navigation system using location information.
- FOMA terminal cannot be used as surveying GPS of high accuracy. Therefore, note that DoCoMo does not take any responsibility for the loss caused by the error of location information.
- GPS function of FOMA terminal is not available outside of Japan.
- Position location/Location provide/Position location/Periodic notify is not activated under following conditions.
  - In Infrared communication
  - During software update
  - While entering PIN code when turning the power on

Each function is not activated under following conditions.

Function	Condition				
Position location	<ul> <li>During a videophone call</li> <li>When holding down GPS key for over a second while activating i-αppli</li> </ul>				
Location provide	<ul> <li>Under activating each function of Position location, Notify location, Periodic notify or Loc. provide</li> <li>When positioning from i-appli, connecting to i-appli sites, or in infrared communication of i-appli</li> <li>When positioning from Navigation/under packet communication (sending/ receiving)</li> </ul>				
Notify location	• When holding down Task key for over a second while activating i- $\alpha$ ppli				
Periodic notify	<ul> <li>During infrared communication of i-αppli</li> </ul>				

# Actions when setting Permission schedule of Location provide

	Setting			Effective period of Leastion provide		
Start time	End time	Repeat	Valid period	Effective period of Location provide		
15:00	22:00	No repeat	_	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 22:00 9/20/2006		
		Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/25/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, daily (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, daily (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
			No setting	Daily after 15:00 9/20/2006 (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
		Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/25/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, on every specified day of the week (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, on every specified day of the week (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
			No setting	On every specified day of the week after 15:00 9/ 20/2006 (from 15:00 to 22:00)		
09:00	22:00	No repeat –		From 9:00 9/21/2006 to 22:00 9/21/2006		
		Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	Daily from 9:00 9/25/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006 (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 14:00 9/20/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, daily (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
			No setting	Daily after 14:00 9/20/2006 (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
		Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	On every specified day of the week from 9:00 9/25/ 2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006 (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 14:00 9/20/2006 to 22:00 10/25/2006, on every specified day of the week (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
			No setting	On every specified day of the week after 14:00 9/ 20/2006 (from 9:00 to 22:00)		
15:00	10:00 No repea		-	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 10:00 9/21/2006		
		Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/25/2006 to 10:00 10/26/2006, daily (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)		
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 10:00 10/26/2006, daily (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)		
			No setting	Daily after 15:00 9/20/2006 (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)		
		Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/25/2006 to 10:00 10/26/2006, on every specified day of the week (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)		

## <Example> When current time and date is "14:00, 09/20/2006"

#### <Example> When current time and date is "14:00, 09/20/2006"

		Setting		Effective period of Location provide	
Start time	End time	Repeat	Valid period		
15:00	10:00	Day of week	Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 15:00 9/20/2006 to 10:00 10/26/2006, on every specified day of the week (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)	
			No setting	On every specified day of the week after 15:00 9/20/2006 (from 15:00 to 10:00 next day)	
09:00	09:00	No repeat	-	From 9:00 9/21/2006 to 9:00 9/22/2006	
		Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	From 9:00 9/25/2006 to 9:00 10/26/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	Daily from 14:00 9/20/2006 to 9:00 10/26/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	
			No setting	Daily after 14:00 9/20/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	
		Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	On every specified day of the week from 9:00 9/25/2006 to 9:00 10/26/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	
			Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	On every specified day of the week from 14:00 9/20/ 2006 to 9:00 10/26/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	
			No setting	On every specified day of the week after 14:00 9/20/2006 (from 9:00 to 9:00 next day)	

# Actions when setting Periodic notify

# <Example> When current time and date is "14:00 9/20/2006"

		S	etting		
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	Effective period of Periodic notify
15:00	22:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	-	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly until 22:00 9/20/2006.
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily until 22:00 10/25/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00).
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily until 22:00 10/25/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00).
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly from 15:00 to 22:00, every day.
			Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 22:00 10/25/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00).
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 22:00 10/25/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00).
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week (hourly from 15:00 to 22:00).
09:00	22:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	-	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies hourly until 22:00 9/21/2006.
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily until 22:00 10/25/2006. (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily until 22:00 10/25/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00).

Setting					
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	Effective period of Periodic notify
09:00	22:00	1:00 (1 hour)	Daily	No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly from 9:00 to 22:00, every day.
			Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 22:00 10/25/2006. (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 22:00 10/25/2006. (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00)
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week (hourly from 9:00 to 22:00).
09:00	-	Once only	No repeat	_	Notifies at 9:00 9/21/2006.
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily at 9:00 until 10/25/2006.
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies daily at 9:00 until 10/25/2006.
				No setting	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies daily at 9:00.
			Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies at 9:00 on every specified day of the week until 10/25/2006.
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies at 9:00 on every specified day of the week until 10/25/2006.
				No setting	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies at 9:00 on every specified day of the week
15:00	—	Once only	No repeat	-	Notifies at 15:00 9/20/2006.
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily at 15:00 until 10/25/2006.
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily at 15:00 until 10/25/2006.
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily at 15:00.
			Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies at 15:00 on every specified day of the week until 10/ 25/2006.
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies at 15:00 on every specified day of the week until 10/ 25/2006.
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies at 15:00 on every specified day of the week.
15:00	10:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	_	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly until 10:00 9/21/2006.
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily until 10:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 next day).
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily until 10:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 next day).
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly and daily from 15:00 to 10:00 next day.

#### <Example> When current time and date is "14:00 9/20/2006" . ....

Setting							
Start time	End time	Notification interval	Repeat	Valid period	Effective period of Periodic notify		
15:00	10:00	1:00 (1 hour)	Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/25/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 10:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 next day).		
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 10:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 next day).		
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week (hourly from 15:00 to 10:00 next day).		
09:00	09:00	1:00 (1 hour)	No repeat	-	After 9:00 9/21/2006, notifies hourly until 9:00 9/22/2006.		
			Daily	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies daily until 9:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 next day).		
						Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies daily until 9:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 next day).
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies hourly and daily from 9:00 to 9:00 next day.		
			Day of week	Start date: 9/25/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 9:00 9/25/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 9:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 next day).		
				Start date: 9/15/2006 End date: 10/25/2006	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week until 9:00 10/26/2006 (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 next day).		
				No setting	After 15:00 9/20/2006, notifies on every specified day of the week (hourly from 9:00 to 9:00 next day).		

## <Example> When current time and date is "14:00 9/20/2006"

# Displaying/editing/managing data

Data box
Making full use of still images
Displaying saved images
Editing still image
Making full use of movies
Playing movie/i-motion
Editing movie/i-motion
Making full use of melody
Playing melodies
Making full use of miniSD memory card
Before using miniSD memory card
Copying data in FOMA terminal into miniSD memory card
Previewing data in miniSD memory card
Copying data in miniSD memory card into FOMA terminal291
Managing miniSD memory card
Using miniSD as reader/writer <minisd mode=""> 292</minisd>
Making full use of other data
Displaying/registering original data
Making full use of various data
Making full use of folder and data
Making full use of Infrared communication
Infrared communication
Sending data with Infrared communication <send data="" infrared=""> 299</send>
Receiving data with Infrared communication
<receive data="" infrared=""> 299</receive>
Activating Infrared communication mode
<infrared communication="" mode=""> 300</infrared>
Using Infrared remote control function
Making full use of Voice recorder
Using as Voice recorder
Printing still images
Setting the printing property of images in miniSD memory card

# Data box

Manages various data, such as still images/ movies shot with FOMA terminal or downloaded melodies, by sorting into each folder. The capacity of Data box (including original data) and items to be stored into each folder are as follows.

#### Data space of Data box

- Data space of Data box is approximately 25 MB, and the maximum number items to save is 1,024. (Including Deco-mail picture preinstalled by default)
- The maximum data size varies depending on the retrieval source, such as downloading from i-mode (including attachment of mails).

Data type	Maximum size for each item
Image	
JPEG format	
GIF format	Approx. 1 MB
Animation GIF format	
Flash movie	Approx. 100 KB
Movie/i-motion	
MP4 format	Approx. 500 KB*1
Melody	
SMF format	Approx. 100 KB
MFi format	
Original data	
Menu icon	Approx. 100 KB
National holidays*2	Approx. 5 KB
Dictionary*2	Approx. 20 KB
Category icon*2	Approx. 100 KB

- \*1 The maximum data size when retrieving through i-mode (including mail attachment). The maximum size of the data shot with FOMA terminal is approximately 8 MB. The data size is not restricted to copy from miniSD memory card unless it exceeds Data box size.
- \*2 The recordable data size is as follows: up to 10 National holidays, 100 dictionary data, and 40 category icons in total of Set icon and Single icon.

## Types and contents of folders

• Up to 10 User folders can be added to each My picture/i-motion/Melody folder.

Folder name	Data in the folders	
My picture		
🔥 i-mode	Images created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mail/MessageR/F/i-αppli	
Camera 🔁	Images shot with Camera Edited images, originally shot with Camera	

Folder name	Data in the folders
Deco-mail picture	Preinstalled images/templates for Deco-mail by default, and templates downloaded from sites for Deco-mail
Preinstalled	Preinstalled images by default (including frames and stamps)*
Data exchange	Images retrieved through infrared/ USB communication, images copied from miniSD memory card, images retrieved with Bar code reader
Kems Items	Frames/stamps downloaded or created in FOMA terminal (excluding preinstalled frames or stamps by default)
User folder	Folders created by users, which accept the files from each folder in My picture by selecting "Move to folder"

\* Excludes images/templates for Deco-mail.

Folder name	Data in the folders
i-motion	
<b>T</b> i-mode	i-motion created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mails/i-appli
E Camera 📾	Movies shot with Camera Edited movies, originally shot with Camera Sound only data recorded with voice recorder (movie shooting with shooting type set to "Sound only")
Data exchange	Movies/i-motion retrieved through infrared/USB communication, movies/i-motion copied from miniSD memory card
Radio memo	Sound data recorded with FM Radio
User folder	Folders created by users, which accept the files from each folder in i-motion folder by selecting "Move to folder"
🦻 Melody	
Ti-mode	Melodies created or retrieved from sites/i-mode mail/ MessageR/F/i-appli
Preinstalled	Preinstalled melodies by default
Data exchange	Melodies retrieved through infrared/USB communication, images copied from miniSD memory card, images retrieved with Bar code reader
User folder	Folders created by users, which accept the files from each folder in Melody folder by selecting "Move to folder"

• The icon turns to 😭 when Security is set on to Use folder.

#### Icons displayed in folders

Icons	Data	
My picture		
GIF	GIF format	
	Animation GIF format	
11155	JPEG format	
	Exif-JPEG format*	
$\geq$	JPEG format with location information	
θ	Frame data	
4	Stamp data	
2 ≯	Flash movie data	
¥	Deco-mail template data	
04	Preinstalled still images	
i-motion		
	MP4 format (Movie)	
•••	MP4 format (Sound only)	
ban ∣san	MP4 format (Movie with Play restriction)	
Melody		
_ □	MFi format melody data	
<b>今</b> 間	SMF format melody data	
All folder	'S	
(Example)	Not playable ("×" appears on data type icons)	
i.	Unrestricted	
嚼	Restricted	
XX	Now in progress	
۹ <u>ج</u>	Restricted by UIM (FOMA card)	

\* "Exit" is a file format for still images, established by Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA), that mainly applies for Digital camera.

Icons	Image size	
My pictu	re	
	Sub-QCIF	
æ	QCIF	
	QVGA (Stand-by display size)	
đ۴	CIF	
戰	VGA	
	XGA	
iii iii	SXGA	
1M	1M	
F	Other sizes	
i-motion		
	Sub-QCIF	
	QCIF	
Į.	Other sizes	

## Information

● Data saved in Data box may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changes in the model or other handlings. It is recommended to save the data in miniSD memory card for the safety. (→P287) If data is erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. You can backup the data in your PC using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378

# **Displaying saved images**

Displays images saved in My picture folder.



# Select a folder, and press •.



Image list screen (12-for-1 split)

## Attaching image to i-mode mail

- ① Select an image and press [ [Function]
  - Imail attachment".
  - Compose message screen with a shot image attached is displayed.
  - If images are bigger than Stand-by size, convert the image size to Stand-by size.
  - Images can also be attached by the same operation on Image display screen.
  - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6 Attaching still image with location information added →P215

## Switching Display method

- ① Press i [Function] ► 5 ⅔ "Switch display".
- 2 Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to  $\exists I_{\frac{1}{8}}$ .

#### Adding location information on images

## ① Select an image and press (i) [Function]

- 7<sup>\*</sup> "Location info".
- The location information which had been already inserted is available to use. Following procedure: →P267 "Using added location information" Step 3
- Press (■ [Function] > E<sup>mp</sup> "Location info", to add location information from Image display screen.

#### 2 Press / ? "Yes".

- Press 29 "No" to cancel.
- Following procedure: →P266 "Adding location information" Step 3

#### Viewing Slideshow

Images (JPEG/GIF format) in a folder can be displayed switching approximately every 3 seconds, in a row starting from the selected image.

- · Animations or Flash movies cannot be displayed in slideshow.
- 1 Press ( [Function] ) ( ) ) II "Slideshow".
  - · Returns to Image list screen after displaying all the images. Press (•) or ( to return to Image list screen in the middle of the slideshow.

# Select an image and press (•).

#### 2006-09-20\_22-45



#### Image display screen

- If the image size is smaller than 240 dots (horizontal)  $\times$  220 dots (vertical), press  $\odot$  to switch Large/Normal view.
- change the display size, if the image size is over 240 dots (horizontal) × 220 dots (vertical). When ►◀▲▼ are displayed, scrolling is available by pressing 🚱. Press [Optimize] to return to Normal display.

#### Displaying images in full-screen

- 1 Press (i [Function] > 7 " "Full-screen disp".
  - display screen.

#### Playing Animation or Flash movie

Displays animation or movies, and the data start auto-playing.

While playing an animation, press () to stop and press (•) to restart while stopping. Press (•) to stop while playing Flash movies, and press (•) to replay while stopping.

• In both animations and Flash movies, press (■ [Function] > [12] "Retry", to play from the beginning.

#### Information

Flash movies downloaded from sites may be displayed differently from the graphics displayed on the site.

### Image list screen

Displays images as thumbnails or lists.

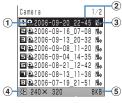
Switching Display method →P275





12-for-1 split

4-for-1 split



#### List

#### 1 Data type

#### 2 Title

• Title of the image set as Stand-by display etc. appears in a different color.

#### 3 Restrict file

#### (4) Image size

#### 5 File size

· Thumbnails may not be displayed correctly depending on images. In such cases, substitutive images below are displayed:

- Still images unable to display thumbnails
- Deco-Mail template
  - Still image with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction

Displaying saved images

#### <Create item>

#### Creating Stamp/Frame/Menu icon from still images

#### **Creating Stamp**

- Stamps can be created from still images, bigger than 34  $\times$  34 dots or smaller than CIF image size.
- Select a Stamp frame and press •.
- Place an image on stamp frame.



- Press 😵 to scroll the image.
- Press 
  [FrameSize] to switch the frame size.
- Press (i) [Optimize] to fit either vertical or horizontal shorter line into the current frame size, and the image is zoomed out without changing the aspect ratio. Press (i) [Release] to return to the previous size.
- 👍 Press 💽.
- 5 Confirm the created stamp and press 💽.

#### Enter the title and press •.

The image is saved in "Data box"  $\rightarrow$  "My picture"  $\rightarrow$  "Items" folder.

• Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### **Creating Frame**

 You can create frames from still images in sizes of CIF (352×288), Stand-by display, QCIF, or Sub-QCIF.

Select a still image on Image list screen, and press i [Function] ► E<sup>we</sup> "Create items" ► E<sup>we</sup> "Frame".

#### Select a frame and press •.

The area excluded from the frame is displayed in gray.

# Confirm the frame to be created and press ().

The frame is displayed as preview.

- **4** Press (•).
- Enter the title and press •.
  - The image is saved in "Data box"  $\rightarrow$  "My picture"  $\rightarrow$  "Items" folder.
  - Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### **Creating Menu icon**

Created Menu icons are available to be applied to such as Main menu.

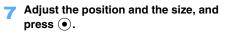
- Still images with file restriction (excluding being set with FOMA terminal) are not allowed to be customized as Menu icon. However, Single icon can be created from images of following sizes:
  - 80× 84 dots (Image "6-for-1/9-for-1")\*1
  - 80× 63 dots (Image "12-for-1")\*2
  - \*1 The size of 6-for-1 is for GPS menu, and of 9-for-1 is for Main menu or i-mode menu.
  - \*<sup>2</sup> The size of 12-for-1 is for Mail menu.
- Some of the image sizes are unavailable to be customized as icons.
- Press i [Function] on Image list screen ▷ E<sup>m</sup> "Create items" ▷ I<sup>m</sup> "Menu icon".
- 2 Press *[*'ŝ] "Set of icons" or *≧*<sup>∞</sup> "Single icon".

## **3** Select a partition type and press $\odot$ .



- For creating Set icons, select Background color with 💿 and press 💿.
- Select "Image 1" and press 

   .
- Select a folder, and press •.
- Select an image and press •.
   Press [Play] to view the image.





#### Making Single icon

- Press Sto set the position.
- Press (i) [Optimize] to fit either vertical or horizontal longer line (in the case of Single icon, shorter line) into the current frame length, and the image is zoomed out without changing the aspect ratio. Press (i) [Release] to return to the previous size.

## <sub>名</sub> Press 💽.

# Select "Image 2" and press •.

Follow the procedure of Step 5 to 8, and define the image displayed in selecting items.

### 10 Press i [Save].

• Press <a>[Play]</a> to play and confirm the Menu icon.

#### **11** Enter the title and press **()**.

- The icon is saved in "Menu icon" in Original data.
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Information

Press i [Function] Set "Create items", to create items from Image display screen.

#### Setting image as Stand-by display etc.

- · Images bigger than the VGA size cannot be set.
- Images bigger than QCIF size or with file restriction (except when being set with FOMA terminal) cannot be set as "Substitute image"/"Record message img"/ "On-hold image"/"Call-on-hold image".

# Press [Set] on Image display screen.

## Select an item to set to and press •.

 Screen position or size is changeable depending on the item to be set or images. →P125

#### Information

• When a movie/i-motion with video and sound is already set on the selected item, the message appears to indicate that Ring tone setting returns to the default.

## Edit image

# Editing still image

# You can edit still images saved in "My picture", for Size change and Paste stamp etc.

- · Following data is not editable.
  - Data bigger than 960  $\times$  1280 dots in image size
  - Data smaller than 34  $\times$  34 dots in image size
  - Data with file restriction (excluding the data that file restriction is set with FOMA terminal, or retrieval source is displayed as "Data exchange" in File property.)
  - Data with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction
- Still images are not editable in "Enlarge/Reduce"/ "Stamp"/"Frame"/"Text"/"Rotate/Reverse"/"Special effect", if the size is bigger than CIF format.

# 1 Display a still image and press [Function] ▶ *[* <sup>\*</sup> <sup>\*</sup>] "Edit image" ▶ Edit the still image.

2006-09-20_22-45		
Edit image		
Enlarge/Reduce		
🖬 Resize/Clip		
🗉 Stamp		
🗳 Frame		
🖃 Text		
ERotate/Reverse		
Special effect		

#### Edit image menu

Enlarge/ Reduce	Enlarges/reduces an image. →P279
Resize/ Clip	Changes an image into specified size. →P279
Stamp	Pastes a stamp onto an image. →P279
Frame	Pastes a frame onto an image. →P280
Text	Pastes characters onto an image. →P280
Rotate/ Reverse	Rotates/reverses an image. →P280
Special effect	Puts the special effect onto an image. →P280

## Confirm the image and press •.

- Press (Cancel) ("" "Yes", to cancel edited details.
- Press 
   [Function] to continue editing.

## 3 Press I "Save new entry".

#### Overwriting the edited image on the original image

- Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup>
   <sup>ABC</sup>
   <sup>ABC</sup></li
  - Press <sup>Z<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>7</sub> "No" to cancel.

Edit image

# Enter the title and press .

• Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Information

- Select a still image and press (i) [Function] > [i] "Edit image", to edit on Image list screen.
- The result of edit may differ from the image as assumed depending on still images or the method of editing.
- Repetition of editing and saving may cause damage of the image quality or increasing the data size of the still image file. In this case, edited data may not be able to be reedited.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297
- When editing an image set as Stand-by display etc., the image cannot be overwritten.

## **Enlarging/reducing images**

1 Press *I* "Enlarge/Reduce" on Edit image menu.

## 

You can enlarge/reduce the image by 5%, holding the aspect ratio.

- When ►◄▲▼ are displayed, you can scroll the image with .
- <sub>3</sub> Press 💽.
  - Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# Compressing the image size or cutting out the image

Resizes or clips still images as the specified size.

- Still images smaller than Sub-QCIF image size cannot be resized/clipped.
- The image cannot be clipped out if vertical or horizontal line is shorter than the line of clipping out image.
- 1 Press ⊇<sup>∞</sup> "Resize/Clip" on Edit image screen.
- **Press one of**  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to  $H_{\frac{1}{8}}$ .
- <sub>3</sub> Press 💽.
  - Press 
     [Switch] to switch between resizing and cutting out.
  - For clipping, set the area to be clipped with and press •.
  - You cannot clip out the image when "CIF (352×288)" is selected in Step 2.

# Confirm the image and press 💽.

• Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# **Pasting Stamp**

You can paste stamps or images onto an image.

- Up to 20 stamps or images can be pasted. The number may differ depending on the size of the stamp/image.
- Stamps preinstalled by default →P363
- Images cannot be pasted onto still images smaller than QCIF image size.
- Stamps or images to paste cannot be selected from miniSD memory card.
- $\bullet$  Stamp size available to be pasted is smaller than 240  $\times$  320 dots.
- Still image size available to be pasted is 34  $\times$  34 dots at the minimum, and QCIF at the maximum.
- 1 Press 🖅 "Stamp" on Edit image menu.
- 2 Press 🖅 "Paste stamp".

### Pasting image

- 1 Press 2 "Paste image".
- ② Select a folder, and press •.
- Select an image and press .
  Go to Step 4.

## Select a stamp and press O.

- Stamps bigger than the image size cannot be pasted on the image.
- Stamps created with Create item function (→P277) or downloaded from sites are also selectable.
- 4 Press S to select the position to paste and press S.



- The same stamp or image can be pasted on a different position continuously.
- Press (a) to readjust the position of the pasted stamps or images. Hold down (a) for over a second, and all the pasted stamps or images are deleted, however, the first stamp or image pasted remains on the screen.
- Press 
   [Add] to add other stamps or images. Repeat Step 2 to 4.

# Press 间 [Define].

 Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

#### Information

●Stamps are available for downloading from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" →P183

# **Pasting Frame**

- Frames can be pasted onto still images in the size of CIF/Stand-by display/QCIF/Sub-QCIF.
- Frames preinstalled by default →P363
- Press <u>4 et</u> "Frame" on Edit image menu.



A frame is displayed as the same size as the selected still image.

- Press i to switch the display method of frames.
- Frames created with Create item function (→P277) or downloaded from sites are also selectable.

# **2** Select a frame and press $oldsymbol{igodol}$ .

- Confirm the frame-pasted image and press •.
  - Press or to select a frame.
  - Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# Pasting text

- Press 🖅 "Text" on Edit image menu.
- Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to  $S_{\frac{1}{4}}$ .

# Benter text and press ().

• The number of characters to input depends on the size of images or characters.

# 4 Press 😵 to adjust the position.



- Press (i) [Color] to switch the font color as Black  $\rightarrow$  White  $\rightarrow$  Red  $\rightarrow$  Green  $\rightarrow$  Light blue.

Press 🖲.

280

 Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# Rotating/reversing still image

- Press E<sup>we</sup> "Rotate/Reverse" on Edit image menu.



- Press (I) [Rotate] to rotate 90 degrees clockwise each time. Press 🚱 to view the undisplayed field of the screen.
- Press 🖻 [Reverse] to flip the image.
- When reversing an image, press (i) [Rotate] to rotate 90 degrees to the left.

# Press 💽.

 Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# **Applying Special effect**

Press T<sup>est</sup> "Special effect" on Edit image menu.

# **2** Press one of I is to $\mathbf{\mathcal{I}}$ .

1	
Mosaic/	Applies the mosaic effect.
Paint-out	
Sepia	Applies brownish color like
	an old picture.
Monochrome	Turns the color of the still
	image to black and white.
Tile	Displays the image in a
	segmental display.
Portrait	Displays the image in ellipse
	circle, and colors white
	outside of the circle.
Fade out	Colors gray on the edges of
	the image and emphasizes
	the depth of the image.
Spotlight	Makes the outside of the
	image dark, and displays as
	spot-lighted on center.
Poster	
Poster	Emphasizes the color
	contrast like drawings.
Soft focus	Scumbles the color of entire
	the image softer.

• Press 😔 to switch to the previous/next special effect.

# 3 Press ().

# Selecting Mosaic/Paint-out

Press (a) to make the mosaic rougher, and painted out by pressing the key 3 times. Press (a) [Redo] to return the operation.

#### Selecting Mosaic/Paint-out, Sepia, Monochrome

Sets the range to add special effects.

- ① Press 间 [Range].
  - Press (i) [Full-scrn] to return.
- ② Press S to define the start point and press •.



# 3 Press 🚱 to define the range and press ullet.

# Selecting Tile

Press (i) to split an image as 4-for-1  $\rightarrow$  16-for-1  $\rightarrow$  64-for-1.

# Selecting Portrait/Fade out/Spotlight

Press (i) to narrow down the range to display the image gradually. Press (iii) [Redo] to return the operation.

# Selecting Poster

Press (i) to switch the density of the contrast.

👍 Press 💽.

 Following procedure: →P278 "Editing still image" Step 2 to 4

# Playing movie/i-motion

## Plays movies/i-motion saved in i-motion folder.

• Playable images are movies/i-motion or Sound only movies/i-motion (i-motion with no video, such as vocal of a singer) in Sub-QCIF or QCIF size.

Press • Data box

**2** Select a folder, and press  $\odot$ .



# Movie list screen

## Attaching movie/i-motion to i-mode mail

#### ① Select a movie/i-motion and press [Function] ► 2<sup>-m</sup> "Mail attachment".

- Compose message screen is displayed with movie/i-motion attached.
- You can also attach movies/i-motion to mails from Movie play screen with the same operation.
- If the file size is bigger than approximately 500 KB, the image is cut out to fit to attach to mails.
- Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6

# Switching Display method

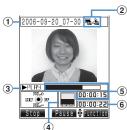
- ① Press i [Function] ► 5 ⅔ "Switch display".
- (2) Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$  to  $I_{\frac{1}{8}}$ .

# Setting Thumbnail

- You can set the image (Thumbnail) displayed on Movie list screen.
- · Following movies/i-motion cannot be edited:
- Data shot with other than FOMA terminal\*
- Data bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
- Data set with file restriction (excluding the case of setting with FOMA terminal)
- Data with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction
- Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
- i-motion with Play restriction
- Movies/i-motion with no video
- \* Some data is available to be set.
- ① Select a movie/i-motion and press [Function] ► 7<sup>™</sup> "Thumbnail setting".
- ② Press 
   Back] or 
   INext] to select an image for Thumbnail, and press 
   Inext standard and press 

   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press 
   Inext standard and press
  - Alternatively, press 📀 to select an image.
- ③ Press *I*<sup>\*</sup><sub>∞</sub> "Yes".
   Press *Z*<sup>\*∞</sup> "No" to cancel.

# **3** Select a movie and press $\overline{\bullet}$ .



Play movie screen

#### 1 Title

- 2 File type
  - 🚮 : With a movie (blue)
  - 🚮 : Unable to play (gray)
  - 👍 : With sound (blue)
  - 🛵 : Unable to play (gray)
  - 🚮 : With text (blue)
  - 🔁 : Unable to play (gray)
- ③ Playing status
- ④ Play volume

#### ⑤ Play duration

Displays the current playing duration with numbers (counter) and a bar.

#### 6 Total play duration

- Following operations are available while playing:
  - 💽 : Pause/Resume
  - -🖻 : Stop
  - () : Fast-forward (continuous fast-forwarding by holding down for over a second)
  - : Rewind (continuous rewinding by holding down for over a second)
  - Adjust volume
- Following operations are available during pause:
  - () : Step-forward (continuous step-forwarding by holding down for over a second)
  - : Step-rewind (continuous step-rewinding by holding down for over a second)
- \* The functions above are not available while playing Voice recorder or movies/i-motion with no video.

#### When the link destination is as Ticker

When underlined phone number/mail address/ URL are displayed while playing a movie, press ● or ■ [Stop], or wait until the movie is over. And then, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions become available. →P193

#### Playing movie/i-motion in large view

#### 1 Press i [Function] > 5 1 "Play in large".

 Press 

 [Function] ► 5<sup>∞</sup>
 "Play in normal", to play in normal mode.

#### Playing movie/i-motion repeatedly

- ① Press i [Function] ► 7<sup>™</sup> "Repeat play ON".
  - Press (i) [Function] > Tree "Repeat play OFF", to stop repeat playing.

#### Information

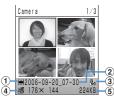
Press 

 [Stop] to stop the play and then press

 [Set], while playing movies/i-motion, playing starts
 from the beginning after Play movie screen returns.

## Movie list screen

Displays as Thumbnail or the list of movies/i-motion. • Switching Display method →P281





12-for-1 split

4-for-1 split



List

#### 1 Data type

#### 2 Title

• Title of the image set as Stand-by display etc. appears in a different color.

#### ③ Restrict file

④ Image size

#### 5 File size

- Thumbnail images may not be displayed properly depending on the movie. In such cases, substitutive images below are displayed:
  - : Movies/i-motion unable to display Thumbnail
  - Sound only movies/i-motion (or i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer)
    - : i-motion with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction

## Splitting a movie by Chapter

You can set segments (chapters) to long movies/ i-motion. Data can be played from the registered chapter.

### **Registering Chapter**

Up to 12 chapters can be registered for each movie/ i-motion. Up to 100 movies or i-motion with chapters can be created in each of Data box or miniSD memory card.

- Chapter cannot be registered for following movies/i-motion.
  - Data shot with other than FOMA terminal\*
  - Data bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
  - Data set with file restriction (excluding the case of setting with FOMA terminal)
  - Data with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
  - i-motion with Play restriction
  - Movies/i-motion with no video
- \* Some data is available to be registered.

## Play a movie.

Press i [Function] ► E<sup>we</sup> "Chapter", at the scene to register as a chapter.



Chapter-registered scenes are displayed with numbers (counter) and bar.

- - Select the registered chapter and press [Store], and a confirmation message appears. Press []: "Yes" to overwrite.
  - A new chapter cannot be registered on or nearby the chapter-registered scene.

#### **Playing from Chapter**

- Press i [Function] ► E<sup>wan</sup> "Chapter", on Movie list screen.
  - Play chapter function is available with the same operation from Movie play screen.

## Select a chapter and press •.

Play starts from the selected chapter.

## Editing Chapter title

- (2) Enter the title and press  $\odot$ .
  - Up to 7 two-byte (Full Mark)/14 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Releasing the set chapters

- ① Select a chapter and press i [Function] ► ਟ<sup>∞</sup> "Release chapter".
- 2 Press I all "Release".
  - Press ()" "Yes" when you press ()" "Release all".

# Setting movie/i-motion as Phone receive call etc.

- This function is not applied to following types of movie/i-motion.
  - i-motion with Play restriction
  - Data bigger than approximately 500 KB file size
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "Radio" on File property
- Following movies/i-motion cannot be set as Ring tone or the image set for Receive display.
  - Movies/i-motion with tickers
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "Data exchange" on File property
  - Data that "NG" is set on Ring tone setting or Receive display setting of File property
- Movies/i-motion with no video cannot be set as Stand-by display.
- ഉ Press 🖻 [Set].

# $\mathbf{3}$ Select an item to set and press ullet.

- A message may be displayed to confirm that the current settings is changed on Ring tone or the image set for Receive display, depending on the movie/*i*-motion to set.

# **Editing movie/i-motion**

#### Edits movies/i-motion saved in i-motion folder, such as clipping out as still images or clipping out the specified range etc.

- · Following data is not editable.
  - Data shot with other than FOMA terminal\*
  - Data bigger than approximately 7.4 MB file size
  - Data set with file restriction (except being set with FOMA terminal)
  - Data with UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" on File property
  - i-motion with Play restriction
  - Text-only i-motion
  - Data recorded with FM radio
  - \* Editing may be available depending on the data.
- Keypad operation in playing movie/i-motion while editing →P282

# Select a movie and press i [Function]

#### movie.



#### Edit i-motion Menu

1 -	
Capture	Clips out a still image from
still img	movies/i-motion.
sun my	110/165/1-11101/011.
Ticker	Adds a ticker to movies/i-motion.
Dubbing	Adds sound to movies/i-motion.
-	→P286
	. 200
Capture	Clips out the specified range of
movie	movies/i-motion. →P286
img	
iing	
Cut movie	Deletes the specified range of
ima	movies/i-motion. →P286
iing	110vies/i-110tionF200

## Press I "B "Save new entry".

- Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Save new entry" ► *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Yes", to clip out a movie.
- Overwriting edited data on original movie/ i-motion
  - ① Press ⊇<sup>™</sup> "Overwrite" ▶ *I*<sup>™</sup> "Yes".
    - Press <sup>2</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝑘</sub> "No" to cancel.

## 3 Enter the title and press •.

• Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Information

- Press i [Function] Figure 2 "Edit i-motion", to edit on Movie play screen.
- ●When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box →P297
- When editing a movie/i-motion set as Stand-by display/Ring tone, the movie/i-motion cannot be overwritten.

### Clipping out still image

Clips out the specified scene in playing movie/ i-motion, as a still image.

- Even if clipping out movies/i-motion with a ticker, the ticker is not included in the clipped still image.
- You cannot clip out still images from movies/ i-motion with no video.
- The still image is saved in JPEG format, in "Data box" → "My picture" → "Camera" folder.

## Press I: "Capture still img" on Edit i-motion menu.

# Press (•) to play, and press (•) at the scene to clip out.

- Press 🖻 [Redo] to redo.
- Press 
   to resume playing.

#### 强 Press 🖲 [Save] 🕨 🖅 "Yes".

- Press 2mm "No" to cancel.
- Following procedure: →P284 "Editing movie/ i-motion" Step 3

## **Editing Ticker**

Adds a ticker (displaying characters to run across the screen) onto movies/i-motion.

- Up to 4 tickers can be added.
- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is not available even if entering phone numbers/ E-mail addresses/URLs on Ticker.
- Movies bigger than approximately 500 KB cannot be added to ticker.
- Sound only movies/i-motion (i-motion without video such as vocal of a singer) cannot be added to ticker (including sound data with thumbnails).

# Press ⊇≝ "Ticker" on Edit i-motion menu.



#### Ticker list screen

• Press 🖻 [Play] to view the movie/i-motion.

Edit i-motior

- Press i [Start] at the scene to start a ticker and i [End] at the scene to end.
  - Press () to start to play and () [Start]/[End], to add a ticker in the middle of a movie/ i-motion.
  - Press 🖻 [Redo] to redo.

# **4** Enter contents and press $\odot$ .

• Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

# **5** Press () to select the decoration of Ticker and () to select the decoration.

Decoration	lcon	Decoration description
Font size	4 m a li	Displays in small character.
	쁦	Displays in big character.
Font color	I	Selects from 8 colors.
Background color		Selects from 8 colors.
Word alignment		Displays in left aligned.
		Displays in center aligned.
		Displays in right aligned.
Scroll	Ż	Characters appear from outside of the screen and stop at the preset position.
	铙	Characters disappear from the preset position to outside of the screen.
	<b>3</b>	Characters appear from outside of the screen and disappear to outside of the screen.
	$\times$	Displays with no scrolling.
Scroll	Ŵ	Scrolls from right to left.
direction	\$€	Scrolls from left to right.
	念	Scrolls upward.
	Š	Scrolls downward.
Blink	$\bigcirc$	Makes characters blinking.
		Makes characters not to blink.
Underline	0	Underlines the characters.
	X[	Removes underlines from characters.

- The appearance of the characters with selected decoration can be confirmed at the bottom of the screen. However, Scroll/Scroll direction/Blink cannot be confirmed on the screen.
- Scroll direction is selectable only when Scroll function is set.

Press	•
-------	---

6

Ticker list
Play duration: 00:22
100:01-00:05 🐘 🐗 🕬
3
<u>-</u> Ч
_
lsn't it cute?
Diau Edit 📥 Caua
Play Edit 🗘 Save

Decoration description is displayed with icons when setting Scroll/Scroll direction/Blink.

- The ticker appears at the bottom of the screen. • Repeat Step 2 to 6 to insert several tickers.

return to Ticker list screen halfway.

# 7 Press i [Save].

• Following procedure: →P284 "Editing movie/ i-motion" Step 2 to 3

### **Editing preset Ticker**

Select a ticker from Ticker list screen and press •.

## 2 Edit a ticker.

### Editing Start/End time

### 1) Press T: "Start/End time".

 Following procedure: →P284 "Editing Ticker" Step 3 to 7

## Editing Ticker

#### Press <sup>2</sup><sup>A</sup><sup>™</sup> "Ticker entry".

- Enter contents and press •.
  - Following procedure: →P284 "Editing Ticker" Step 7

## Editing decorations of Ticker

#### 1 Press 🖅 "Decoration".

 Following procedure: →P284 "Editing Ticker" Step 5 to 7

## Deleting Ticker

#### 1) Press $\underline{\Psi}_{\underline{\pi}}$ "Delete ticker".

- 2 Press / " "Delete".
  - When pressing <sup>2m</sup>/<sub>m</sub> "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

#### 3 Press 1: "Yes".

- Press Z<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.
- Following procedure: →P284 "Editing Ticker" Step 7

# **Editing with Dubbing**

Adds sound to movies/i-motion. (Pre-registered sounds are all deleted.)

- Movies/i-motion bigger than approximately 500 KB cannot be dubbed.
- Sound only movies/i-motion (i-motion without video, such as vocal of a singer) cannot be dubbed (including sound data with thumbnails).

# Press "Dubbing" on Edit i-motion menu.

# 2 Press 💽.

- Press 🖻 [Play] to view movies/i-motion.
- Press (•) to stop dubbing halfway.
- Press 🖲 [Cancel] to cancel editing with dubbing.

# 3 Press 💽.

- Press 🖻 [Play] to confirm dubbed sound.
- Following procedure: →P284 "Editing movie/ i-motion" Step 2 to 3

# Capturing movie image

Clips out the specified range of movies/i-motion.

- Even if clipping out movies/i-motion with a ticker, the ticker is not included in the clipped still image.
- You can cut out more than one clip from the same movie/i-motion.

# Press (4 nd tree movie img" on Edit i-motion menu.

# Press one of $I_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\mathfrak{g}}$ to $\mathfrak{I}_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\mathfrak{g}}$ .

Attach	Clips out the data attachable	
i-mode msg	to i-mode mail (approximately 290 KB) from the specified	
	scene.	
Atch large	Clips out the data attachable	
vol.msg	to large i-mode mail	
-	(approximately 490 KB) from	
	the specified scene.	
Unrestricted	Clips out any data size within 1	
	IVID.	

# Specify the range to clip out.

# Selecting "Attach i-mode msg" or "Atch large vol.msg"

# ① Press : [Start] at the start point to capture.

• Press (•) to start the movie and press (•) [Start], to cut out from the middle of the movie.

- If the file size is smaller than approximately 290 KB (in selecting "Attach i-mode msg") or approximately 490 KB (in selecting "Atch large vol.msg"), (I [Start] is not displayed. Press (I) to start the movie and press (I] [Start].
- Press 🖻 [Redo] to redo.
- Movies may not available to be clipped out, depending on the specified start point.

# Selecting "Unrestricted"

# ① Press i [Start] at the start point to cut out and i [End] at the end point.

- Press (•) to start the movie and press (•) [Start] / [End], to clip out from the middle of the movie.
- Press 🖻 [Redo] to redo.
- Movies may not be available to be clipped out, depending on specified the start/end point.

# 4 Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press ⊇<sup>ng</sup> "No" to redo the clipping.

# 5 Press 🖲.

- Press <a>[Play]</a> to play and confirm the clipped movie.
- Following procedure: →P284 "Editing movie/ i-motion" Step 2 to 3

# Cutting movie image

Deletes the specified range of movies/i-motion.

- Movies bigger than approximately 1 MB cannot be cut.
- When cutting the specified range of a movie, Ticker is deleted regardless of the cut range.
- Press 5 <sup>™</sup> "Cut movie img" on Edit i-motion menu.

# **2** Press i [Start] at the start point to cut and i [End] at the end point to cut.

- When you delete a part of movie/i-motion in the middle, press (•) to start the movie and then press (•) [Start] / [End].
- Press 🖻 [Redo] to redo.

# S Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>P</sub> "No" to redo the cutting.

# 4 Press 💽.

- Press 
  [Play] to play and confirm the movie of which an unnecessary part is deleted.
- Following procedure: →P284 "Editing movie/ i-motion" Step 3

## **Playing melodies**

#### Plays melodies saved in "Melody" folder.

- Press  $\bullet$   $\triangleright$   $\square_{\text{Data box}}$   $\triangleright$   $\square_{\text{S}}^{\text{DBF}}$ .
- > Select a folder, and press •.



#### Melody list screen

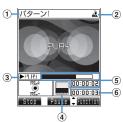
#### ① Data type

- 2 Title
  - •Title of the melody set as Ring tone etc. is indicated in a different color.
- **3 Restrict file**
- ④ File size

#### Attaching melody to i-mode mail

- ① Select a melody and press **[**[Function] ▶ *[*]<sup>®</sup> "Mail attachment".
  - Compose message screen is displayed with a melody attached.
  - You can also attach melodies by the same operation from Melody play screen.
  - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6, Attaching a melody to mails →P214

## 3 Select a melody and press •.



#### Melody play screen

1 Title

#### ② Play mode (→P296)

- 🚑 : Play portion
- 🧟 : Play all
- **3 Playing status**
- ④ Play volume
- ⑤ Play duration

Displays the current playing duration with numbers (counter) and a bar.

6 Total play duration

- Following procedure is available while playing.
  - Pause/Resume
  - 🖻 : Stop
  - 👿 : Adjust volume

### Playing melody repeatedly

#### 1 Press i [Function] ► यভা "Repeat play ON".

• Press (i [Function] >  $\Psi_{\Xi}$  "Repeat play OFF", to stop repeat playing.

## Setting the melody as Ring tone etc.

- <sub>2</sub> Press 🖻 [Set].
- $\mathbf{3}$  Select an item to set to and press  $\mathbf{O}$ .
  - When a movie/i-motion with video and sound is already set on the selected item, the message appears to indicate that the image set for Receive display returns to the default.

# Before using miniSD memory card

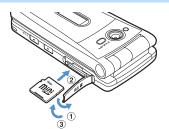
#### You can save the data such as Phonebook/Mail/ Bookmark, play the data in miniSD memory card, or copy them to FOMA terminal.

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.
- Before using miniSD memory cards, format the card first with the FOMA terminal. →P292
- FOMA terminal supports a miniSD memory card (commercial product) up to 512 MB. (as of May, 2006) Please check the current supporting information on the site below.
  - From i-mode: "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" →P183
  - From PC or other terminal: SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Telecom company: http://www.sanyo-keitai.com

# Inserting/removing miniSD memory card

- Cautions in handling on inserting/removing miniSD memory card
  - Use your finger tips (opposite of nail) to handle.
  - Power off the terminal when handling the card.
  - Note that the card may pop out.
  - Check the face of the card before inserting. Data may be damaged if the card is not \_inserted properly.
- 🗊 appears when turning the power on with miniSD memory card inserted.

#### Inserting miniSD memory card



- ① Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- ② Up the front face (printed face) of miniSD memory card, and insert the card horizontally and slowly until it clicks.

•Inserting miniSD memory card diagonally may damage FOMA terminal or the card.

③ Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

#### Removing miniSD memory card



- ① Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- (2) Insert the miniSD memory card until it clicks. miniSD memory card is slightly stuck out.
- ③ Pull miniSD memory card straight and slowly.
- (4) Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

#### miniSD memory card folder structure

#### Displaying with FOMA terminal

The folder structure of miniSD memory card is as follows. The destination to save is divided by data type.

Folder name	Maximum folder number	Maximum data number in a folder	
miniSD data			
🔁 Digital camera	900 items	9,999 items	
Picture Picture	999 items	9,999 items	
i-motion	4,095 items	4,095 items	
P Melody	999 items	9,999 items	

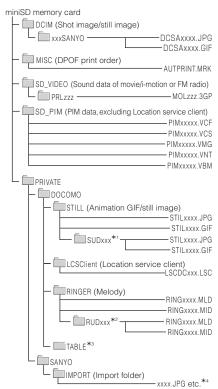
Folder name	Maximum folder	Maximum data number
PIM data	number	in a folder
		1
Phonebook		
Inbox		
Outbox		65,535 items
Unsent message		in total
Schedule/ToDo	_	
Bookmark		
Loc. service client		999 items
Text memo		65,535 items
		in total
Import folder		
Import folder	_	Unrestricted*

\* FOMA terminal does not support to display still images larger than 1,000 items.

Folder name	Data in the folders	
miniSD data		
Digital camera*1	Images shot with Camera, JPEG/GIF in DCF format <sup>*2</sup>	
Picture*1	JPEG/animation GIF	
i-motion	Movies/i-motion shot by Camera, or sound data recorded by FM radio	
Melody	Melody	
PIM data		
Phonebook	Phonebook data	
Inbox	Received mail data	
Outbox	Sent mail data	
Unsent message	Unsent message data	
Schedule/ ToDo	Schedule/ToDo data	
Bookmark	Bookmark data	
Loc. service client	Location service client data	
Text memo	Text memo data	
Import folder		
Import folder	Exchange-data between PC	
DPOF print order		
DPOF print order <sup>*3</sup>	Data reserved for DPOF print	

- \*1 Still images bigger than 1.1 MB is unable to be displayed.
- \*<sup>2</sup> DCF is the abbreviation of "Design rule for Camera File system".
- \*3 999 prints (998 for Regular print, 1 for Index print)

#### Displaying with PC etc.



- \*1 If the data in "STILL" folder exceeds the maximum number to save, "SUDxxx" folder is created automatically.
- \*2 If the data in "RINGER" folder exceeds the maximum number to save, "RUDxxx" folder is created automatically.
- \*3 The folder for data management. FOMA terminal may display the data incorrectly if you delete/ edit a file in this folder.
- \*4 Only the files with following extensions are playable; ".JPG", ".JPEG", ".JPE", ".GIF", ".3GP", ".MLD", ".MID".
- Following rules are applied to folder/file names. Usable characters are all one-byte (Half Mark).
  - 100 to 999 for xxx of "xxxSANYO"
  - 0001 to 9999 for xxxx of "DCSAxxxx"
  - 001 to 999 for xxx of "SUDxxx", "RUDxxx", "LSCDCxxx"
  - 0001 to 9999 for xxxx of "STILxxxx", "RINGxxxx"
  - Hexadecimal number/alphabet of 001 to FFF for zzz of "PRLzzz", "MOLzzz" (single digit is represented by the number of 0 to 9 and the alphabet of A to F in hexadecimal number).
  - 00001 to 65535 for xxxxx of "PIMxxxxx"

## Information

- When copying the data to miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or saving still image/movie shot/ recorded with camera directly to miniSD memory card, a folder applicable to the file type is automatically created in miniSD memory card and displayed as the chart.
- When saving data in miniSD memory card from PC etc., save the data in the specified folder with the specified file format and name shown in the chart. If data is saved in the wrong folder or in different file format, FOMA terminal does not recognize the data.
- •When using data copied from PC etc. to miniSD memory card, the management file of the card in FOMA terminal may require to be updated before use.
- Data saved from other devices into miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played with FOMA terminal. Also, some data saved in miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may be unable to be displayed or played on other devices.
- It is recommended to make backups of the data saved in miniSD memory card separately. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

# Copying data in FOMA terminal into miniSD memory card

## Copies the data in Data box or PIM data to miniSD memory card.

- · Data below cannot be copied.
  - Flash movie, Frame, Stamp
  - Original data
  - Preinstalled data (excluding Deco-mail picture)
  - Data with file restriction (excluding the restriction is set with FOMA terminal, or the retrieval source is displayed as "Data exchange", "Radio" in File property.)

Select data on Image/Movie/Melody list screen, press i [Function] ▶ select "Copy to miniSD" and press ●.

• When displaying Play screen for each data, the same operation allows to copy one of data.

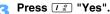
## Press II "Copy".

#### Copying by option

- 1 Press 🖅 "Copy option".
- Select one of data and press •.
  Press to release.
- ③ Press (i) [Exec.]

#### Copying all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Copy all".
- Enter the terminal security code and press •.



• Press 2<sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- If 100 movies/i-motion with chapter information are saved in miniSD memory card or the number of data exceeds 100 after copying, a confirmation screen appears. Press [i] "Execute", then only movies/ i-motion are copied and chapter information is deleted.
- When the still image with location information added is copied to miniSD memory card, the accuracy of location information level is set to Level 3. →P265
- When copying data to miniSD memory card, the management information is also copied to miniSD memory card.

#### <Export>

# Copying PIM data into miniSD memory card

- PIM data available to copy →P288
- You cannot copy Phonebook data in UIM (FOMA card).

#### Copying PIM data one by one

#### <Example> Copying Phonebook data

#### Press I ?? "Yes".

- Press 2mm "No" to cancel.
- When an image is set to Phonebook, a confirmation message appears.

#### Copying PIM data as a whole





- Select an item and press •.
- Press (i) [Function] ► 2<sup>-</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Export from Phone".

# **4** Enter the terminal security code and press $\odot$ .

• Press *Γ*. Schedule" or *Ξ*<sup>\*</sup> ToDo" to export the data of Schedule/ToDo.

#### 5 Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press 2 Mo" to cancel.
- Save data as one file. The file is named as the date and time of export.
- When an image is attached to the data, a confirmation message appears.

#### Information

- The title is named as "0:00 1/1/2006" if the time and date setting is not specified.
- Location information registered in Phonebook/ Schedule and inserted on still images, may not be displayed/used when copying/moving to other phone models via miniSD memory card.
- Group number is to be Group 0 when copying a Phonebook entry.
- Profile data is copied as the first entry if copying Phonebook data as a whole.
- When copying Phonebook data as a whole under PIM lock (Profile), the profile data is not copied.
- The 2nd zip code and address registered in Profile are not copied to miniSD memory card.

# Previewing data in miniSD memory card

 FOMA terminal may not display the data properly when the data is edited or deleted in PC etc.
 Update the miniSD memory card information in that case. →P292

## Displaying data in miniSD memory card

#### <Example> Displaying "DigCam" folder



## Press I "Digital camera".

• Press 🖻 [Phone] and the screen switches to Data box.

## Select a folder, and press •.

 Press 
 D to switch between the folder of "DigCam" and "Picture". When no folder or data is saved in a folder, 
 D [Picture] or 
 DigCam] does not appear.

## Select data and press •.

- Procedure while displaying a still image  $\rightarrow$  P276
- Procedure while playing a movie →P282
- Procedure while playing melodies →P287
- The setting while playing data  ${\rightarrow}\mathsf{P296}$

#### Information

- Alternatively, press ► 💭 "Data box" ► 🖻 [miniSD] to display the data.
- Press (i) [Function] to edit images in the same procedure as Data box, on Data list screen or Data play screen in "miniSD data".
- If the data which is to be saved to miniSD memory card but exceeds the maximum data in size or number, the data is saved in "Data box" → "Data exchange".

Previewing data in miniSD memory carc

- When attaching to mails with converted images, the attached data is copied to Data box.
- After attaching a large still image/movie to a mail, the data is copied to Data box.
- Any data in miniSD memory card is available to attach to mails regardless of the file restriction setting.

## **Displaying PIM data**



Press ● ► 🔁 ► 🖅 ► ೭.

## Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

PIM data list screen is displayed.

## Select a file and press (•).

 For the file with more than single data, select data and press (•).

#### Information

Press (i) [Function] to use various functions on Data list screen in "PIM data", in the same procedure as in FOMA terminal.

## Copying data in miniSD memory card into FOMA terminal

## Copying miniSD data to FOMA terminal

- · Data below cannot be copied.
  - Data bigger than approximately 25 MB file size
  - Data unable to play in FOMA terminal
- Select data on Data list screen of miniSD memory card, and press (i) [Function] > select "Copy to Phone" and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- 🔈 Press 🖅 "Copy".

#### Copying by option

- 1 Press 2\* "Copy option".
- Select one of data and press (•).
- Press (•) to release. ③ Press (i) [Exec.]

#### Copying all

- 1 Press IT "Copy all".
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

Press / \* "Yes".

- Press 2mm "No" to cancel.
- The data is saved to "Data exchange" in each folder of Data box.

## Information

If 100 movies/i-motion with chapter information are saved in FOMA terminal, or the number of data exceeds 100 after copving, a confirmation screen appears. Press [13] "Execute", then only movies/ i-motion are copied and chapter information is deleted.

## Copying PIM data to FOMA terminal

- Select data on Data list screen of PIM data, and press (i) [Function] > select ∃<sup>™</sup> "Import".
  - Press **4** "Import all files" to import all the files.

#### Copying a file with more than single data

#### 1 Select data and press (i) [Function] > select "Import", and press ().

- Press (i) [Function] > select "Import all" and press (•), to copy all data in a file. Go to Step 2.
- 2 Press /: "Yes". Press 2<sup>m</sup> "No" to cancel.
- Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

## Press one of $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ to $\exists S_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .

Save new entry	Adds data in miniSD memory card to data registered in FOMA terminal before saving.
Overwrite	Deletes data registered in FOMA terminal and saves data in miniSD memory card.
Cancel	Cancels importing.

- Press / ?? "Yes".
  - Press 2<sup>-</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- When copying a Phonebook entry as a new entry, if there is an entry for the same Phonebook number in FOMA terminal, the data is saved in the smallest available Phonebook number.
- You can select whether to save the first data as Profile, when overwriting Phonebook data. Data in Profile, other than Own number, is overwritten when copying.
- Group number is to be Group 0 when copying a Phonebook entry or data of which Group number is over 20.
- When copying to overwrite Phonebook data under PIM lock (Profile), the profile data is not overwritten.
- A message appears to confirm that 1-touch notify or Periodic notify is released, when copying by overwriting Location service client data.

## Managing miniSD memory card

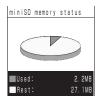
## Manages miniSD memory card with checking the data space or formatting.

# Checking the data space in miniSD memory card

You can confirm the occupied/open space of data in Data box by a circular chart.



Press i [Function] ► I \* miniSD memory stat".



The estimated data status of the occupied/ open space is displayed as a circular chart and numeric data.

#### Information

•The available miniSD memory card space is smaller than the specification on the card.

## Formatting miniSD memory card

Formats miniSD memory card to use in FOMA terminal.

- Format miniSD memory cards with the FOMA terminal before use.
- When miniSD memory card is formatted, all of the saved data is deleted. Format the card after checking that no important data is remained in the card.



- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ().
- Press 🖅 🐨 Yes".
  - Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Updating miniSD memory card information

Updates miniSD memory card when you cannot display the data properly after edited the data in miniSD memory card with PC etc.

- 1 Press ▶ (●) ▶ (■)
- Press i [Function] ► 2<sup>mm</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Refresh mgt. file".
- 强 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press Z<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

 Update may take longer depending on the amount of data in miniSD memory card.

#### miniSD mode

## Using miniSD as reader/writer

#### Connect FOMA terminal to PC with USB connection cable (optional), and you can use the terminal with miniSD memory card as a reader/ writer.

- · Applicable OS is Windows 2000 and XP.
- Folders or data in FOMA terminal cannot be accessed from PC.

#### <Example> For Windows XP

 $1 \text{ Press } \bullet \models \bigotimes_{\text{settings}} \models \underbrace{\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}^{d}}}_{\text{settings}} \models \widehat{\mathcal{U}_{\mathbb{R}^{d}}} \models \widehat{\mathcal{O}} \models \underbrace{\mathcal{I}_{\mathbb{R}^{d}}}_{\text{settings}}.$ 

## Press 2<sup>-</sup> "miniSD mode".

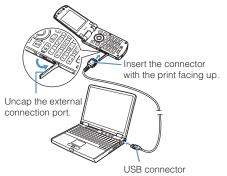
appears.

The external connection port is used as a reader/writer with miniSD memory card.

#### 3 Connect FOMA terminal to PC with FOMA USB connection cable.

"リムーバブルディスク <Removable disc>" icon appears in My Computer.

• Power on FOMA terminal and PC when connecting.



#### Shortcut icon

When connection between PC becomes available, Shortcut icon ( 🛃 ) for USB mode setting appears on Stand-by display.

#### Information

- Data while sending/receiving may be lost when the battery of FOMA terminal is hardly left or dead. Check the battery level is high enough in FOMA terminal. The battery of PC is also recommendable to check. Charge FOMA terminal with the desktop holder (optional).
- Do not disconnect FOMA USB connection cable (optional) or miniSD memory card when transferring data from PC to FOMA terminal.
- Check if FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected before data transfer.
- The following operations are available during data transfer; dialing/receiving of voice or videophone calls, sending/receiving i-mode mail/SMS/MessageR/F.
- Removing FOMA USB connection cable (optional) from PC (in Windows XP)
  - ① Double-click the icon "Removal of hardware safely" on the task bar of Windows XP, and click "USB" (USB large memory device).
  - 2 Click "Stop" and then "OK".
  - ③ Disconnect the FOMA USB connection cable (optional).

# Displaying/registering original data

You can display or register the original data (Menu icon/National holiday/Dictionary data/ Category icon) downloaded from the site "どこで もSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>".

- Only the set of Menu icons are saved by default.
- ・The site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>" →P183

#### Displaying/registering Menu icons

There are two types of Menu icon, "Set icon" for each menu screen as a whole and "Single icon" for each item of menu.

- Menu icons are customizable. →P277
- ✓ Press ▶



#### Select a Menu icon and press •.

#### Editing title

- ① Select a Menu icon and press [Function] ► () "Edit title".
- Enter the title and press •.
  - Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

## Press ▣ [Set] ▶ one of 🖅 🕫 to Ψ 📰.

• Some types of menu icons cannot be applied to a certain menu.

- 🚺 Press 💽.
  - Select an item and press (•), to set Single icon.

# Displaying/registering National holidays

- Select National holidays data and press •.
- - When selected data of National holidays is already set, a confirmation screen appears.
  - Press <sup>2 ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

# Displaying/registering Dictionary data

- You can set Dictionary data of up to 5 items or approximately 64 KB.
- Releasing Dictionary data →P356



## Select Dictionary data and press •.

- 强 Press 🖻 [Set] ▶ 🖅 🕄 "Yes".
  - When the selected dictionary data has been already set, a confirmation screen appears.
  - Press (•) to check the detail of Dictionary data.
  - Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

## Displaying Category icon of Schedule/ToDo

There are two types of Category icon, "Set icons" consisted of several icons and "Single icon" of each icon.

• Category icon is available for Schedule/ToDo registration. →P321, 323



 Select % (Set icons) and press (•) to confirm the contents.

# Making full use of folder and data

You can create folders or set security on the created folders (user folders).

## Creating/editing/deleting folder

- Up to 10 user folders can be created in each folder of "My picture"/"i-motion"/"Melody".
- Preinstalled folders by default cannot be edited/ deleted.

Displaying/registering original data

### **Creating folder**

Press i [Function] ► I = "Create folder", on Folder list screen.

## $\mathbf{>}$ Enter the folder name and press $\mathbf{\odot}$ .

- Up to 8 two-byte (Full Mark)/16 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Delete existing characters before entering a new folder name.

#### Editing the name of created folder

- 2 Enter the folder name and press •.

#### **Deleting folder**

- Select a folder and press i [Function] ► 5 🐨 "Delete folder".
- Press 1<sup>®</sup> "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- ① Press ⊇ﷺ "Delete option".
- Select a folder, and press ●.
- Press 

   to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all".
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
  - If secured folders are contained, press () "Execute" and enter the terminal security code.

#### 📶 Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <a>Press</a> <a>Press</a

#### Sorting folders and data

You can sort files in user folders or Data box.

#### Sorting folders

- Preinstalled folders by default cannot be sorted.
  - Press i [Function] ► 2<sup>-m</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "Sort folders", on Folder list screen.
- Select a folder, and press •.

# **3** Press **(**) to select the destination to move and press **(**).

- When sorting other folders continuously, repeat the procedure from Step 2 to 3.
- 💶 Press i [Complete].

## Sorting data

Sorts files in Data box.

- Files in preinstalled folders by default cannot be sorted by Retrieval sources.
- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Sort files" and press ●, on Image/Movie/ Melody list screen.

## **Press one of** $I_{\ast}$ to $T_{\ast}$ .

Date ord (new→old)	Sorts by saved date in order from new to old.	
Date ord (old→new)	Sorts by saved date in order from old to new.	
Title(asc.)	Sorts in order of Picture, two-byte (Full Mark) characters (Mark/Numeric/ Capital letter/Small letter/ Hiragana/Katakana/ External character/Kanji), and one-byte (Half Mark) characters (Mark/Numeric/ Capital letter/Small letter/ Katakana).	
Title(des.)	Sorts by title in ascending order.	
File size(asc.)	Sorts by file size in ascending order.	
File size(des.)	Sorts by file size in descending order.	
Download sources	Sorts by folder of the retrieval sources (Camera/ i-mode/Data exchange/ Radio/Deco-mail picture).	

#### Setting security on folder and data

Set security on User folders or restriction on files in Data box, and you can prevent forwarding attachments from the sent addresses.

#### Setting security on folder

- · Security cannot be set on preinstalled folders by default.
- The terminal security code is required to enter for viewing secured folders.
- Select a folder and press i [Function] ► 4<sup>∞</sup> "Set security".
  - Press : [Function] ► Ψ = "Release security", to release the security setting.
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

#### Setting file restriction on data

- The setting change for Restrict file is not applied to the following data.
  - Data with file restriction (excluding the data that file restriction is set with FOMA terminal, or the retrieval source is displayed as "Camera", Data exchange" or "Radio" in File property)
  - Data that the retrieval source is displayed as "i-mode" in File property
  - Frame, Stamp
  - Select a file and press i [Function] ► select "Restrict file" and press •, on Image/Movie/Melody list screen.

#### Press I TRestricted".

• Press 2<sup>mb</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "Unrestricted" to release.

# Changing title/file name of data for managing

You can edit the management titles (titles displayed on FOMA terminal) or the name of files in Data box.

- File name of the following data cannot be edited.
   Data with file restriction (excluding the data that file restriction is set with FOMA terminal, or the retrieval source is displayed as "Camera", "Data exchange" or "Radio" in File property)
  - Preinstalled data (excluding Deco-mail picture)
  - Flash movie

## Select a file and press i [Function] select "Edit title" and press ●, on Image/Movie/Melody list screen.

• Alternatively, the same procedure is available on each data play screen.

#### Editing file name

(1) Select a file and press (i) [Function] select "Edit file name" and press (i), on Image/Movie/Melody list screen.

#### Enter a title/file name and press (•).

- When no title is entered in a management title, the file name or the default title is saved. →P296
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

## Moving data to other folder

Files in Data box can be moved into User folder.

- You cannot move the data among preinstalled folders by default.
- If data is moved from a user folder to i-mode/ Camera/Deco-mail picture/Data exchange/Item folder, data type determines the destination folder.
- Preinstalled data (excluding Deco-mail picture) cannot be moved to other folders.
- Select a file and press i [Function] select "Move to folder" and press o, on Image/Movie/Melody list screen.

## Press Is "Move".

## Moving by option

- Press <sup>2<sup>A</sup><sup>®</sup></sup>/<sub><sup>#</sup></sub> "Move option".
- (2) Select a file and press  $\odot$ .
- Press to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]
- Moving all
  - 1 Press 🖅 "Move all in folder".

## ${f 3}$ Select a destination folder and press ${ullet}$ .

## 🔺 Press 🕼 "Yes".

• Press 240 "No" to cancel.

### **Deleting data**

You can delete data or Original data in Data box/ miniSD memory card.

- Data saved in "Preinstalled" folder of My picture/ Melody cannot be deleted.
- Menu icon data registered by default in Original data cannot be deleted.
- If data set as Stand-by display or Ring tone is deleted, each setting returns to default.
- Select data and press i [Function] select "Delete" and press ●, from each data list screen.
  - Alternatively, the same procedure is available for playing each data or detailed screen.

## Press I "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2 "Delete option".
- Select data and press ●.
- Press 

   to release.
- 3 Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all data in folder

- 1 Press I "Delete all in fldr".
- ② Enter the terminal security code and press •.

## 🏅 Press 🖅 🕄 "Yes".

- Press 2 Mo" to cancel.
- If the data to delete is set to Stand-by display or Ring tone etc., a confirmation message is displayed. Press (I) "Yes" to delete, (I)" "Delete unused data" to delete data unused, and (I)" "No" not to delete.

#### <File property>

#### Confirming the data information

Displays the data and original data in Data box/ miniSD memory card.

- Select data and press i [Function] ► select "File property" and press •.
  - Alternatively, the same procedure is available on Play/Detailed screen of each data.

#### List of displayed items

Detailed information is as follows.

Item	Description	
File name	File name of data	
Title	Default title of data, displayed as "不明 <unknown>" for i-motion, and "No title" for Melody/Original data, when no default title exists.</unknown>	
File type	File type	
Creator	Creator's name etc. of movies/ i-motion	
Copyright	Name of copyright holder or the released date etc. of movies/ i-motion	
Description	Description of movies/i-motion	
Display size	Display size of the data	
File size	File size of the data	
Sound	Data type of movies/i-motion	
Ring tone	Indicates whether movies/ i-motion are applicable for Ring tone.	
Receive display	Indicates whether movies/ i-motion are applicable for the image set for Receive display.	
Restrict file	Indicates whether to restrict forwarding the attachment from the received party to others. • You cannot change the settings of downloaded i-motions or melodies etc. from sites.	
Play restriction	Play restriction of movies/ i-motion	
Location info	Indicates whether the location information is added to the still image.	

Item	Description
Transfer for repair	Indicates whether user's data can be transferred when repairing FOMA terminal at DoCoMo-specified repair shop.*
Downloaded from	Data source
Saved on	Data saved date
Play duration	Duration to play data
No. of images	Number of menu icons
Set to:	File destination to be set
Image	Indicates whether the image is set to Phonebook data in miniSD memory card.

\* If your data is untransferable, or lost/changed, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

#### <Play settings>

## Settings for playing data

Default	Backlight Vibrator I FD	: Always on : ON : ON
	Play mode	: Play all : Play in normal

Configure the settings when playing data in Data box or miniSD memory card.

- Music Player setting is prior to other settings when using Music player.
- Playing still images/movies/i-motion set as Standby display follows the Stand-by display settings.
- Temporary setting change does not apply to Play setting, such as volume adjust while playing data.
- 🛉 Press 💽 🕨 🗖
- Press i [Function] ► I = "Play settings".

### 3 Set items.

Press (i) [Check] to confirm setting status.

#### Backlight settings

- 1 Press I: "Backlight".
- ② Press I may always on or employed and the settings.

Always	Backlight is set to be always on.
on	
Terminal	Follows Backlight setting.
settings	

#### Vibrator setting

- · The setting is active for playing melodies.
- Press <sup>Z<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>π</sub> "Vibrator".
- - Vibrator starts in conjunction with a melody while playing. (The preset vibration pattern may be applied if no pattern is linked to the melody.)
  - Press Press "OFF" not to activate Vibrator.

#### LED setting

- The setting is active for playing melodies.
- 1 Press I's "LED".
- 2 Press 1: "ON".
  - LED starts blinking in conjunction with a melody while playing. (The preset blink pattern may be applied if no pattern is linked to the melody.)
  - Press ⊇ﷺ "OFF" not to blink.

#### Play mode setting

- The setting is active for playing melodies.
- Melodies plays in full size regardless of the setting if the melody is in SMF format or without the start point.
- 1 Press 4 " Play mode".
- ② Press I <sup>\*</sup> "Play portion" or <sup>2</sup><sup>\*</sup> "Play all".

	Play starts from the start point which is set to the file.
Play all	Plays a melody in full size.

#### Display size setting

- The setting is active for playing still images/ movies/i-motion.
- 1 Press 🖅 "Display size".
- ② Press I S "Play in large" or Z Play in normal".

#### Volume setting

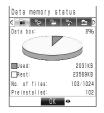
- The setting is active for playing Flash movies/ movies/i-motion/melodies.
- 1 Press **E** Volume".
- 2 Press () to adjust volume and press ).

## **Checking memory status**

You can confirm the memory status in Data box with a circular chart.



## 



- The estimation of current data status used/ remained is displayed in number and by a circular chart, and you can confirm the number of data in each folder. Press to switch the display between Data box/My picture/i-motion/Melody/Original data.
- To confirm memory status of each folder etc., press (i) [Detail]. Press (i) to switch the folder.

# When the memory space is short or data exceeds the maximum number

When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in Data box, such as the situation of editing and saving still images, a message appears.

- 1 When a confirmation screen is displayed, press *[iii]* "Yes".
- Press *l* : "Data box" or *e* : " "Data box" or *e* : " "Original data".
- 3 Select a folder, and press •.
- Select data and press •.
  - Press 
     to release.
- 5 Press i [Exec.]
  - If including the data which is set to Stand-by display or Ring tone etc., a confirmation message appears. Press *[is]* "Yes" to delete, *[is]*" "Delete unused data" to delete data unused, and *[is]*" "No" not to delete. Setting returns to default with deleting.
  - Repeat Step 1 to 5 until the memory recovers the free space.

## Infrared communication

You can send and receive Phonebook data or images between other FOMA terminals or mobile phones etc., which are equipped with Infrared communication function. Link the terminal to devices with infrared communication function by using i-αppli.

- Infrared communication is not available under Lock all/self mode.
- Data relating to the locked functions cannot be sent/received.
- PIM lock →P145
- "Send/Receive all" may not be available in Infrared communication started from i-αppli software.
  Since the radio wave status in Infrared
- communication is the same as out of service area, calls/i-mode/data communication is not available. • Multitask function is not available in Infrared
- communication.
- activated at the same time (excluding miniSD mode).
- Downloaded melody/image data may not be sent/ received with Infrared communication.
- Images/i-motion bigger than approximately 300 KB cannot be sent/received. (Some images may not be sent/received even if the image is within approximately 300 KB. And, melodies larger than approximately 100 KB cannot be sent/received.)
- When sending a message, an attached image which is not allowed to be sent/received may be omitted, and only Message is sent. In addition, only Message may be received when receiving.
- A message is displayed if the data to save exceeds the maximum size or number. When receiving all items, only the savable data is stored.
- Infrared communication of SA702i is conformed to IrMC1.1 standards. Infrared communication may not be available even though the model of other party supports IrMC1.1.
- Data exchanged with the terminal other than SA702i with Infrared communication may not be sent or displayed correctly on the other party's terminal.
- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas exposed to direct sunlight or fluorescent lights.
- The 2nd zip code and address registered in Profile are not sent with Infrared communication.
- When sending/receiving Bookmark, folder sort setting is not transferred.

# Data sent/received with Infrared communication

Data type	Space for received data	Priority to save on receiving
Phonebook, Profile	Phonebook*	Registered by the remaining memory number in ascending/ descending order.
Received mail (i-mode mail, SMS)	Main folder in Inbox	Registered by received date in order from new to old.

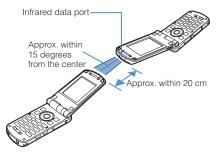
Data type	Space for received data	Priority to save on receiving
Sent mail (i-mode mail, SMS)	Main folder in Outbox	Registered by sent date in order from new to old.
Unsent message (i-mode mail, SMS)	Main folder in Unsent messages	Registered by saved date in order from new to old.
Schedule	Schedule list	Registered by start date/end date/ alarm date in order from new to old.
ТоDо	ToDo list	Registered by expiration date in order from new to old.
Bookmark	Main folder in Bookmark	Registered on the top of the list.
Location service client	Service clients	Registered at the bottom of the list.
Memo data	Text memo	Registered at the bottom of the list.
Still image	Data exchange folder in My picture	
Movie/ i-motion	Data exchange folder in i-motion	Registered according to the setting of sorting order in Data box.
Melody	Data exchange folder in Melody	order in Data Box

\* When all of Phonebook data is received, the first item is registered as Profile and the data in Profile is overwritten other than phone number.

- When all data from Phonebook is sent/received under PIM lock (Profile), the profile data is not sent/received.
- When sending/receiving Phonebook data etc. with images under PIM lock (Multimedia), the images are not sent/received.
- Still image/movie/i-motion/melody cannot be sent/ received with "Send all" or "Receive all".
- Up to 9 two-byte (Full Mark)/18 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be sent/received as the title of still image/movie/i-motion.
- Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be sent/received as the title of melody.
- You cannot send the data recorded with FM radio.
- When sending/receiving 1 entry of Phonebook, Group number is registered as 0.
- When Phonebook data is sent from FOMA terminal of other manufacturers, group numbers bigger than 20 are all registered as Group 0, on SA702i.
- When saving location information, registered in Phonebook/Schedule or inserted in the image, to terminals of other manufacturers through infrared communication, the information may not be displayed or used with the received terminal.

#### When using Infrared communication

- · Make FOMA terminal of the receiver side ready to receive.
- Place both infrared data ports in face to face and make distance/angle between two ports within approximately 20 cm/approximately 15 degrees from the center. Keep both terminals still as pointing at the infrared data port each other until data transmission is completed.
- Communicating screen is displayed during Infrared communication, and the icon blinks. Do not place any object between FOMA terminals nor move terminals until the data transmission is completed.



#### Send Infrared data

#### Sending data with Infrared communication

Sends Phonebook data or your phone number etc. to other FOMA terminals or mobile phones with Infrared communication function. Infrared communication function for data sending supports following methods; sending selected data individually, or all files by data type.

- · Make FOMA terminal of the receiver side ready to receive.
- Link information on the mail is deleted when sending if the mail has the link information to start i-αppli.

#### Sending single data item

Select the data to send through Infrared communication from each function, and start Infrared communication from Function menu to send.

#### <Example> Sending Profile data through Infrared communication

- Press i [Function] ► E<sup>max</sup> "Send infrared data".
  - When an image is attached to the data, a confirmation message appears. Select an item and press •.

<sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press 2mm "No" to cancel.
- Press 🖻 [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message appears to confirm whether to continue connection, when the connection to the

other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press *I* "Yes" to resend.

#### Sending all data items

You can send all of the selected data, such as Phonebook or Schedule, through Infrared communication.

 If sending all of the items, the same authentication password (4-digit number) is required by both sender and receiver. Obtain same Authentication password in advance. (The password cannot be set in FOMA terminal.)



- **2** Select an item and press  $oldsymbol{igodol}$ .

  - When an image is attached to the data, a confirmation message appears.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

#### Enter the authentication password (4 digits).

• The entered authentication password is displayed as "\*\*\*\* ".

## <sub>5</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

- Press <sup>2<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.
- Press 🖻 [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message appears to confirm whether to continue, when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press (r:) "Yes" to resend.

#### Information

- When sending all of Phonebook data, Profile data is sent as the first data.
- If Authentication password is different from the receiver's, transmission is terminated and Infrared communication menu returns on the screen.
- The order of data in sender side terminal may differ from that of the receiver.

#### **Receive infrared data**

# Receiving data with Infrared communication

You can receive data of Phonebook or mails etc. from other FOMA terminals or mobile phones equipped with Infrared communication function. Infrared communication function for data reception supports following methods; receiving selected data individually, or all files by data type.

#### **Receiving single data item**

 1 Press ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●
 ●

## 3 Send one data item from sender side.

- Press 🖻 [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message appears when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press () "Yes" to restart receiving.

# 4 After data reception is completed, press 1: "Yes".

- You cannot save data if the data exceeds the maximum number or size.
- Press 2mm "No", and the data is not saved.
- The message appears, if the same Bookmark data is saved in the receiver's terminal.

## Receiving all data items

All the data in each function, such as Phonebook or Schedule, can be transferred with Infrared communication.

 If receiving all the items, the same authentication password (4-digit number) is required by both sender and receiver. Obtain same Authentication password in advance. (The password cannot be set in FOMA terminal.)



A message appears to confirm that the data saved in the terminal is deleted by overwriting.

> Press 💽.

# 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

## Enter the authentication password (4 digits).

 The entered authentication password is displayed as "\*\*\*\* ".

## 5 Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press Press "No" to cancel.

## Send the data from sender side.

- Press 🖻 [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.
- The message appears when the connection to the other party's terminal is failed. Check the position of infrared data port and press [/:\*] "Yes" to restart receiving.

## Press 🕼 "Yes".

- Press (I) "Yes" to delete all the data in receiver's terminal, and received data is saved. The transmission ends by pressing (I) "No" and no data in receiver's terminal is erased.
- The message appears to confirm whether to release 1-touch notify or Periodic notify when sending Location service client data. Press (27%) "No" to end transmission.

# 8 The number of saved/failed items is displayed.

• The message appears when the data exceeds the maximum number and only the savable data is saved.

#### Infrared communication mode

### Activating Infrared communication mode

## When the data to activate i-appli is received, you can start i-appli software.

• Software specified by infrared communication devices is required to be downloaded in advance.

- Press 1: "Yes".
  - Press Z<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.
- 3 Receive the data to activate i-αppli through infrared communication devices.
  - Press 🖻 [Suspend] to cancel the transmission.

## 🔼 Press 🕼 "Yes".

Software is activated. Procedures after activated differ depending on software.

# Using Infrared remote control function

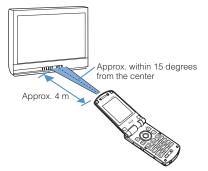
Start preinstalled i-αppli "G ガイド番組表リモコン <G-guide TV program remote control>" registered by default or downloaded applicable i-αppli, and you can use FOMA terminal as infrared remote control.

- For more detailed information about "G ガイド番組 表リモコン <G-guide TV program remote controls", refer to "i-mode User's Manual".
- When using remote control function, download software compatible to the device.
- Each key operation differs depending on software.
- Depending on the device to control, some or all of the functions may not be available.
- Transmission may be effected by the compatible devices or brightness of environment.
- Infrared remote control function is not available under self mode.

#### Remote control operation

Activate i-appli compatible with Infrared remote control function (→P242) and point the port of FOMA terminal at infrared data port of the compatible device.

- Operatable angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m.
- · Operatable angle and distance may differ depending on compatible devices or brightness of environment.



#### Voice recorder

## Using as Voice recorder

FOMA terminal supports sound recording function. You can save recorded data in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card, and the data is also available for playing/attaching to mails/ editina.

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. →P287
- · miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.

#### Recording duration or saving format

#### Recording duration

FOMA terminal : Approx. 85 min. for each file miniSD memory card : Approx. 120 min. for each file

- · Check the battery level before recording a file with long duration. Charging battery is recommended while recording.
- · Recordable duration may differ depending on the data space in FOMA terminal.
- When attaching sound data to a mail, following durations are recordable (estimates).

: Approx. 3 min. When attaching to i-mode mail

When attaching to : Approx. 5 min. 10 sec. large volume message

#### Saving destination

FOMA terminal	:	Saved in "Data box" $\rightarrow$ "i-motion" folder.
miniSD memory card	:	Saved in "miniSD" → "miniSD data" → "i-motion" folder.

 Default setting is to save in " Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera" folder. Saving destination can be changed in "Save to:" setting.

#### Saving format

File format :	MP4
Encoding method:	AMR
Enderse dans	0

Extension : .3gp

- Recorded time and date is saved as file name/ title automatically. File is named as "2006-09-20\_10-30" when the data is recorded on 10:30, September 20, 2006.
- · File name/title can be changed after saving. →P295

#### **Recording sound**

Press (•

- · Sound is recorded through the mouthpiece.
- · You cannot mute Start/End tone for recording, even under Manner mode/Public mode (Drive mode) or while Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with a switch (optional) is connected. Also, the volume of Start/End tone for recording is fixed.
- Reactions when receiving a call/alarming/ receiving a mail etc. while recording →P167

 Alternatively, press (I) [Function] > 5 # "Shooting type" > 3 Sound only", on Movie recording screen to record sound as Voice recorder. →P166

#### Setting Microphone sensitivity

- sensitivity".
- 2 Press I T "For conference" or I "For dictation".

#### Setting saving destination

 Press [I] [Function] > IT "Save to:". • Following procedure: →P171 "Setting the saving destination of shot still images/ movies" Step 2

#### Setting File restriction

- 1 Press 🗊 [Function] > 🖅 "Restrict file".
- 2 Press [1] "Restricted" or [2] "Unrestricted".

#### Shooting still image before recording

Shot still images are displayed as Thumbnail in Movie list screen.

#### 1 Press 🔊.

- Press 🖻 [Reshoot] to reshoot.

- Press : [Function] > (>) > [/:] "Operation guide" to display Operation guide.

#### Shooting still image with Special effect

- - Alternatively, press  $\underbrace{\Psi_{\pi}^{\text{set}}}$  to set Special effect.
  - Following operations: →P170 "Setting Special effect" Step 2 to 3

#### Shooting still image in Large view

- ① Press **i** [Function] ►  $\Psi_{\frac{1}{2}}$  "Large view".
  - Press (i) [Function] ► Ψ · Normal view", to display in Normal view.
  - Alternatively, press () to display in Large view/Normal view.

#### Shooting still image with light turned on

- ① Press : [Function] ► Emma "Light".
- Alternatively, press # ">+ to turn the light on.
- 2 Press 🖅 "ON".
  - Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝑘</sub> "OFF" not to light up.

#### Reducing flicker on screen

1 Press i [Function] >  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbb{B}}^{\text{ress}}$  "Reduce flicker". 2 Press one of  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbb{B}}^{\text{ress}}$  to  $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbb{B}}^{\text{ress}}$ .

#### 🕨 Press 💽.



Start tone rings and recording starts.

- When data volume or number is to reach the maximum size in miniSD memory card, which is preset as the saving destination, the data is saved in Data box after the saving destination is changed to Data box.
- Reading recording screen →P161

#### Pausing recording

#### 1 Press 🖻 [Pause].

Press 
 [Resume] to restart recording.

## **3** Press **()**.

Recording ends and the data is automatically saved.

• When exceeding the recordable duration, recording ends and the recorded data is saved automatically.

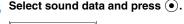
## **Playing sound**

- Playing sound data from Data box →P281
- Select a folder and press •.



 Press 

 to switch Data box and miniSD memory card.





Sound data playing screen

- Operations while playing →P282
- If a still image has been shot before recording sound, the screen returns to the shot image.

#### Playing sound from the specified time point

- Shortcut to play is not available when playing the sound in Data box.
- The same procedure is also available on Sound data play screen.
- 1 Select sound data and press
- [Function] ▶ *[*] "Shortcut to play".
- ② Enter the time point to start playing and press ●.

Sound data starts playing from the specified time point.

- Displayed duration is the length of sound data. Enter the time within the duration.
- Duration is displayed as
- "hour:minute:second".

#### Changing title

- Changing title in Data box →P295
- The same procedure is also available on Sound data play screen.
- (1) Select sound data and press i [Function] ► 2 m "Edit title".
- Enter the title and press •.
  - Up to 18 two-byte (Full Mark)/36 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

Displaying/editing/managing data

#### Checking detailed information

- Displaying detail information in Data box →P296
- The same procedure is also available on Sound data play screen.
- 1 Select sound data and press ■ [Function] > I = "File property".

#### Deleting sound data

- Deleting sound data from Data box →P295
- The same procedure is also available on Sound data play screen.
- 1 Select sound data and press [Function] ▶ <u>𝔄 😤</u> "Delete ".
- 2 Press / \* "Yes".

• Press 2 "No" to cancel.

#### **DPOF** print order

## Setting the printing property of images in miniSD memory card

Sets print settings on still images saved in miniSD memory card. Set the print settings in advance and you can print the images with specified settings when using a printer or ordering at a print shop.

- The function is available for printers and print shops supporting DPOF (Digital Print Order Format).
- Selectable image is a still image in Exif-JPG format.
- You can order the setting of 1 Index print and 998 regular prints.
- Still image, bigger than 1 MB file size, cannot be ordered
- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores. →P287

#### Ordering the number of copies





Select a folder, and press  $(\bullet)$ .

Image list screen is displayed.

- · The number displayed at the lower right corner of the image is the number of copies currently reserved.
- 🔫 Select an image and press (•) 🕨 (I [Order].
  - Press ) [Release] to release the order.

#### Enter the number of copies and press (•).

Copies to print can be set between the number of 0 to 999.

· Enter the number of copies as 0 and press and the order is released.

#### 독 Press 🛈.

Image list screen returns.

· Repeat Step 3 to 5 to order the copies for more than one image.

斉 Press 🖻 [Save] 🕨 🖅 🕆 Yes".

Press Press "No" to cancel.

#### Ordering the number of copies for multiple images at once

Select an image from Image list screen and press 🗊 [Function] 🕨 🖅 "No. of copies".

## Press I "Specify for one".

#### Specifying image for option

- 1 Press 2 "Specify for option".
- 2 Select an image and press (•).
  - Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press (i) [Exec.]
- 4 Press 7 " Yes".
  - Press 2 "No" to cancel.

#### Specifying for all

- 1 Press **J** "Specify for all".
- 2 Press / \* "Yes". • Press 2 "No" to cancel.

Enter the number to print and 2 press (•).

DPOF print order

 Following procedure: →P303 "Ordering the number of copies" Step 6

#### **Checking Order status**



Press (i [Function] > It "Order status check".

Number of ordered images/Total number of copies/Index print setting/Last refreshed date are displayed.

#### **Releasing order**

Select an image from Image list screen and press ( Function ) > 24 "Release order".

Press **7** "Release".

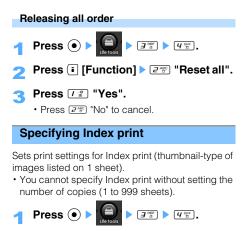
#### Releasing by option

- 1 Press 2<sup>-</sup> "Release option".
- Select an image and press (•). • Press (•) to release.
- ③ Press (i) [Exec.]
- Releasing all items

1) Press 🖅 "Release all".

#### Press / ?? "Yes".

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- Following procedure: →P303 "Ordering the number of copies" Step 6



## <sub>3</sub> Press 🕼 "Yes".

Press ₽<sup>np</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "No" not to start Index print.

# Music Player/FM radio

## Listening to music

Using Music Player
Playing i-motion (music data etc.) created in PC on FOMA terminal 308
Listening to FM radio
Before using FM radio
Listening to FM radio
Recording FM radio
Setting for FM radio

#### **Music Player**

## Using Music Player

#### Register Sound only movies/i-motion (without video, such as vocal of a singer) in Data box or miniSD memory card as Playlist, and continuous play becomes available.

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. →P287
- A miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.
- Data cannot be registered/played from miniSD memory card under miniSD mode.

## **Creating Playlist**

- Up to 9 playlists can be created.
- Up to 80 data can be stored in a single playlist.
- You cannot store the following data as Playlist. - Except Sound only movies/i-motion (without
  - video, such as vocal of a singer)
  - i-motion with Play restriction - Data with UIM (FOMA card) operation
  - restriction
  - Melody in MFi format with long play period
  - Data unable to play in FOMA terminal



Playlists are displayed.

## Select "None stored" and press Store].

- 强 Press 1 🗊 "Data box" or 🖅 "miniSD".
- Select a folder and press (•).

## < Select data, and press 💽.

## 斉 Press i [Store].

- Select "None stored", press 
   I Store] and
   repeat Step 3 to 6, to register more than 2 of data entries.

## Editing Playlist

## Editing playlist name

Select a mail and press [] [Function] Ist "Edit playlist name", on Playlist screen.

## Enter Playlist name and press (•).

 Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

## **Releasing Playlist**

Select a playlist and press (i) [Function] Image: Provide the second second

## Press / ?? "Yes".

Press <sup>Z<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>m</sub> "No" to cancel.

## **Changing data in Playlist**

Select a playlist and press 
[] [Check], on Playlist screen.

Playlist detail screen is displayed.

- · The focus is on the data played last when the playlist was terminated in the middle of playing.
- Select data and press 
  [] [Change]. 2

## Adding data

- 1 Press (Function) > I and to entry".
  - Alternatively, select "None stored" and press () [Store], for additional registration.
  - Following procedure: →P306 "Creating" Playlist" Step 3 to 6

## Sorting data

- ① Press ( Function ) ≥ 2<sup>-</sup> Sort".
- 2 Select data, and press (•).
- ③ Press Sto select the destination to move, and press  $(\bullet)$ .
  - Repeat Step 2 to 3 to sort another data continuously.
- 4 Press i [Complete].

## Confirming the details of data

- ① Select data and press ( [Function] > **𝒵** "File property". Viewing item →P296
- Press **I** "Data box" or **I** "miniSD".
- Select a folder and press (•).
- Select data, and press (•). 5

## Releasing data in Playlist

- Select data and press (i) [Function] > **I** "Release storing", on Playlist detail screen.
- Press **I** "Release".

## Releasing by option

- 1 Press 2<sup>-</sup> "Release option".
- Select data, and press (•). • Press (•) to release.
- 3 Press (i) [Exec.]

Music Player

#### Releasing all

1 Press 🖅 "Release all".

- <sub>옥</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press ₽mc "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- When editing the title of data stored in Playlist from Data box, the title name of the data is also changed in Playlist.
- When deleting data stored for Playlist in Data box, the data is released from Playlist.
- When editing the title of data stored in Playlist from miniSD memory card, the result does not affect Playlist.
- When deleting data from miniSD memory card or not inserting miniSD memory card, the title of the data in miniSD memory card which is registered in Playlist is colored gray and the data does not play.
- Data in the miniSD memory card which is registered in Playlist may be played when the data with the same file name is existed, even if the preset data is not the same as one in the card. File name →P296

## Playing music with Music Player

- Music can be played as BGM, even when another function is activated by pressing .
- Music Player stops playing in the following situations during the play, and replays the data from the beginning after finishing each function.
  - Receiving voice calls/videophone calls/64K data communication/packet communication
  - Receiving Mail/SMS/MessageR/F (under Prefer receive notice)\*
  - Periodic notify/Location provide
  - Ringing Alarm (including Schedule/ToDo alarm)
     \* Play does not resume when receiving mails with large attachments.
- If you attempt to play a movie/i-motion or a melody with another function while Music Player is playing a music, Music Player stops playing and replay the data after Play screen of the movie/ i-motion or the melody finishes.
- When connecting to a site and displaying Flash movies while playing with Music Player, sound or playing may be interrupted. In addition, an error message may appear when activating Music Player again.



Playlists are displayed.

 When the playlist is terminated in the middle of playing last time, the name of the playlist changes in color. Select a playlist and press •.



#### Play music screen

#### Number of music

- · Displays "Entry number/Total number of music".
- 2 Title

#### **3 Play duration**

• Displays "Elapsed duration/Total play duration", with bars.

#### ④ Play volume

- ⑤ Setting status
  - -X: Random play
  - C: Repeat play
  - IFF: Off Timer\*
  - \* The icon is an example when Off timer is set to 120 minutes. The icon does not appear when the timer is set to OFF.
- · Following operations are available while playing:
  - • Pause/Resume
  - () : Volume adjustment (16 levels)\*1
    - () : Fast-forward\*2
  - 🔘 : Rewind\*2
  - I Play the previous/next data
  - 🙆 : Stop
  - \*1 Operation is available even during a pause.
  - \*2 Operation is available when playing Sound only movies/i-motion (without video, such as vocal of a singer).
- Press 

   [List] to display data stored in the playlist. Select data and press 
   , and play starts from the selected data. The playing data appears in a different color.
- Hold down or or for over a second, to adjust volume while FOMA terminal is folded. The volume level is displayed on Backside display.

#### Settings for playing

You can make settings for Repeat play, Random play and Off timer.

Press i [Function] on Play music screen.

## 2 Set items.

#### Setting Repeat play

Plays data in the playlist repeatedly. ① Press () "Repeat play ON".

• Press 🖅 "Repeat play OFF", not to set Repeat play. Music Player



#### Setting Random play

Plays data in the playlist in random order.

#### 1 Press 2<sup>nec</sup> "Random play ON".

• Press 2 "B" "Random play OFF", not to set Random play.

#### Setting Off timer

After a preset time has elapsed, Music Player ends.

- Off timer begins counting when playing starts.
- Off timer count is reset when setting Off timer while playing, or terminating playing by pressing (@c.n).

#### 1 Press 🖅 "Off timer".

- 2 Press one of  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$  to  $I_{\frac{1}{2}}$ .
  - Press 🖅 "OFF" to release Off timer.

#### Confirming the details of data

- 1 Press  $\underline{\Psi}$  "File property".
  - Viewing item →P296

# Playing i-motion (music data etc.) created in PC on FOMA terminal

#### Music purchased on Internet or in CD can be saved in miniSD memory card using PC, and can be played on FOMA terminal. (Some melodies may not be played properly in some conditions.)

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.
- Music saved in miniSD memory card are only for personal use.
- Please be aware enough not to infringe intellectual property rights or other rights of third parties.
- Do not transfer music saved in miniSD memory card to other devices to duplicate.
- miniSD memory card →P287

Playing i-motion (music data etc.) created in PC on FOMA terminal

308

- Save music from CD etc. in PC, using software that can convert music in CD into AAC format.
  - For details about software, refer to Internet sites of the software providers.

## Insert miniSD memory card into PC and copy music files.

#### Detailed procedure

- (1) Change the name of the file made in Step 1 to "MOLxxx.3gp" ("xxx" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF).
- (2) Copy the file to "PRLxxx" folder under "SD\_VIDEO" folder in miniSD memory card.
  - The file name can be changed after displaying the extension name on PC setting.
  - If "SD\_VIDEO" folder does not exist in miniSD memory card, create "SD\_VIDEO" and "PRLxxx" folder under "SD\_VIDEO" folder on PC. And copy the file created in Step ① to "PRLxxx" folder.
  - Folder structure of miniSD memory card →P289
- 3 Insert miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal.

Press ● ► ► ► ■ [miniSD] ► ■ "i-motion" ► "PRLxxx" ► select music and play i-motion (including music).

- i-motion (music data) can also be played with Music Player.
- · Playing stops in following cases.
  - When receiving a voice call/videophone call
  - When receiving a mail and "Receive preference" is set
  - When any alarm is activated
  - When pressing Task key
- Press (■ [Function] while playing ► T<sup>ree</sup> "Repeat play ON", to repeat music.

#### Information

- Music files may not be played on FOMA terminal, depending on the software to use.
- Music data protected with copyright protection technique cannot be played on FOMA terminal.
- Music files can be copied with connecting FOMA terminal with miniSD memory card inserted, to PC. → P292

## Before using FM radio

#### FM radio and channel 1 to 3 of television with only sound are available with your FOMA terminal. You can also record the sound.

- You may hear noise or the sound may be interrupted, depending on the environment such as under poor FM radio wave condition or near an electronic device. However, it is not a malfunction.
- The antenna for FM radio is built in to FOMA terminal nearby the earphone/microphone jack and the external connection port. Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hand etc. when you listen to FM radio.



• Please be noted that your ears might be harmed by a long hours of hearing in a loud volume that irritates your ear.

#### For clear sound reception of FM radio

FM radio wave may not be heard clearly in places under a poor radio wave condition, such as behind a reinforced concrete building or a mountain. In that case, try one or more of the followings.

- Check if you do not cover the built-in antenna part with your hand etc.
- Connect Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) and extend the earphone code, to search a direction for a good reception.
   Although the antenna for FM radio is built in to FOMA terminal, the earphone/microphone works as the antenna while connected. Search a direction in the same way, when you listen to FM radio with the speaker.
- As FM radio wave comes from outside buildings, listen to FM radio at a place such as where there is a window nearby.

## Listening to FM radio

- FM radio is available as BGM, even when another function is activated by pressing .
- FM radio is muted temporarily in the following situations, and the sound comes back after each function is terminated.
  - While making/receiving/talking on a voice call/ videophone call
  - While receiving 64K data communication
  - While activating Camera
  - While activating i-appli
  - While playing a movie/i-motion (including Video only data), or while playing a melody
  - While playing a melody on displaying an i-mode mail
  - While recording or playing Record message/ Voice Memo-Call
  - During a voice guidance in Navigation
  - While Alarm is ringing

## **Activating FM radio**



#### FM radio screen

- 1 Frequency
- 2 Radio station

#### 3 Off timer

 Displays when Off timer is set. The remaining time is displayed since when 3 more minutes have been left. →P312

④ Volume

#### 5 Analog display of the frequency

- Select the area when you first activate FM radio. Following procedure: →P311 "Selecting area" Step 2
- Press (Bar) or (PWRE > [18]) "Yes", to end FM radio.

#### **Adjusting volume**

• The volume can be adjusted within 16 levels, LEVEL 0 (mute) to LEVEL 15.

## Press 🔇 on FM radio screen.

 Alternatively, hold down [] or [] for more than one second to adjust the volume, when Side key is set to "List & Volume". →P312 Before using FM radic

## Tuning FM radio

#### Press 😔 on FM radio screen.

- You can tune the radio by 0.1 MHz.
- Alternatively, press or or of to tune FM radio, when Side key is set to "Tuning". →P312

#### Automatic tuning

## 1 Hold down 😔 for over a second on FM radio screen.

The terminal receives the radio wave from a radio station of the nearest available frequency automatically.

- Press 🖻 [Stop] to stop tuning.
- Press (Bar), to stop tuning and return to the previous radio station.
- When there is no radio wave receivable, tuning finishes after a round of search.
- Alternatively, hold down ⊡ or ⊡ for over a second to tune FM radio, when Side key is set to "Tuning". →P312

#### Tuning by entering frequency

- ① Press : [Function] ► [: "Direct tuning", on FM radio screen.
- Enter the frequency and press •.

#### Selecting from Radio station list

 Radio stations registered in the list differ depending on the selected area. →P373

## Press 🖻 [List] on FM radio screen.

#### Radio station list ■ 85.1 fm osaka ■ 80.2 FM802 ■ 76.5 FMC0C0L0

- 89.9 Kiss-FM KOBE
- 国 89.4 α-STATION 国 80.7 FM徳島
- 88.1 NHK-FM

#### TV Sound OK 🗘 Edit

#### Radio station list screen (When selecting Osaka)

 Alternatively, press 
 • or 
 • to select the next and the previous station, when Side key is set to "List & Volume", →P312

#### Single touch tuning

#### 1 Press a key on FM radio screen.

Turns in radio stations assigned to dial keys.

- Select a radio station and press ().
  - Press 🖻 to switch TV sound and FM radio.

## **Editing Radio station list**

- Radio station list for TV channels cannot be edited.
- You can enter the frequency between 76.0 and 108.0 MHz.

#### Editing Radio station list by area

Select a radio station on Radio station list screen, and press i [Edit].

## 2 Enter the frequency and press •.

• Press 🖻 [Reset] to recover the default list.

#### **Editing Favorite list**

- Up to 9 radio stations can be registered as 1 list.
- To edit favorite list, select "Favorite 1" or "Favorite 2" from Area list in advance. →P311
- Select a "None stored" on Radio station list screen, and press i [Edit].

#### Deleting a radio station

- ① Select a radio station and press ☺ [Delete].
- Press ( \* "Yes".
   Press ( \* """) "No" to cancel.

## Press 2 "Direct input".

#### Copying from Radio station list by area

- 1 Press II "Copy area".
- ② Select an area and press ▶ select a prefecture and press ●.
  - All radio stations on the list are replaced by the stations of the copied area, by executing Copy area.
- 3 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press <sup>→</sup><sup>ABC</sup> "No" to reselect the area.
  - To edit the copied contents, press
     i [Edit] ► 2\*5 "Direct input", and proceed to Step 3.
- **3** Enter the frequency and press  $\odot$ .
- **4** Enter the name of the radio station and press **•**.
  - Up to 7 two-byte (Full Mark)/14 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

## **Recording FM radio**

## The sound of FM radio can be recorded and saved in Data box or miniSD memory card.

- A miniSD memory card is not included in the basic package of FOMA terminal. →P287
- A miniSD memory card is available for purchase at electric appliance stores.
- FM radio is recorded in monaural.
- Sound quality may change when recorded FM radio sound is played.
- When the terminal receives voice calls/ videophone calls or rings Alarm while recording and the set time for Off timer has elapsed, recording is stopped and the data up to the point is saved.
- Multitask is not available while recording.
- The saved data is not affected by the volume adjustment while recording.
- If the available memory is less than approximately 100 KB or the data is to reach the maximum number when the saving destination is set to miniSD memory card, the saving destination is changed to Data box.
- If the available memory is less than approximately 100 KB or the data is to reach the maximum number when the saving destination is set to Data box, recording is not available.

## **Recording duration or saving format**

#### Recording duration

FOMA terminal : Approx. 85 min. for each file miniSD memory card : Approx. 120 min. for each file

- Check the battery level before recording a file with long duration. Charging battery is recommended while recording.
- Recordable duration may differ depending on the data space of the saving destination.

## Saving destination

- Recorded data is saved in "Data box" → "i-motion" → "Radio", or "miniSD" → "i-motion" folder.
- Data is to be saved in Data box by default. Saving destination can be changed.

## Saving format

File format	: MP4
Encoding method	: AMR
Extension	: .3gp

- Recorded date, time, and frequency are automatically given in the file name/title.
   <Example> When recording FM radio in xxx MHz on 10:30, Sep. 20, 2006, the file name is named as "06-09-20\_10-30\_xxxx".
- File name/title can be changed after saving.
   →P295

## Press 💿 on FM radio screen.



FM radio recording screen

## 1 Recording duration

Displays "Elapsed time/Total recordable duration", with bars.

## ② Saving destination

- 🔳 : Saves in Data box.
- 5 : Saves in miniSD memory card.

## ③ Status

## Press 💽.

Recording ends and the data is automatically saved.

• When exceeding the recordable duration, recording ends and the recorded data is saved automatically.

#### <Set saving destination>

# Setting saving destination of recorded data

- Press ⓐ [Function] ► 🖅 "Saving destination", on FM radio screen.
- 2 Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Data box" or *P*<sup>\*</sup> "miniSD".

## Setting for FM radio

The setting remains after ending FM radio.

#### <Select area>

## Selecting area

- Press ⓐ [Function] ► व " Area", on FM radio screen.
- 2 Select an area and press > select a prefecture and press ●.
  - You can register optional radio stations as "Favorite1" and "Favorite2" on the list.  ${\rightarrow} P310$

#### <Sound output>

#### Setting Sound output

The output from the speaker is monaural regardless of the setting.
 Press I [Function] ► IT Sound output", on FM radio screen.
 Set Output destination.

### Setting Stereo/Mono

#### 1 Press I T Stereo/Mono".

② Press I \* Stereo (auto)" or Z<sup>A</sup><sup>m</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "Mono".

#### Setting Output destination

- 1 Press 2m "Output destination".
- ② Press *I*<sup>\*</sup> "Speaker" or *Z*<sup>\*</sup> "Earphone".
- 🔫 Press 🗉 [Complete].

#### <Setting for Side key>

#### Setting Side key operations

- 2 Press *[* <sup>\*</sup>] "List & Volume" or *≧*<sup>\*</sup> "Tuning".

#### <Setting for Skin>

#### Setting Skin for FM radio screen

You can change the design of FM radio screen (Skin).

#### Press one of Is to as.

Press (i) [Check] to view and confirm the skin.

#### <Off timer>

### Ending FM radio automatically

After a preset time has elapsed, FM radio ends.

Press i [Function] ▶ 7 " "Off Timer", on FM radio screen.

## **2** Press one of I at to H.

• Press 5 " "OFF" to release Off timer.

# Other convenient functions

Multiaccess
Multitask
Turning the power ON/OFF automatically< Auto power ON/OFF> 316
Notifying with Alarm at specified time
Displaying calendar
Registering schedule
Registering ToDo
Registering frequently used functions <shortcut menu=""> 326</shortcut>
Registering your name, E-mail address, etc
Recording the other party's voice during a call <voicememo-call> 327</voicememo-call>
Checking Call duration/cost
Setting Call duration display
Set and notify Maximum call cost
Using Calculator
Entering Text memo
Making a call automatically with earphone connected
<earphone auto="" dial=""> 331</earphone>
Answering calls automatically with earphone connected
<auto call="" receive=""> 331</auto>
Checking current settings of functions <check setting="" status=""> 332</check>
Resetting each setting to default
Deleting all stored data
Using Dictionary
Notifying the current time or received call etc. with voice announcement
<voice notice=""> 335</voice>
Checking direction with Compass

#### Multiaccess

## Multiaccess

## Voice call, packet communication and SMS can be activated at the same time.

- The icons of currently activated functions appears on Task bar.
- Following 3 network transmissions are available simultaneously by Multitask.
  - Voice call : 1 communication
  - Packet communication with : 1 communication i-mode, i- $\alpha$ ppli, i-mode mail of these or PC
  - SMS
- : 1 communication
- Possible combination of functions available →P375

## Receiving i-mode mails or voice calls during communication

#### <Example> Receiving i-mode mail during a call

#### Receive an i-mode mail.



Press , select reactions and press , to confirm the received i-mode mail.

## <Example> Answering voice call during i-mode connection/packet communication

You can answer a voice call even during i-mode connection, without terminating network transmission. Same operation can be made in packet transmission connected to PC.

## Receive a call during i-mode connection/packet communication.

## 🤰 Press 💶 ⊃.

You can answer the call.

- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P315
- Press res > I: "Yes" on the site-browsing screen, to end displaying the site.
- Press pure on the phone-calling screen, to end the call.

## Using other transmission during a transmission

Another transmission can be executed without disconnecting an active communication.

#### <Example> Connecting i-mode during a voice call

### 👖 Press 📼 during a call.

2 Select "New task" and press ● ► ਟ\*ਾ "i-mode".

i-mode menu appears. Select an item and press ().

- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P315
- Press res > I: "Yes" on the site-browsing screen, to end displaying the site.
- Press real on the phone-calling screen, to end the call.

#### <Example> Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

- 🛉 Press 📼 during a call.
- 2 Select "New task" and press ► 🕼 "Mail".
- Rress 🖽 "Compose message".

## Compose and send an i-mode mail.

The screen returns to the phone-calling screen after the i-mode mail has been sent.

#### <Example> Making Voice call during i-mode connection

- 1 Press 📼 during i-mode connection.
- 3 Enter a phone number and press 🖘.

Phonebook/history is available on Phone number input screen as usual. →P54

- · i-mode screen returns after the call is terminated.
- Phone-calling/site-browsing screens can be switched to each other. →P315
- Press res > I: "Yes" on the site-browsing screen, to end displaying the site.
- Press even on the phone-calling screen, to end the call.

#### Information

- Each communication used with Multiaccess function is charged separately.
- During a videophone call or 64K data communication, you can answer an incoming call after disconnecting the call/communication, with subscription of Call waiting service. SMS can also be received. In this case, not Ring tone but an icon or Reception status screen notifies the incoming SMS.
- During 64K data communication, SMS can also be sent.

Multiaccess

#### Multitask

## Multitask

# Multitask allows you to activate several functions at the same time and to operate the functions by switching the screen.

- Possible combinations of functions available →P376
- The icons of currently activated functions appears on Task bar.
- Up to 2 functions can be executed at the same time. However, a call can be received or Alarm can be activated without terminating the 2 functions that are currently activated.
- Only viewing profile/Positioning by GPS can be operated during a videophone call.

#### **Executing another function**

You can execute another function during a call, communication or operation.

• Some functions may be restricted or unavailable to execute at the same time.

#### <Example> Checking Phonebook during a call

#### Press a during a call.



- 2 Select "New task" and press •.
- 3 Press 5 ☆ "Private" ► 1 \* "Phonebook".

Search phonebook screen appears.

#### Select a Phonebook entry and press .

- Searching Phonebook →P103
- Phonebook detail screen and the phonecalling screen can be switched.
- Press even on Phonebook screen to end Phonebook.
- Press erea on the phone-calling screen, to end a call.

#### Information

- Functions available with Multitask may be restricted depending on the activated function or Lock settings. Operations with Multitask is not available during Infrared communication or Software update.
- When switched to another function, some functions may cause delay in action.
- When images/i-motion are registered in Profile, Phonebook, etc., appears during phone/ videophone calls.

## Switching functions to operate

- Press while a function is activated. Currently activated functions can be confirmed in the list on Task menu.
- 2 Select a function and press •.

#### Functions displayed on Task menu

• The name of the function on Task menu may differ from that on Menu.

Function	Corresponding function/screen
Dial input	Dialing Voice call/Videophone call etc. by entering a phone number
Mail	Viewing Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages, or Compose message of Mail/SMS
i-mode	i-Menu, Bookmark, Go to location, Screen memo, etc.
i-αppli	i- <b>a</b> ppli
Data box	Viewing Data box
Private	Phonebook, Calendar, Redial, Received calls, etc.
Life tools	Camera, Alarm, Music Player, GPS, etc.
FM radio	Activating/ending FM radio
Channel list	Viewing Channel list
Manner mode	Setting/releasing Manner mode
Direct Call	Viewing Direct call
Profile	Viewing Profile
Switch	Switching a function to another
Notices	Displaying list of Notices such as Alarm

#### Information

 You cannot confirm Notices when more than 2 functions are activated.

#### Ending all of the activated functions

- Functions that are not task switchable, such as Voice call/Alarm (Snooze)/sending or receiving SMS/USB connection, cannot be ended by selecting "End all".
- "End all" is unavailable to be selected during a videophone call.
- 👖 Press 📼 while a function is activated.
- 2 Select "End all" and press •.
- <sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Auto power ON/OFF

## Turning the power ON/OFF automatically

Default	Auto power ON : OFF
	Auto power OFF: OFF

#### You can set the power of FOMA terminal to turn on/off automatically at a specified time.

- A same hour cannot be set for "Auto power ON" and "Auto power OFF".
- Press (•) >



Press I'' "Auto power ON" or I'' "Auto power OFF".

#### 🔁 Press 7 🕄 "ON".

• Press 2mm "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

#### Enter the time to set and press (•).

#### Information

- If both Alarm start setting (→P319) and Alarm are set to "ON", the power is automatically turned on at the set time regardless of Auto power "ON" setting.
- If Enter PIN1 code setting is "ON", Enter PIN1 code screen appears right after the power is turned on by Auto power ON. Enter PIN1 code, and Stand-by display appears.
- IF you set Auto power OFF/Alarm/Schedule alarm to the same time, FOMA terminal is turned off after executing the preset Alarm, Schedule alarm, etc. If Snooze mode is set for Alarm, the power is turned off after releasing Snooze.
- If the preset time for Auto power OFF comes during a call/sending or receiving a mail/i-mode connection, the power is to be OFF after ending the transmission and returning to Stand-by display.
- The power is not to be tuned off until the activated functions are ended, if preset time of Auto power OFF comes except during Stand-by.
- Release Auto power ON setting as well as turning off the power, at the place where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, airplanes, etc.

#### Alarm

## Notifying with Alarm at specified time

Default All: OFF

#### FOMA terminal notifies a specified time by tones or vibration. You can set Repeat or set options for Notification.

• Up to 8 entries can be registered.

#### Setting Alarm



#### Press one of $I \stackrel{\text{\tiny{end}}}{=} to B^{\text{\tiny{end}}}$ .

Select an Alarm item.

Is displayed on the Alarm set to "ON".

#### Press I 😨 "ON".

Alarm
腔アラーム
0:00
∼≧No repeat
**アラーム音
€OFF
⊂nonniLevel 3
■アラーム画像
8∰80FF
∎©0FF
Edit 🗘 Store

• Press 24 "OFF" to release. No further operation is needed.

## A Set each item.

#### Setting Alarm name

① Select № and press ●.

#### 2 Enter an Alarm name and press ().

 Up to 6 two-byte (Full Mark)/12 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Alarm time

- (1) Select ( ) and press ( ).
- 2 Enter time and press •.

#### Setting Repeat

- (1) Select  $\overline{\mathbb{A}}$  and press (•).
- 2 Press one of I' to Emp.

Daily	Notifies every day.
Monday- Friday	Notifies on Monday-Friday.
Monday- Saturday	Notifies on Monday-Saturday.
Non- holiday	Notifies on days not set as holiday on the Calendar.
Day of week	<ul> <li>Notifies on specified day of the week.</li> <li>① Select a day of the week and press •.</li> <li>• Press • to release.</li> <li>② Press • [Complete].</li> </ul>
No repeat	Notifies only once.

Auto power ON/OFF

#### Setting Alarm sound

## Select and press . Select an item and press .

	. 0
i-motion	Notifies by Movie/i-motion. ① Select data from a folder and press ④.
Melody	Notifies by Sound or Melody. ① Select data from a folder and press •.
Announce & i-motion	<ul> <li>Notifies by Movie/i-motion after a voice announcement for the time.</li> <li>① Select data from a folder and press •.</li> </ul>
Announce & Melody	<ul> <li>Notifies by Sound/Melody after a voice announcement for the time.</li> <li>① Select data from a folder and press ①.</li> </ul>
OFF	Does not sound Alarm.

 " (\*) Data title" is displayed with Announce setting.

#### Setting FM radio as Alarm sound

#### Select <sup>●</sup> and press ●.

2 Press (3) "FM radio" or (5) "Announce & FM radio".

	Notifies with FM radio after a fixed Alarm sound.
Announce	Notifies with FM radio after a voice
	announcement for the time and a
	fixed Alarm sound.

The confirmation screen appears.

#### ③ After tuning, press ●.

- You can tune by 0.1 MHz by 😔, or hold down 😔 for over a second to tune automatically.
- Press (i) [Direct] to directly input the frequency.
- Press 
   [List] to select from Radio station list.
- Press () to adjust the volume. The volume of Alarm sound is based on () (Alarm volume) setting.
- When Snooze mode is set, a confirmation screen appears.
- " 🔁 & Frequency" is displayed with Announce setting.

#### Setting Snooze mode

• Snooze is unavailable when FM radio is set as Alarm sound.

(1) Select B and press  $\bigcirc$ .

#### 2 Press one of I to I .

Notifies by repeating a fixed Alarm
tone.
(1) Enter Snooze time and press $(\bullet)$ .
<ul> <li>Interval can be set between 1-</li> </ul>
15 minutes.
Notifies by each Alarm tone set for
1st to 6th times.
① Select Snooze sound and press ④.
2 Press 🖅 "i-motion" or ZARC
"Melody".
• Press 🖅 "OFF" not to set
Snooze sound.
③ Select data from a folder and
press 💽.
<ul> <li>Repeat the procedure 1 to 3</li> </ul>
to set each Snooze sound.
Press (i) [Define].
(5) Enter Snooze time and press (•).
Interval can be set between 1-
15 minutes.
Does not notify by Snooze.

#### Adjusting Alarm volume

#### (1) Select $(\mathfrak{M})$ and press $(\bullet)$ .

Press () to set Volume and press ().
 Press () [STEP ↓] to step down the volume, or press () [STEP ↑] to step up the volume.

#### Setting Alarm notice image

## ① Select **I** and press **●**.

2 Press one of I to It.

My picture	<ul> <li>Displays a still image.</li> <li>① Select data from a folder and press ●.</li> <li>Setting images →P125</li> </ul>
i-motion	<ul> <li>Displays a movie/i-motion.</li> <li>① Select data from a folder and press ①.</li> <li>Video only movie/i-motion can be set.</li> </ul>
OFF	Sets no Alarm notice image.

#### Setting Vibrator

### (1) Select I and press $\bigcirc$ .

- (2) Press one of  $I_{\ast}$  to  $I_{\ast}$ .
  - Vibrator acts linking to a preset melody by setting I and "Melody link".
  - Press 🖅 "OFF" not to set.
- (3) Press one of  $\boxed{1 + \frac{1}{8}}$  to  $\boxed{3 + \frac{1}{8}}$ .

Alarm

#### Setting priority of Alarm/Manner mode

#### 

- **ON** Notifies according to the Alarm setting, even under Manner mode.
- **OFF** Notified according to Manner mode setting, under Manner mode.

### 5 Press i [Store].

Appears on Stand-by display.

#### Information

- Some types of i-motion cannot be set as Alarm sound or Alarm notice image.
- Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/21 one-byte (Half Mark) characters are displayed as the title on Alarm setting list screen, when setting an image, i-motion, etc. with a long file name.
- If you set i-motion including video and sound as Alarm tone, a message appears to confirm that Alarm notice image is changed to the i-motion set as Alarm tone. If either Alarm tone or Alarm notice image is changed, a message is displayed to confirm that the other setting is changed back to the default.

#### **Returning all Alarm settings to default**



#### 强 Press 1 🕄 "Reset".

- When pressing Z<sup>ABC</sup> "Reset all", enter the terminal security code and press •.
- 📶 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### When the specified time comes

- Alarm starts to sound at the specified time according to the setting.
- Press any key to stop Alarm sound. However, if FM radio plays, Alarm does not stop by pressing S.
- Without any operation, Alarm stops approximately 1 minutes later. When FM radio is set as Alarm tone, FM radio ends approximately 1 hour later. In this case, a notify icon appears on Stand-by display.
- Press () to adjust the volume while playing FM radio.
- Under Snooze mode setting, Alarm sounds repeatedly at preset intervals. Hold down (a) (1) when FOMA terminal is folded) for over a second to release Snooze mode. Snooze mode is released after repeating 6 times.
- If a function, such as call, is activated at the set time, Alarm acts as follows.
  - During a call, or receiving/sending a mail Alarm starts after ending the call or receiving/ sending the mail.

- When the power is off

Alarm does not start when alarm start setting is "OFF". The notify icon appears on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.

 While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, activating FM radio, playing Music Player, playing VoiceMemo-Call/Record message, recording Answer message, or editing texts such as Text memo

Alarm starts ringing. Under Snooze mode, display returns to each operation after releasing Snooze.

- While GPS positioning Alarm starts ringing after the positioning finishes.
- Under PIM lock (Alarm), Lock all or Software update

Alarm is not activated. The notify icon appears after the lock is released or Software is updated.

#### **Priority within Alarms**

If Alarm, Schedule alarm, or other alarms are set to the same time, priorities of Alarms are as follows. ① Periodic notify

Notifies all in registered order of 1 to 2. ② Alarm

(until releasing Snooze mode, if Snooze is set) Rings all in registered order of  $\fbox{1}$  to  $\fbox{8}.$ 

- ③ ToDo alarm Rings only 1 Alarm with the earliest expiration date.
- ④ Schedule alarm

Rings only 1 Alarm with the earliest start date.

- If the time to activate Periodic notify comes while Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm is ringing, periodic notify is started with each alarm released.
- If ToDo alarm is set to the same expiration date and time, the last saved ToDo alarm rings.
- If more than 2 Schedule alarms are set at the same Start date and time, the Alarm with the earliest ending date rings, and if the ending dates are also the same, the last saved Schedule alarm rings.

#### Information

Alarm stops if a voice call/E-mail is received while Alarm is ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon appears to indicate the reception of E-mail.

Alarm

## Setting to activate Alarm with the power turned off

Default OFF

- 2 Press i [Function] ► I = "Alarm start: OFF".
  - "Alarm start: ON" is displayed when setting Alarm to ring with the power turned off.

#### 强 Press 🕼 "Yes".

• Press *Press* "No" not to set Alarm to ring with the power turned off.

#### Information

- When Enter PIN1 code is "ON", the power is turned on at the set time for Alarm, and then Enter PIN1 code screen appears after releasing Alarm (releasing Snooze). After entering PIN1 code, Stand-by display appears.
- When setting Alarm to ring with the power turned off, each Alarm rings in the default setting, if Enter PIN1 code is set to "ON" and data downloaded through i-mode (including mail attachments) are set as Alarm tone or Alarm notice image. In addition, even when data under UIM (FOMA card) operation restrictions are set as Alarm tone or Alarm notice image, each Alarm in the default setting rings regardless of Enter PIN1 code setting.
- Turn the power of your mobile phone off and set the Alarm start setting "OFF" at places where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in a hospital, airplane, etc.

#### Calendar

## **Displaying calendar**

You can confirm Schedule on Monthly or Daily screen. You can also set holidays and use it as your original calendar.





Monthly calendar is displayed.

• A confirmation screen is displayed with Transparent display ON.



Monthly calendar screen

#### Registering a new entry

- ① Press **i** [Function] ► *I* :: "Store new entry".
- 2 Press one of 1 to 5 to 5 to .

Schedule	Stores an entry of Schedule. • Following procedure: →P321 "Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5
ТоDо	Stores an entry of ToDo. • Following procedure: →P323 "Registering ToDo" Step 3 to 5
My picture	Selects and store a still image. ① Select data from the folder and press ④.
i-motion	Selects and store a movie/i-motion. ① Select data from the folder and press ④.
Melody	Selects and store a melody. ① Select data from the folder and press ④.

- New entries can be registered also from Daily schedule screen with the same operation.
- Up to 300 items in total, of still images/ movies/i-motion/melodies, can be registered in Calendar. The same data cannot be registered for another day.
- i-motion with Frame/Stamp/Play period, preinstalled data, etc. cannot be registered to Calendar.
- Entries can be registered from January 1st, 2005 to December 31st, 2020. Days with registered entries are underlined in Monthly calendar.

#### Moving date

Press i [Function] ► Ψ<sup>est</sup> "Move date".
 Enter date and press ●.

 Alternatively, press i [Function] > 7<sup>\*\*</sup> "Move date", on Daily schedule screen to move date.

#### Setting holidays

#### Press i [Function] ► 5<sup>∞</sup> "Holiday setting".

#### 2 Press one of I to I .

One day	Sets only the selected day as a
only	holiday.
Weekly	Sets the same day of the week as
	Sets the same day of the week as the selected day as holidays.
Duration	Sets the specified period as holidays.
setting	① Enter the Start date and press
	● ▶ enter the End date and
	press ).

- Alternatively, press (i) [Function] (c) (c) (c)
   "Holiday setting", to set the present day as Holiday on Daily schedule screen.
- Holidays can be set from January 1st, 2005 to December 31st, 2020.

Calenda

#### Releasing holidays

Press (i [Function] ► *E*<sup>mon</sup><sub>a</sub> "Holiday release".
 Press one of *I*<sup>\*</sup><sub>S</sub> to *I*<sup>o</sup><sub>2</sub>.

One day only	Releases a holiday only on the selected day.
Weekly	Releases a holiday on the same day of the week as the selected day.
Duration setting	<ul> <li>Releases holidays in the specified period.</li> <li>① Enter the Start date and press ● </li> <li>enter the End date and press ●.</li> </ul>
Reset	Returns all holiday settings back to default. ① Enter the terminal security code and press ● ► ( ) "Yes".

#### Displaying an image on background

- Press i [Function] ▶ 7<sup>∞</sup> "Transparent disp."
   Press 7<sup>∞</sup> "ON".
  - Press 2<sup>-#</sup> "OFF" not to set Transparent display.
- ③ Select "Calendar stored img" or "Camera shot image" and press ●.

Calendar stored img	Displays the stored image as the background image on selected day.
Camera shot image	Displays the image (Still image/the first frame of movie) shot with Camera as the background image on the selected day. When several images have been shot with Camera, an image shot on the latest date is displayed.

- Both "Calendar stored img" and "Camera shot image" can be set to "ON". In this case, Calendar stored image is displayed preferentially to Camera shot image.
- 4 Press i [Complete].

#### Displaying stored data

You can set the display of stored data, displayed on the lower field of Monthly calendar screen.

① Press i [Function] ► ⓒ ► I S "Disp. stored data".

#### 2 Press $I_{\mathfrak{s}}$ "Icons" or $\mathbb{P}_{\mathfrak{s}}$ "List".

- An icon or a list of the registered data is displayed as the preview at the lower field on Monthly schedule screen of Calendar.
- Icons
   Stored data on the selected day are indicated with icons. Priority for displaying is as follows.

   ① Birthday data registered in Profile ( \*)

   ② Birthday data registered in Phonebook (\*)

   ③ ToDo (in order of earlier expiration date)

   ④ Schedule (in order of earlier starting date)

   ④ Data such as images (in order of newer registration)

   List
   Stored data on the selected day are indicated with icons and in a list. Two items with the highest priority are displayed.

#### Setting/releasing National holidays

- National holidays data is required to be downloaded in advance. National holidays →P293
- Press i [Function] > > 2<sup>m</sup>/<sub>1</sub> "Set/Rel nat. hol".
- Select National holidays data and press .
   Press to release.
- ③ Press 间 [Exec.] ▶ 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press Press "No" to cancel.

## 2 Select a day and press •.

The list of stored data is displayed.



Daily schedule screen

- The days before/after the displayed day can be viewed with 🚱.
- Select the Birthday data from Profile and press (•) to display congratulation.
- Select the Birthday data from Phonebook and press 

   to display Phonebook detail screen. The function of Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To is available.

#### Attaching to E-mail

Attach registered still images/movies/i-motion/ melodies to the E-mail to send.

① Select data and press (Function] ► (비행 "Mail attachment". Compose message screen with attached

Compose message screen with attached data is displayed.

- Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 2 to 6
- Attaching files →P214

#### Deleting/releasing registered schedule or data

#### 

- 2 Press /\* "Yes".
  - Press <sup>→BC</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- Calendar can display dates from November 1st, 1582 to December 31st, 9999.
- National holidays in 2006 and 2007 are previously set. Register national holidays in 2008 or later in National holidays setting.
- National holidays are based on "The Article regarding National holidays or the amendments of old-age persons welfare law (Article 59 of the law, 2001)". The date of the Spring/Autumn Equinox Day may differ each year since the announcement is made in Gazette on 1st February one year before the year (as of May, 2006).
- If Birthday data is stored/edited in Profile or Phonebook, Birthday data in Calendar is automatically stored/edited.

Calenda

3 Press •.

 If downloaded icons are set for Schedule or ToDo,
 P No category" is displayed on the screen under PIM lock (Multimedia) and under UIM (FOMA card) operation restriction.

## **Registering schedule**

Schedules can be stored in Calendar. By setting Schedule alarm, schedules are notified with Alarm tones or images at specified time and date.

- Up to 100 entries can be registered.
- Several schedules can be registered on the same day.
- Press ► Contract ► Contract
- 2 Select a day and press i [Function] ►

   Image: Triangle of the second secon
- 3 Enter contents and press O.



- Schedule without any content cannot be registered.
- Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

## Set each item.

#### Setting Start date

- (1) Select  $\square$  and press ( $\bullet$ ).
- (2) Enter time and date to start and press ullet.
  - Press 
     [All day] to set Start/End time and date to all day.
  - Start/End time and date is displayed as "All day", if 0:00 is set as Start time and date and 0:00 of the next day as End time and date.

#### Setting End date

- **①** Select < ☐ and press ●.
- ② Enter time and date to end and press •.

#### Setting Repeat

- 1 Select  $\mathbb{Z}$  and press  $\odot$ .
- Select the cycle to repeat by and press .
  - Select "None" not to set Repeat, and go to Step 6.
- ③ Enter the period to repeat and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- ④ Press I \* "Fixed" or 2<sup>∞</sup> "None".
  - Press (21%) "None" not to set Repeat exception. Display returns back to Schedule registration screen.

- ⑤ Select Repeat exception of the week and press ●.
  - Press (•) to release.
  - Press 

     [Rel All] to release all Repeat exceptions.
  - d is displayed in Repeat item after setting Repeat exception.
- 6 Press i [Complete].

#### Setting Category

- **(1)** Select  $\blacksquare$  and press **()**.
- ② Select Category icon and press ●.
  - The set icons are displayed on Calendar.
     Category icons can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>", other than preinstalled icons by default. →P183

#### Entering contents

- Select 🕒 and press •.
- (2) Enter the contents and press  $\odot$ .

#### Setting place

#### (2) Enter the place and press $\bigcirc$ .

• Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Adding location information

#### (1) Select $\geq$ and press ( $\bullet$ ).

 Following procedure: →P266 "Adding location information" Step 3

#### Setting Alarm

- - Alarm" Step 3 to 4
  - Alarm date cannot be set on a time and date after Start date.
- 2 Press (i [Define].

#### Setting URL

- (1) Select  $\blacksquare$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- Enter the URL and press •.
  - Up to 256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Summary

#### 

 2 Enter Summary and press .
 • Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Secret

Secret can be set only under Secret mode. →P148

#### (1) Select $\mathcal{P}$ and press (ullet).

- 2 Press / 📲 "ON".
  - Press <sup>2 ABC</sup>/<sub>用</sub> "OFF" to release.

Registering schedule

## 5 Press i [Store].

- A appears on Stand-by display when Schedule alarm is set on a time and date in the future.
- A confirmation message appears when Schedule starting time and date has been set in the backward of the current time and date.

## Information

- If Start date is going to be changed after setting Repeat, a message is displayed to confirm that Repeat is released.
- Contents registered in Schedule may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changing of mobile phone model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to save the data in miniSD memory card (→P287) or to keep as separate memo, for the safety. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. You can backup the data in your PC, using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378

## Storing Schedule from another function

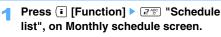
You can register a new entry from i-appli compatible with Schedule function. Following schedule items can be registered from i-appli.

- Start date Repeat setting
- Contents\* Alarm setting
- \* When characters of newly entered "Contents" of i-αppli exceed 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark), only top 100 or 200 letters are registered.
- i-αppli compatible with schedule function need to be previously downloaded. →P241
- When registering a new entry, i-αppli is suspended and Schedule function on FOMA terminal appears.

## **Confirming/editing schedule**

Registered schedule details can be confirmed from Schedule list or Daily schedule screen. You can also edit or delete Schedules.

#### Confirming from schedule list





## Schedule list screen

All registered schedules are displayed in order of older date.

- Start date, Category icon, and Summary (Contents when summary is not entered), or
   when location information is acquired, are displayed.
- Font color of Schedule is changed after the End time and date has passed.

## Storing a new schedule

- ① Press : [Function] ► *L*: "Store new entry".
  - Following procedure: →P321 "Registering schedule" Step 3 to 5

## Using Location information

- 1 Select a schedule and press (i)
  - [Function] ▶ 27 "Location info".
     Following procedure: →P267 "Using added location information" Step 3

## Using URL

- ① Select a schedule and press [Function] ▶ ਭ<sup>∞</sup> "URL".

Connect to site	Connects to sites. (1) Select a URL and press (•) (i) [Connect]. • Press (iii) [Cancel] to cancel.
Store bookmark	<ul> <li>Registers the site to Bookmark.</li> <li>③ Select a URL and press ④.</li> <li>Following procedure: →P188 "Registering in Bookmark" Step 2 to 3</li> </ul>

- Confirming the number of registered Schedule
  - ① Press i [Function] ► 7 ﷺ "Memory status".

## **2** Select a schedule and press **()**.

Schedule
□10:30 9/20/2006
☐12:00 9/20/2006 Impplead
e Meal
Edit •• Function

#### Schedule detail screen

- Press 😔 to display previous/next schedule.
- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available when registering phone number etc. in Contents or Summary.

## Editing schedule

## ① Press 🖻 [Edit].

• Following operations: →P321 "Registering schedule" Step 4 to 5

Other convenient functions

Registering schedule

#### Copying an item

- Press i [Function] ▶ I Copy item".
   Select an item and press ●.
  - The data copied with Copy item can be pasted as text on Character input screens of Message or Phonebook etc. The setting cannot be copied with this operation.

#### Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying schedule during a call →P315 ① Select a phone number and press ③
  - [Function] > 5 The send push tone".

#### Confirming from Daily schedule screen

Select a schedule on Daily schedule screen and press (•).

#### Information

● Press (i) [Function] ► 5 \* "Schedule list", to display Schedule list from Daily schedule screen.

#### When Schedule alarm is set

- Alarm starts to ring at a set time.
- Priority within Alarms →P318
- Press any key to stop Alarm sound, and you can confirm the notified Schedule.
- Alarm stops approximately 1 minute later without any operation, and a notify icon appears on Stand-by display.
- If a function, such as call, is activated at the set time, Alarm acts as follows.
  - During a call, or receiving/sending a mail Schedule alarm starts ringing after ending the call or receiving/sending the mail.
  - When the power is off Schedule alarm is not activated. The notify icon appears on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.
  - While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, activating FM radio, playing Music Player, playing VoiceMemo-Call/Record message, recording Answer message, or editing texts such as Text memo

Schedule alarm starts ringing.

- If you stop Alarm while playing Music Player, a notify icon appears on Stand-by display after ending Music Player and returning to Stand-by.
- While GPS positioning

Schedule alarm starts ringing after positioning ends.

- Under PIM lock (Calendar), Lock all or Software update

Schedule alarm is not activated. The notify icon appears after the lock is released or Software is updated.

#### Information

- Schedule alarm stops if a voice call/E-mail is received while Alarm is ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon appears to indicate the reception of E-mail.
- If Schedule alarm rings while 2 functions are activated with Multitask, a Notify icon appears when Stand-by display returns, after you stop the alarm and end both of 2 functions.
- Schedule alarm set as Secret is activated even being out of Secret mode. However, you cannot confirm the contents.

#### **Deleting Schedule**

- Select a schedule on Schedule list screen and press i [Function] ► E<sup>we</sup> "Delete".
- Press 1: "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2m "Delete option".
- Select a schedule and press •.
  - Press 

     to release.
- 3 Press 间 [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

Press *∃*<sup>™</sup> "Delete all".
 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.

- <sub>了</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2<sup>™</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- Press (i) [Function] ▶  $\Psi_{c}^{ex}$  "Delete", to delete Schedule on Schedule detail screen.
- If data with Secret setting is included in the list, select data to delete (Secret/Normal) and press (i [Exec.]

# **Registering ToDo**

You can register your business matters or schedules to do. You can set Expiration time and date to the entry. ToDo alarm can be set to notify a specified time and date by Alarm sound or image.

- Up to 50 entries can be registered.
- You can register several ToDo on the same day.



Press i [Function] ► 1 store new entry" ► 2<sup>4</sup> ToDo".



w

# Enter the content and press •.

ToDo
<b>⊑</b> Holiday
8
■?No category
⊃UNo limit
⊡⊴@eNot set
⊡∰¶≣Needs action

#### Select 🗘 Store

- · Schedule without any content cannot be registered.
- Up to 100 two-byte (Full Mark)/200 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

# 4 Set each item.

#### Entering contents

- 2 Enter the content and press •.

#### Setting Summary

- Select 📑 and press •.
- ② Enter Summary and press ●.
  - Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

#### Setting Category

- Select I and press ●.
- Select Category icon and press •.
  - Category icons can be downloaded from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>", other than preinstalled icons by default. →P183

#### Setting Expiration date

- (1) Select  $\square$  and press (•).
- 2 Enter Expiration time and date and press .
  - If Expiration time and date is not set, the day set in Time and date setting is registered.

#### Setting Alarm

#### (1) Select $\square$ and press $\bigcirc$ .

- Following procedure: →P316 "Setting Alarm" Step 3 to 4
- Alarm time and date cannot be set to later than Expiration time and date.

#### 2 Press (i [Define].

#### Setting Priority

- (1) Select [b] and press ().
- 2 Press one of T: to T:.

A High	Sets high priority to ToDo.
₩ Low	Sets low priority to ToDo.
🐊 Not set	Sets no priority.

#### Setting Status

- 2 Press one of  $I_{\ast}$  to  $I_{\ast}$ .
  - Category can be selected from 8 patterns. The set icons are displayed on Calendar.
  - When pressing T<sup>\*\*</sup> " Completed", enter End date and press •.

#### Entering Completion date

- Completion time and date is not displayed when the status is "Needs action".
- Select Im and press ●.
- ② Enter Completion time and date and press •.

#### Secret Setting

Secret can be set only under Secret mode. →P148

- 2 Press ..... "ON".
  - Press Z<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝔅</sub> "OFF" to release.

# 5 Press i [Store].

• 🚑 appears on Stand-by display when ToDo alarm is set.

#### Information

- ToDo alarm is not activated if End date of ToDo is set or Status is set as "Completed".
- Contents registered in ToDo may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changing of mobile phone model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to save the data in miniSD memory card (→P287) or to keep as separate memo, for the safety. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. You can backup the data in your PC, using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378

# **Confirming/editing ToDo**

Registered ToDo details can be confirmed from ToDo list or Daily schedule screen. ToDo can also be edited or deleted.

#### **Confirming from ToDo list**

Press i [Function] on Monthly calendar screen ► I "ToDo list".



#### ToDo list screen

All ToDo are listed in order of the earlier expiration date.

- Status, Priority, and Summary (Contents if the summary is not entered) are displayed.
- Font color of ToDo without End time and date or ToDo that Status has not been set as "Completed", is changed after the expiration time and date has passed.

Registering ToDc

#### Registering new ToDo

 Press (i) [Function] > [\*]: "Store new entry".
 Following procedure: →P323 "Registering ToDo" Step 3 to 5

#### Confirming the number of registered ToDo

① Press : [Function] ► 5 🛣 "Memory status".

# ● Select a ToDo and press ●.

ToDo
⊡Holiday
⊟Day off
፼ 2No category
⊳NNo limit
,QNo alarm
Ľni⊌Low
⊡∰≣Needs action

# Edit **•**Function

#### ToDo detail screen

- Press 😔 to display the previous/next ToDo.
- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To function is available when registering phone number etc. in Contents or Summary.

#### Editing ToDo

- 1 Press 🖻 [Edit].
  - Following procedure: →P323 "Registering ToDo" Step 4 to 5

#### Copying an item

- Press i [Function] ▶ <sup>[]</sup> "Copy item".
   Select an item and press ●.
  - The data copied with Copy item can be pasted as text on Character input screens of Message or Phonebook etc. The setting cannot be copied with this operation.

#### Sending Push tone during a call

- Displaying ToDo during a call →P315
- ① Select a phone number and press (i)
- [Function] > 🖅 "Send push tone".

#### Confirming from Daily schedule screen

Select one of ToDo on Daily schedule screen and press ●.

#### Information

Press (i) [Function] > E<sup>\*\*\*</sup> "ToDo list", to display ToDo list on Daily schedule screen.

#### When ToDo alarm is set

- ToDo alarm is activated and starts to ring at a specified time.
- Priority within Alarms →P318
- Press any key to stop Alarm sound, and you can confirm the notified ToDo.
- Alarm stops approximately 1 minute later without any operation, and a notify icon appears on Stand-by display.
- If a function, such as call, is activated at the set time, Alarm acts as follows.

- During a call, or receiving/sending a mail ToDo alarm starts after ending the call or receiving/sending the mail.
- When the power is off ToDo alarm is not activated. The notify icon appears on Stand-by display when the power is turned on.
- While shooting still/movie images, connecting to i-mode, starting i-αppli, activating FM radio, playing Music Player, playing VoiceMemo-Call/Record message, recording Answer message, or editing texts such as Text memo

ToDo alarm starts ringing.

- If you stop Alarm while playing Music Player, a notify icon appears on Stand-by display after ending Music Player and returning to Stand-by.
- While GPS positioning

ToDo alarm starts ringing after the positioning finishes.

- Under PIM lock (Calendar), Lock all or Software update

ToDo alarm is not activated. The notify icon appears after the lock is released or Software is updated.

#### Information

- ●ToDo alarm stops if a voice call/E-mail is received while Alarm is ringing. However, by setting Receive preference of E-mail to "Prefer user operation", Alarm keeps ringing and the icon appears to indicate the reception of E-mail.
- If ToDo alarm rings while 2 functions are activated with Multitask, a Notify icon appears when Stand-by display returns, after you stop the alarm and end both of 2 functions.
- ToDo alarm registered as Secret is activated even being out of Secret mode. However, you cannot confirm the contents.

# **Deleting ToDo**

Select one of ToDo on ToDo list screen and press i [Function] ► 4% "Delete".

Press I "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- 1 Press 2<sup>-asc</sup> "Delete option".
- Select one of ToDo and press (•).
   Press (•) to release.
- ③ Press (i) [Exec.]
- Deleting all
  - Press <sup>𝔅</sup><sup>𝔅</sup> "Delete all".
  - Enter the terminal security code and press •.

# <sub>3</sub> Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### Information

- Press i [Function] 4 4 min Delete", to delete ToDo on ToDo detail screen.
- If data with Secret setting is included in the list, select data to delete (Secret/Normal) and press (i [Exec.]

#### Shortcut menu

# Registering frequently used functions

Register frequently used functions as shortcut menu to execute with minimum operations.

#### **Registering Shortcut menu**

Default	1: Alarm 2: Calculator	
	3: Music Player	
	4: Voice recorder	
	5: Deco-mail template	
	6: Word recognizer 7: Voice notice	

Shortcut menu can be registered/changed or sorted.

# Press 💿 🕨 🖻 [Shortcut].



- Press i [EditList].
- Select a number and press ().

#### Sorting Menu icons

- ① Select a function and press i [Move].
- Select the destination to move in and press •.

#### Select a function and press (•).

 Function displayed with 

 [Store] can be registered. Function displayed with 

 [Select] can be registered from lower category.

#### **Executing Shortcut menu**

# From Shortcut menu, select the function and press •.

The selected function starts.

#### Releasing a function from Shortcut menu

From Shortcut menu screen, press i [EditList].

- Select a function and press 
  [Release].
- <sub>3</sub> Press 🖅 "Release".

#### Releasing all items

- ① Press ⊇ﷺ "Release all".
- ② Enter the terminal security code and press (•).
- 3 Press I: "Yes".
  - Press 24 "No" to cancel.

# Resetting customized Shortcut menu

Reset Shortcut menu settings back to default.

- From Shortcut menu, press [Reset].
- Press II "Yes".
  - Press 2 MO" to cancel.

#### Profile

Registering your name, E-mail address, etc.

# You can confirm your phone number of FOMA terminal, and register/edit your name, E-mail address, etc.

- The phone number of FOMA terminal cannot be changed.
- Press ▶ □<sup>▷▷▷</sup>.

The given terminal phone number is displayed as its own number.

- 3 Set "Own #".
  - The following items can be set.
    - 🖹 : My mail address 🜇 : Name
    - 👪 : Reading 🛛 🗈 : Image
  - Operation procedure →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 3 to 5

#### Setting My mail address

- (1) Select  $\blacksquare$  and press ( $\bullet$ ).
- 2 Enter the E-mail address and press ().
  - Up to 50 one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters or marks can be entered.

# 4 Press 📀 ► Set "POC".

- The following items can be set. Up to 2 items can be set for each.
  - 🗷 : Zip code 🛛 🕋 : Address
  - 🔄 : Phone number 🛛 🔄 : Mail address
- Operation procedure →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 3 to 5

Shortcut menu

# Press () > Set "Info".

- · The following items can be set.
  - IR : Homepage information
  - : Location 🚍 : Free memo
- I Blood type
- 🕮 : Birthday 🔆 : Star sign
- 闘: Hobby

 $\geq$ 

• Operation procedure →P95 "Storing entry in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 3 to 5

# Press (i [Store].

#### Using registered items

You can use the registered phone number, E-mail address, and URL.

- Press  $(\bullet) \models \square_{\circ\circ}^{\circ\circ\circ}$ .
- Press (i) [Function] > select an item and press  $(\bullet)$ .

Dial phone call	<ol> <li>Select a phone number and press ●.</li> </ol>
Dial videophone	<ol> <li>Select a phone number and press •.</li> </ol>
Compose message	<ol> <li>Select an E-mail address and press ●.</li> </ol>
Location info	<ul> <li>Following procedure: →P267</li> <li>"Using added location information" Step 3</li> </ul>
URL	<ul> <li>Following operations:</li> <li>→P322 "Using URL"</li> <li>Step ②</li> </ul>
Send push tone	<ul> <li>Displaying Profile during a call →P315</li> <li>③ Select a phone number and press ●.</li> </ul>

#### Information

Alternatively, press • display your profile.

"Private" 🕨 互 🖏 to

Your i-mode mail address cannot be changed when E-mail address in Profile has been changed. E-mail address in Profile is not changed automatically when i-mode mail address has been changed. Changing E-mail address→P205

Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions can be used from the registered phone number etc.

#### VoiceMemo-Call

# Recording the other party's voice during a call

- · Up to approximately 20 seconds for 1 record, and up to 4 entries can be recorded.
- · During a videophone call, only the voice is recorded without video.

- Press (i) [Function] during a call > TRec. VoiceMemoCall".
  - Recording is unavailable if 4 voice memos. have already been recorded.
- Recording the other party's voice during a videophone call

① Press (i) [Function] ▶  $\underline{43}$  "Rec. VoiceMemoCall".

Press (•) or |·].



#### During a voice call

Recording starts. And recording ends approximately 20 seconds later.

Press 

 or I to stop recording halfway.

### **Playing Voice memo**



#### Making a voice call/videophone call

#### 1 Select a Voice memo and press i [Function] > [13] "Dial phone call" or Dial videophone".

· Voice calls can be made with the same operation on Play VoiceMemo-Call screen.

#### 2 Press I 🕄 "Dial".

- Caller ID/Add number settings →P55
- Press <sup>2<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>π</sub> "Cancel" to cancel.

#### Registering to Phonebook

#### 1 Select a Voice memo and press i [Function] > I "New to Phonebook".

- Following procedure: →P95 "Storing entry" in FOMA terminal Phonebook" Step 2 to 6, P99 "Storing entry in UIM (FOMA card) Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- Press 42 "Add to phonebook", select a Phonebook entry and press () to add an entry. Following procedure: →P107 "Editing Phonebook" Step 2 to 4
- · A phone number can be registered to Phonebook with the same operation on Playing screen.

#### Copying a phone number

#### 1 Select a Voice memo and press (i) [Function] > 5 \* "Copy phone number".

 A phone number can be copied to Phonebook with the same operation on Playing screen.

#### Sending i-mode mail

You can compose and send mails when the phone number and E-mail address of the caller of Voice memo have been registered in Phonebook.

- (1) Select a Voice memo and press [Function] ► जिल्ली "Compose message".
  - Select an E-mail address and press (), when several E-mail addresses are registered in Phonebook.
  - Following procedure: →P209 "Composing and sending i-mode mail" Step 4 to 6
  - Mails can be composed with the same operation on Playing screen.

#### Select a Voice memo and press •.

Voice memo is heard from Earpiece.

- Press () to adjust the volume.
- Press 
   to stop playing.

#### **Deleting Voice memo**



- 2 Select a Voice memo and press i
  - [Function] 7<sup>mage</sup>
    "Delete".

### <sub>3</sub> Press 🖅 "Delete".

• When pressing *≧*<sup>n</sup> "Delete all", enter the terminal security code and press ●.

#### 🔼 Press 🖅 "Yes".

Press <a>Press</a> <a>Press</a

#### Duration/Cost

# **Checking Call duration/cost**

# You can check the last and total duration and cost of voice and videophone calls.

- Total calls duration for voice calls and for digital communication (videophone calls + 64K data communication) are displayed separately, and both outgoing and incoming calls are counted.
- Total calls cost is only charged for outgoing calls. If the last call has been made to a toll-free service or Dial directory assistance (104), Last call cost is displayed as "¥¥¥¥, ¥¥¥, ¥¥¥".
- As Call cost is stored in the UIM (FOMA card), the stored Total calls cost (since December, 2004) will be displayed when the UIM (FOMA card) is replaced.
  - \* FOMA terminals released before 901i series cannot display the total cost information stored in UIM (FOMA card). [Data is saved in UIM (FOMA card).]
- Call duration and call cost can be reset.
- Displayed call duration and call cost are estimated values and may differ from the actual call results. Note that displayed call cost does not include the consumption tax.

#### Press () > () Duration/Cost Duration Cost Last call duration Phone call 20min 26sec Digital communication Phone call P

 Press to switch between "Duration" and "Cost".

#### Information

- When the last and the total duration of voice calls or 64K data communication has exceeded 999 hours 59 minutes and 59 seconds, the count of duration is set back to 0 and restarted.
- If the power is turned off, "¥\*\*\*,\*\*\*,\*\*\*" is displayed as Last call cost.
- Duration of ring time of received calls, or time for dialing the other party are not counted.
- Time and cost for i-mode and packet communications are not counted. For the procedure to confirm i-mode cost etc., refer to "i-mode User's Manual" provided when subscribed to the i-mode service.

### **Resetting Total calls duration/cost**

- Press  $\bigcirc$   $\triangleright$   $\swarrow$  settings  $\triangleright$   $4\frac{GH}{22}$   $\triangleright$   $1\frac{GH}{22}$ .
- Select "Duration" or "Cost" and press
   [Reset].
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
  - To reset Total calls cost, enter PIN2 code and press  $\bigodot$  .
- 🖊 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 240 "No" to cancel.

#### **Call duration**

# Setting Call duration display



# You can display Call duration during or after a voice call/videophone call.



- Press I: "ON".
  - Press (2<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>n</sub>) "OFF", not to display.

Duration/Cos

#### Call maximum limit

# Set and notify Maximum call cost

Default OFF

When exceeding the set Maximum call cost, an icon appears on Stand-by display to notify that. Additionally. Total calls cost can be reset every month automatically.

Press  $(\bullet) \models \textcircled{P} \models \textcircled{P} \textcircled{P} \textcircled{P}$ 





Press 1 "ON".

• Press (2<sup>-</sup><sup>∞</sup>) "OFF" to release.

Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

#### A Set each item.

#### Setting Maximum call cost

- 1 Press I'm "Maximum call cost".
- Enter Maximum call cost and press (•).
  - Maximum call cost can be entered between 10 and 100,000 yen.

#### Setting the option for notification

- 1 Press 2 "Notified by".
- 2 Press I : "Icon only" or Press I alarm & icon".

#### Setting Auto reset

- · When Auto reset is set, Total calls cost is reset at 0:00 on every 1st day of the month.
- 1 Press 3 "Auto reset".
- 2 Press 7 " "ON".
  - Press 2mm "OFF" not to reset.
- ③ Enter the PIN2 code and press ④.
- Press i [Save].

#### When exceeding the set Maximum call cost

When the set Maximum call cost has been exceeded, an icon appears on Stand-by display.



· When the notification option is set to "Alarm & icon", a message also appears. Press (•) to erase the message.

# Erasing the icon

- (1) Press (•)  $\blacktriangleright$  **(2**) "Settings"  $\blacktriangleright$   $\mathcal{I}_{z}^{\text{ex}} \blacktriangleright \mathcal{I}_{z}^{\text{ex}}$ .
- 2 Press **3** "Erase call limit icon".
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press (•).

#### Information

- Call limit icon is erased when Reset settings, Delete all data, or changing of Call maximum limit is executed.
- Auto reset setting is "OFF" when UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted or when PUK is blocked completely.
- When you set Auto reset and a call extends across months over the reset point of time, the cost for the call is included in the previous month.
- When turning off the power of FOMA terminal while Auto reset is set, entry of PIN2 code is required to turn the power on.
- Call limit icon is not erased even when setting Auto reset.
- After erasing Call limit icon, notification by an icon etc. is not available even if you make a call when exceeding the preset Maximum call cost.

#### Calculator

# Using Calculator

Four arithmetic operations up to 10 digits are available on FOMA terminal. In addition, you can copy the calculated result and paste the data onto other calculations.



Enter a calculation formula.



Operation key	Operation	
$\mathbf{I}_{\mathrm{Ner}}^{\mathrm{Ner}}$ to $\mathbf{I}_{\mathrm{B}}^{\mathrm{Ner}}$	Enters numbers.	
٢	+ (Addition)	
$\bigcirc$	- (Subtraction)	
$\odot$	$\times$ (*: Multiplication)	
$\odot$	$\div$ ( / : Division)	
<b>2</b> D	C (Deletes entered numbers.)	
	Copies displayed numbers.	
i	Enters decimal point.	
	Pastes copied numbers.*	
$\odot$	= (Calculation result)	
CLR	Deletes the whole calculation process.	
PWR	Terminates Calculator.	

Displayed only when there is data able to be pasted.

#### Information

"E" appears if the calculation result exceeds 10 digits. Press ( to release. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 10 digits, the digits after decimal point that cannot be displayed are cut off.

- "E" is displayed if a number is divided by 0.
- Calculator stops when a call is received or Alarm is activated. And after ending each function, the screen returns to Calculator holding the previous calculation.

- Only pastable data is displayed in Paste data list.
   If you paste the data in the middle of entry of a
- number, the entry is overwritten.

### Text memo

# Entering Text memo

• Up to 50 entries can be registered.



Text memo list screen

Press i [Function] ► I: "Store new entry".

# 3 Enter a Text memo and press •.

• Up to 128 two-byte (Full Mark)/256 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

# Select the category and press •.

Category can be selected from 6 patterns.

# Confirming/editing Text memo



#### Confirming information

- ① Select a Text memo and press [Function] ▶ 5 ☆ "Text memo info".
  - Text memo information can be confirmed with the same operation on Text memo detail screen.

# Select a Text memo and press ().

Text	memo				1/1
tral	toget tick tion th.	e t	gat	e of	the
Edi	t			Fund	tion

Text memo detail screen

• Press 😔 to display the previous/next Text memo.

• Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To functions can be used from the registered phone number etc.

#### Editing Text memo

#### 

 Following procedure: →P330 "Entering Text memo" Step 3 to 4

# Sending Push tone during a call

Displaying Text memo during a call. →P315
 Select a phone number and press i
 [Function] ▶ 4 1 12
 "Send push tone".

#### Information

■ Registered data in Text memo may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs, changing of mobile phone model or other reasons. DoCoMo recommends to save the data in miniSD memory card (→P287) or to keep as separate memo, for the safety. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. You can backup the data in your PC, using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378

### **Deleting Text memo**

- Select a Text memo on Text memo list screen and press i [Function] ► <u>Upelete</u>.
- 🤈 Press 🖅 "Delete".

#### Deleting by option

- ① Press ⊇<sup>™</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "Delete option".
- Select a Text memo and press (•).
  Press (•) to release.
- ③ Press i [Exec.]

#### Deleting all

- 1 Press 🖅 "Delete all".
- ② Enter the terminal security code and press •.
- 🎖 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 🖅 "No" to cancel.

#### Information

● Press (i [Function] > 🖅 "Delete", to delete from Text memo detail screen.

Text memo

# Making a call automatically with earphone connected

# You can make/answer a call by switching on the connected Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional).

- Connecting Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional)  $\rightarrow$  P29
- In the default setting, auto dial destination is set to the party registered at no. 499 in Phonebook. The party to make auto dial call can be changed.
- Earphone auto dial is not available to be executed under Lock all/self mode/PIM lock (Phonebook).
- Closing action setting is invalidated while Flatplug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) is connected.
- **1** Hold down the switch for over a second on Stand-by display. Dialing starts.
- 2 Hold down the switch for over a second when ending the call.

Answering a call with Flat-plug earphone/ microphone with a switch connected

- **1** Hold down the switch for over a second while receiving a call.
- 2 Hold down the switch for over a second when ending the call.

# Information

- You can receive an incoming videophone call, while Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch is connected. When FOMA terminal is folded, the set Substitute image is sent.
- If Call waiting service is subscribed and is activated, you can receive another incoming call during a call, or your can switch the party to talk, by holding down the switch of Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch for over a second.

#### Selecting a party to make a call with Earphone connected

Default Not set (Phonebook number 499)

 Only one entry from FOMA terminal phonebook can be set as Earphone auto dial destination. When several phone numbers are registered in Phonebook, the phone number registered as Normal use is set.

# Releasing Earphone auto dial destination

- ① Select a Phonebook entry and press [Function] ▶ ⓒ ▶ ⓒ ▶ ④ ♥ "Rel earph. AT dial".\_
- 2 Press 1: "Yes".

# Press <sup>2<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.

# Press I " Yes".

appears in Phonebook.

- Press 2 "No" to cancel.
- To change the destination when the Phonebook entry is set as secret, enter the terminal security code and press ().

#### Information

- If Phonebook set as Earphone auto dial destination has been deleted, the setting returns to default. However, even if all phone numbers registered in Phonebook of Earphone auto dial destination have been deleted, the setting does not return to default.
- When changing Phonebook number in Phonebook set as Earphone auto dial destination, the search no. of Earphone auto dial destination is automatically changed to the number.
- If the Phonebook entry set as Earphone auto dial destination is overwritten by another Phonebook data, the setting returns to default.

#### <Earphone auto dial>

### Setting Earphone auto dial



You can set Earphone auto dial to ON, when Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch is connected.



• Press Z

#### Auto receive call

Answering calls automatically with earphone connected

Default	
Default	OFF

Voice calls/videophone calls can be received automatically after the preset duration has passed, with Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional) connected.

- This function is not available in Public mode (Drive mode). Received calls are saved as Missed calls.
- If the received call number is set in Call rejection, this function is not available.
- The same duration cannot be set for Receive message answer time and Auto receive answer time.



- Press 1: "ON".
  - Press Z<sup>\*®</sup>/<sub>p</sub> "OFF" not to set. No further operation is needed.
- **3** Enter Answer time and press **•**.
  - The duration can be set between 0 and 120 seconds.

Earphone auto dia

#### Information

- If a videophone call has been answered with Auto receive call, the image set as Substitute image is sent to the other party.
- If Voice mail and Call forwarding services are set at the same time, priority to activate functions differs according to set ring time.

#### Check setting status

# Checking current settings of functions

 If UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted or cannot be recognized, PIN1 code status is displayed as "\\"", and call cost is displayed as "\\"\\",\\"\\",\\"\".

Press  $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$ 

• Press () to switch items and () to scroll the display.

#### **Reset settings**

# Resetting each setting to default

#### You can reset each function to its default setting.

- Other functions cannot be used while resetting.
- Refer to the Menu list and the following list for functions to be reset to default setting by executing Reset settings.

	Function	Default setting		
i-c	۶ppli			
0	Software info set	Not display		
0,	Software act			
	Stand-by display	No		
F١	/ radio			
F	requency	76.0 MHz		
/	Area	No areas set		
0.	Saving destination	"Data box" → "i-motion" → "Radio memo"		
	Sound output			
	Stereo/Mono	Stereo(auto)		
	Output destination	Speaker		
0	Side key	List & Volume		
	Skin	Digital		
(	Off timer	120 min		
Data box				
\$	Switch display	12-for-1 split		
0	Sort files	Date ord(new→old)		
F	Play settings	•		
	Backlight	Always on		
	Vibrator	ON		
	LED	ON		
	Play mode	Play all		
	Display size	Play in normal		
	Volume	LEVEL3		
Se	ettings	•		
0	Sound/Vibrator			
	Sound			
	Phone incoming	The Space		

Function	Default setting
Videophone incoming	The Space
Payphone incoming	パターン4 <pattern 4=""></pattern>
	パターン4 <pattern 4=""> パターン4 <pattern 4=""></pattern></pattern>
User unset incoming	
Not support incoming	パターン4 <pattern 4=""></pattern>
Receive mail	エレクトリック <electric></electric>
Receive chat mail	ハープ <harp></harp>
Receive messageR	エレクトリック <electric></electric>
Receive messageF	エレクトリック <electric></electric>
Keypad sound	Pi Po Pa
Opening tone	オープントーン1 <opening 1="" tone=""></opening>
Closing tone	クローズトーン1 <closing 1="" tone=""></closing>
OK tone	ON
NG tone	ON
Charging tone	Charging tone 1
On-hold tone	On-hold tone 1
Call-on-hold tone	Call-on-hold tone 1
Position location	OFF
Notify location	モールス <morse></morse>
Periodic notify	
	モールス <morse></morse>
Loc. prov/permit	モールス <morse></morse>
Loc. provide/check	シロフォン <xylophone></xylophone>
LED	Notice LED/Call illumination OFF
	Position location, Notify location Periodic notify Loc. prov/permit Loc. provide/check Pattern: Pattern 1, Color: Color 7 All others Pattern: Melody link, Color: Color 7
Display	
Stand-by display	
Wallpaper Body color "White & Black" Body color "Black & Blue" Body color "Pink & White"	
i-appli stand-by	No setting
Clock/Calendar	Digital clock (S)
One-day schedule	Background: Display
Call/receive display	<b>.</b>
Phone dial	発信(音声) < Dialing (Voice call)>
Phone incoming	着信(音声) <receiving (voice="" call)=""></receiving>
Videophone dial	発信 (テレビ電話) <dialing (videophone)=""></dialing>
Videophone incoming	着信(テレビ電話) <receiving (videophone)=""></receiving>
Payphone incoming	着信(番号表示なし) <receiving (id="" unsent)=""></receiving>
User unset incoming	着信(番号表示なし) <receiving (id="" unsent)=""></receiving>
Not support incoming	着信(番号表示なし) <receiving (id="" unsent)=""></receiving>
Lighting	
Backlight	
Screen/Key light	ON
	011

Function	Default setting
Lighting time	10s
Continuous lighting	
Charger connected	OFF
Videophone	ON
i-mode	OFF
Mail	OFF
i-appli	OFF
Power saver	30 sec
Taste	
Body color "White & Black"	Black
Body color "Black & Blue" Body color "Pink & White"	Black Pink
Call/Transmission	
Quality call	
Quality alarm	High alarm
Reconnect signal	High alarm
Noise reduction	ON
International dial	ON
Auto assist	ON
	Prefix name: WORLD CAL
IDD prefix	Prefix code: 009130010
Videophone	
Videophone image	
Substitute image	カメラオフ(テレビ電話 <camera (videophone)<="" off="" td=""></camera>
Record message image	伝言メモ(テレビ電話) <record (videophone)<="" message="" td=""></record>
On-hold image	応答保留(テレビ電話) <on-hold (videophone)=""></on-hold>
Call-on-hold image	通話中保留 (テレビ電話) <call-on-hold (videophone)&gt;</call-on-hold 
rivate	().
Phonebook	
Font size	Standard
Photo display	Photo display ON
Search	Search kana column
Quick search	Count
Set earph. AT dial	Not set (Phonebook no. 49
Calendar	1406 366 (1 1101180001110, 49
	Sundays and Nationa
Holiday setting	holidays in 2006/200
Transparent disp.	ON
Disp. stored data	Icons
History	I
Photo display	Photo display ON
Transp display	Transp display ON
ife tools	and a subset of
Camera	
Select size	Snap photo: Stand-b Shoot movie: QCIF
Image quality	Normal
Restrict file size	Attach i-mode msg
Shooting mode	Normal

Function	Default setting	
Mic sensitivity	For conference	
Shutter sound	Click	
Start/End tone	Веер	
Auto save	Auto save OFF	
Save to:	Snap photo: "Data box" →	
	"My picture" → "Camera"	
	Shoot movie: "Data box" →	
	"i-motion" → "Camera"	
Reduce flicker	Auto	
Voice recorder		
Mic sensitivity	For conference	
Save to:	"Data box" → "i-motion" → "Camera"	
Music Player		
Repeat play	Repeat play OFF	
Random play	Random play OFF	
Off timer	120 min	
GPS		
Notify/Provide menu		
Location notify menu		
Service clients		
1-touch notify	None	
Positioning mode	Standard mode	
Periodic notification	Invalid	
Location provide menu		
Loc. provide ON/OFF	Loc. provide OFF	
Positioning mode	Standard mode	
Host setting	Initial host	
Position loc. settings		
GPS key	Read a map	
Positioning mode	Standard mode	
i-channel*		
i-channel		
Ticker display	Display	
Ticker speed	Normal	
Network services	Horman	
Voice mail		
Ring message notice	Melody: ブザー <buzzer></buzzer>	
Multinumber	Welduy. 2.9 CDuzzer2	
Set multinumber		
付加番号1 <additional< td=""><td>Prefix name: 付加番号1</td></additional<>	Prefix name: 付加番号1	
number 1>	<additional 1="" number=""></additional>	
	Prefix code: Not set	
	Sound: The Rockabilly	
付加番号2 <additional number 2&gt;</additional 	Prefix name: 付加番号2 <additional 2="" number=""></additional>	
	Prefix code: Not set	
	Sound: The Rockabilly	
Main menu, Mail menu, i-mod	e menu, GPS menu	
Sort icons	-	
Menu icon Body color "White & Black"	<u>井</u> _力川、-Oirola	
Body color "Black & Blue"	サークル <circle> サークル <circle></circle></circle>	
Body color "Pink & White"	パネル <panel></panel>	
Define menu ON		
•	•	

Function	Default setting
Shortcut menu	Alarm Calculator Music Player Voice recorder Deco-mail template Word recognizer Voice notice
Manner mode	OFF
Public mode (Drive mode)	OFF
Side key operation	Valid
Videophone call	
Disp position chg	Main screen: Other side Sub screen: My side
V.phone display	Both sides
Normal view/Large view	Large view
Earpiece volume	LEVEL3
Reduce flicker	Auto

\* Channel list is deleted.



- 🔈 Press 🕼 "Yes".
  - Press <a>Press</a> <a>Press</a
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
- 📶 Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

#### Delete all data

# Deleting all stored data

# Data saved, registered or protected in FOMA terminal can be deleted collectively.

- Data saved or registered in UIM (FOMA card) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.
- Other functions are not available while deleting all data. Receiving calls and mails are not also available.
- Preinstalled i-αppli, Deco-mail picture, or Decomail template are deleted. However, you can download them from the site "どこでもSANYO <Dokodemo SANYO>". →P183
- The data of functions to be reset and the following data are all deleted, and settings return to default.
  - Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages
  - Auto sort of Inbox/Outbox
  - Security settings on folders in Inbox/Outbox/ Unsent messages
  - Chat member
- MessageR/F
   Bookmark
- Screen memo
- Go to location
- Last URL
   i-αppli
- Radio station list
- i-αppli history
- Data in Data box\*1

- Terminal sec. code
- Prefix
- Duration/Cost\*<sup>2</sup>
  Common phrases
  User dictionary

- Received calls

- Record message

- Bar code reader

- Original data\*3

- Service clients

- Dial memo

- Emoticon
- Reservation of Software update
  - Schedule
- ToDo
- Redial

- Phonebook

- Sent/Received addresses history
- Text memo
- VoiceMemo-Call
- Profile
- Character reader
- Playlist
- Extra services
- Location history
- GPS software
   Learned info
- Direct Call
   Notices
- Paste data
- \*1 Preinstalled data other than Deco-mail picture or Deco-mail template are not deleted.
- \*2 Total calls cost is not reset.
- \*<sup>3</sup> Menu icons preset by default are not deleted.
  - $\mathsf{Press} \ \textcircled{\bullet} \ \flat \ \textcircled{\bullet} \$
  - Press 🖅 "Yes".
    - Press ⊇<sup>ABC</sup>/
       "No" to cancel.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
- 🔺 Press 🖅 🕆 Yes".
  - Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup> "No" to cancel.

#### Information

- Data communication settings set with PC cannot be reset.
- When executing Delete all data, Ticker of i-channel disappears. Press (2) to display Channel list and receive the latest information, and Ticker appears again. Ticker for some information site may be displayed without displaying Channel list to receive the latest information.

Delete all data

#### Dictionary

# Using Dictionary

Use FOMA terminal as English word dictionary. In addition to Japanese-English/English-Japanese/Kana-English dictionary, Vocabulary guiz is also available. And English word shot by Camera can be scanned and translated.

#### Using Japanese-English/English-Japanese/Kana-English dictionary

Jpn-Eng : Translates Japanese into English. dictionary (Approx. 10,000 entry words) Eng-Jpn : Translates English into Japanese. (Approx. 20,000 entry words) dictionary Kana-Eng : Translates Katakana reading into English. dictionary (Approx. 20.000 entry words)



Select a dictionary and press (•).

# Enter a word and press $(\bullet)$ .

· The available character type and numbers are as follows.

Jpn-Eng dictionary	Kanji/Hiragana	8 characters
Eng-Jpn dictionary	Alphabet one-byte (Half Mark) capital letter/small letter, one-byte (Half Mark) marks	16 characters
Kana-Eng dictionary	Two-byte (Full Mark) Katakana	8 characters

- When there are more than one choices in translation, select a word with  $\bigotimes$  and press  $\bigcirc$ .
- In Kana-Eng dictionary, press (•) to search the translated word in English-Japanese dictionary.

#### Playing with Vocabulary guiz

You can play with Japanese-English/English-Japanese Vocabulary guiz. Your level and tried number is displayed



# Press 1 Start Jpn-Eng" or 2 "Start Eng-Jpn".

- Press I" "Rules" to view the detailed description of the rule.
- range you cleared.

#### Resetting Vocabulary quiz

# Press <sup>2</sup><sup>A</sup><sup>™</sup> "No" to cancel.

### Select your answer and press $(\bullet)$ .

- · You can select the input mode by pressing the number preceding the character icon.
- · Ten questions are given in one set of guiz. If you answer 10 consecutive questions correctly, you clear the stage and the next level can be selected.
- Press (•) to go to the next question after you answer correctly.
- The quiz ends with a wrong answer or TIME OVER. Press () to return to the first screen of Vocabulary guiz.
- Press 🖅 to switch to 2 choice questions. You can use the key only once in 10 questions.
- Press # to release the time limit. You can use the key only once in 10 questions.
- Press (•) when you have answered 10 consecutive questions correctly.

#### Information

When a call is received etc. while using Dictionary or Vocabulary quiz, the previous screen returns after ending the function. You can restart the guiz stopped in the middle. The given questions are replaced.

# Using Word recognizer

Shoot the word to look in Dictionary with Camera. and the word can be translated.

#### Switch to Close-up mode.

English words" Step 2

Switching to Close-up mode →P169

Notifying the current time or received

call etc. with voice announcement

Current time or contents of Notify icons are

notified with voice announcement while Stand-

Press (•) >

by.

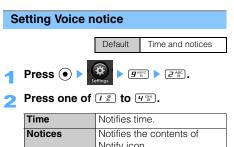
Voice notice



Other convenient functions

# Dictionary

- Voice notice is not available while Side key operation is invalid (when FOMA terminal is folded), or under Lock all.
- · Notifications regarding to locked functions are not voice announced under PIM lock.
- · Voice notice is executed whether FOMA terminal is opened or folded.
- Notify icons →P36
- Press 🖸 (ボイス <Voice>) on Stand-by display.
  - ・ If several notices exist, press 🗟 (ボイス <Voice>) several times to notify each item.



	Notity ICON.
	Notifies time and the
otices	contents of Notify icon.
FF	Voice notice is not given.

#### Information

Ti no O

- Contents of Notify icons are notified with vibration under Manner mode or Ring tone volume OFF.
   Vibrations differ depending on contents to notify.
- Volume in Voice notice follows the volume setting for Phone incoming.

#### Compass

# **Checking direction with Compass**

- Adjust the direction before you use Compass for the first time.
- Open FOMA terminal completely with the operation keys kept horizontally, to use Compass.



#### 🔈 Press 💽.

#### Adjusting direction

- Press i "Adjust". Adjust direction is displayed.
- ② Hold down and shake FOMA terminal in a big action for about 5 seconds, twisting your wrist in a figure-of-eight.
  - Press 
     [Cancel] to cancel.
  - When adjustment failed, press *I* "Yes" and shake FOMA terminal again.

#### Information

- Compass calculates the direction by detecting subtle magnetic fields of the earth. Following conditions may cause the difficulty to display the correct directions.
  - Near buildings, ironware (such as steel-made desks, especially), radios, televisions, high-tension wires, magnetic solid rocks
  - While using straps/watches/rings with magnetic materials, or near/inside trains/buses/cars
  - Under environment with extreme change in temperature
- Adjust direction if leaving FOMA terminal for a long time under following conditions; immediately after activating Compass, when opening/closing FOMA terminal, inserting/removing miniSD memory card, bringing or placing for long periods near radio/television/ironware/

magnetic materials, or placing under environments with extreme change in temperature.

Compass

336

# **Network service**

 In this chapter, each network service is outlined by describing operation procedures using operation menus of FOMA terminal. Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details of each service. For details of Multinumber, refer to "マルチナンバー操作ガイド <Multinumber Operation Guide, provided only in Japanese>".

# Network services available for FOMA terminal

# The following convenient network services are available:

Service	Monthly fee	Application	Page
Voice mail service	Charged	required	P338
Call waiting	Charged	required	P339
Call forwarding service	Free	required	P340
Nuisance call barring service	Free	required	P340
Caller ID notification service	Free	Not required	P51
Caller ID request service	Free	Not required	P341
Public mode (Drive mode)	Free	Not required	P73
Public mode (Power OFF)	Free	Not required	P74
Dual network service	Charged	required	P341
English guidance	Free	Not required	P341
Multinumber	Charged	required	P342
SMS (Short Message)	Free	Not required	P235, 236

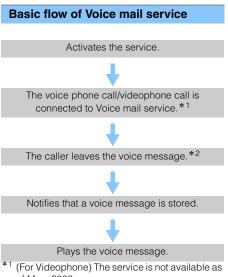
- Contact "DoCoMo Information Center" on the back of this manual for applications and inquiries.
- In this chapter, each network service is outlined by describing operation procedures using operation menus of FOMA terminal. Refer to "Network Services Operation Guide" for details of each service. For details of Multinumber, refer to "マルチナンバー操作ガイド <Multinumber Operation Guide, provided only in Japanese>".
- When new network services are released from DoCoMo, register the service to menu of FOMA terminals and activate services. →P343
- "Deactivate service" does not mean the cancellation of the contract of Voice mail service or Call forwarding service, etc.

#### Voice mail

# Using Voice mail service

When you are out of service area or power off your FOMA terminal and cannot answer an incoming voice/videophone call, the guidance answers to the caller and receives the message.\*

- Up to 20 messages of up to 3 minutes per each can be recorded for both voice phone and videophone.
- Recorded messages are saved up to 72 hours.
- When having incoming voice/videophone calls while activating Voice mail service, Ring tone sounds according to the period of time set in Ring time.<sup>\*</sup> If receiving the call within Ring time, you can answer the call. If not receiving the call within Ring time, the call is forwarded to the Voice mail center automatically. The call is notified on Standby display or Received calls as well. However, if setting Ring time as "0 second", no record is saved in Received calls.
- When activating Voice mail service, you can make or receive voice/videophone calls as usual.
- When Voice mail center receives a Voice message which is recorded by Videophone, the reception is notified with SMS.
- \* (For Videophone) The service is not available as of May, 2006.



of May, 2006. \*<sup>2</sup> The caller in a hurry can skip hearing the response and proceed directly to recording mode by pressing #5.

#### **Using Voice mail service**



### Select an item and press •.

Activate	1 Press 1: "Yes".
service	<ul> <li>To set Ring time subsequently,</li> </ul>
	press 🖅 "Yes" 🕨 enter Ring
	time and press ().
Ring time	Sets the ringing time to connect to
ring time	Voice mail center.
	① Press ፲ 🔋 "Yes" ▶ enter Ring time
	and press ().
Deactivate	1 Press 7: "Yes".
service	
Check	Displays the surrent setting status
	Displays the current setting status.
setting	
Play	Plays the voice message.
messages	1 Press I: "Yes".
Voice mail	Sets Voice mail service following to
setting	the voice guidance.
	1 Press T: "Yes".
Check	Checks whether any new message is
messages	stored in Voice mail center.
Ring	Notifies the stored new message with
message	melodies etc.
notice	• Default setting is "ブザー <buzzer>".</buzzer>
	1 Press 🖅 "Melody".
	<ul> <li>Press</li></ul>
	sounds.
	(2) Select a melody and press $ullet$ ).
Erase icon	Erases "
display	1 Press T: "Yes".
Notify	When FOMA terminal is out of service
missed	area or powered OFF, the missed
call	calls are to be notified with SMS
	when you turn the power ON or move
	into service area.
	1 Press 1: Activate service
	<ul> <li>Press <sup>∠<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>n</sub> "Deactivate service".</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Press <b>I</b><sup>mer</sup> "Check setting" to</li> </ul>
	confirm the setting.
	2 Press 1: "Yes".
	<ul> <li>A confirmation screen appears.</li> </ul>
	Press <i>[</i> ℓ <sup>™</sup> <sup>™</sup> "Yes" or <i>[</i> ℓ <sup>™</sup> <sup>™</sup> "No".
	<u> </u>

#### Information

- New messages recorded after checking once may not be confirmed even you check again.
- Dial "1412" and make a voice call, to change the setting of Voice mail for Videophone. \*
  - \* The service is not available as of May, 2006.

#### Call waiting

# Using Call waiting

# You can catch an incoming call during a call. You can also hold the current call and make a new call.

- To use Call waiting, set Arrival act (→P341) to "Answer". Call waiting is available regardless of the setting status of Set arrival act (→P341).
- When receiving a voice call during a videophone call, or receiving a videophone call during a voice call, the new incoming call is notified but cannot be answered.
- When another call is coming during Multi connecting, beep sound plays and a message appears to notify to hold or finish the call to answer. Press ( [Function] ) [2] "Call rejection", to disconnect a new incoming call.



2 Select an item and press •.

Activate service	1 Press 🕼 "Yes".
Deactivate service	1 Press 🖅 "Yes".
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

# Answering an incoming call with holding a call on the line

Press ≤ or ● when beep sound plays during a call.

The current call is held and you can answer the new call.

#### Switching among calls

#### Press ≤ D.

• Alternatively, press (i) [Function] > []. "Switch", to switch calls.

#### **Disconnecting a call**

#### Disconnecting a call on the line

#### 1 Press PWRE.

The call on the line is disconnected and Ring tone for the holding call plays according to the settings. Press ( ) or ( ) to talk.

#### Disconnecting a call on hold

 Press i [Function] ► Z<sup>mb</sup> "Disconnect holding".

Disconnects the holding line. The call on the line is still active.

# Disconnecting the call on the line and answering the incoming call

Press when beep sound plays during a call.

The call on the line is disconnected and Ring tone for the incoming call plays.

• When i-motion is set as Ring tone or the image set for Receive display, default settings are applied.

🤈 Press 🖘 or 💽.

You can answer the incoming call.

# Holding a call on the line and making a new call

Enter a phone number during a call and press ( > ).

The first call is held automatically.

• You can make a call by selecting a phone number from Phonebook or Redial/Received history.

#### Switching among calls

#### 1 Press 🖘.

Alternatively, press (i [Function] ► []:
 "Switch", to switch calls.

#### Information

- When answering an incoming call, "Multi connecting" is displayed on the screen.
- Press of to hold both calls during a call.

#### Call forwarding

# Using Call forwarding service

# Forwards the calls on FOMA terminal to the preset forwarding destination, such as home or office, when you cannot answer.

- · Only one forwarding destination can be set.
- When receiving incoming calls while activating Call forwarding service, Ring tone sounds according to the period of time set in Ring time. If receiving the call within Ring time, you can answer the call. If not receiving the call within Ring time, the call is forwarded to the forwarding destination automatically. The call is notified on Stand-by display or Received calls as well. However, if setting Ring time as "0 second", no record is saved in Received calls.

Call forwarding

#### Basic flow of Call forwarding service

Sets phone number of the forwarding destination.

Activates Call forwarding service.

A call is received at your FOMA terminal.

Forwards the call automatically after the preset duration.

#### **Using Call forwarding service**

Press • • • • • •

2 Select an item and press •.

Activate service	<ol> <li>Press : "Yes".</li> <li>Press : "Activate".</li> <li>To set Ring time subsequently, press : "" "Ring time", enter Ring time and press .</li> <li>Press : "Change forwarding no." to change the forwarding destination. Following procedure is the same as "Change forwarding no."</li> </ol>
Deactivate service	<ol> <li>Press <i>I</i><sup>*</sup> "Yes".</li> </ol>
Change forwarding no.	<ol> <li>Press I = "Direct input" ▶ enter the phone number, and press I = "Change only" or I = "Change &amp; activate".</li> <li>Press I = "" "Quote phonebook" ▶ select a Phonebook entry and press ● ▶ select a phone number and press ● ▶ (●), to quote Phonebook for dialing.</li> </ol>
Forwarded number busy	When the forwarding destination is busy with other call, connects to Voice mail center. ① Press () * "Yes".
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

# Setting Call forwarding guidance

 $1 \text{ Press } I \stackrel{\text{\tiny (I)}}{=} I \stackrel{\text{\tiny (I)}}{I \stackrel{(I)}}{I \stackrel{(I)}}{=} I \stackrel{\text{\tiny (I)}}{I \stackrel{(I)}}{I \stackrel{(I)}}{I \stackrel{($ 

**2** Follow the voice guidance.

#### Information

Refer to P64 to forward the incoming call manually.

#### Nuisance call barring

# Using Nuisance call barring service

Rejects calls from specific callers automatically. If registering the phone number to reject as a nuisance call, the guidance answers the call from the number and disconnects the call.

• Up to 30 nuisance calls can be registered.



# Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

Store caller	Store the last received call. (1) Press (1) "Yes".
Store selected number	<ol> <li>Select or enter the phone number and press ● ► T = "Yes".</li> </ol>
Delete all entries	1 Press T: "Yes".
Delete last entry	Release the last registered number. (1) Press (1) "Yes".
Check no. of entries	Displays the number of the latest registration.

#### Caller ID request

# **Using Caller ID request service**

Answers the call, which does not notify Caller ID, with the guidance requesting to call again with Caller ID, and disconnects. Troubles caused by nuisance calls, etc. may be avoided so that you can use the terminal more safely.





#### Select an item and press $(\bullet)$ .

Activate service	1 Press 🖅 "Yes".
Deactivate service	1) Press 🕼 "Yes".
-	Displays the current setting status.

#### Dual network

# Using Dual network service

mova service becomes also available with 1 phone number for FOMA terminal with the service. The service provides you to switch both service areas of FOMA and mova.



#### Select an item and press (•).

Dual NW switching	Sets to allow FOMA terminal to use. ① Press ፲ * "Yes" ▶ enter the network security code, and press ●.
Check setting	Checks whether the condition is available for FOMA terminal.

#### English guidance

# Switching language for guidance

You can select the language of guidance between Japanese and English announced in making/ receiving calls or in network services, such as Voice mail service or Call forwarding service.

 When the caller is using the service, the caller's settings takes priority over the receiver's.

- Press ► 🕮 ► 👁 ► ⊇ﷺ.
- Select an item and press ().

Guidance setting	<ol> <li>Press one of <i>I</i><sup>*</sup> to <i>∃</i><sup>*</sup></li> <li>select a language and press ●.</li> </ol>
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

#### Service dialing no.

# Using Service dialing number

Contact to DoCoMo Information Center for inquiries or for repairs.



Select an item and press (•).

ドコモ故障問合せ <for repairs=""></for>	<ol> <li>Press •.</li> </ol>
ドコモ総合案内・受付 <for (docomo<br="" general="" inquiries="">Information Center)&gt;</for>	1 Press ).

#### In-call arrival act

# Selecting response action for incoming calls during a call

#### Selects the response action for incoming calls during a call or 64K data communication.

· Set In-call arrival act to "Answer", to terminate the current call, videophone call or 64K data communication and answer the newly received voice call.



Select an item and press (•).

Answer	You can answer or forward the incoming call manually to the Call waiting center or the registered forwarding address with Call forwarding service.
Voice mail	Connects to Voice mail service.
Call forwarding	Forwards to the registered forwarding destination.
Call rejection	Rejects and disconnects the call.

\* Voice mail by Videophone call cannot be recorded, as of May, 2006.

#### Set in-call arrival act

# Activating/deactivating the function of Set in-call arrival act

Applies the response action registered in "Incall arrival act" for incoming calls during a call or 64K data communication.



# Select an item and press (•).

Activate service	1 Press 🖅 "Yes".
Deactivate service	1 Press 🕼 "Yes".
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

#### **Remote access**

# Setting Remote access

Allows you to operate Voice mail service or Call forwarding service from a fixed-line phone with push tone or payphones.

Press (•) > **g**<sup>wxyz</sup>

# Select an item and press (•).

Activate service	1 Press I: "Yes".
Deactivate service	1 Press T: "Yes".
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

#### Multinumber

# **Using Multinumber**

Adds the phone number for the use of "Business" or "Private" to switch with Multinumber.

# Setting Multinumber



# Select an item and press ().

Set multinumber	<ol> <li>Press one of <i>I</i><sup>®</sup> to <i>∃</i><sup>per</sup></li> <li><i>I</i><sup>®</sup> "Yes".</li> </ol>
Check setting	Displays the current setting status.

# Setting Multi number on each call

Select the phone number from Function menu, and you can make a call by setting your number each time.

# Enter a phone number and press (i) [Function], on Stand-by display.

- Press 2<sup>\*\*</sup> "Add number" > 3<sup>\*\*</sup> "Multinumber".
- Press one of 🖅 🕄 to 🖽 🖽.

Initial number	Dialing is made with Initial number.
付加番号1 <additional number 1&gt;<sup>*</sup></additional 	Dialing is made with 付加番号1 <additional 1="" number="">.</additional>
付加番号2 <additional number 2&gt;<sup>*</sup></additional 	Dialing is made with 付加番号2 <additional 2="" number="">.</additional>
Delete setting	Releases the setting.

\* If a name has been registered for Multinumber, the registered name is displayed.

# ✓ Press ⊆ ⊃).

# Information

When dialing from Redial or Received calls, the call is made from the dialed phone number which had been set when dialing.

# **Registering/editing Multinumber**

- · The Registered name is displayed on Multinumber setting screen or the message on checking the status.
- · You cannot edit the setting "Initial number".



- Press **I** "Set multinumber".
- Select "付加番号1 <Additional number 1>" or "付加番号2 < Additional number 2>", and press (i [Edit].

# Set each item.

### Setting name

- (1) Select  $\mathbb{M}_{\bullet}$  and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- 2 Enter name and press ().
  - Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

# Entering Phone number

(1) Select  $\mathbf{\vec{P}}$  and press (•).

# 2 Enter phone number and press ().

· Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.

# Setting Ring tone

# ① Select <sup>4</sup>/<sub>▶</sub> and press ●.

- Following procedure: →P116 "Changing Ring tone or Chaku-motion" Step 3 to 5
- "The Rockabilly" is set as default.

# < Press 🖬 [Store].

# Information

- Some i-motion, such as Video only i-motion, cannot be set as Ring tone.
- When setting i-motion including image and sound as Ring tone, the image set for Receive display is changed to the i-motion automatically.
- When replacing UIM (FOMA card) to another, set the name for phone number/Ring tone/Multinumber again.
- For incoming calls under Multinumber setting, Ring tone set in Multinumber is applied to all incoming calls regardless of the setting in Individual ring tone/ Group ring tone in Phonebook, or Sound setting. (When Ring tone for Multinumber is set to "OFF", Ring tone follows the setting for each.) Other settings than Ring tone follow the setting for each which is set in Settings.

#### Extra services

# Registering and using Extra services

When DoCoMo releases new network services, register the service to the menu of FOMA terminals to use.

When a new network service is released, the code for the new service is notified. Register the code and the service name.

# **Registering service**

- Up to 10 new services can be registered.
- 1 Press ► Retwork ► ④ ► Ist.
- > Press I :: "Extra services" ► i [New].
  - Select a service and press ▶ select each item and press ●, to edit the registered service.

### **3** Enter the service name and press $\odot$ .

• Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.

# 4 Enter the code and press •.

- Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.
- 5 Press i [Store].

### **Activating service**



- Press 1 "Extra services".
- 3 Select a service and press •.
- 🛃 Press 🖻 [Send].

#### Editing Answer message of registered service

• Up to 10 Answer messages can be registered.

- Press *∠*<sup>\*</sup> "Answer message" ► i [New].
  - Select a message and press select each item and press •, to edit the registered Answer message.
- 3 Enter an Answer message and press •.
  - Up to 10 two-byte (Full Mark)/20 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be entered.
- Enter the command and press •.
  - Up to 26 digits of a number can be entered.

5 Press i [Store].

### **Deleting Extra service**

- Press  $\odot$   $\triangleright$   $\square$
- Press I: "Extra services".
  - To delete Answer message, press Z
- 3 Select an item and press 
  [Delete].
- 🔼 Press / 🕄 "Delete".

### Deleting by option

- (1) Press  $\fbox{Press}$  "Delete option".
- Select an item and press •.
  Press to release.
- 3 Press 🗊 [Exec.]
- Deleting all
  - 1 Press 🖅 "Release all".
  - ② Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
- Press 🖅 "Yes".
  - Press 2 "No" to cancel.

# Data communication

Data communication	346
Setup flow for data communication	347
AT command	348

- For details about data communication, refer to the attached CD-ROM "PDF version 'Manual for Data communication' (DataCom.pdf)".
- Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required to view "PDF version 'Manual for Data communication' (DataCom.pdf)". If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site. (Communication fees are separately required for downloading.) For more information, refer to Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site.

# Data communication

# Data communication available by FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer by connecting to a PC.

- FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support facsimile transmission.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II" for data communication, update "musea" or "sigmarion II" before use. Refer to DoCoMo's Internet site for the details of the update procedure etc.

#### Packet communication

Packet communication is one of communication methods, which does not occupy the line, for the data is divided into small pieces (packets) to transfer. It is efficient for multiple terminals to use one line, and this method does not require cost except on sending/ receiving data. FOMA terminal can be constantly connected to the network, and can send/receive data when necessary. It is suitable to send/receive relatively small amount of data such as text of mails at high speed, because the charge depends on sent/ received data size instead of the duration or the distance of connection.

Note that the communication fee becomes expensive to send/receive large amount of data (such as high quality images and melodies).

• High-speed packet communication (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) is available.

#### Establishing packet communication

- · Connect within FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- The access point is required to be compatible with FOMA packet communication of DoCoMo Internet service, such as "mopera U"/"mopera".

#### 64K data communication

64K data communication is a data communication method which sends/receives data at 64 kbps baud rate. It is suitable to download relatively large amount of data such as high quality images or melodies, for the charge depends on the communication duration instead of the data volume.

Be aware that long hours of communication causes high communication fee.

#### Establishing 64K data communication

- · Connect within FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- The host is required to support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet service, "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

#### Data transmission

Data transmission is a transmission method which sends/receives data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional) or infrared data communication. No communication fee is charged. Various data in Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, etc. can be transferred to PC or other FOMA terminals/mobile phones with infrared communication function. Use the function to save or backup data.

# Transferring data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional)

 Install the communication configuration file beforehand, to transfer the data. FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port are required.

#### Making Infrared communication

 FOMA terminal sends/receives data to the devices equipped with Infrared communication function, such as other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs. Packet communication and 64K data communication cannot be established with Infrared communication function. For details of Infrared communication, refer to Manual for FOMA SA702i.

#### Information

- Packet communication or 64K data communication may be failed when the base station is busy or the radio wave is poor.
- PPP packet communication receiving function is not available.
- Note that communication fee becomes expensive to download files or to display images of large size.
- Set USB mode to "Communication mode" when connecting 64K or Packet, or operating FOMA terminal by hands-free compatible devices.



### Precautions

# Internet service provider connection charges

When using Internet from PC, connection fee is charged by your Internet service provider (referred to as providers). This charge needs to be paid directly to your provider, and is separated from FOMA service charge. For more information on connection charges, contact your provider.  We recommend you to subscribe to "mopera U", which is compatible with the broadband connection option and the international roaming service, for FOMA to use Internet with FOMA terminal. Also "mopera" is easy and convenient for users who wish to connect to Internet shortly. Application is required to use "mopera U" (charged). "mopera" does not require any applications or monthly charges.

# Connection host (Internet service provider etc.)

Different connection hosts are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. For packet communication, use the host for packet, and for 64K data communication, use the host for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

• FOMA terminal cannot be connected to PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS or DoPa.

# User authentication during network access

Some hosts may require the authentication for connection. If required, enter your ID and password on the communication software or dial-up network. ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator or your provider of the host. For more information, contact your provider or company network administrator.

#### Access authentication using PC browser

If FirstPass (Client certificate) is required for the access authentication using PC browser, install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure the settings. For more information, refer to "FirstPassManual" in the attached CD-ROM. To view "FirstPass Manual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is needed. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, the software can be downloaded from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site. (Communication fees are separately required for

downloading.) For more information, refer to Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site.

# Operation environment for FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirement *	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 : 32 MB or larger Windows XP : 128 MB or larger
Hard disk capacity *	10 MB or larger free disk space
Browser	Microsoft <sup>®</sup> Internet Explorer 5.5 or later versions

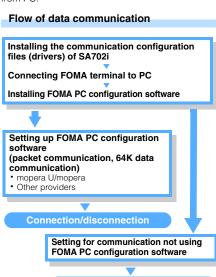
\* May vary according to the PC system configurations.

# Setup flow for data communication

This section describes the setup required to connect FOMA terminal to PC, to establish packet communication/64K data communication.

#### Attached CD-ROM (CD-ROM for FOMA SA702i)

The provided CD-ROM includes SA702i communication configuration files (drivers), FOMA PC configuration software, and FirstPass PC software. Communication configuration file is the software required to communicate and connect FOMA terminal to PC with FOMA USB connection cable (optional). Also, FOMA PC configuration software is the software which allows to configure various settings required for data communication from PC.



Connection/disconnection

#### **Operating environment**

Refer to the following PC environment to operate the communication configuration files/FOMA PC configuration software.

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
	USB port (compatible with USB 1.1 and later)
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirement	Windows 98, Me : 32 MB or larger Windows 2000 : 64 MB or larger Windows XP : 128 MB or larger
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or larger free disk space

 Installation may not be available depending on the settings of your PC environment.



#### Information

- Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary according to PC system configurations.
- No responsibility is assumed in operation after upgrading.
- Note that the files/software cannot be used in some operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed without the previously described environment, and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation out of the described conditions.

# AT command

FOMA terminal supports AT commands, and accepts some extended commands and specified AT commands.

- AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using PC. These commands are called "AT command", for "AT" is added at the beginning.
- For details of AT commands, refer to "PDF version 'Manual for Data communication' (DataCom.pdf)" in the attached CD-ROM.

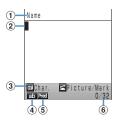
# **Character input**

Character input
Entering characters using 5-touch input method <5-touch> 350
Editing/registering Common phrases < Edit Common phrases > 354
Editing/registering Emoticon <edit emoticons=""> 354</edit>
Copying/cutting/pasting characters
Entering characters using Input code
Set the cursor to move automatically <cursor auto="" move=""> 355</cursor>
Storing frequently used words <store dict="" in="" user=""> 356</store>
Initializing learned information <reset info="" learned=""> 356</reset>
Using downloaded dictionary <download dictionary=""> 356</download>
Setting input prediction <input prediction=""/> 357
Entering characters using 2-touch input method <2-touch> 357

# **Character input**

This chapter describes how to enter characters in Phonebook name entry or on Compose message screen.

#### Input screen



Character input screen

- 1 Screen title
- 2 Cursor
- 3 Guide
- Current input mode
- **5** Input prediction setting
- ⑥ Number of entered characters, maximum number of characters allowed to input, or remaining number of characters available to enter

# "Undo" function

Press 
Press 
Function [Undo] to undo the last operation. When you made an unintended operation in converting/ deleting/pasting characters, press the key to return to undefined/undeleted status.

- · Only the latest operation is restored.
- Image: [Undo] is unavailable if you proceed to the next operation after a character conversion is defined or a character is deleted.

#### Setting Input method

Default 5-touch

# Press $\bullet$ $\triangleright$ $\underbrace{\mathfrak{G}}_{\operatorname{Settings}}$ $\triangleright$ $\underbrace{\mathfrak{G}}_{\operatorname{det}}$ $\triangleright$ $\underbrace{\mathfrak{G}}_{\operatorname{det}}$ .

Press (i) [Function] on Character input screen > select "Input settings" and press ()
 > select "Input method" and press (), to switch on Character input screen.

Select an item and press •.

· Input code can be selected on Character input screen.

5-touch	Multiple characters are allocated to one key, and characters switch each time you press the key.
2-touch	Press 2 keys and enter characters with combination of the keys.
Input code	Enter 4-digit Input codes to enter characters corresponding to the code.

#### 5-touch

# Entering characters using 5-touch input method

#### This section describes the character input method by 5-touch.

 "5-touch" is set for Character input, and "ON" is set for Input prediction and Cursor auto move by default. Input prediction setting →P357 Cursor auto move →P355

#### Entering Kanji/Hiragana

#### <Example> Entering "鈴木"

Enter "すずき" on Character input screen.

	Predicted
	Predicted
Dradiated	

1) Press 🖅 3 times. :	"す" is entered.
2 Press 💽.	The cursor moves one
	position to the right.

- When Cursor auto move is "ON", the cursor moves automatically.
- ③ Press 🖅 3 times. : "♂" is entered.
- ④ Press \*\*: Voiced sound mark is added.
- Characters assigned to dial keys  $\rightarrow$  P365
- Input prediction does not appear when setting Input prediction to OFF.
- Press ( call to delete 1 character.
- Hold down (Back for over a second to delete all undefined characters.
- Adding voiced/semi-voiced sound mark →P351

#### Changing input character size

- Font size may be fixed on some Character input screens.
- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Input settings", and press ●.
- ② Select "Font size" and press ●.
- 3 Press one of  $I_{s}$  to  $I_{s}$ .

# 2 Press () ト select "鈴木" and press ).

- "すずき" is converted to "鈴木".
- Press ) instead of ) to define as Hiragana.
- You cannot convert the characters entered other than in Kanji/Hiragana mode.
- Repeat Step 2 for each segment when the sentence is not converted at one time.
- · Up to 20 characters can be entered before defining.

#### Adding a line feed

#### 1 Press # at the point to add a line feed.

· Some input screens may not permit a line feed.

#### Entering a space

#### 1 Press ().

- Define the characters and press (), when entering characters.
- A space is inserted as a mark when inserting it within a sentence. →P352

#### Changing the segment to convert

#### 1 Press 😔 during Character input.

 When Input prediction is set to "OFF", press while converting a segment.

#### Entering characters using Input prediction

Input prediction allows to enter words by selecting from the predicted words without entering the whole part. You can input frequently used characters quicker, as once entered words are registered as learned information automatically and listed as Input prediction.

- Setting Input prediction →P357
- Resetting learned information →P356

### Enter "あ" on Character input screen.



Input prediction starting with "あ" is displayed.

# Press () ► select the predicted word and press ().

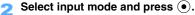
Words to follow the entry are predicted, and displayed in the prediction list.

 Press or to check the next/previous pages of the predicted word list.

# Changing input modes (Character type to enter)

- The available input modes differ depending on the input screen.
- Press 🚇 "Char." on Character input screen.

Character type switch	
1 漢 2 7 3 74	
4 A 5 <b>a</b> 6 1 7 AB 8 ab 9 12	
🗙 Pic 🛛 Mark 🗰 Face	



lcon	Mode
漢	Kanji/Hiragana mode
7 / 71	Two-byte/one-byte Katakana mode

lcon	Mode
а/а	Alphabet two-byte capital letter/ small letter mode
AB / ab	Alphabet one-byte capital letter/small letter mode
1 / 12	Numeric two-byte/one-byte mode
Pic	Picture mode
Mark	Mark mode
Face	Emoticon mode
かな	Kana mode

- You can select the input mode by pressing the number preceding the character icon.
- Alternatively, press S ) "Picture/Mark" to enter Picture/Mark/Emoticon, on Character input screen.
- Kana mode is only available on "Reading" input screen when registering User dictionary.

#### **Editing text**

#### Inserting character

#### Move the cursor with 🚱, and enter characters.

The text is inserted to the left of the cursor.

• Space can also be inserted as a mark.

#### **Deleting character**

### Select the character with S, and press or .

The character specified by the cursor is deleted.

- Hold down the key over a second while the cursor is within the text, and all the characters after the cursor are deleted.
- When the cursor is on the end of the text, the character on the left of the cursor is deleted. All the characters entered are deleted by holding down the key over a second.

# Adding voiced sound mark/semi-voiced sound mark/changing to small letter

#### Select the character with S, and press z.

Voiced/semi-voiced sound mark is added to the character specified by the cursor. Or the character is changed to a small letter. (The change added differs, depending on the character.)

Press *x* intil the desired character appears.

#### Entering Katakana or alphanumeric characters

You can enter Katakana or alphanumeric characters in each mode, or enter in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert to alphanumeric characters.

#### <Example> Entering "SANYO" in two-byte/Full Mark

#### In Kanji/Hiragana mode, press 7<sup>∞</sup> 4 times ▶ 2<sup>∞</sup> once ▶ 6<sup>∞</sup> twice ▶ 9<sup>∞</sup>

- 3 times ▶ 🖅 3 times.
- "めかひるふ" is displayed on the screen.
- Characters assigned to keys →P365



# Press i [E/1/Kana].

 The word list to convert appears in the order of two-byte Alphabet capital letter/one-byte Alphabet capital letter/two-byte Alphabet small letter/one-byte Alphabet small letter/two-byte Numeric character/one-byte Numeric character/ two-byte Katakana/one-byte Katakana.



### **Entering common phrases**

- Common phrases list →P368
- Editing/registering Common phrases →P354
- Press : [Function] on Character input screen
   select "Common phrases", and press •.

Phrase ⊲Internet>
∎@docomo.ne.jp
🖬. ne. jp
🗉.co.jp
🖽. com
🖃.or.jp
🖬.ac.jp
■http://
Ewww.
⊟http://www.
Detail Select 🤁 Categor

Common phrases are listed by categories.

Press one of  $I \stackrel{\text{\tiny{(1)}}}{=} to \stackrel{\text{\tiny{(2)}}}{=} t$ .

- The Common phrase is inserted at the cursor position.
- Press (i) [Category] or (c) to switch the category of Common phrases.
- Select a phrase and press 
  [Detail] to display the whole phrase. Press [[List] to return to the list.

#### Information

- When inserting a Common phrase exceeding maximum number of characters, or when trying to insert a phrase containing characters not allowed to be entered, one of the following occurs.
  - An error message appears and the phrase is not inserted.
  - Characters up to the maximum number are inserted.
  - Characters unable to enter are replaced to spaces and inserted. (The spaces are to be deleted if unable to be inserted.)

# **Entering Marks**

- Mark list →P367
- Only the marks available to enter are listed.

	on Character input
Name	
Mark Ful Mark 8 Face Pric	
■、、、、 <u>·</u> :;?!* *、、、 <u>·</u> 、、、、、 #全々メO—— - / ~~	
∥   ····· " "" () ( Mark Pred 0/32 Continue Selecti‡HaliMark	

Mark list appears.

- Alternatively, press ( ) "Picture/Mark" twice (once when Pictures are not available) on Character input screen, to display the list.
- Previously used Marks are displayed on the first line of the list.

# 2 Select a Mark, and press •.

• Press i to display the list of Marks (onebyte/Half Mark).

#### Entering Marks continuously

- Select a Mark, and press ☐ [Continue].
   ② Repeat Step ①.
- 3 Press (•).

#### Information

●Alternatively, enter "きごう" in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert, to input Marks.

### **Entering Pictures**

- Picture list →P367
- Press 
  <sup>●</sup> "Char." on Character input screen ▶ select Pic and press ●.

Name		
Pic Pic]	<b>1</b> /4 <b>⊆</b> ₩	lark 🕨 Face
∰∞+;	3≠@≣¥'	rvz
	₂⊪≁\%≈:	
Pic Pred		0/32
Continue	Select 🌻	Pic2

#### Picture list appears.

- Alternatively, press Picture/Mark" once on Character input screen, to display the list. (Not displayed on input screens where Pictures are not available.)
- The previously used Pictures are listed on the first line.

# **2** Select a Picture and press ullet.

Press i to switch Pic1 and Pic2.

#### Entering Pictures continuously

- ③ Press ④.

#### Information

●Some words entered in Kanji/Hiragana mode can be converted to Pictures. (Example: "はれ" → 美)

5-touch

#### **Entering Emoticons**

- Emoticon list →P368
- Editing/registering Emoticon →P354
- Press 
   "Char." on Character input screen ▶ select rece and press ●.



Emoticons list appears.

 Alternatively, press D "Picture/Mark" 3 times (twice on input screens where Pictures are not available) on Character input screen, to display the list. (Not displayed on input screens where Emoticons are not available.)

#### Press one of I to 5 to 5 to .

- Entry mode may be limited and some Emoticons may not be entered on some Character input screens.
- Press (i) [Category] or (c) to switch the category.

#### Entering Emoticons continuously

- 2 Repeat Step 1.
- 3 Press (•).

#### Information

●Some emoticons can be entered by inputting "か お" in Kanji/Hiragana mode and convert.

# Entering characters by quoting from various functions

You can quote texts from Phonebook, Schedule, etc.

- Functions available for quoting differ depending on the input screen.
- Quoting from the same function is not available. (Example: You cannot quote texts from Phonebook when registering a Phonebook entry.)
- Press i [Function] on Character input screen.

# Select a function to quote text from, and press •.

<b>0</b>	Oursets a Discourse is a site	
Quote phonebook	Quotes Phonebook. ① Select a Phonebook entry	
• • • • • •	and press (•) > select an	
	item and press •.	
Quote history	Quotes Redial, Received calls, Sent addresses or Received addresses.         ① Press one of 「♥ to ♥♥♥         select a history and press ●         ●.	
Quote schedule	<ul> <li>Quotes data registered in Schedule.</li> <li>① Select a schedule and press ●</li> <li>▶ select an item and press ●.</li> </ul>	
Quote	Quotes Text memo.	
text memo	<ol> <li>Select a Text memo and press</li> <li>.</li> </ol>	
Quote bookmark	Quotes URL of sites registered in Bookmark. ① Select a folder and press ● select a Bookmark and press ●.	
Quote profile	Quotes Profile. ① Select an item and press ④.	
Quote loc. info	Quotes the location information and location history positioned by Position location, or location information registered to Phonebook etc. • Following procedure: →P210 "Pasting Location information URL" Step ② to ③	

#### Entering characters using Bar code

You can activate Bar code reader from Character input screen, to enter characters.

- Press : [Function] on Character input screen
   select "Bar code reader", and press •.
  - Following procedure: →P172 "Scanning codes" Step 4 to 5
  - Bar code reader may not be available on some Character input screen.

#### Entering characters using Character reader

Activate Character reader to scan Alphanumeric/ Mark characters from Character input screen, to enter characters.

- Up to 49 characters can be scanned at a time.
- - Following procedure: →P174 "Reading character" Step 4 to 6
  - Character reader may not be used depending on Character input screen.

# Editing/registering Common phrases

# You can edit preset Common phrases, or compose and register new fixed phrases.



# **2** Select an item and press ullet.

• Select **E** "" "Free phrase" to compose and register a new phrase.

#### Resetting to default

- Common phrases registered in Free phrase are to be deleted.
- 2 Press I not reserve all.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and press ().
- 4 Press 1 \* "Yes".
  - Press Z<sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>𝑘</sub> "No" to cancel.

### **3** Select a Common phrase and press $oldsymbol{\Theta}$ .

# Edit the text and press •.

- Up to 32 two-byte (Full Mark)/64 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be registered.
- If you delete all characters and press (), the original Common phrase is registered.
- No one-byte (Half Mark) space can be entered at the end of the sentence of Common phrases. One-byte (Half Mark) spaces at the top or within the sentence are available to enter.

#### Edit emoticons

# **Editing/registering Emoticon**

# You can edit the preset Emoticons and register the edited Emoticons.

I Press ● ►

# Select an item and press ).

#### Resetting

- ① Select an item, and press ☐ [Reset].
- ② Press *I* <sup>\*</sup> "Reset" or *⊇*<sup>\*</sup> "Reset all".
- ③ Enter the terminal security code and press ●.
- 4 Press 1 📲 "Yes".
  - Press <sup>∠</sup><sup>ABC</sup>/<sub>n</sub> "No" to cancel.

# 3 Select an Emoticon and press •.

- **4** Edit the Emoticon and press **•**.
  - Up to 7 two-byte (Full Mark)/14 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be registered.
  - If you delete all characters and press (), Emoticons return to default.
  - No one-byte (Half Mark) space can be entered at the end of Emoticons. One-byte (Half Mark) spaces at the top or within the text are available to enter.

#### **Copy characters**

# Copying/cutting/pasting characters

#### You can copy/cut entered characters by specifying the range. Copied/cut characters are saved as Paste data available anytime.

- Up to 18 Paste data or 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/ 10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters in total can be saved.
- If you try to copy/cut when 18 Paste data has been saved, or when total number of characters exceeds 5,000 two-byte (Full Mark)/10,000 one-byte (Half Mark) characters, the data is deleted in order from the oldest.

# **Copying/cutting characters**

- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Copy" and press ●, on Character input screen.
  - For cutting, select "Cut" and press ().
  - "Copy" or "Cut" cannot be selected when the cursor is not on defined characters.
  - "Cut" erases the highlighted characters from the original screen and saves it as Paste data.
- **2** Select the start point and press  $oldsymbol{\Theta}$ .
- **3** Select the end point and press  $\odot$ .

#### Specifying the range to copy/cut

- [Range] is displayed only when the cursor is on defined characters.
- Select the start point and press 
  [Range].
- ${old >}$  Select the end point and press  $old {old >}.$
- S Press I <sup>™</sup> "Copy" or <sup>™</sup> "Cut".

#### Registering to User dictionary

Register the text of the specified range to User dictionary. →P356

- Up to 20 two-byte (Full Mark)/40 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.
- 1 Press 🖅 "Store in user dict."
- (2) Enter "Reading" and press  $\bigcirc$ .

Character input

# 354

#### Using Dictionary

The text in the specified range is translated into English/Japanese and entered in the Character input screen.

#### 1 Press (4 %) "Dictionary".

- When there are more than one choices in translation, select a word with () and press ().
- Up to 8 characters (both in one/two-byte) for Jpn-Eng/Kana-Eng dictionary, and 16 characters (both in one/two-byte) for Eng-Jpn dictionary.
- Select a word from the translation choices and press (Replace), to replace the text to the translated word, and press
  [Insert] to insert the word to the left of the range.

#### Confirming the reading

The reading of the Kanji (Chinese character) in the specified range is displayed.

1 Press 5 Reading check".

- Up to 50 two-byte (Full Mark)/100 one-byte (Half Mark) characters can be specified.
- A sentence is split into each segment. Select a segment, and press ().

#### **Pasting characters**

You can select copied/cut texts from Paste data, and paste it in Character input screen. On some Character input screens, a part of Paste data may be able to specified for pasting.

Move the cursor to the point to paste and press i [Function] ▶ select "Paste" and press ●, on Character input screen.



- Data not available to paste may not be displayed on the list screen.
- Select data and press •.

#### Pasting a part of Paste data

- 2 Press (i) [Portion].
- 3 Select the start point and press  $\odot$ .
- ④ Select the end point and press •.

#### Deleting Paste data

#### 1 Select data and press i [Delete].

- 2 Press / " "Delete".
  - When pressing Z<sup>\*\*</sup> "Delete all", enter the terminal security code, and press •.

#### 3 Press 1 \* "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

### Information

- When the data to be pasted exceeds the maximum number of characters, or when trying to insert data containing characters not allowed to be entered, one of the following occurs.
- An error message appears and the phrase is not inserted.
- Characters up to the maximum number are inserted.
- The phrase is inserted, after spaces replace the characters not allowed to be entered. (The spaces are to be deleted if unable to be inserted.)

#### Input code entry

### Entering characters using Input code

Enter 4-digit Input codes to enter characters corresponding to the code.

- Input code list →P369
- Press i [Function] ▶ select "Input settings" and press ● ▶ select "Input method" and press ●, on Character input screen.



Input	code	0101
	o, .	• : ;
?!	* • *	` ^
	ヽヾゝ	ゞ // 仝
マメ	0	- / \
~∥		., .

# 3 Enter the Input code and press •.

- Alternatively, select from Input code list and press (•), to enter the code. Press [•] or [•] to check the next/previous pages of the list.
- Invalid Input code cannot be entered.
- Press (act while entering Input code, to delete 1 digit of the Input code. Hold down (act for over a second to delete all.
- Entering the character using Input code continuously

Input the code and press ☐ [Continue].
 Repeat Step ①.

③ Press ●.

#### Cursor auto move

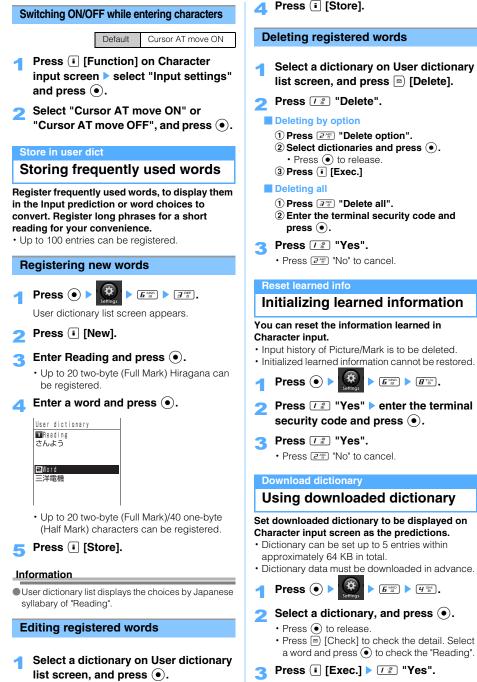
Set the cursor to move automatically

Default	ON
---------	----

Set the cursor to move automatically when no operation is made for more than 1 second during the character input. It is a convenient function to continuously enter characters on the same column. This function is valid only under 5-touch input method.

Press ● ► . Press . Press . "ON".

Press @^ABC "OFF" not to move the cursor automatically.



Press <sup>∠<sup>ABC</sup></sup>/<sub>η</sub> "No" to cancel.

Press [1] "Reading" or 2<sup>mb</sup> "Word".

Edit the content and press  $(\bullet)$ .

#### Input prediction

# Setting input prediction



### Switching ON/OFF while entering characters

Default Predict ON

- Press (i) [Function] on Character input screen > select "Input settings" and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- Select "Predict ON" or "Predict OFF", and press  $(\bullet)$ .

### Information

Press 
 Convert] or
 Predict] to switch Input prediction ON/OFF temporarily while entering/ converting characters under "Input prediction ON". If the first operation results in unintended conversion when switching input prediction from ON to OFF, press (2) again. List of word choices to convert is displayed.

#### 2-touch

### Entering characters using 2-touch input method

#### Press 2 keys to enter characters with combination of the keys.

- The procedures to input in Numeric, Picture, Mark and Emoticon modes are the same as 5-touch method.
- Setting Input method →P350

# Switching Input mode

Under 2-touch method, icons are switched as follows; in Kanji/Hiragana mode, Katakana in two-byte (Full Mark)/one-byte (Half Mark) mode, Alphabet mode in one-byte (Half Mark), Kana mode.

- 選: Kanji/Hiragana mode
- 7 : Katakana/Alphabet (two-byte/Full Mark) mode
- 7A : Katakana/Alphabet (one-byte) mode
- Aat : Alphabet (capital/small letter/one-byte) mode
- mat : Kana mode -
- · The procedure to switch input methods is the same as that of 5-touch method. →P351
- · You can enter alphabets and Numeric characters in any input modes except Kana mode.

# **Entering character**

#### <Example> Entering "すずき"

# Enter "すずき" on Character input screen.

<ol> <li>Press ∃<sup>off</sup> ≥ ∃<sup>off</sup>.</li> </ol>	: "す" is entered.
2 Press ਭ್≝ ▶ ਭ್≝.	: "す" is entered.
③ Press ≆≝.	: Voiced sound mark is added.
④ Press ⊇☆ ► ⊇☆.	: "き" is entered.

- · The following procedure is the same as that of 5-touch method. →P350
- Characters assigned to keys →P366

## Appendix/External device linkage/Troubleshooting

Menu list
Preinstalled data by default
Characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch)
Characters assigned to dial keys (2-touch)
Marks/Pictures/Emoticons
Common phrases
Input codes
FM radio station list
Available combination for Multiaccess
Available combination for Multitask
Services available with FOMA terminal
Optional and related devices
External device linkage
Data link software
Movie player software
Troubleshooting
Troubleshooting
Error messages
Warranty and After-Sales Service
Updating software
Protecting FOMA terminal from potential causes of failure
<scanning function=""> 392</scanning>
Major specifications
The number of data available to save/register/protect in FOMA terminal 395
SAR certification information

## Menu list

## Key operations or icons to select are listed below, when you select each function from Main menu.

- Press (•) on Stand-by display to display Main menu.
- Settings in are not reset even after you execute Reset settings.

	/lail
--	-------

Function	Default	Page
Mail setting		
[1:3] Check new message	All	P230
2 <sup>ABC</sup> Receive attachment	Image and melody	P231
IT Receive option	OFF	P230
(4 the Melody auto play	Auto play	P231
5 TReceive preference	Prefer receive notice	P232
<b>B</b> <sup>MOD</sup> Signature	OFF	P230
Trans Edit quotation mark	> (one-byte)	P230
Bruy Scroll	1-line	P232
<b>I</b> Auto learn reply	ON	P231
⊙ 🖅 Store sending group	None stored	P230
③ ₽™ SMS report request	OFF	P236
ত 🖅 SMS message validity	For 3 days * <sup>1</sup>	P236
ि पद्ध SMS input char. type	Japanese * <sup>1</sup>	P237
🕑 🖅 SMS Center	DoCoMo * 1	P237
Geral Check mail setting	-	P232
🔿 🆅 Reset mail setting		P232
Search personal	Ι	P228
Compose SMS message	Ι	P235
checknew Message	-	P218
Inbox	_	P221
Compose message	_	P209
Receive option	_	P217
Outbox	—	P221
Chat mail	-	P232
Check SMS	_	P236
Unsent messages	_	P221
Deco-mail template	_	P213

0.	10001 00
node	i-mode

mode	Function	Default	Page
	i-mode setting		
1	Scroll	1-line	P196
2^	🗈 Image display	Display	P196
	Message auto- play	MessageR preferred	P197
<b>4</b> %	Melody att. message	Auto play melody	P197
5	🗈 i-motion auto play	Auto play	P202
	Use phone ormation	Use	P195
7	Sound effect	Play	P195
	🗈 Check new ssage	All	P230
	Connection eout	60 seconds	P194
$\odot$	Host setting	i-mode (UIM)	P195
() ho:	₽₩ Certif. Center	DoCoMo	P201
$\odot$	🖅 Certificate	All selected	P199
$\sim$	<u>पः</u> Client tificate	_	P199
~	डि के Check i-mode ting	-	P196
$\sim$	E Reset i-mode	_	P196
Resso	MessageR	_	P197
Messag		_	P197
Scree	Screen memo	_	P190
Men	i-Menu		P183
Bookma	Bookmark	_	P189
URL Last UF	Last URL	_	P184
Gotte	Go to location	_	P187
Checkin	Check new message	_	P197

i-αppli<sup>\*2</sup>

FM radio \*2

Data box\*2

## Settings

	Function	Default	Page
129	ound/Vibrator	Delault	i uge
دين	ound/vibrator	OK tone, NG tone: LEVEL1	
1 .@ 35	Volume	All others: LEVEL3	P119
2 ABC 77	Sound	* 2	P116
<b>∃</b> <sup>sgr</sup>	Vibrator	All: OFF	P119
$\mathbf{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{U}}}_{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{Z}}}^{\text{OHI}}$	LED	* 2	P133
<b>5</b> .80.	Notice time	All: 5 sec	P122
<b>E</b> <sup>MND</sup> S	Manner	Manner mode: Silent vibrator Clock timer mode:	P123
		Continuous mode	
<b>7</b> area	Connection vibrator	OFF	P120
24% C			
	Stand-by display	* 2	P125
	Call/receive display	*2	P128
-	Backside clock	Clock (S)	P128
		ON ON	P129
	Backside notify	-	P129
	Backside display	OFF as time's passed	-
	Lighting	* 2	P129
	Font size	All :Standard	P135
	Taste	* 2	P131
-	ecurity		
<u> </u>	Change security code	0000	P140
2***	Secret mode	OFF	P148
<b>∃</b> <sup>opr</sup> <sub>S</sub>	self mode	OFF	P144
$\mathbf{\boldsymbol{\mathcal{U}}}_{z}^{\mathrm{OH}}$	Lock all	OFF	P142
<b>5</b> 3	Remote lock all	OFF	P143
<b>B</b> <sup>MNO</sup>	Keypad dial lock	OFF	P146
7 mm at		OFF * 1	P140
	PIM lock	OFF	P145
<b>9</b> <sup>WEYZ</sup>	Call rejection	OFF	P148 to 150,152
$\bigcirc \Box$	S View dialed/	Redial/Sent adrs: ON	D140
recei		Received calls/adrs: ON	P148
4 th t	all/Transmission		
	Duration/Cost	_	P328
	Call maximum limit	OFF	P329
	Call duration	ON	P328
	Any key answer	ON	P64
	Open/Close action	Open to talk: OFF Closing action: Disconnect	P65
<b>B</b> <sup>MND</sup> it	Auto receive call	OFF	P331
-	Earphone auto dial	OFF	P331
	Output ring tone to:	Earphone & Speaker	P122
	Set mute ring time	Mute seconds: OFF View calls w/o sound: ON	P151
01	🔋 Quality call	* 2	P62, 121

Function	Default	Page
© ₽∰ Sub-address	ON	P61
setting		P60
	*2	P59
	≁ ∠ Communication mode	P292, 346
তি 🖅 USB mode setting 🖅 Videophone	Communication mode	F292, 340
Send camera image	ON	
Image: Send camera image Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Image: Image: Image: Image: Image: Image Image: Im	OFF	
I State Call auto Sw III Videophone display	Both sides	P90
내 Screen size	Large view	100
5 Visual preference	Normal	
<b>E</b> Visital preference	*2	P88
Videophone hands-free	* 2 ON	P88
		1.00
Edit Common phrases	_	P354
Edit emoticons		P354
Je User dictionary		P356
내 Download dictionary	None	P356
5 S Input method	5-touch	P350
	ON	P357
Cursor auto move	ON	P355
Brev Reset learned info		P356
		1 000
Time and date setting	Automatic	P50
In and date setting 2 <sup>∞</sup> GPS time setting	OFF	P50
I Auto power ON	OFF	100
내 Auto power ON	OFF	P316
	011	
I Reset settings	_	P332
Preset settings Preset settings Preset settings		P334
		1 004
Check setting status	_	P332
Voice notice	Time and notices	P336
Image: 1000000000000000000000000000000000000		
<select language=""></select>	日本語 <japanese> * 1</japanese>	P48
म ्हे Battery level	-	P47
🖅 Scanning function	Set scan: Enable	P392
<b></b> <i>∎</i> Software update	_	P387
Functions guide	_	P38
Private		

vate	Private

Function	Default	Page
I ♣ Phonebook	* 2	P94
Calendar	* 2	P319
∃ T History		
T: Redial	* 2	P56
Received calls	* 2	P66
Sent addresses	* 2	P228
Received addresses	* 2	P228
<u>मङ्</u> Memo menu		
I sext memo	_	P330
Set record message	OFF	P77
Play record message	-	P80
Play VoiceMemo-Call	_	P327

Function	Default	Page
5 🐔 Dial memo	_	P69
5 Profile		P326

## Life tools

Function	Default	Page
I: Bar code reader	-	P172
Infrared	_	P298
🖅 miniSD	_	P287
पञ्च Camera		
I Snap photo	* 2	P163
Image: Shoot movie	* 2	P166
Bar code reader	—	P172
पः ितिaracter reader	_	P174
5 🖏 Calculator	_	P329
<b>∎</b> ™ Alarm	All: OFF	P316
Dictionary		
Ipn-Eng dictionary	_	
Eng-Jpn dictionary	—	P335
IT Kana-Eng dictionary	_	
(मक्टू) Vocabulary quiz	Tried 0 time and now challenging for Jpn- Eng/Eng-Jpn Level 1	P335
5 S Word recognizer	_	P335
Interpretation and the second sec	* 2	P301
<b>International Music Player</b>	* 2	P306
Original data	_	P293
⊙ ஊ GPS		
Notify/Provide menu	* 2	P260, 262
Location history	_	P265
Position loc. settings	* 2	P257
GPS software	-	P260
Position location	_	P256
Navigation	_	P258
🕑 🖅 Compass	—	P336

## Network services

Function	Default	Page
I	* 2	P338
Call waiting	-	P339
Call forwarding		P340
ण्डः Nuisance call barring	-	P340
5 Caller ID notification	_	P51
E Caller ID request	-	P341
Tr Set in-call arr. act	_	P341
In-call arrival act	Answer	P341
<b>G</b> Remote access	-	P342
In Dual network	-	P341

Function	Default	Page
Ger English guidance	_	P341
Extra services	_	P343
ि महा Service dialing no.	_	P341
🞯 🖅 Multinumber	* 2	P342

<sup>\*1</sup> The setting may differ according to the setting on UIM (FOMA card), when using UIM other than the one bundled with newly purchased FOMA terminal.
 \*2 See Reset settings for details about the settings. →P332

## Preinstalled data by default

#### Stand-by display





スクエア <Square> ファンシー <Fancy>





アニマル <Animal>

スプライン <Spline>

Call/receive display, Videophone image, Alarm display



発信(音声) <Dialing (Voice call)>



着信(音声) <Receiving (Voice call)>



伝言メモ(テレビ電話) 応答保留(テレビ電話) <Record message (Videophone)> <On-hold (Videophone)>



発信(テレビ電話) <Dialing (Videophone)>



着信(テレビ電話) <Receiving (Videophone)>

通話中保留 (テレビ電話) <Call-on-hold (Videophone)>



着信(番号表示なし) <Receiving (ID unsent)>



アラーム画像 <Alarm image>

Camera OFF



Menu icon

10:30





Moli imade intervention Moli imade interventi

サークル <Circle>

パネル <Panel>

Private

Frame



Stamp

















バーベキュー <Barbeque>







オッケ-<0K>





お花見

<Cherry

blossom>

被授权 お花見行こう 本文を入力 して下さい 00





結婚おめでとう <Congratulations on your marriage>



ありがとう <Thank you>



ゴルに行こう

<Let's eat out.>

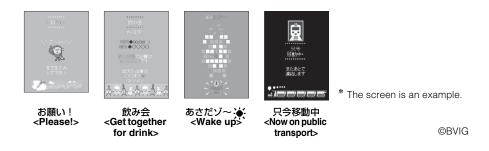
メリークリスマス <Merry X'mas>



暑中お見舞い <Summer greetings>



Appendix/External device linkage/Troubleshooting



## Characters assigned to dial keys (5-touch)

Characters are entered by pressing keys several times.

In Katakana, Alphabet and Numeric modes, one-byte or two-byte characters are entered according to the selected input mode.

		Input mod	ie		
Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphabet (Capital letter)	Alphabet (Small letter)	Number
I	あいうえお	アイウエオ	. @/:~1	. @/:~1	1
	あいうえお	アイウエオ	.@/:~1	.@/:~1	
₽ <sup>ABC</sup> ∄	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
∃ <sup>DEF</sup> ∂	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
<b>4</b> अम	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHI4	ghi4	4
<b>5</b> 3	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
<b>E</b> <sup>MNO</sup> R	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNO6	mno6	6
7 <sup>PORS</sup>	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャユヨ	TUV8	tuv8	8
<b>g</b> <sup>WDVZ</sup>	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
	わをんゎ、。-・~!?□	ワヲンヮ、。-・~!?□ ワヲン、。-・~!?□	0	0	0
	" (Voiced sound symbol	)			
<b>*</b>	° (Semi voiced sound sy	/	Switch capita	al/small letter	
	Switch capital/small letter				
<b>#</b> ₽₽	ő	: Displays the previous cha	racter assigned to	each dial key.	Line
		: Line feed * 1			feed*1
<b>2</b> D	Enters Picture/Mark/Emot	icon.			

 $\boldsymbol{\cdot} \ \Box$  is a space. Spaces cannot be entered on some of input screens.

Some characters and marks are not displayed when they are not available on the input screen.

• 🖅 and 🖅 are entered as " ×" and "#" on Phone number input screen.

• Characters on are available when entering in one-byte mode.

\*1 Some input screens may not permit a line feed.

## Characters assigned to dial keys (2-touch)

						Second	d touch				
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	い	5	え	お	А	В	С	D	E
	2	か	き	<	け	S	F	G	Н		J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	М	Ν	0
Е	4	た	ち	n	て	لح	Р	Q	R	S	Т
First	5	な	(C	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	Х	Y
touch	6	は	ひ	IS1	$\sim$	ほ	Z	?	!	_	/
ch	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	8		1	
	8	セ	(	Ø	)	よ	*	#		۲	*1
	9	5	b	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	h	*2	° <b>*</b> 2	6	7	8	9	0

#### 📕 Kanji/Hiragana mode, Kana mode (when displaying 🏾 漢 🏼 🚾 \* <sup>3</sup>)

· Blank fields are spaces.

\*1 Press @ \*\* > @ \*\* > @ \*\* > to switch capital/small letter. Characters in also be entered in small letter. Alternatively, press \*\* after entering characters, to switch capital/small letter. (valid only for the character).
 <Example> Entering \* after entering \* @ \*\* >

\*2 "\* " or " ° " can be entered by pressing, ", " or " ° " in small letter mode.

 $^{*3}$  Any entry of other than Hiragana is invalid when displaying  $\overline{ imestic}$  .

#### Two-byte/one-byte Katakana mode, one-byte alphabet mode (when displaying **7 7**Ai Aai \*3)

						Second	d touch				
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	ア	イ	ウ	I	オ	A	В	С	D	E
	2	カ	+	ク	ケ		F	G	Н	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	М	Ν	0
First	4	タ	チ	ッ	テ	7	Р	Q	R	S	Т
rst	5	ナ	=	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	Х	Y
touch	6	Л	F	フ	~	木	Z	?	!	-	/
ch	7	ح ا	Ш	Ь	×	Ŧ	¥	&		ĩ	
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	Ξ	*	#		۲	*1
	9	ラ	IJ	ル	ν		1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	F	ン	*2	° <b>*</b> 2	6	7	8	9	0

· Blank fields are spaces.

\*2 " " or " " " can be entered by pressing, ", " or " " in small letter mode.

\*3 Any entry of other than alphabets, numbers and marks is invalid when All is displayed.

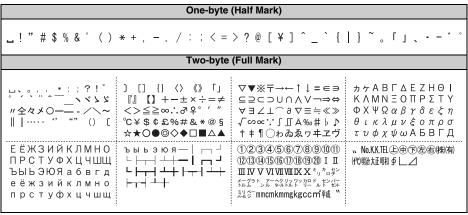
#### Information

•Some characters cannot be entered on some input screens.

" " or " " alone cannot be entered besides in one-byte Katakana mode.

## Marks/Pictures/Emoticons

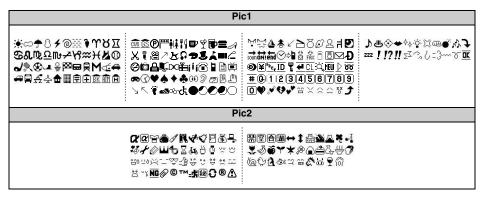
Mark list



• 🗆 is a space.

· Characters unavailable to be entered are not displayed.

Picture list



#### Information

Picture" characters may not be displayed properly on the receiver's PC or mobile phone other than i-mode terminal. Some characters may not be displayed correctly depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal.

#### Emoticon list

Category	Emoticon	Category	Emoticon	Category	Emoticon
Smile	0(^_)0	Greet	(-^O^-)	Others	() zzZ
	(^0^)		(*^o^*)		m()m
	(^o^) /		('o') /		ZZzz。。
	(*^_^*)		(•o•) /		V (^-^) V
	(^_^) v		(~つ~) /		(^ 3 ^)-☆Chu!!
Cry	(T_T)	Dismay	(^_^;)		
	(ToT)		(;)		
	(>_<)		(^;)		
	(;_;)		(-0-;)		
	(∋_∈)		f^_^;		
Angry	(`ɛ´)	Amaze	(・_・) エッ?		
	(` <b>へ</b> ´)		(•_•;)		
	(#)		(* <u>*</u> )		
	(-"-;)		(?_?)		
	(`o´)		(O;)		

## Common phrases

Category	Phrase	Category	Phrase
Internet	@docomo.ne.jp	Reply	Thank you!
	.ne.jp		ありがとう <thank you.=""></thank>
	.co.jp		ごめんなさい <i'm sorry.=""></i'm>
	.com		OK!
	.or.jp		NG!
	.ac.jp		了解! <got it!=""></got>
	http://		ゴメン! <sorry!></sorry!>
	WWW.		大丈夫! <fine!></fine!>
	http://www.		今電話できない <can't call="" now.="" you=""></can't>
Greeting	ありがとうございました <thank much.="" very="" you=""></thank>	Business	いつもお世話になっております。 <i appreciate="" business.="" your=""></i>
	おはようございます <good morning.=""></good>		至急電話ください。 <call asap.="" me=""></call>
	お疲れ様です <appreciation for="" labor="" someone's=""></appreciation>		電車遅延のため、遅れます。 <i be="" delay.="" due="" late="" to="" train="" will=""></i>
	こんにちは <good afternoon.=""></good>		申し訳ありません。 <i apologize.=""></i>
	こんばんは <good evening.=""></good>		よろしくお願いいたします。 <thank for="" help.="" you="" your=""></thank>
	おやすみなさい <good night.=""></good>		後ほどご連絡いたします。 <i contact="" later.="" will="" you=""></i>
	Happy birthday!		変更します。 <will change.=""></will>
	A HAPPY NEW YEAR!		中止します。 <will be="" canceled.=""></will>
	Merry Christmas!		延期します。 <will be="" postponed.=""></will>
Message	連絡ください <contact me.=""></contact>	Free phrase	
	携帯に電話して <call mobile.="" my=""></call>	(9 entries)	
	メールして <e-mail me.=""></e-mail>		
	あとで電話するね <call later.="" you=""></call>		
	またメールするね <will e-mail="" soon.="" you=""></will>		
	遅れます <will be="" late=""></will>		
	すぐ行きます <will be="" right="" up.=""></will>		
	迎えにきて! <come me!="" pick="" to=""></come>		
	がんばって!! <good luck!!=""></good>		

368

Common phrases

## Input codes

- Characters in the following input code list may look different from the actual characters on the screen.
- If entering an input code which does not exist in the input code list, in some cases, a space may be inserted or in other cases, no entry is available.

1st to 3rd digit	012	4th 2 3 4	digit 5	67	78	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2 3	4th 3 4	digi 5	t 6	7	8	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	4	th c 4	digit 5	6	7	89
010 011 012 013	[X-7] ! ````````````````````````````````````	· ? 、 š // 仝	: マー・	× (	: ; ) <del>_</del>	? \ .	075 076 077 078	б к ф	В Л I	гļ МН	де но чш	ё п щ	ж р ъ	7 З Ы	И Т Ь	й У Э	191 192 193 194	蟹慨馨拡:	- 開概蛙撹辌	階涯垣格	貝碍柿	凱蓋蛎	劾街鈎	外該劃確	<b>亥豈赫</b> 蒦	害該 各 覚
014 015 016 017 018	< >  + - 2 + ≥ €	《 》 「 È × ÷ :		[] [』 ≠ ~ * @	ໄ < > ບິ	}]≦¥☆	080 081 082 083	  	= = =	  -  +  -	┌╶┐ ┃ <b>┍</b> ┠╺┯	_ ]		⊢ ⊢ +	┝	⊣ <b>−</b>	195 196 197 198 199	赫顎恰叶噛	較掛括椛鴨粥	郭笠活樺栢刈	閣樫渇鞄茅苅	橿滑株萱	梶葛兜	鰍褐電ジ	局:害:) 第二	
019 020 021 022 023 024				∈≡	• ⊆	F ∩	130 131 132 133 134	10 20	1) (	② (Î ]]    * !!	3 (4) 13 (14) ¥1 (14) 14 (14) ×14 (14)	15 V	16 VI 77	ĨD VII ⊾	VIII <sup>Z-</sup> :	Ĭ9	200 201 202 203 204 205	勘幹款竿諌	勧患歓管胃	巻感汗簡濃	喚慣漢緩繿	堪憾澗缶間	姦換潅翰閑	完敢環肝関	言甘甘監	寒寬恒監莞諱刊干棺看観館
026 027 028 029				≑ « ♪ 1	≪ ≫ † ‡	√ ¶	135 136 137 138 139	۲	ⓑ (	<u>4</u>	ஜ́ m੍ 10 (株) ∮Σ	、 (有) √	No	KK. 明治	TEL 炡	Ð	206 207 207 208	舘贋 基	(丸雁 奇	含頑 嬉	岸顔 寄	巌願き岐	玩	福 はきょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしん しょうしょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしょう しょうしん しょうしょう しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしん しょうしょう しょうしん しょうしょう しょうしょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう し	限制	岩 翫
031 032 033 034 035	4 5 6 H I J R S 1	A B J K L	9 C M W	DE NC XY	) P ( Z	З GQ	160 161 162 163 164	葵梓	圧朝	<b>亜</b> 亀斡粟	佳 <b>阿</b> 握 握 宛	あ 哀渥姐庵 、	愛旭虻按		絢	逢鯵綾闇	209 210 211 212 213 214 215	旗 紀鬼犠吉客宮	既機徽亀疑吃問	帰規偽	義桔	蟻橘	起宜誼詰	軌戯議砧	支匊车	季凱疑菊黍及稀騎欺鞠却吸
036 037 038 039 040 041	f g h p q r z あかた	st	k u	In v v うぐに	n n v x ぇえげ	e o y おこ	164 165 166 167 168	移	尉	以惟緯域芋淫	意君育弱	依易衣磯印	偉椅謂一咽	為違	遺溢	委異医逸姻	215 216 217 218 219 220	各宮究巨禦	疑吃脚弓窮拒魚供叫	衹喫虐急笈拠亨侠喬	22救級挙享僑境況.	糾渠京兇	求給虚	旧名許師	立きませ	、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、 、
042 043 044 045 046 047	ぞたたとびひて	ごち ぢ なんぷ いろ な お お お	っねのぷ	つのへも	うてばぺや	おこそでぱほゅわ	169 170 170 171 172	迂	院師	陰隙	糺 穏 韻 麗 麗 麗 麗 麗	时 う 丑		宇臼瓜		羽嘘噂	221 222 223 224 225 226	卿挟蕎業巾芹	教郷局錦	橋鏡曲	況響極欣	狂饗玉欽	狭驚桐	矯仰粁禁	匈疑菫禽	恐��尭勧筋龈 恭興暁均緊
048 050 051 052 053	ゐゑを ァフ オカナ	_ ,	ゥー	ウグズツノ	_	! オコソデ	173 173 174 175 176	曳銜	詠翁	花法	主餌	え叡瑛益	営盈	嬰穎悦	影頴謁	? 映英越怨	226 227 228 229 230	, 倶駒串	句具櫛	区愚	狗	< 玖喰	矩空	苦劇	枢寓	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
054 055 056 057 058	ゴゾトヒボユヰ	^ ゴザヺト ゚゚゚゙゙゙゙゙ヽ ゚゚゚゙ヿヿ゙゚ヺ イキシチニフミラン イギジヂヌブムリヴ	·ネプメルヵ	/ノヘモレヶ	ヾペ	ノパホュワ	177 178 178 178		以 し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し		、夜円寅遠 主、(を)夏炎鉛 応	お	<sup>1</sup> 煙塩		<u>進</u> 猿 汚	縁	231 232 232 233	栗郡 珪	繰	桑架	鍬	煎ぼ	君,傾東	刑5	川利	詳 軍 啓 圭
060 061 062 063	Α Ε Κ Λ Ν Υ Φ Σ	3 Γ Δ / Ν Ξ (ΨΩ αβ	Ε Ο γ	ZΗ ΠF δε	ΡΣ εζ	Ι Τ η	180 181 182 182	鴎牡	乙化	<b>岡</b> 沪 庵 卸	主黄中即	億温か	王屋穏	憶 音	下		234 235 236 237 238	携繋鶏傑倹	卦型敬罫芸欠倦憲	袈契景茎迎決健懸	鯨	劇	畦計戟結	撃	警敷決	I憩経軽隙月堅  掲継頚桁件嫌
064 065 070 071	θικ στι ΑΕ ИЙΚ	ν Φ <b>х</b> 5 в г < л м	<i>ψ</i> Д Н	ω ΕĖ ΟΓ	оπ ЁЖ 1Р	С	183 184 185 186 187	仮家禍蝦我会	寡禾課牙	科家庫画	西叚笥追驮回	架苛调	可歌茄霞賀四	河荷蚊雅	火華俄餓	嫁珂菓峨駕	239 240 241 242 243	建肩鹸絃	憲検見元舷	権謙原	牽賢厳	捲犬軒	献這	研鍵減	視険原	絹 願 験 現
072 073 074	ТУФ ЬЭК	рхц Эя	Ч		ЦЪ	ы a	188 189 190	恢	懐ヲ	截 扎	回 塊 労 改 兼				怪 絵	呣 芥	243 244	姑	孤	2	庫	ट 弧	· 乎 戸	個百	古江	呼 固 胡 狐

1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	3	lth 4	digi 5	t 6	7	8	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	3	1th 4	digi 5	t 6	7	8	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	4	lth d	digit 5	6	7	8	9
245 246	糊	- 袴鼓	股五	胡互	菰伍	虎午	誇呉	· 跨吾		雇後	315	5		-		1	đ	5	,	笥	諏	377 378	宕盗	- - 島淘	嶋湯	」 悼 涛	投灯	搭燈	東	桃		棟等
240 247 248	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	品設光	涙 護	醐	316	須			厨	逗喜	焁	垂		推	水	379 380	答	一筒	糖	統	到					т ж
249	乞効	鯉勾し	厚	夜口	侯向		倖			功 一	318	炊瑞	睡髄	粋崇顔	翠嵩	衰数	遂枢	酔趨		錘据	随杉	381	鐙	里陶	湯頭]		闘	謄働	豆動	同		<i>这</i> 導
250 251	巧	后巷	喉幸	坑広	垢庚[	好康	孔弘	孝恒		上抗	319 320	椙	菅澄	<b>頗</b> 摺	雀寸	裾						382 383	憧鴇	撞匿	洞得	瞳德	涜	特	督	禿	篤	峠毒
252 253	江	控洪	攻浩	昂港	晃溝	更甲	杭皇	校硬	梗稿	構糠	320					世	さ瀬	畝	是	凄	制	384 385	独寅	読酉	栃瀞	橡噸	凸屯	突惇	椴敦	届沌	鳶豚	苫遁
254 255	航	絋荒	絞行	洞綱	耕講	考貢	肯購	肱郊		膏鉱	321 322	勢栖	姓正	征清	牲	成生	政盛	整精	星聖	晴声	棲製	386		呑			Ť,	£				
256 257	砿号	鋼合	閃	降拷酷	項濠	香豪	高轟	鴻麹	剛克	劫刻	323 324	西脆	誠隻	誓席	請惜	逝戚	醒斥	青昔	静析	斉石	税積	386 387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	奈楢	s 那 馴	内縄	乍畷		薙楠
258 259	告	国惚	穀骨	酷狛	濠鵠込	黒	獄	漉		甑	325 326	籍接	績摂	席脊折先	責設千	赤窃占泉	跡節	蹟	碩雪	石切絶川	拙舌	388	軟	難	汝		(	5				
260 261	·E.	此	骨頃根	狛今枫	困湿	坤痕	墾紺	婚良	恨魂	懇	327 328	(蝉扇	仙撰	先栓	千梅	占泉	宣浅	専		川 潜	戦煎	388 389	фТ	₩	н	<u>一</u> 剄		弐			賑	肉
261				114	110	2	114		-96	此	329 330	煽	「旋繊	穿	箭	線	船			尨賎	<u></u> 武	390	~	攰	尿	乳韮	任め	妊 ~の	忍	認		_
262 263	佐詐	叉鎖	唆裟	嵯坐	左应	差挫	査債	沙催		砂	331 332	選全	遷		腺銑膳	肉糎			善	漸		390 391	**	त्रांत	芴	壮			4	+4	濡	
264	哉  災	頭塞頭	萋	宰	座彩	壮才 の	<b>頃採斎</b>	栽	歳	最済裁		*	14	<b>市</b> 告	腊	1/生	ج nee	MВ	,hD	+##	<del>60</del>	392	粘	寧乃膿	恣廼曹	之品	熱埜愛		念悩	捻濃	盜納	燃能
265 266	1901	(塞采際)	剤	砕在	砦材は	オ祭罪は	財	「細冴鷺	菜坂	阪	332 333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	噌 礎	塑祖	租	措粗	<sup>晋</sup> 素叢	393	別凶	脤	辰	呪	蚤	t	-m	1777	æ	-m
267 268	咋	榊搾	昨	咲朔	柵	埼窄	碕策	篇索	作錯	削桜	334 335	組倉	蘇喪	訴壮	阻奏掻	遡爽	鼠宋	僧層	創匝	双惣槍	想	393 394	波	派	琶			罵	芭	馬	霸俳	祀廃
269 270	鮭	笹察捌	匙拶	冊撮	刷擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐	336 337	捜漕	掃燥	挿争葬	掻痩蒼	操相藻	宋早窓装	曹糟	巣総送	槍綜	槽聡	395 396	<b>拝倍</b> 陪	排培	敗媒	梅	盃楳	牌煤萩舶	背狽	肺買	売	配賠
271 272	鯖惨	捌撒	<b>請</b> 載	鮫桟	皿燦	晒珊	三産	傘算	参纂	山蚕	338 339	草霜	荘騒	葬像	蒼増	藻僧	装	走	送	遭	鎗	397 398	陪柏	這泊	蝿白	秤箔	<b>楳</b> 料 粕	萩舶	伯薄	剥迫	博曝	拍漠
273	讃										340 341	捉	臓	蔵	謂	诰	促俗	側属		即族	息続	399 400	爆	縛函	莫箱	駁		肇	筈	櫨	崍	肌
273 274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	±	仕始	仔姉	伺姿	342	莽	束袖	測其	定揃	速存	孫	尊		裄	遜	401	畑抜	旨 畠 筏	川閥	品 鉢 鳩	溌噺	発	醗	髪	伐	罰判
275	子	~~屍旨	市	師	志	旧思い	「指獅	支祉	殺私	斯	343 344	他	多蛇	太陸	汰	,記駄	唾騨	堕体	妥堆	惰討	打	403	半	反	叛	呐.	搬	斑猫	板	氾	汎	版
277	<b>加紙</b>	日紫姿	枝肢賜	止脂	死至飼	[思氏視歯	御詞声	位時似	公式	糸誌児	345	柁岱腿	配帯	<b>悄待代</b>	汰陀怠貸醍	ふ態退	解 戴 法	<b>谷</b> 林 成	堆泰岱	対滞鯛	耐胎位	404	頒	1班飯	挽	<u>条</u> 晩	吸 番 て	盤	販磐	範 蕃	釆蛮	煩
278 279	諮字	[紫資寺]	慈	雌持法	時	_			_	-	346 347	脳台 宅	多舵带苔大托茸	太楕待袋第択凧	貝醌	返題[	載速鷹	: 替隊滝	瀧	卓	代啄	405	-	-	17	<u> </u>			_			匪
280 281	耳	次自	滋蒔	治辞-	爾汐叱	<b>壑</b> 鹿	痔式:	極識	<b></b> 「 『 『 『	血	348 349	毛諾			拓蛸	題沢只		琢		鐸	濁	406 407	卑  比	否泌	妃疲避	<b>     庇皮非</b>	彼碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	斐被
282 283	湿	宍漆	雫疾	七質	実	執蔀	れ式失篠	嫉偲	室柴	悉芝煮	350 351	棚	叩谷	狸	「蛸達鱈	辰樽	奪誰	脱丹	巽単	竪嘆	辿坦	408 409	誹	費毘	琵	眉	美	樋		備	尾	微
284 285	屡社	蕊紗	縞者	舎謝	写車	射遮	<b>拾</b> 蛇	赦邪	斜借	勽	352 353	担綻	探耽	旦胆	歎蛋	淡誕	湛 鍛	炭団		端弾	箪断	410 411	肘	鼻弼	柊必	稗畢	匹筆	疋逼:	髭桧	彦姫	膝媛	菱紐
286 287	一尺	杓	灼取	爵守首	酌手	一釈朱受	<b>捨蛇錫殊呪</b>	新若狩	寂珠	弱種	354	暖	檀	段	男	談	5					412 413	百評	謬	依	彫	橝	ЭК	漂苗	瓢錨	票	表蒜
288 289	腫綬	主趣需	酒囚	首収	儒周	受	哾	寿	授	樹	354 355	智	池	痴	稚	置	値致	帕	遅	弛馳	恥鉇	414 415	蛭	鰭瓶	品	描彬	病斌	秒浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
290 291	終	宗繍	1就習	い州臭	同修舟	愁蒐	拾衆	洲襲	秀讐	秋蹴	356 357	畜中	竹仲	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒柱	茶	<b>꺠</b> 嫡虫	築着衷	415	-34	7140	不	付		ر بلا	鴣	宣	軍	布
292 293	輯	週戎	西	~酬汁	集	魂獣	(什)縦	会住重	充銃	戦士叔	358 359	註丁	耐兆	鋳	忠駐喋	樗霉	瀦	猪	荢	著	詝	416	府膚	怖芙	-扶譜	」 敷 負	斧	夫普	婦浮官	富父附	符	腐撫
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	渋縮照	粛	塾	熟	出	術	360	-	帖	帳	味厅	龍弔町	張	彫	徾	懲	挑	418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部部	赴封	重楓	風		蓝
295 296	旬	俊楯	峻殉	春淳初	瞬準	竣潤	舜盾	駿純渚	准巡	循遵	361 362	暢調	朝諜	潮超沈	庁牒跳珍	町銚	眺長鎮	聴頂	脹鳥	腸勅	蝶捗	419 420	伏	副福	復腹	複	服覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
297 298	署	順書	薯	藷	諸	暑助	曙叙	<b>渚</b> 女		緒徐	363	旦	肤	沋	珍	頁	貝	陳				421 422	物粉	鮒糞	分紛	吻雰	噴文	墳聞	憤	扮	焚	筶
299 300		鋤勝	除匠	傷升	償 召 小	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨	363 364	槌	追	鎚 辻	痛		塚	栂	津掴	墜槻	椎佃	422							丙	併	兵 米	塀
301 302	妾彰	<u></u> 娼承	抄	将招樵	掌	捷	尚昇渉	庄昌	床昭	廠晶	365 366	漬嬬	柘紬	辻爪	蔦吊		鍔鶴	椿	潰	坪	壷	423 424	幣僻	平壁	癖					陛箆	米偏	頁変
303 304	松昭	梢症	樟省	<b>蕉</b> 祖	沼碓	消祥	渉称	湘章	焼笑	焦	366					7	Ċ	亭	低	停	伯	425 426	僻片鞭	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便		婉	弁
305 306	彰松照紹詳丈情醸	消分	1曹嘗	蒋澤	蕉鉦	衝鍾	裳鐘	1 訟障	笑証鞘	語上	367 368	剃惮	貞抵	呈扮	堤提	定样	帝汀泥哲店澱」	亭底碇	低庭禎	;廷程	偵弟締	426		保	舗	舖	E P	ま 捕	尗	甫	補	輔
307 308	丈唐	小水源	く、乗冬	記杖	1 剰浄	城世	場馬	+ 壌薙	<b>F</b> 嬢蒸	常譲	369 370	艇	訂訳	に 諦 御	流 蹄 釬	近週	记	流摘	探	`重	滴	427 428	穂	「募句	三幕マ	幕部	戊寿	幕空	ン母峰	1簿室	語語	倣向
309	顧	変錠せ	木嘱応	以埴破	げ飾に	1八	直	依在	杀		371	的	諸語	彩適店	ゴ鏑王	新潟屋	ル哲店	酒徹沃	堆撤續	◎ 轍 #	闷选	429	抱	ご捧き	木放汽	報方言	ギ朋友	土 (%	呻	羊	肪	る
310 311	蝕	浜辱は	恒尻	加伸	<b>周信</b>	減 侵 う	城唇は	出版	照寝	食 審 申	372 373	斬転	<b>兴</b> 顛	県点	大伝	<b>肢</b>	「一次」	心田	極電	山	兒口	430 431	蜂	広褒 に	記訪	ぶ豊き	記邦	ぞう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼう しんぼ	記飽	万鳳は	明鵬	運乏
312 313 314	心疹	惧真	振神	新秦	世 紳	総臣-	傑芯	浸薪	深親	甲診壬	373											432 433	望	傍某	割棒	い 日	<b>奶紡</b>	<b>帽</b> 肪	忘膨-	に謀	房貌	泰貿
314 315	曝 蝕心疹身尋	辛甚	進尽	針腎	震訊	人迅	渉称裳鐘場畳 職唇榛芯仁陣	刃靭	触寝深親塵	Ŧ	374 375	堵賭	塗途	妬都	屠鍍	徒砥	斗砺	杜努	渡度:	登土	吐菟奴·	434 435	鉾  牧	休募包捧法褒傍某防睦翻	吠穆	頬釦	北勃	# 捕暮宝 縫鋒帽肪僕没	ト 殆	墨堀	撲幌	朴 奔
											376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刃	唐	塔	塘	套	436	本	翻	凡	盆						

1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	3	1th 4	digi 5		7	8	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	3	lth ( 4	digi 5		7	8	9	1st to 3rd digit	0	1	2	43	th c 4	digi 5	t 6	7	8	9
436 437 438 439		枚桝	毎亦	哩	窿	ま 磨 幕	魔膜		埋鮪	) 妹柾侭	488 489 490 491 492	6 偃傀 僮儡	假傚僉價儺	會傅僊僵儷	皆傴傳儉儼	修傲僂儁	偈僖	做僞		0 偬 僭儔兌		564 565 566 567 568	信慴憇應懣	- 博慯憬懷懶	1. 通慥憔懈懺	0 慄慱憚懃懴	* 慳慟憊懆懿	慷慝憑憺	慘慓憫懋	慙慵憮罹	慚憙懌懍	総憖懊懦戈
440 440 441		麿漫 湊				<del>7</del>	巳粍	箕 民	岬眠		493 494 495 496 497	兢冏シ几刎	競冑决處刧	兩冓冱凩刪	兪冕	<b>儻兮</b> [ 冰凰刳	冀	口冦冽	囘冢凅刄剄	册冩凉刋剋	冉冪凛刔剌	569 570 571 572 573	戉 扞抓拆	戍戞扣抖擔	戌戡扛拔拈	<b>戔截</b> 扠抃拜	戛戮扨抔拌	戰扼拗拊	戲抂拑拂	戳抉抻拇	扁找拏抛	扎抒拿拉
441 442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡 ø	椋	婿	娘	務	498 499 500	剞劒	影剱辧	劬	司劑劭勠	辨			勍	劍勗	劔勞	574 575 576	格 捍 掉 择	活搜掟	拱捏掵揶	. 挧掖捫铃	<b>挂掎捩搖</b>	挈掀掾搴	<b></b> 掛	拵捶揀搓	捐掣揆四	挾 掏 揣
442 443 444	名 免	命 棉	明 綿	盟緬	迷面	銘麺	鳴	姪	牝	冥滅	501 502 503 504	勣甸匸卮	勦匍區夘	飭匐卆卻	匏卅	日世		匣	う匯凖厦	匆匱卞厥	匈匳卩厮	577 578 579 580	揉攝撓	插搗撥據	<b>抑</b> 搨撩擒	揄搏撈擅	<b>告摧撼</b> 擇	摰	博 博 擘		搦攪 壛	<b>搶</b> 斯 舉
444 445 446 447	孟目紋	毛杢門	猛勿匁	盲餅	網尤	和戻の	摸蒙籾	模儲貰	茂木問	妄黙悶	505 506 507 508 509	尼廠叭吩咒咥	瓜	參吁呎咀	咏呶	,雙呀呵咄咨	믱	曼吭	燮吼	叮吮	周叨吶呰咸	581 582 583 584 585	舉擺攵敞斷	<b>癔擠攀攷敝旃</b>	<b>廣擡擽收敲旆</b>	抬攘攸數	摩擣攜畋斂旄	撻擯攅效斃族	攬攤敖變	擂擶攣敕斛旛	商擴攫敍斟旙	<sup>挙</sup> 擲攴敘斫无
447 448 449	矢鑓	厄	役	也約		夜訳	爺躍	耶靖	野 柳	弥薮	510 511 512 513		咫匝	5. 西哮啅喟	哈咤哭啖啻	日咾哺啗啾	咼哢唸喘	唳	哥啀啝單	哦啣喙啼	唏啌喀喃	586 587 588 589	町无昜晟曁	旱晏晢暹	杲晄晰曉	旁昊晉暃暾	<b>尼</b> 泉量 瞥曚	旻晞	杳 書	昵	加利時時	こ 昴 晨 暝
449 450 451 452	悠 祐	偷諭憂裕	愈輸揖誘	油唯有遊	佑	優湧郵よ	涌	友猶融	宥猷タ	幽田	514 515 516 517 518	喻嘔嘴嚀嚼	喇嗷嘶嚊囁	喨嘖嘲嚠囃	嗚嗾嘸嚔囀	嗅嗽噫嚏囈	嗟嘛噤嚥囎	嗹嘯	嗜噎噬嚶囓	嗤噐噪嚴□	嗔營嚆囂囮	590 591 592 593 594	曳朶枉枷	曄曷杁杰柯	瞭朏朸枩枴:	曖朖朷杼柬	曚朞杆杪枳:	曠朦杞枌柩	昿朧杠枋枸	曦霸杙枦柤	曩朮杣枡柞	日束杤枅柝
452 453 454 455 456	余揚窯養	羊	誉擁耀抑	輿曜葉欲	預楊蓉沃	傭様要浴	幼洋謡翌	妖溶踊翼	容熔遥淀	予庸用陽	519 520 521 522 523	囹 圷坿埔	圀圈圳炮埒	日国坎垓埓塋	圖圍圻垠堊	圉圓址垳埖	團坏垤埣	圖坩垪堋	· 嗇埀垰堙	[ 圜垈埃堝	圦坡埆塲	595 596 597 598 599	弧柢桀梟梵椢	柯柮桍梏梠椦城	枹栲梭梺棡	附桎梔椏椌	柆梳條梍棍	<b>柧栫梛桾</b>	檜桙梃	栞档檮棊	框桷梹	栩桿桴棘
456 457 458	螺 乱	裸卵	来嵐	莱欄	濫	っ雷藍り	洛蘭	絡覧	落	羅酪	524 525 526 527 528	堡墟壗壻夭奢	)塢墫壙壼夲奠	王字與墨壽夸奧	塰壞壥夂夾獎:	毀墻壜夂竒	墸壤	壟	塹壅壯梦奎	壓壺	墹壑壹夬奘	600 601 602 603 604	棹楷楙榿	棔棠楜椰槁	棧棯楸楡槓	棕椨楫楞榾	椶椪楔楝槎	椒椚楾榁塞	安碘楮楪翅	衆椡椹榲槝	惊棆楴榮榻	椥楹椽槐槃
458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465	葎隆両糧	李痢掠竜凌良林	梨裏略龍寮諒淋	裡劉侶料遼	里流慮梁量琳	旅涼陵臨	陸琉虜猟領輪	律留了療力隣	利 率硫亮瞭緑鱗	吏 立粒僚稜倫麟	529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536	姜婀嫋嬌孀學	-奠奸妍婬嫂嬋子斈寐	妁姙婉媽嬖孕孺	妝姚娵嫣嬲孚 〔	奩佞娥娶嫗嫐孛它	侫娟婢嫦嬪孥	妣娑婪嫩嬶孩	妲娜媚嫖嬾孰	6 姆娉媼嫺孃孳寇	姨娚媾嫻孅孵寉	605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612	榧樛樔樶檍 櫑欖	樮槿槫橸檠檗櫟鬱	榑權樊橇檄蘗檪欟	榠槹樒橢檢檻櫩欸	榜槲櫁橙檣櫃櫪欷	樣 橦 櫂 櫻 盜		槞榱橄樸 檳糵飲	槨樞樌鳥 檬櫺歇	樂槭橲檐 橼欒歃
466 467 468 469 470	瑠嶺齡漣	塁怜暦煉蓮		累礼列練錬	聯	烈	隷	例零廉	冷霊恋	励麗憐	537 538 539 540 541 542	寔寳尹 岑峇崗	尅屁屐岔峙	將屆	實專屎孱岫峽崛	寢對屓屬岻峺崑	尔 屮岶峭	尠 乢岼嶌	九 労岷峪	屹峅崋	寶尸岌岾崕岭	613 614 615 616 617 618	歉殀殯毬氣汾淵	歐殄殲毫汞汨泝	<b>歙殃殱毳汕汳</b> :	<b>歔殍殳毯汢沒沱</b> 9	麾汪沐	嗀	毆	毋气沚		歿殫毟氤沛泗
470 471 472 473	露牢肋	労狼録	婁篭論	廊老	呂弄聾	朗蝋	楼	炉榔六	浪	路漏禄	543 544 545 546 547 548	嵌嶢巓帑	寄品嶝巒帛幢	嶬巖帶	<b>喘嵋嶮</b> ≪帷幇	昆嵬嶽巫幄幵	已幃	嵶嶷巵	崚嶇嶼帋幎廰	崙嶄巉帚幗广	崘嶂巍帙幔庠	619 620 621 622 623 624	泅 洽浚涵淅	が油洸浹淇淺	返沮泛洙浙淦淙	<b>心泯洵涎涸淤</b>	沾泙洳涕淆淕	洒濤淬	洌涅淞	浣淹淌	涓渕	汕浤渊淒渮
473 474 475 476 477		鷲腕	亙	倭亘		n 話詫	不正善稟	賄蕨	脇椀	惑湾	549 550 551 552 553	幟 廁 廬 彜 彎	廂廖	廈	廐	廏	_		_			625 626 627 628	渙湃滉溥	湲渺溷滂;	湟湎滓溟	渾渤溽潁	<b>渣滿溯漑</b>	湫渝滄灌	渫游溲滬	湶溂滔滸	湍溪滕滾	渟溘溏漿
478	乖亟仂佝侑俑倅	弌乘 ┤仗佗佯俚伜	丐亂亢仞佇來俐俶	丕」亰仭佶侖俤倡	个豫毫仟侈儘俥倩	丱亊亶价侏俔倚倬	、舒从伉侘俟倨俾	<b>丼弎仍佚佻俎倔俯</b>	ノ于仄估佩俘倪們	又亞仆佛佰俛倥倆	554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563	<b>t彎徃徠悳怕恊悁</b> 惠愆愍	廱弋弯徂徨忿怫恆悍悄惓惶愎	聽弑彑彿徭怡怦恍惧悛悴惷慇	徊徼恠快恣悃悖忰愀愾	很忖怙怺恃悚悗悽惴慤	墨廸弭彙徑忻恂恚恤 悒惆惺愧	徇忤怩恁恂 俐悵愃慊	從忸怎恪恬 悋惘惚愿	徙忱怱恷恫 惡慍惻愼	非忝怛恟恙 悸愕惱愬	630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639	潜澳濔瀏瀲炮熙熕燠	漾潛澣濘濾灑烟熈熨燬	漓潭澡濱瀛灣烋煦熬燧	<b>漲滷澂澤濮瀚炙烝煢燗燵</b>	澆潼澹濛潴炒烙煌熹燼	潺潘濆瀉瀝炯焉煖熾	<b>濟澎澪瀋瀘烱烽煬燒</b>	澁澑濟濺瀟炬焜熏燉	澀濂濕瀑瀰炸焙燻燔	潯潦濬瀁瀾炳焕熄燎

371 See next page

1st to				digit				1st to					th c						1st to					1th c					
3rd digit		3	4			78	9	3rd digit		1	2	3	4	5			8		3rd digit	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
640 641	燹 燿 爲 爻 爼	爍爿			爨籠	爭爬賣牴	爰牾	716 717	艝	艚	艟₩	艤芍苴	艢芒苳	艨芫	艪	<u>瀘</u>		艱	792 793	鏨 鐓	鏥鐃	鏘鐇	鏃鐐	鏝鐶	鏐鐫	鏈鐵	鏤鐡	鐚绁	鐔鑁
642	爲 爻 爼 犂 犁 犇	犒	犖	檀?	巖犭	こう む む む む む む む む む む む む む む む む む む む	狃	718	<b>!</b> 艶苣	狧	艾苒	뤅.	支	点	芟	<u>蜀</u>	芬苻	苡苹	794	鑒		鏞	靀鑠	鑢	鯔	鑪	罰	鑰	鑵
643	<u></u> 种 狄 狎		狢	狼	疫狂	夾狷	倏	719	苞	斻	苷	蒹	표		~ ,			·	795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	菛	閇	閫
644	猗 猊 猜	猖	猝	猴		夾狷星猥	猾	720			莤	茖	茲	茱莚	荀義	訪	荐莢	苔莖	796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻
645	獎獏默	獗	獪	獨	寧曹	<b>獣 獵</b>	獻	721	茯	茳	1茴茗莇	日茉茗茘莊芋	亞	莚	莪 i	<b>答</b> 范	莢		797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
646 647	獺 珈 玳 琅 瑯 琥	斑				礼 珞 軍 瑟	璢瑙	722 723	茯茣莨	茵茫莎菴	助萓	壯	余菎	莵	荳莎	忍		莉	798	關陏	闡陋	[闥陷	闢	所陞	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
648	琅 瑯 琥 瑁 瑜 瑩	珸	坍 11	琺 :		軍 瑟 堇 璋		723	日幕	电苣				菽蒟				菁蔆	799 800	ΡĦ	Rata	阳	陜陆	隆陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
649	璧瓊瓏	1.現.瓔瓧	驳	-1113 -		王坪	垁	725	森	<sup>1</sup> 萇葭葩蒟	菠萪葆蓙	菲萼萬蓍蓴蕘蕋	萍蕚葯蒻	泡蒄	葷	苭 朝		麚	801	險	陝隧	1陟隠雍	陦隲	礘	隴	蒙	隷	價值	雎
650	一颈瓣	쥢	瓩	瓮〕	钝瓦	分瓱	瓸	726	:菻蒂蒿:	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	高	蓊	葢	蒹	802	雋	雉	雍	襍	隰 雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
651	瓮 甄 甃	甅	甌	- 14	甍 奚	舊 甓	甞	727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖	803	霈	霓	翣	霑	霏		霙	霤	霪	霰
652	甦 甬 甼 瞰 畤 畧 疊 疊 畳	盙	魪	畊	<u></u> 既 [	12 14	畚	728	营蒡蓼	<b>阿蔡蕀蕁蕭薺</b> 井	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	ξ I	蔕	蔔	804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
653 654	畩 畤 畧 疊 疉 疂	畫疔		畸		置 疇 売 痂	畴疳	729 730	쫭	棘	舜	尭	蕈蕕	志	***	<b>5</b>	<b>#</b>	ᇑ	805 806	靤靺	[靦鞆	にいたいとうない。	闘 勤 鞏	靫	靱	靹鞨	鞅鞦	靼鞣	鞁鞳
655	壹 壹 亘   痃 疵 疽	11 疸	水疼			む 加 至 痒	痙痙	731	薨	守憲	業	薜	瘤藪	薀薇	殖 辞	會讀		薊薐	807	鞴	料理	鞯	重韈	¥ 鞐 韋 頸	鞜韜	輜	₩X 窟	轹韲	覧
656	痣 痞 痾		痼	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~	。 版	車 痲		732	藉	齏	驘藏	薛薹	顡	臟藕	藝	藥		蔼	808	部	韃韵	瓬	藏頌	顫	顧	謮		五	顥
657	瘋瘍瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	<b>瘡</b>	廏 瘤	瘴	733	蘊	稐	腯	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿	809	顮	飁	顫	駬	顰					
658	瘰瘻癇	廢		癜	庽 兆	窿 癢	癨	734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	Ľ	蚩	魁	810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱餔	颶	飄	飃
659	癩癪癧	癬発皚	癰發	白	<u></u>	日白	슶	735	蚋蛔	蘓乕蚌蛞	(虔蚶蛩	鬿蛬	蛄蛟	蛆蛛	蚰	<b>皖</b>	蠣	蚫	811	飆	i 顧 能 談	l 飫 餅	顧餃餬	餉	餒餽	鮪	餘綱	餡	餝
660 661	癲 癶 皖 皓 晳	天皑		皀 皴!	見 り し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し	反 皋 軍 皺	皎盂	736 737	垇蜀	跖蜃	蛍蛻	蚕蜑	蚁	蚞蜍				蜈蜿	812 813	餞饐	<b></b> 段 饋	計論	鲥饒	餮饌	髋饕	餾馗	饂馘	饉馥	饅馭
662	<u></u> 二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二二	盏	盡	盥	戦り	₩ 靈 蘯	爵	738	<b>奥</b> 勝	薑	城蜥	雪蜩	「蜉蜚	<u></u> 「 「 に	蜩	割い	嫋蝌	蜴	814	臨	鼠馼	饑駟駸	蔚	臣駝	畐貽	<b></b> 窟	駁駭	酸較	駱
663	眈 眇 眄	眩	眤	眞	皆風	此 眛	眷	739	蝴	蜻蝗	蜥蝨	蝮	幅		-			200	815	馮駲	[ 馼 駻 驂	駸	駛騁驃驩	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
664	眸 睇 睚	睨	睫	睛	脾 署	客 睾	睹	740		蝓	蝣蟐	锡雖	齫	螢	螟			蟋	816	驅	驂	驀驤	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
665	瞎 瞋 瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	遺	愛星	瞼	741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖		蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻	817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骬		骼	髀
666 667	瞽 瞻 矇 砌 砒 礦	矍砠	矗	矚硅碯	肟克	(定花骨	矼	742 743			蟠	蠏	蠍蠡	蟾蠱		當	蟒	蟒	818 819	髏髫	觸髮	髓影	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髶	髯
668	砌砒礦 碚碌碣	11日 石	礪碪	低口	呼吸	化岩	硼磔	743	堔	蠖	蠕術	蠢衙		溫衢		<u>高</u>		蠻袞	820	苕	茇髤	髴镺	髱鬢	影響	鬟	髰	鬣	I≡≡I	圉
669	碾 碼 磅	磊	磬		~ 포	HWI	W/K	745	袑	鞀	綌	衲	袂	袗		<b>旅</b>	袑	翟	821	鬨	髻鬩	影鬆鬪	鬘鬮	[鬚鬯]	噕	鬢魄	颬	魏	魍魍
670	磧 磚	磽	磴	礇	礒砳	當礙	礬	746	<sup>蝦</sup> 衄 衵 袍 装 褓 褸  蓴	袤	衒袵袰褂褞禅襤	裢	袱	裃	祈	寄	裘	裙	822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
671	礫 祀 祠	祗	祟	祚;	秘礼	犮 祺	祿	747	裝	裹	褂	袿裼!	裴	裨	裲	凄 ?	褌	褊	823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊鯡	鮹鰺	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
672	禊 禝 禧	齋秡	禪秣	禮	釀品	<b>馬</b> 禹 其稙	秉	748	褓	襞	褞	褥襠襭	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶	824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
673 674	1 和 秋 秬 稟 禀 稱	松稻	林稾	稈澤稷	稍移	<sup>兵 怛</sup> 惠 稺	稠穡	749 750	侒	俾」	伴蛇	临城	襞襪	襯	襴	擧	襾	覃	825 826	鰔鰛	鰉鰥	鰓鰤	鰌鰡	鰆鰰	<b>に</b> 鰈 鱇	鰒鰲	鰊鱆	鰄鰾	鰮鱚
675	未 示 倍 職	瘤	奔	12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 12 1		云 11年 寄 5定	留	751	霸	蕭	層	调		都	覦			重	827	鱠	鱧	齡	鱸	鶣	酈島	<u>黒</u>	黯鴉	膈	扃
676	職業 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)	穰窰竕笂笶筍筬	穹窶竓笏筐	( 穽 竅 站 笊	贏	認定的意思。	竇	752	覈覺訃詒誨詞	覽	顫	觀	觚	觜	骶	鮮	觴	觸	828	巚	鴱	鱶鴪鴾鵞	盫	鳧鶯	<b>◎</b> 鳥鴣	<u></u> 鳰 鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
677	竊计竏	竕	竓	站	竚 ウ	立竡	竢	753	訃	訖	訐	Ĩ	訛	訝	訥	可	詁	詛	829	鵁	鴆	鴾	震衛鵤	鵈					
678	竦 竭 竰	笂	笏	笊	笆兒	節 笘	笙	754	敱	詆	鼍	詼誥		詬				誄	830	+-	鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
679	答 笵 笨	失竺		*	<u>**</u> 4	~ ~~	<u>~</u>	755	調	誠	設立	詰	誦	誚	誣	享		諂	831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤鷂	鶩勳	鶲	鷄	鴿	鶻
680 681	筐 笄 筧 筰 筱 箚 箋 箒 箴 篆 篝	旬節	笋筮	筌 箝	筅 ĝ 箘 ĵ	宦 籠 籠 篌	筴箜篏	756 757	1.2211221122112211221122112211221122112	課	語詞	諧塞	諤謚	諱諡	謔	宣盗	諢	諷謠	832 833	鶸鷯	鶴譽	鷆鸚	鷏鸛	缿鸞	鷙鹵	鷓鹹	鷸鹽	鷦麁	鷭麈
682	筧筰筱	箏	楶	箙	靈寶	2 復	薇	758		諛鞫	曌	謇謫		譚	謖譁	潙		譎	834	麋	鷽麌	顫	麝麝	鳧	麝	麥	蘝	巖	衝
683	箴篆篝	篩	篑	簔 1	篦り	れんち いちんちょう いちんちょう しんしん しんしん しんしん しんしん しんしん しんしん しんしん しん	簀	759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫				~~~	1.0	835	麭	靡	譽	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	薍	颥
684	簇 簓 篳 簟 簷 簫	篷簽	「「「「「「「「「」」」。	簍籃	篇節	<b>簀簧</b> 賃 籀	簪籐	760		譟讖	譬讙	譯讚	譴	譽豁	讀	讌	讎	讒	836	黠	黥鼇	(黨鼈	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼
685	管 簷 簫	簽	籇	監察	籔り	<b>賃 籀</b>	籐	761	讓豐貍	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈 夏	豌	豎	837	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鐜		鼬	鼾	齊	日間
686 687	籘 籟 籤 粭 粢 粫	籖粡	甯	籬	料 料	能和	粤粹	762 763	豐郷	豕貎	家狼	豬豼	いる貘	豺戝	貂盾	路 [	貅貽	貊貨	838 839		齣齶	齟龕	齠龜	齡龠	齦	齧	齬	齪	圖至
688	將 粢 粫 粽 糀 糅	粡糂	糘	版:	粲粲	て に て に に に に に に に に に に に に に	糯	764	貳	貳	眨	費	资	賤				賺	840			麚槇			澟	熙			
689	糲 糴 糶	糺	紆	1710			1115	765	賻	贄	贅	贊		贏	膽			贓				174	~	гщ	1215	////			
690	紂 紜	1.糺紕絖綏	新紊約	絅	絋李	と	紿	766	賍	贄贔	贅贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁;	趙	跂											
691	紵 絆 絳 ‴ 柇 條	絖	約	絲	絨	と に 総 総 総	絣	767	밟	跃	跏	跚						跫吻											
692 693	經 綉 絛 緇 綽 綫	<b>妆</b> ヶ	絽綢	綛:綯	綺系	<sup>終</sup> 絶 兪 綟	綵綰	768 769	跟蹂	疏踵	跼踰	踈踊	踉蹊	ШE	岆ì	锯	踐	踟											
694	<b>緇綽緩縱</b> 編編 緩縱	總緞	緻	祠 割	搖	咸 縊	縣	770	岆木	鬊	豒	踴蹌蹲	<b>峡</b> 蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤:	蹠	踪											
695	縡 縒 縱	縟	縉	縋	擬 凝	翏繦	縻	771	蹣	蹇蹕	蹉蹶	蹲	蹼	蹈躁	躇	圈		躋											
696	縵 縹 稝	纒	縲	縺	德約	閒 繖	繞	772	躊	躀	躑	躚	躙	躪	躡	躬!	躰	軆											
697	播繚繹	(繪妹		繼續		齊 緕 ᄪ 焔		773						軛	軣	睽 !		軫											
698 699	辦 繿 纈 繊 纛 纜	纉缸	續缺	纒:	附用前	嬰纔	纖	774 775			輅輳	輕輻		輙轅				輛											
700	14歳 - 思	壘	缺罎	罐	网≗	₽罔	罘	776	靜	上	祈鹹	糟轜		颗轣				特辣											
701	苦罠罨	罩	菻	罸	羂 髴	<b>ド 幕</b>	羈	777	辭	「轎辯	Ě	迎	迥	迢	迪	<u></u>		迴											
702	羇 羌 羔	羞	羝	포스 :	<b>Z</b> ¥	三 美	恚	778	逅	迹	迺	逑	涇	浚	消			逋											
703	羹 羶 羸	譱	翅飜耿聳肛冑腋腓	翆	羽豸	國為警令聶內永國翔耒聒聹冒胯	翡	779	逧	逶	逵遐遯邏	逹	迸塗隨邯	200			-												
704 705	羹 羶 羸 翦 翩 翱 親 耜 骰 観 観 観	翘	鄃	省	能量	記書	耘聘	780 781	調	逶遏遨邉鄂酩醵釡	返逐	逞	迴陸	迴遲	退調			遘邀											
705	私 相 楜   影 智 腔	将	松谷	響	卿耳腹	〒 脳 暦 脇	肟聽	781	遞邊	巡邉	巡羅	远	旭	進	避び	訳 i		巡扈											
707	津 肄 肆	肅	菎	言	ΞĨ	内冒	肬	783	郭	鄂	鄒	鄙	酆	鄰	訂	就	設	置											
708	聿 肄 肆 胛 胥 胙 脛 脩 脣 臍	胝	曺	胚	痒 Ĩ	永胯	肬胱	784	郛酥醪釟	酩	「鄒酳醴釛」	酲	醋	醉	誦	i い い い に に に に に に に に に う に う に う に う に	醫	醯											
709 710	脛脩脣	脯						785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	懌	釐	釖											
710	隋 腆	脾	膅	腑	拼服	建腮	腥	786	釟	釜	皷	敪	觐	觐	罰	助	設	鈬											
711 712	脑 肤 膃   腔 腔 脂	膈	<b></b> 唐	防	肖朋	<i>参 1</i> 國 春 11巻	膤殿	787 788	鈕鉋	蚁	<b></b> 纵 谷	<b>蚶</b> 鉎	<u></u> 经	<b>赵</b> 纡	<b>约</b>	記 訳	銕銹	鈿銷											
713	産 底 協	順脑	鷹	₩ 職	道り	回腹	盲臟	789	<b>邦</b>	郄	圆綩	黥	鰗	业白	199P I	е <b>х</b> , 1	助了	归											
714	<b>聿胛脛 腦膣臂臠舍</b> 肄胥脩隋腴腟膺臧舐 肆胙脣腆膃膓臉臺舖	<b></b> <b></b> 『 翹 耨 聨 肅 脂 脏 脯 脾 膈 膩 臍 臻 舩	膊膰臑臾舫	腑膀膵臓舁舸	6 5	建翏遀葛眞孚腮膕膽臚與艙	臀臟舊艘	790	-	鈑鉐錏錙鍮	鉞銜鋺錢鍖	逹遑遶邨鄙酲醺釼鉗銖鍄錚鎰	<b>邰鄲醋釀釵鉅銓錮錣鎬</b>	錺	錵	試 i	鍜	鍠											
715	含 舐 舖	舩	舫	舸	舳舟	孚艙	艘	791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	試話	螷	鏗											

## FM radio station list

	Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
F	lokkaido & To	bhoku	
		AIR-G'	80.4
	Hokkaido	FM NORTH WAVE	82.5
		NHK-FM	85.2
		FM青森 <fm aomori=""></fm>	80.0
	Aomori	エフエム岩手 <fm lwate=""></fm>	76.1
		NHK-FM	86.0
		エフエム岩手 <fm lwate=""></fm>	76.1
	Iwate	Date fm	77.1
		NHK-FM	83.1
	Miyaqi	Date fm	77.1
	Miyagi	NHK-FM	82.5
		FM秋田	82.8
	Akita	エフエム岩手 <fm iwate=""></fm>	76.1
		NHK-FM	86.7
		Boy-FM	80.4
	Yamagata	Date fm	77.1
		NHK-FM	82.1
		ふくしまFM <fukushima fm=""></fukushima>	81.8
	Fukushima	Date fm	77.1
		NHK-FM	85.3
K	anto	1	
		TOKYO FM	80.0
		J-WAVE	81.3
		Inter FM	76.1
		FMヨコハマ <fm yokohama=""></fm>	84.7
	Tokyo	NACK5	79.5
		bayfm78	78.0
		FM-FUJI	83.0
		放送大学 <the air="" of="" the="" university=""></the>	77.1
		NHK-FM	82.5
		FMヨコハマ <fm yokohama=""></fm>	84.7
		TOKYO FM	80.0
		FM-FUJI	83.0
		J-WAVE	81.3
	Kanagawa	NACK5	79.5
		bayfm78	78.0
		Inter FM	76.5
		NHK-FM	81.9
		NACK5	79.5
		TOKYO FM	80.0
		FMヨコハマ <fm yokohama=""></fm>	84.7
	0.11	FM-FUJI	83.0
	Saitama	J-WAVE	81.3
		bayfm78	78.0
		Inter FM	76.1
		NHK-FM	85.1
	L	bayfm78	78.0
	Chiba	TOKYO FM	80.0
		FMヨコハマ <fm yokohama=""></fm>	84.7
-			1

Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
	J-WAVE	81.3
Chiba	NACK5	79.5
Ghiba	Inter FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	80.7
	TOKYO FM	80.0
	J-WAVE	81.3
Ibaraki	NACK5	79.5
Ibaraki	bayfm78	78.0
	Inter FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	83.2
	RADIO BERRY	76.4
	TOKYO FM	80.0
	FMぐんま <fm gunma=""></fm>	86.3
Tochigi	J-WAVE	81.3
	NACK5	79.5
	NHK-FM	80.3
	FMぐんま <fm gunma=""></fm>	86.3
	TOKYO FM	80.0
	放送大学 <the air="" of="" the="" university=""></the>	78.8
Gunma	J-WAVE	81.3
	NACK5	79.5
	NHK-FM	79.5 81.6
Hokuriku & Ko		01.0
	1	77.5
Niigoto	FM新潟 <fm niigata=""> FM PORT</fm>	79.0
Niigata	NHK-FM	82.3
		82.3
T	FMとやま <fm toyama=""></fm>	80.5
Toyama	FM石川 <fm ishikawa=""></fm>	
	NHK-FM	81.5
	FM石川 <fm ishikawa=""></fm>	80.5
Ishikawa	FM福井 <fm fukui=""></fm>	76.1
	FMとやま <fm toyama=""></fm>	82.7
	NHK-FM	82.2
	FM福井 <fm fukui=""></fm>	76.1
Fukui	FM石川 <fm ishikawa=""></fm>	80.5
	NHK-FM	83.4
Nagano	FM長野 <fm nagano=""></fm>	79.7
. agano	NHK-FM	84.0
	FM-FUJI	83.0
Yamanashi	TOKYO FM	80.0
	NHK-FM	85.6
Tokai		
	Radio80	80.0
	FM AICHI	80.7
0.1	FM三重 <fm mie=""></fm>	78.9
Gifu	ZIP-FM	77.8
	RADIO-i	79.5
	NADIO-I	
	NHK-FM	83.6
Shizuoka		

Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
Shizuoka	RADIO-i	79.9
Shizuoka	NHK-FM	88.8
	FM AICHI	80.7
	ZIP-FM	77.8
	RADIO-i	79.5
Aichi	FM三重 <fm mie=""></fm>	78.9
	Radio80	80.0
	NHK-FM	82.5
	FM三重 <fm mie=""></fm>	78.9
	FM AICHI	80.7
	ZIP-FM	77.8
Mie	RADIO-i	79.5
	Radio80	80.0
Kinki	NHK-FM	81.8
NINKI	tes seals	05.1
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM802	80.2
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
Osaka	Kiss-FM KOBE	89.9
	$\alpha$ -STATION	89.4
	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
	NHK-FM	88.1
	Kiss-FM KOBE	89.9
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM香川 <fm kagawa=""></fm>	78.6
Lhinne	FM802	80.2
Hyogo	$\alpha$ -STATION	89.4
	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
	NHK-FM	86.5
	α-STATION	89.4
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM802	80.2
Kyoto	Kiss-FM KOBE	89.9
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
	NHK-FM	82.8
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM802	80.2
	Kiss-FM KOBE	89.9
Nara		89.4
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
	NHK-FM	87.4
	e-radio	77.0
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM802	80.2
Shiga	$\alpha$ -STATION	89.4
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
	Radio80	80.0
	NHK-FM	84.0
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM802	80.2
Wakayama	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
	FMCOCOLO	76.5
	NHK-FM	84.7

Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
Chugoku & Sh	ikoku	
Tottori	V-air	78.8
TOLLOTT	NHK-FM	85.8
Chimana	V-air	77.4
Shimane	NHK-FM	84.5
	FM岡山 <fm okayama=""></fm>	76.8
	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7
Okayama	広島FM <hiroshima fm=""></hiroshima>	78.2
Okayama	V-air	77.4
	FM香川 <fm kagawa=""></fm>	78.6
	NHK-FM	88.7
	広島FM <hiroshima fm=""></hiroshima>	78.2
Hiroshima	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7
1 moonina	V-air	77.4
	NHK-FM	88.3
	FM山口 <fm yamaguchi=""></fm>	79.2
	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7
	広島FM <hiroshima fm=""></hiroshima>	78.2
Yamaguchi	V-air	77.4
	CROSS FM	78.7
	LOVE FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	85.3
	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
Tokushima	fm osaka	85.1
	NHK-FM	83.4
	FM香川 <fm kagawa=""></fm>	78.6
	fm osaka	85.1
	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7
Kagawa	広島FM <hiroshima fm=""></hiroshima>	78.2
	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
	FM岡山 <fm okayama=""></fm>	76.8
	NHK-FM	86.0
	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7
Ehime	広島FM <hiroshima fm=""></hiroshima>	78.2
-	FM山口 <fm yamaguchi=""></fm>	79.2
	NHK-FM	87.7
	FM高知 <fm kochi=""></fm>	81.6
Kochi	FM徳島 <fm tokushima=""></fm>	80.7
	NHK-FM	87.5
Kyushu & Okir	1	I
	FM福岡 <fm fukuoka=""></fm>	80.7
	CROSS FM	78.7
	LOVE FM	76.1
Fukuoka	FMK	77.4
	FM山口 <fm yamaguchi=""></fm>	79.2
	FM佐賀 <fm saga=""></fm>	77.9
	NHK-FM	84.8
	FM佐賀 <fm saga=""></fm>	77.9
	FM福岡 <fm fukuoka=""></fm>	80.7
	SMILE-FM	79.5
Saga	FMK	77.4
	CROSS FM	78.7
	LOVE FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	81.6

L

Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
	SMILE-FM	79.5
	FMK	77.4
Nagasaki	FM佐賀 <fm saga=""></fm>	77.9
	LOVE FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	84.5
	FMK	77.4
	FM福岡 <fm fukuoka=""></fm>	80.7
	SMILE-FM	79.5
Kumamoto	FM佐賀 <fm saga=""></fm>	77.9
Rumaniolo	μFM	79.8
	CROSS FM	78.7
	LOVE FM	76.1
	NHK-FM	85.4
	FM大分 <fm oita=""></fm>	88.0
Oita	FM福岡 <fm fukuoka=""></fm>	80.7
	FM愛媛 <fm ehime=""></fm>	79.7

	Area	Radio station	Frequency (MHz)
		FM山口 <fm yamaguchi=""></fm>	79.2
	Oita	CROSS FM	78.7
		NHK-FM	88.9
		JOY FM	83.2
	Miyazaki	μFM	79.8
		NHK-FM	86.2
		μFM	79.8
	Kagoshima	JOY FM	83.2
		NHK-FM	85.6
	Okinawa	FM沖縄 <fm okinawa=""></fm>	87.3
	Okillawa	NHK-FM	88.1
Т	V sound		
		TV-1ch	95.7
	Common	TV-2ch	101.7
		TV-3ch	107.7

## Available combination for Multiaccess

#### Following combinations of functions are available by Multiaccess.

- O: Available without terminating currently activated functions
- X: Unavailable

				Currently activated function					
			Voice call	Videophone call	Packet communication	64K data communication	i-mode		
	Voice call	Dial	×*1	×	0	×	0		
	Voice can	Receive	×*2	×*3	0	×*3	0		
z	Videophone	Dial	×	×	×	×	○*8		
Newly	call	Receive	×* <sup>3</sup>	×*4	$\times$ * <sup>4</sup>	$\times^{*4}$	×*4		
ly activated	Packet communication	Send	0	×	×	×	×		
ivat	64K data	Send	×	×	×	×	×		
	communication	Receive	×*3	×*4	×*4	$\times^{*4}$	×*4		
function	i-mode		0	×	×	×	×		
ctio	i-mode mail	Send	0	×	×	×	<b>○</b> * <sup>7</sup>		
Ĵ	I-mode mail	Receive*5	○*6	×	×	×	O*7		
	SMS	Send	0	×	0	0	0		
	51015	Receive	○*6	○*6	0	○*6	0		

\*1 Subscribers to Call waiting service can hold the current call to make another call.

\*2 Subscribers to Call waiting service can answer an incoming call from another party during a call. Also Voice mail/Call forwarding service subscribers can set In-call arrival act to respond to the call. →P341

- \*<sup>3</sup> Subscribers to any of Call waiting service, Voice mail service, or Call forwarding service can answer a newly incoming call by ending a current call/transmission. →P341
- \*4 Incoming calls are saved as Missed calls.
- \*5 Reception of MessageR/F is also included.
- \*6 Ring tone does not sound and reception is informed only by Notify icon. However, reception is informed by Notify icon or Reception status screen during 64K data communication.
- \*7 While Client certificate of i-mode setting is activated, sending/receiving i-mode mail and MessageR/F or Check new message is not available.
- \*8 i-mode connection is terminated when a videophone call is made. i-mode screen returns after the call is ended.

## Available combination for Multitask

#### The following table shows which item can be newly activated from Task menu, while executing/under setting of each function.

O: Available to start/switch

X: Unavailable

Currently activated function activated Task menu	Dial input	Voice call	Videophone	i-mode	i-αppli	Compose message *1	View mail/message *1	Send mail <sup>*1</sup> Check new message Receive mail/message	Chat mail	Data box Life tools (1) FM radio <sup>*2</sup>	Private Life tools (2) Direct Call	Profile	Life tools (3)	Life tools (4)
Dial input	×	×	×	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Mail (1) i-mode (1) <sup>*3</sup> Channel list	0	0	×	×	×	0	*4 ()	0	*4	0	0	0	0	×
i-αppli	0	0	×	×	×	0	0	0	0	○*12	0	$\bigcirc$	0	$\times^{*_5}$
Mail (2) <sup>*3</sup> i-mode (2)	0	0	×	0	0	0	×	0	×	<b>*</b> <sup>14</sup>	0	0	0	0
Mail (3) i-mode (3)	0	0	×	0	0	0	0	×	0	0	0	0	0	*19 〇
Mail (4)*3	0	0	×	0	0	$\times^{*_6}$	0	<b>*</b> 7	×	○*17	0	0	0	0
Chat mail	0	0	×	0	0	×	×	0	×	O <sup>*12</sup>	0	0	0	0
Data box Life tools (1)* <sup>3</sup> FM radio	0	*8	×	0	*15	0	0	0	*15	×	<b>*</b> <sup>15</sup>	0	*16	*20
Private *3 Life tools (2) Direct Call	0	*9	×	0	0	0	0	0	0	○*12	×	0	0	0
Profile	0	0	O <sup>*10</sup>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	×	0	$\bigcirc$
Life tools (3)*3	0	0	×*11	0	0	0	0	0	0	O*13	0	0	×*11	×*11
Life tools (4)	0	0	×	×	$\times^{*5}$	0	0	○*18	0	O <sup>*12</sup>	0	0	×	×

: Receive option

Mail (1) : Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages, Search personal Mail (2)

Mail (3) : Check new message, Check SMS Mail (4)

: Compose message, Compose SMS message, Deco-mail template

: i-Menu, Bookmark, Go to location, Screen memo, Last URL i-mode (1)

i-mode (2) MessageR, MessageF

i-mode (3) : Check new message

: Bar code reader, miniSD, Camera, Jpn-Eng dictionary, Eng-Jpn dictionary, Kana-Eng dictionary, Life tools (1) Vocabulary quiz, Word recognizer, Voice recorder, Music Player

Life tools (2) : Calculator, Alarm

Life tools (3) : GPS (Position location, Location history, Notify location, Service clients)

Life tools (4) : GPS (Navigation, GPS software, Service settings), Compass

\*1 i-mode mail and SMS are included.

\*2 Any new task cannot be started while shooting still images in continuous mode, shooting movie, or editing with dubbing. \*3 The same function cannot be activated from both FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card (such as a phonebook entry in FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card).

- \*4 Receive option of mail is not available.
- \*5 Navigation can be activated.
- \*6 Decorated mail template can be activated.
- \*7 Unavailable while sending Mails
- \*8 Data box, miniSD, Shoot movie, Character reader, Word recognizer, Voice recorder, Music Player and FM radio cannot be activated.
- \*9 Play record message and Play VoiceMemo-Call are not available.

\* 10 Edit is not available.

- \*11 Only Notify location can be activated.
- \* 12 Unavailable while activating Music Player.
- \* 13 Only Position location and Notify location are available while activating Music Player.
- \* <sup>14</sup> Search personal cannot be used while activating Music Player.
- \* 15 Music Player cannot be activated.
- \*16 Music Player can be activated only when Position location or Notify location is on the screen.
- \* 17 Deco-mail template is not available while activating Music Player.
- \*18 Service settings is not available.
- \* <sup>19</sup> Check new message cannot be activated while activating Service settings.
- \*<sup>20</sup> Music Player cannot be started while activating GPS software or Compass.

## Services available with FOMA terminal

Services available	Phone number
Collect call (cost charged on receiver)	106 (no area code)
Fixed-line phone number-reference guide and DoCoMo mobile phone number-reference guide (charged service) (Numbers not opened to public are not available.)	104 (no area code)
Telegram (charged service) From 8 am to 10 pm	115 (no area code)
Time tone (charged service)	117 (no area code)
Weather forecast (charged service)	Area code of the region to check + 177
Police emergency	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance emergency	119 (no area code)
Marine emergency and accident report	118 (no area code)
Emergency message service (charged service)	171 (no area code)

#### Information

When using Collect call (106), Call cost and 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) of handling fee for each call are charged to the receiver (as of May, 2006).

●When using number reference service (104), Call cost and 100 yen (105 yen including tax) of reference fee are charged. (→P328) This service is free for the sight-impaired or physically-challenged. Call 116 (NTT sales center) from fixed-line phone for details (as of May, 2006).

•When calling to 110, 119, or 118 from FOMA terminal, the caller's location cannot be specified by the receiver. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you back for confirmation, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your phone number and detailed information of your present location. When making an emergency call, stay at one place not to be interrupted in the connection, and keep the power on after calling for about 10 minutes, so that you can receive calls.

Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or fixed-line phone if your call cannot be connected to the local authorities.

- •When calling to a receiver who uses Call forwarding from a fixed-line phone and sets the forwarding destination to a mobile phone, the caller may hear Ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy, out of service area or powered off, depending on the setting of the fixed-line phone/the mobile phone.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q2, Message Dial, credit call are not available. (However, credit calls to FOMA terminal can be made from a fixed-line phone or a pay phone.)

## **Optional and related devices**

Combining FOMA terminal with optional devices provides you with a wide variety of uses, from personal to business. Some devices are not available in some areas. For details, contact sales outlets such as DoCoMo shop. For details about the optional devices, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch P01/P02 FOMA internal assist antenna
- Flat-plug stereo-earphone set P01
- Earphone/microphone with a switch P001\*1/P002\*1
- Stereo earphone set P001\*1
- Earphone terminal P001\*1
- Earphone jack convert adapter P001
- In-car hands-free kit 01\*2
- FOMA in-car hands-free connection cable 01
- · FOMA AC adapter 01 for global use

- FOMA USB connection cable
- Battery pack SA03
- Desktop holder SA03
- Rear cover SA03
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- FOMA dry battery adapter 01

- Carrying case S 01
- \*1 Earphone jack convert adapter P001 is required to connect to SA702i.
- \*<sup>2</sup> FOMA in-car hands-free connection cable 01 is required to connect to SA702i.

## Data link software

You can exchange data of Phonebook/Schedule/Mail/Melody/Still image/Movie between FOMA terminal and PC, using Data link software.

#### You can download Data link software from Internet sites. (Download with Internet function of FOMA terminal is not available. Use a PC.) Communication fee is charged separately for downloading.

- · FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required to connect FOMA terminal and PC, for data transmission. Infrared communication is not available.
- Execute data transmission under the condition that Stand-by display is shown with FOMA terminal.
- You cannot forward the following data to PC; Still image/Movie/i-motion/Melody prohibited to send outside of FOMA terminal by the copyright law, such as information downloaded in forms of i-mode/i-appli.

Refer to the following Internet site or Help of the data link software, for details about download method/transferable data/operation environment/operation procedures/ restrictions.

SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Telecom Company: http://www.sanyo-keitai.com

#### Compatible OS

Windows 98SE, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese version)

#### Before using

SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. assumes no warranty for any operation, performance, and quality of this software or for inability to use for particular purposes, and also assumes no legal liability for any defect whatsoever. SANYO shall not be liable for any compensation for damages of any kind whatsoever, including direct, incidental, or consequential damages, incurred by use or inability to use of this software.

- In-car holder 01

Inquiries about Data link software

#### SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Data link software support center

00 0120-70-2534

Service available from 9:00 am to 5:00 pm

(excluding Saturdays, Sundays, National holidays and holidays prescribed by SANYO Electric)

 $\boldsymbol{\cdot}$  You can call from a fixed-line phone, mobile phone, or PHS terminal.

• To avoid misdial, please double-check the number before dialing.

## Movie player software

# QuickTimePlayer (Free) ver.6.4 (or ver.6.3 + 3GPP) or a later released version from Apple Computer, Inc., is required, to play movies (MP4 format files) on PC. Download QuickTimePlayer from the following Internet site.

http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/

- To download, PC connected to Internet is required. The connection fee is charged separately to download.
- Refer to the Internet site above for more detailed information on such as operating environment, download method, and operation procedures, etc.

## Troubleshooting

• Check whether Software update is needed first, and update the software if needed. (Software update →P387)

Problem	Check point	Page
FOMA terminal cannot be	<ul> <li>Is the battery pack attached properly?</li> </ul>	P41
powered ON.	<ul> <li>Is the battery run out?</li> </ul>	P47
(FOMA terminal cannot be used.)		
FOMA terminal cannot be	<ul> <li>Is the battery pack attached properly?</li> </ul>	P41
charged.	Is the charger terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with dry cotton	P21
	swab etc.	
Terminal requires to be recharged	<ul> <li>Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on Desktop holder (optional)?</li> </ul>	P46
in a short period of time.	<ul> <li>Is the battery life run out?</li> </ul>	P42
	• Is the charger terminals dirty? Clean the terminals with dry cotton	P21
	swab etc.	
	<ul> <li>Battery duration differs depending on the handling of FOMA</li> </ul>	P43
	terminal.	
FOMA terminal sounds beep.	The battery level becomes low. Charge the battery.	P42
Key operation cannot be made.	Is FOMA terminal powered ON?	P48
	Is Lock all ON?	P142
Calls cannot be made by pressing	Is Keypad dial lock ON?	P146
dial keys.	Is Lock all ON?	P142
	Is self mode ON?	P144
Calls cannot be made using	Is PIM lock (Phonebook) ON?	P145
Phonebook.	Is Lock all ON?	P142
	Is self mode ON?	P144
Calls are not connected and Busy	Did you dial area code?	P54
signal tone is heard.	<ul> <li>Did you dial before hearing dial tone?</li> </ul>	P54
	• Is "圈外 <out area="" of="" service="">" displayed?</out>	P48

Movie player software

Problem	Check point	Page
"圈外 <out area="" of="" service="">" is</out>	Are you in a place outside the service area or under poor radio	P48
displayed and busy signal tone is heard.	wave condition?	
Calls are broken or disconnected.	Are you in an area under poor radio wave condition?	P48
	Is the battery run out?	P47
Unable to make/receive calls,	Is the battery run out?	P47
send/receive mails, or use i-mode.	• Is "圈外 <out area="" of="" service="">" displayed?</out>	P48
	Is self mode ON?	P144
The ring tone does not sound.	<ul> <li>Is Ring tone volume "OFF"?</li> </ul>	P119
	<ul> <li>Is Ring tone set to "OFF"?</li> </ul>	P116
	Is the battery run out?	P47
	Is FOMA terminal powered ON?	P48
	<ul> <li>Is a line disconnected? Does a call remain on-hold?</li> <li>Are the following functions act?</li> </ul>	P55
	Are the following functions set?	D151
	- Set mute ring time - Call rejection	P151 P149, 150 , 152
	Is Manner mode ON?	P123
	Is Public mode (Drive mode) ON?	P73
	Is self mode ON?	P144
	Is the ringing time for Voice mail service or Call forwarding	P338, 340
	service set to "0 second"?	
The other party's voice is small or too loud during a call.	Did you change Earpiece volume? Adjust Earpiece volume.	P68, 119
The receiving action for call (Ring	If the receiving action is set in more than one function, the	_
tone, Vibrator, LED) does not	operation priority is as follows.	
operate as you set.	Individual settings in FOMA terminal phonebook	
	②Group settings in FOMA terminal phonebook	
	③Setting of Sound/Vibrator/LED	50.40
	<ul> <li>If you subscribe to Multinumber and set prefix numbers, the setting follows the Ring tone setting of Prefix.</li> </ul>	P342
The receiving action for mail (Mail	If the receiving action is set in more than one function, operation	_
ring tone, Vibrator, LED) does not	priority is as follows.	_
operate as you set.	①Individual settings in FOMA terminal phonebook	
	②Group settings in FOMA terminal phonebook	
	③Setting of Sound/Vibrator/LED	
	When several messages are received at the same time, the	_
	operation follows the setting of the last received message.	
	• Is the mail address of the sender, to which you set Individual mail	P98
	ring tone, registered in Phonebook correctly?	<b>D</b> 100
Screen is dark and nothing is displayed.	Power saver is ON. Display returns by pressing any key.	P130
Side key operation is invalid when FOMA terminal is folded.	Is Side key operation set to "Invalid"?	P147
Operation sound cannot be heard	<ul> <li>Is Keypad sound set to "OFF"?</li> </ul>	P120
when pressing key.	Is Manner mode set to ON?	P123
The date appears in Japanese.	• Is バイリンガル <select language=""> set to "日本語"?</select>	P48
Position location cannot be executed.		P268
Notify location/Periodic notify	<ul> <li>Is Location provide setting set to "Location provide OFF"?</li> </ul>	P261
(location notify)/Location provide	Subscription to i-mode may be required.	P268
cannot be executed.	<ul> <li>Is all settings necessary for providing location set in GPS Service settings?</li> </ul>	P262
"Please wait" appears and stays	• Phone lines are busy, so call back later after a while. Calls to 110,	-
on the screen.	119, and 118 can be made anytime. However, the call may not	
	be connected due to the conditions.	
Call cost is not totalized.	The call cost totalized on UIM (FOMA card) may have reached	P328
	the upper limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen). It can be reset to	
	0 yen.	

### **Error messages**

## Major error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown below, in the English alphabetical order.

• The "(number)" or "XXX" in error messages are the codes used to distinguish the error type sent from i-mode Center.

Error message	Description and approach	Page
Address is not valid (451)	i-mode mail cannot be sent. Check if the address is correct.	-
All folders are full	Mail/MessageR/F cannot be received due to the shortage of storage space. Read unread Mail/MessageR/F, release the protection of Mail/MessageR/F, or delete Mail/MessageR/F.	P198, 199, 221, 227
An error occurred. Play terminated. Setting is released.	As an error has occurred while playing an attached file, playing is terminated.	_
Authentication type is not supported (401)	The authentication type is not supported, and the connection cannot be made to the i-mode/Internet site.	-
Card error	UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted correctly or malfunction occurs in UIM (FOMA card). Check your UIM (FOMA card).	P39
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	Site certificate has been overwritten. This site cannot be accessed.	_
Check receiver	SMS destination is wrong and failed to send. Confirm the destination.	-
Check SMS Center settings	Mail setting of "SMS Center" is wrong. Confirm the setting.	P237
Connection failed	Connection to the i-mode Center has been failed. Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good.	-
Connection failed (403)	Servers of the site rejected connection.	-
Connection failed (562)	Connection to the i-mode Center has been failed. Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good.	-
Connection interrupted	Try to reconnect where the radio wave condition is good. If this message appears even under good radio wave condition, the destination you tried to connect to is busy. Try to reconnect later.	_
Content length exceeds playable size for i-motion	Displayed when trying to download i-motion data over approximately 500 KB.	-
Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?	Appears when transmission is too frequent in a certain period of time, while activating i-αppli. Press <u>()</u> "Yes" to use i-αppli continuously, <u>()</u> " "No" to use i-αppli continuously without transmission, or <u>()</u> " "Terminate" to end i-αppli.	_
Enter correct network security code	Appears when a wrong Network security code is entered for the function that requires Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. In case you forgot your Network security code, visit DoCoMo shop with your FOMA terminal and ID (ex. driver's license etc.) for identification.	P138
Error in image. Does not work correctly	Appears when image data have errors and Flash movies cannot be played correctly.	-
Error in URL	Entered URL is wrong. Confirm the URL.	-
Failed to check	Retry operation where the radio wave condition is good. If the same error occurs, try to operate later.	-
Folder is full	MessageR/F cannot be received due to the shortage of storage space. Read unread MessageR/F, release MessageR/F protection, or delete MessageR/F.	P198, 199

Error message	Description and approach	Page
i-appli stand-by display	i-appli stand-by display is terminated due to an unaccepted	
deactivated due to security	operation.	_
error		
i-mode Center is busy. Please	i-mode Center is busy. Try to connect later.	_
try again later (555)		_
Inbox is full	New mails cannot be received since Inbox is full. Delete mails and	_
	check new message to receive new mails.	
Input error (205)	Data entered on i-mode/Internet site has an error. Confirm the	_
	entered data.	
Invalid data (XXX)	The site/Internet site is not compatible with i-mode.	
	The URL may be wrong. Check if the URL is correct.	_
	Cannot be displayed due to the error in the received data.	
Invalid data. Connection	Connection is unavailable due to the error in the i-mode/Internet	
cannot be established (400)	site. The URL may be wrong. Check if the URL is correct.	-
Invalid UIM, Requested	Appears when you try to start i- $\alpha$ ppli from i-mode, i-mode mail, etc.,	
software failed to start	with a different UIM (FOMA card) from the one used in downloading	
	inserted. Insert the proper UIM (FOMA card) used when	_
	downloaded.	
Invalid UIM. Requested service	Appears when executing attached files from Data box or starting	
not available	i- $\alpha$ ppli from i- $\alpha$ ppli list, with inserting different UIM (FOMA card)	
	from the one when saved the attachment files of mails or	_
	downloaded data from sites. Insert the proper UIM (FOMA card)	
	used when downloaded or saved.	
Keypad dial is locked	Operations are restricted while Keypad dial is locked.	P146
Memory shortage. i-mode	Connection is canceled due to the memory shortage.	1 1 10
ended	connection is canocica due to the memory shortage.	—
Message already received	SMS has already sent.	_
miniSD is damaged or not	miniSD memory card is damaged or is not formatted properly.	
formatted	Format miniSD memory card.	P292
No content is available (204)	The connected site does not contain any data to display.	_
No requested file (492)	Specified file cannot be found when downloading large-size still	
	image.	-
No requested software	Appears when starting deleted i-appli software with i-appli To	
no requested software	function from a mail or optional device.	—
No response (408)	Without any response within specified duration, connection is	
No response (400)	interrupted. Try to reconnect later.	—
No response. Reconnect?		
no response. Reconnect?	Destination to connect in Infrared communication cannot be found/	
	recognized. Press T : "Yes" to continue, or E : "No" to cancel connection.	—
No. of digits exceeds limit.		
0	Up to 80 digits of a number can be entered when dialing. Appears	DEO
Unable to make auto assist	when more than 80 digits are entered with Auto assist "ON" in	P59
Number of coordinate in the	International dial.	
Number of seconds is same as	The same duration cannot be set for the Answer time of both Record	D70 004
the one for auto receive setting Unable to set	message and Auto receive call. Change either of the Answer time.	P78, 331
Out of service area	Radio wave is out of reach or you are out of FOMA service area.	-
Page is not found (404)	The site cannot be found. Check if the URL is correct.	-
Password is not correct (401)	User name or password entered on Basic authentication screen of	_
	an i-mode/ Internet site has an error. Reenter the password.	
PIM is locked	Appears when you try an operation prohibited under PIM lock.	P145
PIN1 code is blocked	Appears when the power is turned on under PIN code locked. Enter	P141
	correct PUK and release PIN lock.	F 141

Error message	Description and approach	Page
Play period has not yet started	Appears when you try to play i-motion before the preset play period. Try to play during play period.	_
Positioning failed	Positioning is failed. Retry positioning where the radio wave condition is good.	_
PUK is blocked	Contact a sales outlet such as DoCoMo shop.	P139
Receiving data exceeds playable size for i-motion	Receiving is stopped since the size of the data exceeds approximately 500 KB, while unknown size i-motion data is downloaded.	_
Reception rejected	A mail could not be sent due to rejection of receiving SMS by SMS center.	_
Registration is in progress (554)	Registration of the user to i-mode service is now in process. Try to reconnect later.	_
Requested software unavailable	Appears when i-αppli cannot be started due to the error. The software cannot be started when software action setting or starting condition has problems.	_
Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?	Certificate of FOMA terminal has expired. Press [12] "Yes" to connect, or [27] "No" to cancel connection. This message also appears when the time/date is unset or wrong. Correct the setting of time and date.	P50
Root certificate is not valid	FOMA terminal Certificate is set to "Invalid". Confirm the certificate and change the setting.	P199
Same time as auto power OFF time/Same time as auto power ON time	The same time cannot be set for both Auto power OFF time and Auto power ON time. Change either of the time.	P316
Scanning failed	Bar code or text cannot be read.	-
Service currently inactive	Appears when Dual network is unavailable to use. Subscription is required to use Dual network.	-
Service is not provided	SMS is not provided.	_
Service not registered	Not subscribed to i-mode. Application is required to use i-mode. When you have just subscribed i-mode, turn the power of your FOMA terminal off and turn on again.	P48
Setting size exceeds limit. Unable to select	The size of the selected dictionary exceeds approximately 64 KB in total. Reselect a dictionary.	_
Size of this page is not supported	Since data of the i-mode/Internet site exceeds the maximum size for 1 page, receiving has been stopped. Only the portion that are received correctly is displayed.	_
Software terminated due to security error	i-αppli is terminated due to an unaccepted operation.	_
SSL session cannot be established	SSL session is failed or connection is terminated due to Authentication error at the server issuing client certification.	_
SSL session failed	Problem is detected during authentication of SSL session. Connection is canceled.	_
SSL session was terminated	Error has occurred in SSL session site certificate. Appears when selecting (空雪) "No" on connection confirmation screen, and SSL session is disconnected.	_
This certificate has expired. Do you connect?	Site certificate is out of the valid period. Press <b>[]</b> "Yes" to connect, or <b>[</b> ]" "No" to cancel connection.	_
This certificate is not valid for this URL. Do you connect?	CN name (server name) of the site certificate and the actual server name are different. Press <i>[</i> ] "Yes" to connect, or <i>[</i> ] "No" to cancel connection.	_
This service client ID not available	Entered number is not valid as Service client ID. Confirm the entered ID.	P263

Error message	Description and approach	Page
This site is not certified. Do you	Site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Press [1:8] "Yes"	_
connect?	to connect, or $\mathbb{Z}^{\text{ABC}}$ "No" to cancel connection.	—
This software contains an error	Software cannot be downloaded due to software error.	-
This software contains an error.	Software cannot be downloaded due to software error.	_
Unable to download		
This UIM cannot be recognized	UIM (FOMA card) that cannot be used is inserted in FOMA terminal,	
	or UIM (FOMA card) is incorrectly inserted or has trouble. Check	P39
Time out	UIM (FOMA card).	
Time out	No response is received from the server within the set period of time. Try to reconnect.	-
Too much data was entered	The number of the entered characters in entry field of i-mode/	
	Internet site are too many to be sent. Resend after cutting down	_
	some characters.	
Total calls cost exceeded the	Appears when exceeding the maximum call cost you set in Call	P329
preset limit	maximum limit.	F329
Total calls cost exceeds limit	The maximum of Total calls cost is set on your UIM (FOMA card). Reset the counter and call again.	P328
Transmission failed	Error in the i-mode Center/SMS Center caused the failure in sending	
	of i-mode mail/SMS. Try to resend later.	_
Transmission failed (552)	Error in the i-mode Center caused the failure in sending of i-mode	_
	mail. Try to resend later.	
Transmission rejected	Sending of SMS has been denied.	-
UIM not inserted. Requested	UIM (FOMA card) is not inserted. Insert UIM (FOMA card) to use.	P39
service not available		
Unable to download data due	Data cannot be retrieved, since playable count data is wrong or	_
to play restriction data error	Play period/validity is expired.	
Unable to download. Data The data cannot be received since the size of the i-mode/Internet		-
exceeds maximum size (452)	site is larger than the maximum size.	
Unable to retrieve the Failed to connect to the site you specified. Try to recorrequested URL (504)		_
Unable to set same time as the	The same duration cannot be set for both Answer time of Auto	
one for record message	receive call and Record message. Change either of the Answer	P78, 331
	time.	
Unable to view file. Access to	Appears when you try downloading more than accessible times	_
URL is limited (491)	restricted for large-volume still image.	
Unexpected error. Adjust compass again	Appears when you have not adjusted direction after Compass had detected a rapid temperature change. Adjust direction.	P336
URL address changed (301)	URL of the i-mode/Internet site has been changed. Confirm the	
One address changed (501)	correct URL.	-
URL is too long to store	Entered URL for storing as Bookmark exceeds 256 characters.	P188
Usage is currently restricted.	Appears when there was huge data transmission in a certain period	
Try again later	of time, if you use i-mode packet flat-rate service. Connection may	
	not be available for a certain period of time. Try to connect to i-mode	_
	later.	
You have no certificate. Do you	Client certificate is not downloaded. Press I's "Yes" to continue	_
connect?	connection and Zm "No" to cancel.	
Your certificate has expired. Do	Your client certificate has expired. Press I: "Yes" to continue	_
you connect?	connection and 🖅 "No" to cancel.	
Your location will not be	The current location cannot be transmitted due to the network error	
transmitted	or not being set as the searching target of GPS service such as 1	—
	マドコサーチ <searching position="">.</searching>	

## Warranty and After-Sales Service

#### Warranty

- Be sure that a written warranty is provided when you purchase FOMA terminal. Keep the warranty, after checking the contents such as "shop name (where you purchased)/date". If it does not contain necessary information, contact the shop where you purchased. The warranty is valid for one year from the day of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change without notice, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement.
- Since troubles, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal may cause data in Phonebook etc. to be changed or deleted, it is recommended to make a copy of the Phonebook data etc. The data registered in Phonebook etc. can be transferred to/saved in PC (Windows 98SE/Me/ 2000/XP), using the specified data link software and FOMA USB connection cable (optional). After a repair etc., information downloaded through i-mode or i-αppli will not be transferred to new FOMA terminal etc. with some exceptions, in accordance with the copyright laws.

#### After-Sales service

#### When you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repair service, read the section "Troubleshooting" of this manual. ( $\rightarrow$ P379) Contact the number in "For Repairs" on the back of this manual, if the problem is still not resolved.

#### When repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a service center specified by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the open hours of the service center. Note that you must bring your warranty.

#### In the warranty period

- FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge, under the conditions of the warranty.
- The warranty is required for repairs. The subscriber will be charged even during the warranty period, for the repair without the warranty, or the repair of malfunction/damage resulting from wrong handling.
- The subscriber will be charged even during the warranty period, for the repair of damages caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

#### Notice about repair

Note that repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or a test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

#### After expiration of the warranty

All charged repairs are available by request.

#### **Replacement parts**

Replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after the termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your terminal even after this period. Contact the service center listed on the back of this manual.

#### Notes

- Do not modify FOMA terminal or its accessories.
  - That may cause fire, injury or damage.
  - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, FOMA terminal and UIM (FOMA card) are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminal or UIM (FOMA card) that do not meet these standards.
  - If FOMA terminal has been modified (part replaced, modified, painted, etc.), it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the modification.
  - Repair of malfunction or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove the inscription sticker attached to FOMA terminal. The inscription sticker certifies that FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if the sticker is removed intentionally or is reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or service may be refused because whether or not the terminal conforms to relevant technical standards are unrecognizable.
- Stored data, such as settings or the information of total call duration, may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or handling processes of FOMA terminal. In this case, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and the speaker of FOMA terminal. Do not allow a cash card etc. that are vulnerable to magnetism to come close to the phone, or the card might be damaged.
- If the terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring the terminal to the repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal.

#### Phonebook number (Phonebook data) and downloaded data

- Keep a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of any information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may be lost or become corrupted due to changing the model or repair. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss. DoCoMo may, at its option, replace the terminal instead of repairing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new terminal. Images or ringer melodies downloaded to SA702i FOMA terminal from i-mode official site can be transferred when repairing. (Some contents may not be transferred. Or some may not be transferred depending on the damage level.)

## Updating software

Check if updating of software for FOMA terminal is necessary, and if required, download the applicable item through packet transmission<sup>\*</sup> to update the software. When Software update is required, the information will be posted in "Notice & Help" on

#### DoCoMo Internet site or i-Menu.

- \* Packet transmission for Software update is free of charge.
- · Software can be updated in the following two methods.
  - Update immediately : Updates on the spot as desired.
  - Reserved update : Specifies the day and time for automatic update of the software.
- Software update is available even when the Host selection setting is other than i-mode.
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged.
- Software cannot be updated in the following situations.
  - Out of service area
  - With the battery not fully charged
  - When UIM (FOMA card) not inserted
  - With PIN completely locked
  - Under self mode
  - With time not set

- With the power off
- While using other functions
- When UIM (FOMA card) unrecognizable
- Under PIM lock (i-mode)
- Under Lock all
- With an external device connected
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If Software update is executed when "ON" is set for PIN1 code ON/OFF, the PIN1 code entry screen will appear at the time of automatic reload after completion of software update. Making/receiving calls and communication functions are not available without the correct PIN1 code.
- Any other function is not available while software is being updated. However while downloading, only incoming voice calls can be answered, and call forwarding or receive message are also available.
- For Software update, SSL session is established to the server (our company's site). Set SSL certificate to valid in Certificate setting. It is set to valid by default. →P199
- It is recommended that Software update be executed under good radio wave condition, with three bars of the antenna icon on the screen, without moving the terminal. If the radio wave becomes poorer while downloading software, or if downloading has stopped, retry Software update in a place under good radio wave condition.
- If the software has already been updated, the message "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" is displayed when checking Software update.
- When updating software, the information (such as model and serial number) of your terminal will be automatically sent to the server (the server for Software update operated by our company). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than Software update.
- Displayed icons indicating that mails are held in the i-mode Center disappears after Software update. Also if Receive option is set to "ON" and an E-mail arrives during Software update, the screen that notifies an arrival of E-mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after Software update has been completed. →P217

#### Information

Software can be updated, with various data, such as phonebook, camera image, or downloaded data, saved in the terminal maintained. However, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). It is recommended to backup your important data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.) Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Otherwise, update may be failed. When Software update has been failed, the message "Rewrite failed" appears and all operation become unavailable. In that case, please bring FOMA terminal to a service center specified by DoCoMo.

#### Starting Software update



- Enter the terminal security code and press  $(\bullet)$ .
- Confirm the notice on the screen to check if Software update is required.



Press / ... "OK".



Terminal starts SSL session and checks if Software update is required.

## Confirm the check result.

The screen indicating the check result is displayed.

#### When "Update is needed" appears

Software can be updated.

Update immediately Starts updating right away. →P389	
<b>Reserve</b> Updates later at the time on the day you set. →P390	
Cancel Does not update the software.	

When "No update is needed. Please continue to use as before" appears Software update is not required, and use FOMA terminal as it is.

#### When "Server is busy" appears

Update cannot be done immediately. Retry the update later.

#### Updating software immediately

· Software cannot be updated immediately when the server is busy.

### Press T: "Update immediately", on the check result screen.

The message appears and download starts.



- Press 
  [Cancel] to stop downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to that point is deleted.
- Once download has started, update process will be executed without any operation such as selection from menu.

### Press after download has completed.

- Rewriting can be executed automatically without pressing •.
- All key operations are invalid while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.



# FOMA terminal is restarted automatically after rewriting has completed.

After the restart, the terminal connects to the server automatically and checks updating to be completed.

After the update has finished, "Your update is complete" is displayed, and then Standby appears on the screen.



#### <Reserved update>

#### Updating software at scheduled time and date

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can reserve the time to start Software update in advance by communicating with the server.

• Reserve setting is deleted by executing Delete all data after Software update.

#### Press $\mathbb{Z}^{ABC}$ "Reserve", on the check result screen.

Softwar	e update	1/1
Select	your pr	eferred
day ar	ıd time	
	Fri 12/	1
	Fri 12/	
	Fri 12/	
	Sat 12/	
	Sat 12/	
5:09	Sat 12/	2
Other	than the	above

The terminal connects to the server and the screen displays the time slot that can be reserved.

Displayed time is the server time.



## Select the time slot you like, and press $\blacktriangleright$ "Yes".

Software update is reserved.

Selecting from the time options other than displayed
 Select "Other than the above", and press ().

Software	update	

```
Set day and time-slot
you wish to reserve
1.day
2.time-slot
```

#### 2 Press •.

#### 3 Select the date you like, and press •.

The reservation status of each time slot is displayed.

Software update 1/4	ł
Select your	
preferred time-slot	
00:00- 🔿 : Available	
01:00- 🔾 : Available	
02:00- 🔾 : Available	
03:00- 🔾 : Available	
04:00- 🔾 : Available	
05:00- 🔾 : Available	
O6∶OO- ⊖∶Available	

- : Available
- riangle : Almost full
- imes : Full

#### ④ Select a time slot, and press ●.

Connection is made to the server and other options close to preferred time slot are displayed.

#### (5) Select the time and date you like, and press $(\bullet)$ .

The confirmation screen of the time and date is displayed.

#### 6 Press 1 \* "Yes".

The loading screen appears, reservation is finished, and then Stand-by display returns.

Software	update
Reserved Ready to	time reached. update?

The screen shown on the left appears and FOMA terminal starts Software update automatically. Set the battery to be fully charged by the reserved time and FOMA terminal in stand-by be at a place where the radio wave condition is good. The procedure after this point is the same as that of Update immediately.

#### Information

When PIN1 code entry is set to "ON", PIN1 code entry screen appears when restarting after Software update. Note that making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails are not available on PIN1 code entry screen. Alarm can be activated even with PIN1 code entry screen displayed.

- •When Software update reservation and Alarm are set on the same time and date, Alarm has the priority, and the icon indicating the failure in Software update appears on Stand-by display, after stopping Alarm.
- ●Software update may not be started at the reserved time due to the condition of FOMA terminal. →P387

#### Confirming/changing/canceling reservation

The day and time reserved for Software update can be confirmed.



## Enter the terminal security code and press ).

## Confirm the detail.



Press T: "OK", if reserved date is OK.

• Starts checking if Software update is necessary, when Software update has not been reserved. →P388

#### Changing reservation

#### ① Press *⊇*<sup>∞</sup> "Change" ▶ *[*<sup>\*</sup> "Yes".

The terminal connects to the server and the screen to set reservation time and date appears.

Following procedure: →P390 "Updating software at scheduled time and date" Step 2

#### Canceling reservation

#### 

The terminal connects to the server and the reservation is canceled.

## Protecting FOMA terminal from potential causes of failure

Update pattern definitions first to make sure that the pattern definitions are up-to-date.

Data or programs loaded into FOMA terminal by downloading from sites or receiving i-mode mail are checked, to detect and delete data that possibly causes trouble, or terminate the activation of problematic applications.

- The pattern definitions are used for the check. The pattern definitions are upgraded at any time when a new factor that causes trouble is discovered. Update the pattern definitions every time.
- Scanning function provides you with a certain level of security, for filtering out the data that causes troubles to mobile phones when browsing sites or receiving mails. Note that this function does not prevent troubles unless the pattern definition for the trouble exists and is downloaded to your mobile phone.
- The pattern definition varies depending on the model of the mobile phone terminal. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for the models which has been on the market for 3 years or more.

#### <Set scanning function>

#### Setting scanning function

Default Enable

Set "Enable" to Set scan, and data or program is automatically checked when you activate it.



• Press  $\fbox{Press}$  "Disable" to release.

## 1 Press 🖅 "Yes".

• Press 2 Mo" to cancel.

<Update pattern definitions>

#### Updating pattern definitions





#### Press 🖅 📲 "Yes".

• Press 2<sup>-mc</sup>/<sub>2</sub> "No" to cancel.



**२** F

#### Press 1: "Yes".

- Press ⊇<sup>™</sup> "No" to cancel.
- The message "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" appears if there is no need to update. Use your FOMA terminal as it is.

#### Information

•When updating pattern definitions, the information of your terminal (such as the model or serial number) will be automatically sent to the server (or our company's server for scanning functions). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than scanning function.

- Set the date (Month/Date/Year) of FOMA terminal correctly.
- When receiving a voice call or the battery is almost run out while updating pattern definitions, the update is cancelled.
- Update of pattern definitions is canceled in following cases.
- When UIM (FOMA card) not inserted
- When UIM (FOMA card) unrecognizable

- Out of service area

- With PIN completely locked

- Under self mode

- Under PIM lock (i-mode)

#### Scanned results

#### Detected Trouble factor

Trouble	e factor
Fac. 1	*****
Fac. 2	************
Fac. 3	***********
Fac. 4	***********
Fac. 5	***********
Others	95

Trouble factor screen

- The names of trouble factors are listed in order of seriousness of the trouble.
- If more than 6 factors has been detected, names of the factors does not appear on the screen.

#### Scanned results

Alert level 0	Alert level 1	Alert level 2	Alert level 3	Alert level 4
Trouble factor Operation may not run properly NOK EDetail	Trouble factor Operation may not run properly, Cancel operation? Cance ENO Detail	Trouble factor Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation 10K Detail	Trouble factor Operation may not run properly. Delete data? Tyss END Detail	Trouble factor Deleting data TaOK EDetail
Press 🖅 "OK" to	Press 1: "Yes" to	Press 🕼 "OK" to	Press 🕼 "Yes" to	Press 🕼 "OK" to
continue the	stop and end the	stop and end the	delete the data and	delete the data and
procedure.	operation. Press	operation.	end the operation.	end the operation.
	₽ª™ "No" to		Press 2 <sup>ABC</sup> "No" to	
	continue the		stop and end the	
	procedure.		operation.	

• Select "Detail" on each screen and press (), to display Trouble factor screen.

#### <Version>

## Confirming the version of Pattern definitions



## **Major specifications**

Product name	FOMA SA702i	
Size (mm)	Height 98 $\times$ Width 50 $\times$ Depth 21 (when folded)	
Weight (g)	Approx. 104 (with the battery pack attached)	
Continuous stand-by time	Stationary : Approx. 480 hrs. Moving : Approx. 360 hrs.	
Continuous call time	During Voice call : Approx. 170 min. During Videophone call : Approx. 100 min.	
Continuous play duration	Music (Music Player) : Approx. 7 hrs. FM radio : Approx. 20 hrs.	
Battery pack	Lithium ion battery	
Battery capacity	820 mAh	
Charging time	FOMA AC adapter 01: Approx. 105 min. FOMA DC adapter 01: Approx. 105 min.	

Camera	Imaging device	Out-camera : CCD In-camera : CMOS
	Effective pixels	Out-camera : Approx. 1,300K (1312 × 968) In-camera : Approx. 100K (360 × 294)
	Number of recording pixels	Out-camera : Approx. 1,200K (1280 × 960) In-camera : Approx. 100K (352 × 288)
	Digital zoom	Out-camera : Approx. 7 X, at maximum In-camera : Approx. 2 X, at maximum

• Continuous call duration indicates the approximate call duration under a condition that FOMA terminal can send or receive radio wave normally.

- Continuous stand-by duration is approximate duration that the user moves with FOMA terminal folded, under normal radio wave condition. In addition, calling (data communication)/stand-by duration may be reduced to half, depending on the charging status, function setting status, usage environment such as temperature, or the radio wave condition of the location to use (out of service area or poor radio wave condition). Calling (data communication)/stand-by duration is shortened by using i-mode communication.
- After composing i-mode mail, starting i-appli, in data communication, using Camera/Music Player/FM radio, or executing Multi-access, calling (data communication)/stand-by duration is reduced.
- Continuous stand-by duration in stationary status is an average duration with FOMA terminal folded, under normal radio wave condition.
- Continuous stand-by duration while moving is an average duration when the user is "stationary", "moving" or "out of service area", with FOMA terminal folded, under normal radio wave condition.
- The period of time is for charging an empty battery pack with FOMA terminal powered off. Charging with FOMA terminal powered on takes longer period of time.
- Continuous play duration is approximate duration, when folding FOMA terminal, without connecting Flat-plug earphone/microphone with a switch (optional), and setting Play volume in LEVEL7 (by default), and Off timer to OFF.

The number of data available to	save/register/protect in FOMA terminal

	Data	Max. number for saving/registering	Max. number for protection
Phonebook*1		500	—
MessageR		100	100
MessageF		50	50
Screen memo		100	50
Bookmark		100	_
	Inbox	1,000	500* <sup>4</sup>
Mail <sup>*2</sup>	Outbox	400 <sup>*3</sup>	200*4
	Unsent messages		_
i-αppli		100	_
Data box		1,024 <sup>*5</sup>	_
	Menu icon	1,024 <sup>*5</sup>	_
Original data	National holidays	10 <sup>*5</sup>	_
	Dictionary	100 <sup>*5</sup>	_
	Category icon	40 <sup>*5</sup>	—

Data	Max. number for saving/registering	Max. number for protection
Schedule	100	—
ToDo	50	—
Text memo	50	—

\*1 Up to 50 data items can be saved in UIM (FOMA card).

\*2 The numbers are total of i-mode mail and SMS.

\*<sup>3</sup> The numbers are total of Sent messages and Unsent messages.

\*<sup>4</sup> The maximum number for protection is subject to change depending on the size of the protected data.

\*5 The maximum number that you can save or register may be reduced, depending on the data size.

### Information

●The contents of saved data in FOMA terminal may be lost due to FOMA terminal malfunction, repairs or other handlings. DoCoMo recommends to save the data in miniSD memory card (→P287) or to keep as separate memo, for the safety. If data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data. You can backup the data in your PC using the data link software and the FOMA USB connection cable (optional). →P378

# **SAR certification information**

This mobile phone terminal, FOMA SA702i, meets the MIC's technical regulation governing exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established the permitted levels of radio wave energy, for avoiding damage of the radio wave on human temporal, based on scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, that expresses the average energy amount absorbed in human temporal. SAR is regulated to be under 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by WHO and ICNIRP.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before introducing to the market. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone, FOMA SA702i, is 0.998 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC). This test was conducted in accordance with the methods determined by the government, using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels between various phones and at various positions, they all satisfy the MIC's technical regulation. Moreover, transmission power of mobile phone is designed to be the minimum level necessary to communicate with mobile phone base station, so the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be below the SAR value.

For further information about SAR, please refer to the following websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm Association of Radio Industries and Businesses http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html DoCoMo http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/ SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. Telecom Company http://www.sanyo-keitai.com

The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

# Index/Quick reference manual

Index	406
Quick reference manual	412

# Index

# Α

AC adapter 44
Accept calls from specified phone
number148
Add Receiver 209
Adjust volume
Earpiece volume
After-Sales Service
Alarm
Alarm start 319
Answer message 79
Answer time 78
Any key answer 64
AT command348
Attachment file
Attachment 214
Play/Change/Display File
property/Release 215
Receive attachment
Receive mail with image 220
Save (Melody) 219
Save (Still image) 220
Attach/remove battery pack 41
Authentication password 139
Auto assist 59
Auto learn reply231
Auto play
Attached melody 231
Auto power ON/OFF 316
Auto receive
i-mode mail216
MessageR/F196
SMS
Auto receive call
Auto sort
Auto timer
AV Phone To 193

# В

Backlight 129
Backside clock 128
Backside display 29, 128
Details
Icon list
Backside display setting 129
Backside notify 129
Bar code reader
Scan 172
Use 173
Basic package26
Battery
Charging time 43
Check remaining battery 47
Bookmark
Create folder 189
Delete 189
Display 189
Edit folder name 189
Edit title 189
Move to folders 189
Store (Internet/i-mode site) 188
Store (mail)

# С

C
Cache186 Calculator
Answer
Sub-address
Shoot movie166 Shoot still image163 Category icon
Download
365, 366 Common phrases entry
Character reader         Read character         174         Read English word         176         Use         176         Characters assigned to dial keys         365, 366
Charge AC adapter

Compose	.233
Delete	.234
End	.234
Receive	.233
Send	.233
Store Chat member	.233
Check address205,	225
Check box	.185
Check mail setting	.232
Check mail setting status	.205
Check new message	
i-mode mail	
MessageR/F	
Check setting status	.332
Client certificate	.199
Close action	65
Close-up switch lever	29
Closing tone	.117
Common phrases	
Edit	
Enter	
List	
Compass	.336
Compose message	.209
Connect to Internet	
Convert char. code	.188
Enter URL	.187
URL history	.188
Connection timeout	
Connection vibrator	
Continuous lighting	
Convert char. code	.188
Copy characters	.354
Copy URL	.187
Cursor auto move	.355

Data box	274
Check memory status	
Create folder	
Delete	
Delete folder	
Edit folder name	
Edit title	
File property	
Move to folders	
Restrict file	
Set security	
Sort file	
Sort folders	
Data communication	
Operating environment	
Data link software	
DC adapter	
Deco-mail	
Compose	211
Decorated mail template	
•	
Compose Select	
Delete all data	
Delete mail history	
Desktop holder	
Dial memo	
Dictionary	335
Dictionary data	

Download Store Direct Call Direct Call box Direct Call icon Display	293, 356 111 112 113
Details	
Stand-by display Display of name Download	125
Category icon	192
Dictionary data	192
i-αppli	
Image	
Melody	
Menu icon	
National holidays	
DPOF print order	
Dual network service	
Duration/Cost	328

# E

Earphone auto dial	331
Set	331
Earphone/Microphone jack	29
Earpiece	28
Earpiece volume	68
Echo	69
Edit group	101
Edit quotation mark	230
E-mail address	204
Change	205
Check	
Reset	
Emoticon	
Edit	354
List	368
English guidance	341
Enter PIN1 code	140
Enter URL	187
Error messages	
Error message list	
Export	
External connection port	
Extra services (USSD)	
(0002)	

#### F

File property	.296
FirstPass184,	
Client certificate	
FirstPass PC software	.347
Flash	
Flat-plug earphone/micropho	
with a switch	
FM radio	
Off timer	.312
Record	
Saving destination	
Select area	
Settings	
Side key setting	
Skin setting	
Sound output	
Start	
Station list	
Folder	
Create	.294
Delete	
Sort	

Folder file log	225
Frame	
Create	277
Paste	280
Shoot	165
Function menu	
Functions guide	. 38

## G

GPS	256
Applicable i-appli	241
Software	260
GPS time setting	50

# Н

Handling instructions	
Hands-free54	
Hold	
Call-on-hold55	
On-hold70	
Host number	
ISP connection communication	

#### .

i-αppli	
Auto start	.244
Delete	247
Download	
Software act	
Software info	
Software information setting	
_	
Sort	
Start	
Start automatically	244
Store Auto start	245
System property	
Upgrade	
Use camera	
Use infrared communicatio	
View certificate	
View history	.248
i-αppli stand-by display	245
i-appli stand-by display	
transmission setting	246
i-appli To function	
i-αppli To setting	
i-αppliDX	
	240
i-channel	
Display	
Settings	
IDD prefix	60
Image	
Compose i-mode mail	275
Create item	
Display	
Display/save (i-mode mail)	220
Edit	
Enlarge/Reduce	
Paste frame	
Paste stamp	
Paste text	280
Resize/Clip	279
Rotate/Reverse	
Setting	
Slideshow	
Special effect	
	200

i-melody	
i-mode	
i-mode mail	
Adding Receiver	
Address history Attachment file	
Auto learn reply	
Auto sort	
Check	
Check address	
Compose	
Сору	
Create folder	
Deco-mail	
Delete all mails	
Delete folder	
Delete history Delete mail	
Display new message	
Display/save image	
Edit	216
Folder file log	
Folder list screen	
Font size	227
Forward	
Inbox	
Inserting Signature	209
List screen/display screen	
Move to folders Number of characters to se	
receive	
Outbox	
Protect mail	
Receive	
Receive option	217
Receive option Receive preference	
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting	232 205
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply	232 205 218
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image	232 205 218 220
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save i-mode mail	232 205 218 220 216
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save i-mode mail Save melody	232 205 218 220 216 219
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save i-mode mail Save melody Search mail	232 205 218 220 216 219 226
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Save image Save i-mode mail Save melody Search mail Search personal	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save i-mode mail Save melody Search mail Search personal Send	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save nelody Search mail Search personal Send Sending group	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 209
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save i-mode mail Save melody Search personal Send Sending group Sort	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 209 226
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Sending group Storage period Storage period	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 209 226 209 226 206 230
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Send Sort Storage period Store sending group Store sending group Store sending group	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 209 226 200 230 226
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Search personal Send Send Send Storage period Storage period Store sending group Switch display Template	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 209 226 230 226 230 226 213
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Send Storage period Storage period Store sending group Store sending group Switch display Template Two-touch mail	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 229 220 220 230 226 230 226 231 216
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Sending group Sort Storage period Storage period Store sending group Store sending group	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 213 216 221
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Send Sort Storage period Storage period Store sending group Switch display Template Two-touch mail Unsent messages	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 230 209 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Save melody Search mail Search personal Sending group Sort	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 209 229 209 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183 138
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 229 209 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183 138 194
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save melody Save melody Search personal	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 229 220 220 220 220 220 221 210 221 183 138 194
Receive preference	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 229 220 220 220 220 220 221 210 221 183 138 194 196 230
Receive preference	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 230 209 226 230 226 230 226 231 221 183 194 196 230 194
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183 194 196 230 194 195 230
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting. Reply Save image Save i-mode mail. Save melody. Search mail. Search personal Send. Sending group Sort. Storage period. Store sending group. Switch display. Template Two-touch mail. Unsent messages. i-mode Menu. i-mode password. i-mode setting. Check i-mode setting. Check new message Connection timeout Host number Image display. Reset i-mode setting.	232 205 218 220 219 226 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 215 211 183 138 194 196 230 194 195 196
Receive preference	232 205 218 220 216 219 226 209 220 230 220 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 221 183 138 194 196 230 194 195 196
Receive preference	232 205 218 220 216 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 2213 216 2213 216 230 194 195 196 195
Receive preference	232 205 218 2200 216 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183 138 194 196 230 194 195 196
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting. Reply Save image Save i-mode mail. Save melody. Search mail. Search personal Send. Sending group Sort. Storage period. Store sending group. Switch display. Template Two-touch mail. Unsent messages. i-mode Menu. i-mode password. i-mode setting. Check i-mode setting. Check new message Connection timeout Host number Image display. Reset i-mode setting. Sorul setting. Sound effect. Use phone information.	232 205 218 220 226 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 231 226 231 226 231 226 231 218 318 194 195 196 195 195 201
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply Save image Save imode mail Save melody Search mail Search personal Send Sending group Sort Storage period Storage period Score sending group Score sending group Score sending group Score sending group Sound effect Use phone information Auto play	232 205 218 220 226 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 226 231 216 231 138 194 196 230 194 195 196 195 201 202
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting. Reply Save image Save image Save melody. Search mail Search personal Send Sending group Sort. Storage period. Store sending group Switch display Template Two-touch mail Unsent messages. i-mode Menu i-mode password. i-mode setting Check i-mode setting. Check new message Connection timeout Host number. Image display Reset i-mode setting Scroll setting. Sound effect Use phone information i-motion Auto play Download	232 205 218 220 226 229 226 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 233 216 221 183 138 194 195 196 196 195 195 202 202 202 202 202 202 202 200 226 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 200 220 20
Receive preference Reject/receive mail setting Reply	232 205 218 220 226 228 209 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 230 226 231 216 221 183 194 196 195 195 201 202 201 202 202 203 226 230 220 230 220 230 230 230 230 230 230

Save       202         Setting       283         i-motion mail       207         Compose       214         Play/save       220         In-camera       28         In-car hands-free       63         Infrared communication       298         Receive       299         Remote control function       300         Infrared communication mode       300         Infrared data port       28         Initial setting       49         Input code entry       355         Input codes       369         Input prediction       357         Intellectual property rights       24         i-shot       206         ISP connection communication       195
J
JAN Code 172
К
Keypad dial lock 146 Keypad sound 120
L
Last URL       184         LED       133         Light       29         Linked pages       185         Location history       265         Location notify menu       266         Location notify menu       264         Periodic notification       264         Positioning mode       263         Store Location service client       267
263 1-touch notify
Μ
Main menu         Change Menu icon         Define menu         132         Sort icons         131         Make a call with Phonebook         Manner mode         123         Mark list         367
Melody Compose i-mode mail 287 Operation during play 287 Play

Melody auto play231
Melody list118
Memory status110
Menu
Function menu
List360
Menu icon
Create277
Download192
Store293
Message auto-display197
MessageR/F
Check197
Delete199
Display197
Display new message196
List screen/display screen 198
Melody att. message
Message auto-display197
Protect
Receive
Receive preference
Reload images198
Search198
Sort198
miniSD memory card287
Check data space292
Copy data in miniSD memory
card to FOMA terminal291
Copy data of FOMA terminal
to miniSD memory card289
Display miniSD data290
Display PIM data291
Export290
Folder structure
Format292
Import folder288
Insert/remove
Update
miniSD mode
Missed calls
mopera U/mopera
Mouthpiece
Movie/i-motion
Capture movie image
Chapter283
Clip out still image284
Compose i-mode mail214
Cut movie image286
Edit284
Edit Ticker284
Edit with Dubbing286
Movie list screen
Play
Setting
Thumbnail setting
Multiaccess
Combination375
Multinumber342
Multinumber342 Multiple addresses209
Multinumber

# Ν

Names and functions of parts	28
National holidays	
Download	192
Store	293
Navigation	258
Map viewer	259
Start	258
Network security code	138
NG tone	121
Noise reduction	62
Notice time	122
Notify icon	36
Notify location	
Nuisance call barring	

## 0

OK tone	121
On-hold	70
On-hold tone	71
Open to talk	65
Opening tone	117
Operate UIM (FOMA card) for	or SMS
Move/copy to FOMA tern	ninal
	237
Move/copy to UIM (FOMA	
	237
Optional/related devices	378
Original data	293
Original manner mode	123
Out of service area	48
Out-camera	29
Output ring tone to:	122

# Ρ

Packet communication	346
Password	
Authentication	
i-mode	138
Paste	
Character	355
Stamp	279
Text	280
Pause	58
Phonebook	94
Compose SMS	105
Сору	107
Delete	109
Display of name	95
Edit	107
Edit group	101
Font size	106
Number of entries	110
Photo display ON/OFF	106
Search	
Secret	109
Store	95, 99
UIM (FOMA card)	
Phone To	
Picture list	
PIM lock	
PIN unlock code (PUK)	139
Play music	
Play settings	
Position location	
Position loc. settings	
GPS key setting	
Positioning mode	
r contorning mode minin	

Power ON/OFF48 Power saver130 Prefix	
Set60 Priority	
Alarm	
Auto sort224	
Disp. stored data320	
LED134	
One-day schedule127	
Phonebook (Display name)	
Receive display128	
Ring tone117	
ToDo324	
Vibrator120	
Profile	
Check51	
Store	
Public mode (Drive mode)73	
Public mode (Power OFF)74	
Pulldown menu185	
	i

QR Code	.172
Quality alarm	.121

# R

Radio button       185         Rear cover       29         Receive attachment       231         Receive option       217         Receive option setting       230         Receive preference       232         Received calls       66         Delete       67         Receive/reject mails from specified       address         address       205         Reconnect signal       62         Answer message       79         Answer time       78         Delete       80         Play       80         Set       77         Redial       56         Delete       57         Reject calls by reasons for User       unset         unset       150
Reject calls from unregistered         numbers       152         Reject Unsolicited Ad mail       205         Rejected calls       67         Remote access       342         Remote control function       300         Remote lock all       143         Reserved update       390         Reset       Mail address       205         Mail address       205
Reset learned info

mail sender205	
Restrict mail size 205	
Ring tone	
Preinstalled Melody list 118	

# S

5	
SAR	396
Save image1	92
Scanning function	392
Set	392
Set Update pattern definition3	393
Version	394
Schedule	
Screen memo	
Create folder 1	90
Delete 1	91
Display1	
Edit folder name1	
Edit title 1	
Move to folders 1	90
Protect 1	
Save 1	
Sort 1	
Scroll 1	86
Scroll setting 196, 2	
Secret1	
Secret mode 1	48
Security code	
Authentication password 1	39
i-mode password1	38
Network security code 1	38
PIN unlock code (PUK) 1	39
PIN1 code1 PIN2 code1	39
Terminal security code 1 Select language	
self mode1	
Sending group 2	
Service dialing no	
Services available	377
Set mute ring time 1	51
Set in-call arrival act	341
Shoot movie1 Auto save ON/OFF1	66
Auto save ON/OFF 1	70
Auto timer 1	69
Brightness1	68
Close-up 1	69
Close-up1 Image size/quality1	68
Light1	68
Recordable video/sound	
duration1	
Reduce flicker 1	
Restrict file size1	
Save to: 1	
Special effect 1	
White balance 1	
Zoom1	67
Shoot still image 1	63
Auto save ON/OFF 1	
Auto timer1	69
Brightness1	00
Close-up 1	
Continuous mode 1	04 62
Image size/quality1 Light/Flash1	68
Number of image to save 1	58
Reduce flicker 1	
Save to: 1	
Scene select 1	

Shoot with frame 16	Б
Special effect 17	0
White balance 17	'n
Zoom 16	
Shortcut menu 32	6
Move	6
Reset 32	
Store	6
Side kev	
Operation	n
	2
Valid/Invalid 14	1
Signature	
Insert (i-mode mail) 20	a
Setting 23	0
Site	
Displaying18	3
Last URL 18	
Move to the next page 18	6
Move to the previous page	
	6
Operation18	5
Reload 18	6
Scroll screen18	6
SSL page connection 18	
View URL 18	7
SMS	
	~
Auto sort 22	
Check 23	6
Compose	5
Delete all mails 22	
Delete mail 22	7
Display22	1
Display new message 23	6
Edit 23	
Folder list screen 22	1
Input character type	
	7
List screen/display screen 22	2
List screen/display screen 22	2
List screen/display screen 22	2
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	2 6 7
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	2 6 7
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	2 6 7 )
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	2 6 7 )
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	267)7/
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	267)7/8
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/8625
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86256
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86256
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/8625676
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86256768
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86256768
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/86256768
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 457
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 457
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4570
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 457089
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 457089
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4570896
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708969
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 457089699
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4570896990
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4570896990
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 4570896990
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708969904
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/8622567686 45708969904 7
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708969904 79
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708969904 79
List screen/display screen 22 Message validity	26 7)7/862567686 45708969904 798

409

Index

Clock/Calendar126	
i-αppli stand-by display 245	
Wallpaper 125	
Store in Phonebook	
Store in user dict 356	
Store Secret code 205	
Store sending group 230	
Store to UIM (FOMA card)	
Phonebook	
Strap hole29	
Sub-address61	
Suspend mail service 205	
Switch display 226	

#### Т

Task icon	
Taste 131	
Template	
Compose Deco-mail	
Terminal security code 138	
Change 140	
Text memo	
Confirm/edit	
Delete 330	
Enter	
Time and date setting 50	
ToDo	
Troubleshooting 379	
Two-touch dial 110	
Two-touch mail	

# U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	41
Operation restriction	40
Security code	40
Unlock PIN code	141
Update immediately	389
Upgrade	247
URL history	188

Vibrator 119
Videophone 82 Answer 85
Call-on-hold 84
Make a call 83
Operations while receiving85
Screen
Sending image quality 86
Zoom
Videophone display
Videophone hands-free
Videophone image
View dialed/received 148
View URL 187
Vocabulary quiz 335
Voice mail service
Voice notice
Voice recorder
Delete
Play
Record
Save to 301
Shortcut to play 302
VoiceMemo-Call
Delete 328
Play
Record

# Volume.....119

# W

Warranty	385
Web To	193
Whisper	69
Word recognizer	176
WORLD CALL	59
Auto assist	59
IDD prefix	60

# Numerics

186/184	57
2-touch357	, 366
5-touch	350
Character assigned	365
Common phrases entry	
64K data communication	346

# Quick reference manual

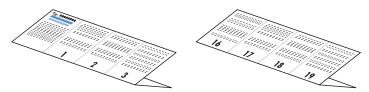
# Using Quick reference manual



# Cut the pages along the dotted line (2 sheets).

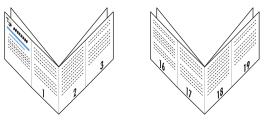
\* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting.

# Fold each of the sheets once vertically.





Fold each of the sheets once horizontally.



# Fold each of the sheets once horizontally again.





Index/Quick reference manual



<ul> <li>Quick search</li> <li>1. Hold down the key for the column to search, for over a second on Stand-by display.</li> <li>Switching Search method</li> <li>From Search method</li> <li>From Search method and press (•).</li> <li>Select the search method and press (•).</li> <li>From Search result screen&gt;</li> <li>From Search result screen&gt;</li> <li>From Search result screen&gt;</li> <li>From Search method and press (•).</li> <li>From Search method and press (•).</li> <li>Fress (•) [Search] &gt; select the search method and press (•).</li> <li>Fress (•) [Search] &gt; select the search method and press (•).</li> <li>Fress (•) [Search] &gt; select the search method and press (•).</li> <li>Fress (•) [Search] &gt; select the search method and press (•).</li> </ul>	Deleting characters         ■ When the cursor is within a sentence <ul> <li>When the cursor is within a sentence</li> <li>I brower a second: Deletes all characters at and after the cursor point.</li> <li>When the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I when the cursor is in the end of a sentence</li> <li>I press</li> <li>I press</li> <li>I more the select 'Copy' and press</li> <li>Select the start point and press</li> <li>I more the cursor to the point to paste, press</li> <li>I more the cursor to the point to paste, press</li> <li>I more the cursor to the point to paste, press</li> <li>I select at a, and press</li> <li>I select at a, and press</li> <li>I dotted line</li> </ul>
Searching Phonebook entry <b>1. Press</b> ( <b>•</b> ) <b>2. Search a Phonebook entry.</b> <b>3. Search an eolum</b> Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Preserve from a columbor (A-Ma) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ - $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) and select from $\mathcal{T}$ (A-Wal) Press ( <b>•</b> ) an	<ol> <li>Entering Picture/Mark/Emoticon</li> <li>Press ⊆∋ "Picture/Mark" on Character input screen.</li> <li>Press ⊆∋ ach time to switch Picture → Mark → Emoticon.</li> <li>Select Picture/Mark/Emoticon and press ●.</li> <li>Press □ 'Continue" to enter continuously.</li> <li>Entering Common phrases</li> <li>Select the Common phrases on phrases" and press ●, on Character input screen.</li> <li>Select the Common phrases on thering characters using code</li> <li>Press [Function] &gt; select "Input screen.</li> </ol>
Registering to Phonebook         Registering a new entry to Phonebook         1. Hold down ③ for over a second.         2. Press [2] "Phone".         • Press [2] "UN", and the entry is registered to UIM"; CMA carol? Phonebook.         3. Set each field and press [1] [Store].         Registering from Redial or Received calls its screen or Received calls its screen is displayed.         7. Press ④ * [3] "New to phonebook".         7. Press ● * [3] "How to phonebook".         7. Press ● * [3] "How to phonebook".         7. Press [3] "Store [3] "New to phonebook".	<ul> <li>Switching from Stand-by display</li> <li>Press  <ul> <li>Press  <li>Press  <ul> <li>Character input</li> <li>Character input</li> <li>Character input trediction</li> <li>Character input seteration</li> </ul> </li> <li>Switching on Character input screen <ul> <li>Switching on Character input seteration</li> <li>Switching on Character input screen</li> <li>Press  <ul> <li>Not and press</li> <li>Switching from Stand-by display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Press  <ul> <li>Press  <ul> <li>Not and press</li> <li>Select input</li> <li>Select Character type and press  <ul> <li>Select Character type and press</li> </ul> </li> </ul></li></ul></li></ul></li></li></ul></li></ul>
December     FOMA® SA7021       December     FOMA® SA7021       Director     Comparison       Outck reference manual       For Network     Manual       For Network     Manual       Comparison     Manual       Manual     Manual       Provide the polynomial optimization centers       Outch State     Manual       Manual     Manual       Outch State     Manual       Manual     Manual       Please check on the number before dialing       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Please check on the number before dialing       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual     Manual       Manual   <	Entering characters Examples Entering "許大" in 5-touch *Examples Entering "許大" in 5-touch aursorone position to the right). "甘" Press [1] sitnes 》 [1] once (move the oursorone position to the right). "甘" Press [2] sitnes 》 [1] once. * Press [2] with [2] once. 2. Press [2] with [2] once. 2. Press [2] with [2] once. 5. Select "許大" in 2-touch There characters in Kanji/Hiragana mode. "甘" Press [2] > [2] Press [2] with [2] once. 3. Select "許大" with [2] on press [0]. 3. Select "許大" with [3] on press [0]. Select "Input prediction I. Press [1] Function] \$ select "Input screen from tscreen input screen from tscreen input screen [0].

Answering a videophone call	<ol> <li>Press ⑤ or E⇒ when receiving a videophone call.</li> <li>Press (miss to hold a call.</li> <li>Press (miss to hold a call.</li> <li>Talk to the other party after the videophone call is connected.</li> <li>Operation during a call.</li> <li>Switches substitutive image and camera image.</li> <li>a. Switches in-camera and Out-camera.</li> <li>a. Switches in-camera and Out-camera.</li> <li>a. Press (miss to end a call.</li> </ol>	=	Oisplaying received i-mode mail         1. Receive a mail.         a ricon.         or ricon.         corrent.         • Press C.
Videophone call	<ul> <li>Making a videophone call</li> <li>1. Enter a phone number and press a.</li> <li>Enter the phone number including the area code.</li> <li>2. Tak to the other party after the videophone call is connected.</li> <li>a. Switches substitutive image and camera image.</li> <li>a. Switches in-camera and Out-camera.</li> <li>a. Hold/Release</li> <li>3. Press [ma] to end a call.</li> </ul>	10	<ol> <li>2. Decorate messages.         <ul> <li>Preview. to contirm Decomail.</li> <li>Preview. to contirm Decomail.</li> <li>3. Press                  <ul> <li>Press I [Function] &gt; <ul> <li>Press I [Send].</li> <li>4. Press I [Send].</li> <li>Editing and sending saved mail</li> <li>"Unsent messages".</li> <li>"Unsent messages".</li> <li>Select a folder and press • &gt; select a mil and press • &gt; • </li></ul></li></ul></li></ul></li></ol>
Viewing shot still image/movie	<ul> <li>Viewing still image</li> <li>Press ● ▶ ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●</li></ul>	σ	<ul> <li>i-mode mail</li> <li>Composing and sending i-mode mail</li> <li>1. Hold down</li></ul>
Using Camera	Shooting still image         1. Hold down a for over a second.         2. Point the camera at the object and press ●.         3. Press ●.         3. Press ●.         1. Hold down a for over a second.         a for over a second.         1. Hold down a for over a second.         1. Hold down a for over a second.         1. Hold down a for over a second.         2. Press ●.         3. Point the camera at the object and press ●.         • Starts shooting.         • Starts shooting.         • Stops shooting.         • Fress ●.         • Stops shooting.	8	GPS function         Positioning present location         Press (1)       Press (1)         Atter Position tocation, press (1)       Atter Position tocation         Atter Position tocation, press (1)       Atter Position tocation         Press (2)       Press (2)         Press (3)       Press (3)         Press (3)       Press (3)         Press (3)       Press (3)         Press (3)       Press (3)         Press (3)       Press (

Call waiting	Call forwarding service	Caller ID request	Services available
Optional (charged) service, requiring subscription.	Optional free service, requiring subscription.	Optional free service, requiring no subscription.	Services available Phone number
Activating the service	Activating the service	Activating the service	Collect call 106 (no area code) (charged calls by collect)
	1. Press ● ▶	= 0	Directory assistance for general fixet-line phones and for Docollo mobile phones (charged service) (Numbers undisclosed to public are not available.)
<ol> <li>Press ● ▶ ₩₩₩ "Network services" ▶ 2. #.</li> <li>Press 2. "Deactivate service" ▶ 1. "Yes."</li> </ol>	1. Press ● ►  "Network services" ► ﷺ. 2. Press 27 "Deadivate service" ► ∡ ™ "Yes".	<ol> <li>Press ● ▶ Weat and a "Network services" ▶ E.</li> <li>Press ZT "Deactivate service" ▶ IT "Yes".</li> </ol>	
Press (200 during a call Press (200 during a call Switching the party to talk: Press (20). Making another call Dial a phone number during a call > press (20).			(charged service) 117 (no area code) (charged service) 117 (no area code) Weather forecast Desired (charged service) area code and 177 Police mergency 110 (no area code) Eixo and ambulanon
<ul> <li>Switching the party to talk: Press (2).</li> <li>Ending a call Press (mail during a call.</li> <li>Resuming on-hold call: Press (2).</li> </ul>			emergency Marine emergency and accident report Emergency message 171 (no area code)
24	25	26	rice) 27
Screen details	① 圓 :Battery level ② 郓 · Bactio wave condition level	① 仏 : Alarm is set. ⑭ ふ ・ Schordule alarm is set	<ul> <li>For General Inquiries <docomo center="" information=""></docomo></li> </ul>
123456789041436466			For more detailed information about the manual, contact the followings:
DASPARESPREST	 菌 � i		<pre>&lt; In Japanese&gt; No prefix 151 (Tol-free) *Camnot be called ** </pre>
(1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (1 (			mobile phones or PHS from lived-line mobile phones or PHS terminals. • Please check on the number before dialing.
06:01	● 査 : During a voice cail ①	2019일:Record message is set. 函動 : Voice mail message in the Center 函際 : Linder Monoremath (OEE on involution anored)	For Repairs For any problems, contact the followings:
Wed Sep 20		) <b>1</b> ) <b>1</b> ) 1	<ul> <li>In Japaneses</li> <li>No prefix 113 (roll-free)</li> <li>Oot 20-800-000</li> <li>Carnot be called from</li> <li>Cannot be called from</li> </ul>
	④ E : Unread MessageF ④ 월 : In USB hands-free ④ 쇼 : minSD memory card inserted	,	rectaring provides. Photoes of PHS terminals. Please check on the number before dialing.
	低 者 : Under Secret mode 低 國 : Missed calls		

dotted line

# About proper telephone etiquette

Do not disturb people around you when using FOMA terminal.

# Always turn off the power of FOMA terminal in the following situations.

### In a place where use of a mobile terminal is prohibited

There are places where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone. Always turn off the power of your FOMA terminal when:

· In an aircraft · In a hospital

\* Be aware of people using electronic medical equipment anywhere in a hospital. FOMA terminal must be powered off even in lobbies or waiting rooms.

### While driving

Using FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and hinders safe driving.

\* Park the vehicle in a safe place before using the mobile phone, or turn Public mode (Drive mode) on.

■ In a place such as a crowded train, where there may be someone using pacemakers or defibrillators near by

The radio wave of FOMA terminal may negatively affect the operation of implanted pacemakers and defibrillators.

■ In a public place such as a concert hall, movie theater or art museum Using FOMA terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

# Be cautious of the location, and the volume of your voice, Ring tone, etc.

- When using FOMA terminal in a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, be cautious of the volume of your voice, Ring tone, etc.
- When using your FOMA terminal on a street, be sure not to block pedestrian or vehicular traffic.

# **Consider privacy.**

Please be considerate of the privacy of other individuals when shooting and sending images with camera-equipped mobile phones.

# Manner functions designed for public use

FOMA terminal supports useful manner functions for not answering incoming calls or muting all kinds of sounds of the terminal.

- Manner mode/Original manner mode Mutes all sound that is played from FOMA terminal, such as key sound or Ring tone. (Manner mode) You can modify the Manner mode as your own settings (Original manner mode).
- Public mode (Drive mode)

Answers to the caller with the guidance that informs you cannot answer the call for driving, being in a public place or in where use of mobile phone is restricted, then disconnects. Ring tone does not play and you can drive safely.

### Vibrator

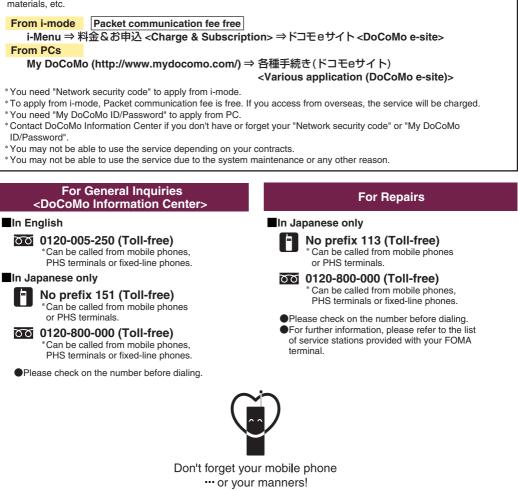
Informs an incoming call with vibration.

· Record message

When you cannot answer a call. the caller can leave a message after the answer message is played.

In addition, optional services are available such as Voice mail or Call forwarding service.

You can access "  $^{\kappa} \exists \Xi e \forall \mathcal{A} \vdash \mathsf{<DoCoMo}$  e-site>", to change address, change billing plan, request for information materials, etc.



When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

# Retailer NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc. NTT DoCoMo, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc. NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

# Manufacturer: SANYO Electric Co., Ltd.









To promote environmental conservation, be sure to return your used battery pack to NTT DoCoMo's sales outlets, our cooperate agencies or the shops that collect used battery in your community.



'06.5 (Issue 1)

# FOMA® SA702i Manual for Data Communication

Data communication	I
Setup flow for data communication	2
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal	3
Installing communication configuration file	3
Setting up with FOMA PC configuration software	5
Making communication settings without FOMA PC configuration software 13	3
AT command	3

### About 'Manual for Data communication'

In this manual, requirements for data communication with FOMA SA702i, and procedure for installation of "SA702i communication configuration file (driver)" and "FOMA PC configuration software" in the CD-ROM are described.

### **Operation of Windows XP**

This manual is based on Windows XP Service Pack 2. Operation procedure or the screens shown may differ from actual ones, depending on the environment.

# Data communication

# Data communication available by FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal supports packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer by connecting to a PC.

- · FOMA terminal does not support Remote Wakeup.
- FOMA terminal does not support facsimile transmission.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II " for data communication, update "musea" or "sigmarion II " before use. Refer to DoCoMo's Internet site for the details of the update procedure etc.

#### Packet communication

Packet communication is one of communication methods, which does not occupy the line, for the data is divided into small pieces (packets) to transfer. It is efficient for multiple terminals to use one line, and this method does not require cost except on sending/ receiving data. FOMA terminal can be constantly connected to the network, and can send/receive data when necessary. It is suitable to send/receive relatively small amount of data such as text of mails at high speed, because the charge depends on sent/ received data size instead of the duration or the distance of connection.

Note that the communication fee becomes expensive to send/receive large amount of data (such as high quality images and melodies).

• High-speed packet communication (Maximum download speed: 384 kbps, maximum upload speed: 64 kbps) is available.

#### Establishing packet communication

- · Connect within FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. (→P3, 5) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- The access point is required to be compatible with FOMA packet communication of DoCoMo Internet service, such as "mopera U"/"mopera".

#### 64K data communication

64K data communication is a data communication method which sends/receives data at 64 kbps baud rate. It is suitable to download relatively large amount of data such as high quality images or melodies, for the charge depends on the communication duration instead of the data volume.

Be aware that long hours of communication causes high communication fee.

#### Establishing 64K data communication

- · Connect within FOMA service area.
- Install the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software beforehand, make each setting, and connect. (→P3, 5) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port or PDA of DoCoMo are required.
- The host is required to support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet service, "mopera U"/"mopera" or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

#### Data transmission

Data transmission is a transmission method which sends/receives data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional) or infrared data communication. No communication fee is charged. Various data in Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, etc. can be transferred to PC or other FOMA terminals/mobile phones with infrared communication function. Use the function to save or backup data.

# Transferring data using FOMA USB connection cable (optional)

 Install the communication configuration file beforehand, to transfer the data. (→P3) FOMA USB connection cable (optional) and PC equipped with USB port are required.

#### Making Infrared communication

 FOMA terminal sends/receives data to the devices equipped with Infrared communication function, such as other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs. Packet communication and 64K data communication cannot be established with Infrared communication, function. For details of Infrared communication, refer to Manual for FOMA SA702i.

#### Information

- Packet communication or 64K data communication may be failed when the base station is busy or the radio wave is poor.
- PPP packet communication receiving function is not available.
- Note that communication fee becomes expensive to download files or to display images of large size.
- Set USB mode to "Communication mode" when connecting 64K or Packet, or operating FOMA terminal by hands-free compatible devices.



### Precautions

# Internet service provider connection charges

When using Internet from PC, connection fee is charged by your Internet service provider (referred to as providers). This charge needs to be paid directly to your provider, and is separated from FOMA service charge. For more information on connection charges, contact your provider.



 We recommend you to subscribe to "mopera U", which is compatible with the broadband connection option and the international roaming service, for FOMA to use Internet with FOMA terminal. Also "mopera" is easy and convenient for users who wish to connect to Internet shortly. Application is required to use "mopera U" (charged). "mopera" does not require any applications or monthly charges.

# Connection host (Internet service provider etc.)

Different connection hosts are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. For packet communication, use the host for packet, and for 64K data communication, use the host for FOMA 64 kbps data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

• FOMA terminal cannot be connected to PHS 64K/32K data communication access point such as PIAFS or DoPa.

# User authentication during network access

Some hosts may require the authentication for connection. If required, enter your ID and password on the communication software or dial-up network. ID and password will be assigned by the network administrator or your provider of the host. For more information, contact your provider or company network administrator.

#### Access authentication using PC browser

If FirstPass (Client certificate) is required for the access authentication using PC browser, install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure the settings. For more information, refer to "FirstPassManual" in the attached CD-ROM. To view "FirstPass Manual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is needed. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, the software can be downloaded from the Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site. (Communication fees are separately required for

downloading.) For more information, refer to Adobe Systems Incorporated Internet site.

# Operation environment for FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirement *	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000 : 32 MB or larger Windows XP : 128 MB or larger
Hard disk capacity *	10 MB or larger free disk space
Browser	Microsoft <sup>®</sup> Internet Explorer 5.5 or later versions

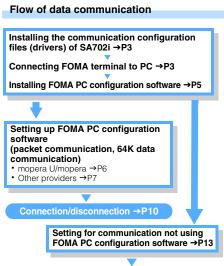
\* May vary according to the PC system configurations.

# Setup flow for data communication

This section describes the setup required to connect FOMA terminal to PC, to establish packet communication/64K data communication.

#### Attached CD-ROM (CD-ROM for FOMA SA702i)

The provided CD-ROM includes the communication configuration files (drivers), FOMA PC configuration software, and FirstPass PC software. Communication configuration file is the software required to communicate and connect FOMA terminal to PC with FOMA USB connection cable (optional). Also, FOMA PC configuration software is the software which allows to configure various settings required for data communication from PC.



# Connection/disconnection →P17

#### **Operating environment**

Refer to the following PC environment to operate the communication configuration files/FOMA PC configuration software.

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
	USB port (compatible with USB 1.1 and later)
OS (Japanese version)	Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirement	Windows 98, Me : 32 MB or larger Windows 2000 : 64 MB or larger Windows XP : 128 MB or larger
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or larger free disk space

 Installation may not be available depending on the settings of your PC environment.

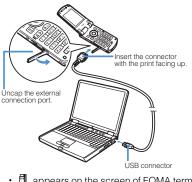
### Information

- Memory requirements and hard disk capacity may vary according to PC system configurations.
- No responsibility is assumed in operation after upgrading.
- Note that the files/software cannot be used in some operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed without the previously described environment, and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation out of the described conditions.

# **Connecting PC to FOMA terminal**

· FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required.

- Uncap the external connection port of FOMA terminal, to insert an end (FOMA terminal side) of FOMA USB connection cable.
- 2 Insert the other end (PC side) of FOMA USB connection cable into the PC USB connector.
  - Wizard screen is displayed, when connecting to PC before installing the communication configuration files. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click "Cancel".
  - To install Windows XP →P3 Windows 2000 →P4 Windows 98/Me →P4



appears on the screen of FOMA terminal when connected to PC.

### Removing FOMA USB connection cable

#### Pull out FOMA USB connection cable horizontally with pressing the release buttons.

Do not force to pull, for it may cause damage.



2 Pull out the FOMA USB connection cable from PC.



### Information

- Do not disconnect FOMA USB connection cable during data communication. Data corruption may occur.
- If your PC does not recognize FOMA terminal any more, try to uninstall and reinstall the communication configuration file.

# Installing communication configuration file

Install the communication configuration file to establish data communication with FOMA terminal and PC connected.

# Installing SA702i communication configuration file (driver)

The procedure of installation on Windows XP is described as an example.

- Install the file on Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Installing with any other name results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before installation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart installation.

# Insert the attached CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of your PC.

# 2 Connect FOMA terminal to PC with FOMA USB connection cable.

"新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード <Found New Hardware Wizard>" screen is displayed.

- FOMA terminal has to be powered on when connecting.
- When installing on Windows XP Service Pack
   2, select "いいえ、今回は接続しません。<Not connect for this time.>" and click "Next".
- Installing on Windows 2000 Following procedures: →P4
- Installing on Windows 98/Me Following procedures: →P4



- 3 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする(詳細) <Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する <Search for the best driver in these locations>", uncheck "リムーバブルメディア(フロッピー、 CD-ROMなど)を検索 <Search removable media (floppy disk, CD-ROM etc.)>", and check "次の場 所を含める <Include this location in the search>".

5 Click "参照 <Browse>", specify the folder in which the driver is saved, and click "OK".

• Folder is named as "[CD-ROM Drive name]: ¥USB Driver".



- <sub> ら</sub> Click "次へ <Next>".
- 7 Click "完了 <Finish>" on the screen "新しい ハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了 <Found New Hardware Wizard is finished>".
- Continue to install 3 remaining communication configuration files referring to Step 3 to 7.
  - Some of 3 remaining communication configuration files may be installed automatically, depending on the PC you use.

### Installing on Windows 2000

- After the connection is established (Step 2), click "次へ <Next>" when the screen "新しい ハードウェアの検出ウィザード <Found New Hardware Wizard>" is displayed.
- Select "デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨) <Search for the best driver for the device (recommended)>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- ③ Check "場所を指定 <Specify the folder>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- ④ Specify the folder and click "OK".
  - Folder is named as "[CD-ROM Drive name]: ¥USB Driver".
- ⑤ Confirm the driver name and click "次へ <Next>".
- ⑥ Click "完了 <Finish>".
  - · Install 3 remaining communication configuration files.

#### Installing on Windows 98/Me

① After the connection is established (Step 2), click "次へ <Next>" when the screen "新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード <Add New Hardware Wizard>" is displayed.

- The screen is not displayed on Windows Me. Go to Step 2
- Select "ドライバの場所を指定する <Specify driver location>" and click "次へ <Next>".
  - For Windows 98, Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する(推奨) <Search the best drivers for the device in use</li>

(recommended)>" and click "次へ <Next>".

- ③ Select "使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを 検索する(推奨) <Search the best driver for the device in use (recommended)>", and check on "検索場所の指定 <Specify the place to search>", and click "参照 <Browse>", and specify the folder and click "次へ <Next>".
  - For Windows 98, check "検索場所の指定 <Specify the location to search>", and select " 更新されたドライバ(推奨) <Updated driver (recommended)>", and click "次へ <Next>".
  - Folder is named as "[CD-ROM Drive name]: ¥USB Driver".

④ Confirm the driver name and click "次へ <Next>".
⑤ Click "完了 <Finish>".

• Install 4 remaining communication configuration files.

# Confirming installed SA702i communication configuration file (driver)

Confirm if the communication configuration file is installed properly.

- The flow on Windows XP is described as an example.
- Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ Click "コント ロールパネル <Control Panel>".
- 2 Double-click "システム <System>".
- 3 Click "ハードウェア <Hardware>" tab, then "デ バイスマネージャ <Device Manager>". "Device manager" appears.

島 デバイス マネージャ	
ファイル(1) 操作(1) 表示(1) ヘルフロ)	
+ → ■ @	
■         COMMAND           0.3         DOUCH AND THAT           0.3         DOUCH AND THAT           0.4         DOUCH AND THAT           0.5         DOUCH AND THAT           0.6         DOUCH AND THAT           0.7         DOUCH AND THAT           0.7	

4 Click each device to check whether the driver is properly installed.

Port (COM and LPT): FOMA SA702i Command Port FOMA SA702i OBEX Port Modem: FOMA SA702i

# Universal Serial Bus (USB) controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller:

FOMA SA702i FOMA SA702i Command\* FOMA SA702i Modem\* FOMA SA702i OBEX\* \* Displayed only on Windows 98/Me.

Checking on Windows 98/Me/2000

- Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "設定 <Settings>" ▶ "コントロールパネル <Control Panel>".
- ② Double-click "システム <System>".
- ③ Click "デバイスマネージャ <br/>
   Device Manager>" tab.
  - For Windows 2000, click "ハードウェア <Hardware>" tab, then "デバイスマネー ジャ <Device manager>".

④ Click each device to check whether the driver is properly installed.

· Refer to P4, for driver types.

# Uninstalling SA702i communication configuration file (driver)

Uninstall the driver by the following procedure if needed.

- The uninstallation procedure from Windows XP is described as an example.
- Before uninstallation, disconnect FOMA terminal from PC.
- Uninstall the file from Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with a name having administrative right. Uninstalling with any other name results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before uninstallation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart uninstallation.
- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of your PC.
- 2 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "マイコン ピュータ <My Computer>" ▶ Right click "[CD-ROM drive name]" and select "開く <Open>".
- 3 Double-click "SA702i\_u.exe" in "USB Driver" folder.
  - The file may be shown as "SA702i\_u" according to PC you use.
- Click "OK".

Uninstallation starts.

S Click "OK" and reboot Windows.

# Setting up with FOMA PC configuration software

FOMA PC configuration software allows you packet communication or 64K data communication with simple operations.

## FOMA PC configuration software

The following settings are available for FOMA PC configuration.

#### Easy setup

"FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 <Creating a dial-up connection for FOMA data communication>" and "W-TCPの設定 <W-TCP setup>" can be performed easily by following the instructions of the guide.

#### W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for "FOMA packet communication". Optimization of the communication settings with "W-TCP設定 <W-TCP setup>" is required for the best communication performance.

#### Host (APN) setting

This function performs "Host (APN) setting" required for "Packet communication".

In contrast to 64K data communication, phone numbers are not used for FOMA packet communication. Register the host name called APN (Access Point Name) of each host and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field. APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to connect to mopera as cid1, and APN "mopera.net" is registered to connect to mopera U as cid3, by default. Additional settings are required to connect to other providers or Company LAN.

 cid (Context Identifier) is the number compatible with packet communication host (APN) and is required to set APN registration to FOMA terminal.

# Installing FOMA PC configuration software

The procedure of installation on Windows XP is described as an example.

- Install the file on Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with the name having administrative right. Installing with any other name results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before installation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart installation.

### 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive of your PC.

2 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ Click "ファ イル名を指定して実行 <Run...>".

5

# 3 Enter "[CD-ROM drive name]: ¥FOMA\_PCSET¥setup.exe" and click "OK".

### 🔼 Click "次へ <Next>".

A confirmation screen of the product license agreement appears.

# 5 Read the content on the screen and click "はい <Yes>" if you agree.

• The software can not be installed if you click "いいえ <No>".

### Click "タスクトレイに常駐する <Resident in Notification area>" and click "次へ <Next>".

"W-TCP設定 <W-TCP setup>" appears on Notification area after installation is completed.

 This function is to set or release for optimizing "W-TCP communication", and the residence is recommended. The operation for the residence is also available after installation from the menu of FOMA PC設定ソフト <The FOMA PC configuration software>, besides setting in this step.



### 7 Confirm the installation path and click "次へ <Next>".

- ・Click "参照 <Browse>" to change and specify the installation path, and then click "次へ <Next>".
- 8 Confirm the program folder name and click "次へ <Next>".

Installation starts.

・Enter a folder name if you change, and click "次へ <Next>".



## Click "完了 <Finish>".

"FOMA PC設定ソフト <The FOMA PC configuration software>" is started.
• Then each setting can be made.

# Information

When "W-TCP configuration software", "FOMA data communication configuration software" or "FOMA PC configuration software" is already installed, uninstall the software and reinstall FOMA PC configuration software with the attached CD-ROM. →P10

### Setup preparations

Start FOMA PC configuration software to make each setting.

- Confirm that SA702i communication configuration file (driver) is installed and FOMA terminal is connected properly to PC with FOMA USB connection cable.
- When FOMA terminal is recognized as a bigger port number than COM20, APN information may not be retrieved/written on APN configuration.
- The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.
- Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "すべてのプ ログラム <All programs>" ("プログラム <Programs>" for OS other than Windows XP) ▶ "FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC configuration software>" ▶ "FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC configuration software>".

Starts "FOMA PC設定ソフト < The FOMA PC configuration software>".



# Setup procedure

# Communication configuration procedure using mopera U or mopera

Following procedure is for the setting for packet communication using mopera U or mopera, DoCoMo's Internet service.

- Application is required to use mopera U (charged). mopera does not require any applications or monthly charges.
- Using providers other than mopera U/mopera  $\rightarrow$  P7
- Click "かんたん設定 <Easy settings>".

Select "パケット通信 <Packet communication>" and click "次へ <Next>".



3 Select "「mopera U」への接続 <'mopera U' connection>" or

> "「mopera」への接続 <'mopera' connection>" and click "次へ <Next>".



 When selecting "「mopera U」への接続 <'mopera U' connection>", the confirmation screen to ask whether subscription is already made appears. If subscription is already made, press "はい <Yes>".

### Click "OK".

PC retrieves "Host (APN) information" from FOMA terminal connected to PC. Please wait for a while.

#### 5 Enter a connection name and click "次 へ <Next>".

Enter a connection name you like.

 The following one-byte (Half Mark) characters cannot be entered: ¥ / : \* ? ! <> | ".

接続名:	fomal
モデム名:	FOMA SA702i
▶ 発信者番号	问重知を行う
※mopera U及i	び、mopera接続では発信者番号通知が必要です。

# 6 Select the user from the options and click "次へ <Next>".

- On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 <Specify users>" is not displayed.
- When using mopera U/mopera, "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" can be left as blank spaces.

<ul> <li>● すべてのユーザー</li> <li>● 自分のみ</li> <li>ユーザー名・バスワード設定</li> <li>アカケントおお持ちの方は入力して下さい。</li> <li>64時ちたび、場合は入力不準です。)</li> </ul>
ユーザー名・パスワード設定
アカウントをお持ちの方は入力して下さい。
(お持ちでない場合は人力不要です。)
ユーザー名:
パスワード:
▶ パスワードを保存する

# 7 Check "最適化を行う <Optimize>" and click "次へ <Next>".

• This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

	Aバケット用に最適化され		
FOMAパクタ 定を最適化	ト通信を利用するため、, します。	パンコンパ内の知道言語	
☞ 巖通伯	£173)		

Check "デスクトップにダイヤルアップの ショートカットを作成する <Create a shortcut of dial up on desktop>", confirm setting information, and click "完了 <Finish>".

### Click "OK".

The PC must be restarted to enable the new settings. Click "(Jtu) <Yes>" when the confirmation screen to reboot is displayed.

# Setting packet communication using other providers

The following procedure is configuration settings when using other providers than mopera U/mopera for packet communication.

- Click "かんたん設定 <Easy settings>".
- 2 Select "パケット通信 <Packet communication>" and click "次へ <Next>".

3 Select "その他 <Other connection>" and click "次へ <Next>".

Using mopera U/mopera →P6



### Click "OK".

PC retrieves "Host (APN) information" from FOMA terminal connected to PC. Please wait for a while.

5 Enter a connection name and click "接 続先(APN)設定 <Host (APN) setting>".

Enter a connection name you like.

- The following one-byte (Half Mark) characters cannot be entered: ¥ / : \* ? ! < > | ".
- APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in "接続先 (APN)の選択 <Select host (APN)>" to connect to mopera.
- The Caller ID is sent to the other party each time the communication is established, when selecting "発信者番号通知を行う <Send Caller ID>".
- Entry of "IPアドレス <IP address>" and "ネームサーバー <Name server>" may be required when using company LAN or some providers. Click "詳細情報の設定 <Setting detailed information>" and make settings based on information from your provider or company network administrator.

接続名:	foma		
モデム名:	FOMA SA702i		
接続先(APN)の選択:	mopera.ne.jp		•
	I	接続先(APN)設	锭
☞ 発信者番号通知を	177	調業務留付着専用の調査	Ē

### Set host (APN).

Click "追加 <Add>" and enter properly a host name (APN) which supports the FOMA packet communication of the provider in "接続先(APN) <Host (APN)>", and click "OK" to set another host (APN).

 APN "mopera.ne.jp" is registered to connect to mopera as cid1, and APN "mopera.net" is registered to connect to mopera U as cid3, by default.

- Registration of host (APN) is available in number (cid) 2, 4 to 16.
- Only one-byte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters, hyphens ( - ), periods (.) can be entered in the "接続先(APN) <Host (APN)>".

香号(cid)	接続先(APN)	
3	moperane.jp moperanet	
追加		
	接続先(APN)の追加	
	接続先(APN):	
	番号(cid): 2	

- 7 Click "OK".
- 8 Confirm the host name (APN), and click "次へ <Next>".
- Select the user from the options, enter "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パス ワード <Password>" and click "次へ <Next>".
  - On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 <Specify users>"is not displayed.
  - Enter proper "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" based on information from the provider.

使用可能ユーザーの選			
		を指定してください	
	のユーザー		
○ 自分	0.95		
ユーザー名・パスワード	贫定		
アカウントをお丼 (お持ちでない)	持の方は入力し 場合は入力不要	,て下さい。 です。)	
ユーザー名:			
パスワード:			
	F 127-	ドを保存する	

- 10 Check "最適化を行う <Optimize>" and click "次へ <Next>".
  - This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.
- 11 Check "デスクトップにダイヤルアップの ショートカットを作成する <Create a shortcut of dial-up on desktop>", confirm setting information, and click "完了 <Finish>".

# 12 Click "OK".

The PC must be restarted to enable the new settings. Click "(Jtu) <Yes>" when the confirmation screen to reboot is displayed.

# Setting 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera

The following the setting procedure for using mopera U/mopera, DoCoMo's Internet service, in 64K data communication.

- Application is required to use mopera U (charged). mopera does not require any applications or monthly charges.
- Click "かんたん設定 <Easy settings>".

Select "64Kデータ通信 <64K data communication>" and click "次へ <Next>".



3 Select "「mopera U」への接続 <'mopera U' connection>" or "「mopera」への接続 <'mopera' connection> " and click "次へ <Next>".



 When selecting "「mopera U」への接続 <'mopera U' connection>", the confirmation screen to ask whether subscription is already made appears. If subscription is already made, press "はい <Yes>".

## 4 Enter the connection name and confirm the modem selection (select "FOMA SA702i") and click "次へ <Next>".

Enter the connection name and phone number properly, based on information from the provider.

 The following one-byte (Half Mark) characters cannot be entered: ¥ / : \* ? ! <> | ".

# 5 Select the user from the options and click "次へ <Next>".

・On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 <Specify users>" is not displayed. • When using mopera U/mopera, "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" can be left as blank spaces.

	利用できるユーザーを指定してください
	「大てのユーザー」
CÉ	1ዓመት
2ーザー名・パスワー	ド設定
アカウントを	お持ちの方は入力して下さい。 い場合は入力不要です。)
ユーザー名	
パスワード:	
	▶ パスワードを保存する

💦 Confirm the settings and click "完了 <Finish>".

### 7 Click "OK".

Setting 64K data communication using other providers

Following description is for configuration settings using other providers than mopera U/mopera in 64K data communication.

- Click "かんたん設定 <Easy settings>".
- 2 Select "64Kデータ通信 <64K data communication>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 3 Select "その他 <Other connection>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 4. Enter the connection name and the phone number, confirm the modem selection (select "FOMA SA702i") and click "次へ <Next>".

Enter the connection name and phone number properly, based on information from the provider.

- The following one-byte (Half Mark) characters cannot be entered: ¥ / : \* ? ! < > | ".
- Entry of "IPアドレス <IP address>" and "ネーム サーバー <Name server>" may be required when using company LAN or some providers. Click "詳 細情報の設定 <Setting detailed information>" and make settings based on information from your provider or company network administrator.
- 5 Select the user from the options, enter "ユー ザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>", and click "次へ <Next>".
  - ・On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの選択 <Specify users>" is not displayed.
  - Enter proper "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" based on information from the provider.
- Confirm the settings and click "完了 <Finish>".
- 7 Click "OK".

### **Executing communication**

Starting and disconnecting communication set with FOMA PC configuration software.

• The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

# Double-click the dual-up connection icon on the desktop.



The screen to start connection for data communication is displayed.

Connecting to FOMA terminal from Start menu of Windows XP

 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "すべてのプログラム <All Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ
 <Accessories>" ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ネットワーク接続 <Network Connections>", then, double-click the connection icon.

Starting from Windows 98/Me/2000 start menu

 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "プログラム <Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>" ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ネットワークと ダイヤルアップ接続(ダイヤルアップネットワー ク) <Network and dial-up connection (Dial-up Network)>", then, double-click the connection icon.

### 2 Click "ダイヤル <Dial>" to connect.

- When mopera U/mopera is selected, "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" fields can be left as blank spaces.
- For dial-up connection through other providers, enter "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" before clicking "ダイヤル <Dial>".
- Entering password is not required next time after selecting "パスワードを保存する <Save user name and password>".



The message and the icon of パケット通信中
 <Connected packet>" or "64Kデータ通信中
 <Connected 64K>" are displayed on FOMA
 terminal screen. For details about icons displayed
 during packet communication/64K data
 communication, refer to Manual for FOMA SA702i.

#### **Disconnecting communication**

Closing the Internet browser alone may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection by the following procedure.

 The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

# 1 Double-click the icon of dial-up connection.

The status screen is displayed.



# <mark>2</mark> Click "切断 <Disconnect>".

#### Information

- The transmission speed displayed on PC may differ from the actual speed.
- FOMA terminal receives incoming voice calls during Packet communication. SMS can also be received. During 64K data communication, you can terminate the connection to answer the incoming call, with Call waiting service. SMS can also be received. In this case, not Ring tone but an icon or Reception status screen notifies the incoming SMS.
- Voice mail service or other network services are also available for incoming calls during packet communication/64K data communication.

# Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

Uninstall FOMA PC configuration software by the following procedure when needed.

- The uninstallation procedure from Windows XP is described as an example. Refer to each manual when using other OS.
- Uninstall the file from Windows XP or Windows 2000 after logging on with a name having administrative right. Uninstalling with any other name results an error. For procedures to set administrative right of PC, contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before uninstallation, make sure no other programs are activated. Save and exit all active programs and restart uninstallation.



- 1 Right-click W-TCP setup icon ( ) in Notify area and select "常駐させない <Not be resident>".
  - The icon is not displayed when W-TCP configuration is set not to reside. Proceed uninstallation.
- 2 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "コントロー ルパネル <Control Panel>" ▶ Doubleclick "プログラムの追加と削除 <Add or Remove Programs>".
- 3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC Configuration Software>" and click "変更と削除 <Change/Remove>".



Confirm the program name and click " はい <Yes>".

Uninstallation starts.

S Click "OK".

### Information

When W-TCP is optimized, the screen to release the optimization appears during uninstallation. Click "はいくYes>" and reboot PC, as directed on the screen.

### W-TCP setup

Set "W-TCP設定 <W-TCP setup>" to optimize packet communication configuration on PC for FOMA network.

 "W-TCP設定 <W-TCP setup>" is "TCP parameter tuning tool" for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in FOMA network. This communication setup is required for the best communication performance of FOMA terminal.

# Activating and deactivating system optimization (Windows XP)

System can be optimized for each dial-up connection in Windows XP.

- 1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC configuration software>", and click "W-TCP設定 <W-TCP Setup>".
  - Click FOMA PC configuration software on Start menu or click 🛄 on the task tray, to start FOMA PC configuration software.

### Perform the following procedure.

#### When the system has not been optimized

 Click "最適化を行う <Optimize>".
 Select the dial-up connection to be optimized and click "実行 <Execute>".

optimization of the system settings and dial-up settings are performed respectively. (Optimization of system settings becomes valid after rebooting PC.)

₩, ₩-т	CP讀定	×
FOMA/ 設定を	パケット通信を利用するため、パソコ 最適化します。	ン内の通信
	現在、最適化されていません。	
	展産化を行う	
	変更を行れ	が開いる

#### When the system settings have been optimized

The following screen appears. Click the check box and then click "実行 <Execute>" to change the settings.

最適化	「変更	現在	ダイヤルアップ名	モデム名	
☑する		最適化	foma	FOMA SA702i	
				実行 1 1111111	

#### Deactivating optimization

- Click "システム設定 <System settings>" on "W-TCP設定 (ダイヤルアップ) <W-TCP setup (Dial-up)>" screen.
- ② Click "最適化を解除する <Deactivate optimization>".
- Reboot Windows.
  - The setting becomes valid after rebooting PC.

Activating and deactivating system optimization (Windows 98/Me/2000)

1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC configuration software>", and click "W-TCP設定 <W-TCP Setup>".

• Click FOMA PC configuration software on Start menu or click 🛄 on the task tray, to start FOMA PC configuration software.

- Perform the following procedure.
- When the system settings have not been optimized
  - ① Click "最適化を行う <Optimize>".

### Deactivating optimization

① Click "最適化を解除する < Deactivate optimization>".

### 3 Reboot Windows.

• The setting becomes valid after rebooting PC.

# Host (APN) setting

Set a host (APN) for packet communication.

- Up to 16 connections can be set as hosts (APN). APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is set to cid1, and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is set to cid3 by default.
- The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.
- 1 Start "FOMA PC 設定ソフト <FOMA PC configuration software>", and click "接続先 (APN) 設定 <Host (APN) setting>".

## 2 Click "OK".

PC accesses the connected FOMA terminal automatically to read the registered "host (APN) information".

## Set a host (APN).

接続	先(APN)設定		×
771)	r(E)		
	MA端末設定 観徳先(APN)の 「番号(cid)	設定  接続先(APN)	FOMAH第末へ 設定を書き込む
	御与(cid) 1 3	150000 (APN) moperane.jp moperanet	開にる
	<u>ieto  </u> #	<b>珠</b>   _ 前陸   _ ダイヤルアップ作成	

#### Adding a host (APN)

- ① Click "追加 <Add>".
- Editing/correcting a registered host (APN)
  - ① Select a host (APN) and click "編集 <Edit>".

#### Deleting a registered host (APN)

- ① Select a host (APN) and click "削除 <Delete>".
  - The host (APN) registered in number (cid) 1 and 3 cannot be deleted. Even when selecting the number (cid) 3 and clicking " 削除 <Delete>", APN is not actually deleted and the setting returns to "mopera.net".

#### Saving a host (APN) as a file

- Click "ファイル <File>" on the toolbar ▶ "名前を付けて保存 <Save as...>" or "上書き保存 <Overwrite>".
  - Use the procedure to save the settings as a file to back up host (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal, or to save host (APN) settings halfway editing.

#### Importing host (APN) information from a file

- ① Click "ファイル <File>" on the toolbar ▶ "開く <Open>".
  - Use the procedure to re-edit or write to FOMA terminal the saved host (APN) settings.

- Importing host (APN) information from FOMA terminal
  - ① Click "ファイル <File>" on the toolbar ▶ "FOMA端末から設定を取得 <Import setting from FOMA terminal>".
    - Manually access FOMA terminal to import the registered "host (APN) information".

Writing host (APN) information to FOMA terminal

- ① Click "FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む <Write the setting to FOMA terminal>".
  - The displayed host (APN) setting is written into FOMA terminal.
- ② Click "はい <Yes>".

#### Creating a dial-up connection

- ① Select an added/edited host (APN) and click "ダイヤルアップ作成 <Create dial-up connection>".
  - "パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成
     <Create dial-up connection for packet communication>" screen is displayed.
- ② Click "はい <Yes>".
  - The host is written into FOMA terminal.
- 3 Click "OK".
- ④ Enter a desired connection name and click "アカウント・パスワードの設定 <Set account and password>".
  - The setting is optional for mopera U/ mopera.
- ⑤ Select the user from the options, enter "ユー ザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" and click "OK".
  - On Windows 98/Me, "使用可能ユーザーの 選択 <Specify users>" is not displayed.
  - When your provider require the entry of IP and DNS information settings, click "詳細 情報の設定 <Set detail info>" in "パケット 通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 <Create dialup connection for packet communication>" screen, register the required information and click "OK".
- 6 Click "OK".
  - ・Click "はし) <Yes>" to overwrite.

## Information

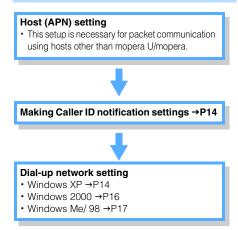
 For details about hosts (APN) other than mopera U/ mopera, contact your provider or company network administrator.

# Making communication settings without FOMA PC configuration software

## Dial-up network setting

The following procedure describes dial-up connection setup for packet communication/64K data communication without FOMA PC configuration software.

## Flow of dial-up network settings



## Setting host (APN)

Default cid1: mopera.ne.jp cid3: mopera.net cid2, 4 to 16: no setting

Communication software is required to input AT commands for the setting. The following procedure describes the setting using "ハイパーターミナル <HyperTerminal>" that comes with Windows.

- Host (APN) can be registered to registration number cid1 to cid16.
- APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to mopera is set to cid1, and APN "mopera.net" to connect to mopera U is set to cid3 by default. When connecting to other providers or company LAN, register APN to cid2, or 4 to 16.
- The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.
- Connect FOMA terminal to PC.

2 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "すべてのブ ログラム <All Programs>" ▶ "アクセサ リ <Accessories>" ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ハイパーターミ ナル <Hyper Terminal>".

Then double-click "Hypertrm.exe" on Windows 98.

- On OS other than Windows XP, "すべてのプロ グラム <All programs>" is displayed as "プロ グラム <Programs>".
- 3 Enter a desired dial-up connection name in "名前 <Name>" and click "OK".
  - When the message "規定のTelnet"プログラム にしますか? <Set to the default telnet program?>" appears after activating Hyper Terminal, the setting is optional. Contact the PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation, for the details about setting information.



- 4 Enter a temporary number (such as "0") for "電話番号 <Phone number>", select "FOMA SA702i" from "接続方法 <Connect using>" and click "OK".
  - Area code is not required to be set. [The above setting does not relate to host (APN) setting.]

接続の設定	?×
Sample sample	
電話番号の情報を	入力してください。
国/地域番号( <u>C</u> ):	日本 (81)
市外局番(E):	
電話番号(P):	
接続方法( <u>N</u> ):	FOMA SA702i
	OK ##>セル

5 When the connection screen appears, click "キャンセル <Cancel>".

Entry format is "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "APN"".

• Note that a cid setting is overwritten if the cid has already been set.

#### <cid>

Enter any number from 2, or 4 to 16.

"PPP" Enter "PPP".

# "APN"

13

Enter the host name (APN) in " " (double quotation marks).

If "OK" is displayed, the host (APN) setting is completed.

# 7 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイル <File>" ▶ "ハイパーター ミナルの終了 <Exit>".

- When a message "現在接続されています。切断してよろしいですか? <You are currently connected. Are you sure you want to disconnect now?>" is displayed, click "はい <Yes>".
- When "XXX' と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? <Save the connection named</li>
   'XXX'?>" is displayed, click "しいえ <No>".

## Resetting host (APN)

### AT+CGDCONT= 🕘 :

All cid are reset.

• The setting for <cid>=1 returns to default "mopera.ne.jp" and <cid>=3 to "mopera.net", and settings for <cid>=2, and 4 to 16 returns to be unregistered.

#### AT+CGDCONT=<cid> I : The specified cid are reset.

The specified cid are reset.

## Confirming host (APN)

## AT+CGDCONT?

When entered AT command is not displayed ATE1

## Host (APN) and cid (registration number)

A host (APN) is registered in the same procedure as when adding the other party's phone number to Phonebook. The differences from adding entries to FOMA terminal phonebook is as follows.

Item for host setting	Item for FOMA terminal phonebook entry
cid (registration number)	No. of entries (Phonebook number)
APN	The other party's phone number

## Information

- When using hosts (APN) other than mopera U/mopera, contact the provider or company network administrator for inquiries.
- The registered cid becomes the dial-up connection number.

## Making Caller ID notification settings

Default No setting

Caller ID notification can be set for packet communication. Be cautious when you send your Caller ID as it is important information.

- CallerID notification is required to be set "Activate" to use mopera U or mopera.
- Start "ハイパーターミナル <Hyper Terminal>".
- 2 Set Caller ID notification during packet communication to activate (186) or to deactivate (184).

Entry format is "AT\*DGPIR=<n>". AT\*DGPIR=1 []:

Add "184" to the connection host (APN) to establish dial-up connection.

### AT∗DGPIR=2 🕘 :

Add "186" to the connection host (APN) to establish dial-up connection.

Return to No setting.

## 3 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ファイ ル <File>" ▶ "ハイパーターミナルの終了 <Exit>".

When "XXX' と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? <Save the connection named</li>
 'XXX'?>" is displayed, click "しいえ <No>".

### Making Caller ID notification setting by dialup network settings

Also in dial-up network setting, you can add "186 (Activate)" or "184 (Deactivate)" to the dial-up connection number.

If "186 (Activate)" or "184 (Deactivate)" is set by both \*DGPIR command and in dial-up network setting, Caller ID notification (Activate/Deactivate) is as follows.

Dial-up network setting (When <cid>=1)</cid>	Setting by the command *DGPIR	Caller ID notification
	No setting	Activate
* 99 * * * 1#	Deactivate	Deactivate
	Activate	Activate
	No setting	
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Deactivate	Deactivate * 1
	Activate	
	No setting	
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Deactivate	Activate * 2
	Activate	

<sup>\* 1</sup> Caller ID notification setting of dial-up network (184) has the priority.

\*<sup>2</sup> Caller ID notification setting of dial-up network (186) has the priority.

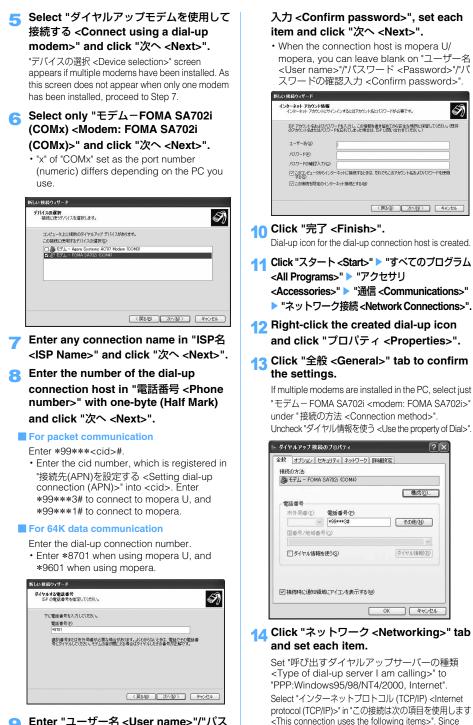
## Setting dial-up network

## Setting for Windows XP

 Click "スタート <Starb" ▶ "すべてのプログラム</li>
 <All Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>"
 "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "新しい接続ウィ ザード <New Connection Wizard>".

"新しい接続ウィザード<New Connection Wizard>" screen is displayed.

- <mark>2</mark> Click "次へ <Next>".
- 3 Select "インターネットに接続する <Connect to the Internet>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 4 Select "接続を手動でセットアップする <Set up my connection manually>" and click "次へ <Next>".



15

9 Enter "ユーザー名 <User name>"/"パス ワード <Password>"/"パスワードの確認

"QoSパケットスケジューラ <QoS Packet Scheduler>"

settings cannot be changed, leave it as it is.

• Your provider may require the settings for IP and DNS information. Make required settings based on information from the provider.



- 15 Click "設定 <Settings>".
- 16 Uncheck all and click "OK".



# 17 Click "OK".

## Setting for Windows 2000

1 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "プログラム <Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>" ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ネットワークとダ イヤルアップ接続 <Network and dial-up connection>".

"ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 <Network and dial-up connection>" screen appears.

## 2 Double-click "新しい接続の作成 <Create new connection>".

"所在地情報 <Location information>" screen is displayed when double-clicking "新しい接続の作成 <New Connection Wizard>" for the first time. Since this screen does not appear the second time and later, proceed to Step 5.

### 3 Enter "市外局番 <Area code>" and click "OK". "電話とモデムのオプション <Phone and modem options>" screen appears.

# Click "OK".

"ネットワークの接続ウィザード <Network Connections Wizard>" screen appears.

- <mark>5</mark> Click "次へ <Next>".
- Select "インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する <Connect to the Internet via dial-up>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 7 Select "インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN)を使って接続します <Set Internet connection</p>

manually or connect using local area network (LAN)>" and click "次へ <Next>".

- 8 Select "電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します <Connect to Internet with dial-up and modem>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- Confirm that "インターネット接続に使うモデムを選択する <Select modem to use for connection to Internet>" is set to "FOMA SA702i" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 10 Enter dial-up connection number in "電話番号 <Phone number>", uncheck "市外局番と ダイヤル情報を使う <Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial>" and click "詳細設 定 <Advanced settings>".
- 11 Click "接続 <Connection>" tab to set items and then click "アドレス <Address>".

Confirm that "接続の種類 <Connection Type>" is set to "PPP (Point to Point Protocol)" and "LCP拡張を無効 にする <Invalid extended LCP>" is checked. "ログオンの手続き <Log-on Procedure>" is set to "なし <No>".

• When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

## 12 Set automatic assignment of IP address and DNS <Domain Name Service> address by ISP, and click "OK".

Set "インターネットサービスプロバイダによる自動割り当 て <Auto-assignment of IP address by Internet service provider>" and "ISPによるDNS(ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て <Auto-assignment of DNS (Domain Name Service) address by ISP>".

• When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

# 13 Click "次へ <Next>".

- 14 Enter "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パス ワード <Password>", and click "次へ <Next>".
  - \*ユーザー名 <User name>"/パスワード <Password>" can be left as blank spaces to connect to mopera U/ mopera. When the screen confirming not to be entered appears, click "はい <Yes>".
  - When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.
- 15 Enter a desired connection name in "接 続名 <Dial-up connection name>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 16 Select "いいえ <No>" and click "次へ <Next>".
- 17 Click "完了 <Finish>".
- 18 Right-click the created dial-up icon and click "プロパティ <Properties>".

16

# 19 Click "全般 <General>" tab to confirm the settings.

If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select "モ デムーFOMA SA702i <modem: FOMA SA702i>" under "接続の方法 <Connection method>". Uncheck "ダイヤル情報を使う <Use the property of Dial>".

## 20 Click "ネットワーク <Networking>" tab and set each item.

Set "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 <Type of dial-up server I am calling>" to "PPP:Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet". Check on just "インターネットプロトコル(TCP/IP) <Internet protocol (TCP/IP)>" for component.

## 21 Click "設定 <Settings>".

- 77 Uncheck all and click "OK".
- 23 Click "OK".

## Setting for Windows 98/Me

Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "プログラム
 <programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>"
 ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ダイヤルアップネットワーク <Dial-up Network>".

"ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ <Welcome to Dial-up Network>" screen appears when starting Dial-up Network for the first time. Since this screen does not appear from the second time, proceed to Step 3.

- <mark>2</mark> Click "次へ <Next>".
- 3 Double-click "新しい接続 <New Connection>".
- 4 Enter a desired connection name in "接続名 <Connection name>" and click "次へ <Next>".
  - ・Set "モデムの選択 <Modem selection>" to "FOMA SA702i".
- 5 Enter dial-up connection number in "電話番号 Phone number>" and click "次へ <Next>".
  - The area code is not required to be entered.
- 6 Click "完了 <Finish>".
  - Confirm the connection name.
- 7 Click "スタート <Start>" ▶ "プログラム
   Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>"
   ▶ "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ダイヤルアップネットワーク <Dial-up Network>".
- 8 Right-click the created dial-up icon and click "プロパティ <Property>".
- 9 Click "全般 <General>" tab to confirm the settings.

If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select "モ デム-FOMA SA702i <modem: FOMA SA702i>" under "接続方法 <Connection method>". Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う <Using the property of the area code and dial>".

## 10 Click "ネットワーク <Networking>" tab and set each item.

"ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 <Dial-up server type>" is set to "PPP: インターネット、Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me <PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me>". Uncheck all of "詳細オブション <Detailed option>", and select only "TCP/IP" for available network Protocol. Click "サーバーの種類 <Server Type>" tab and set "ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 <Dial-up server type>" to "PPP: インターネット、Windows NT Server, Windows 98 <PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98.

# 11 Click "OK".

- "ユーザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード
   <Password>" of "セキュリティ <Security>" tab can be left as blank spaces when connecting to mopera U/mopera on Windows Me.
- When connecting to the provider other than mopera U/mopera, make the setting based on the information from the provider.

## Connecting through dial-up

This section describes the procedures of starting and disconnecting communication.

- Confirm that FOMA terminal is connected to PC properly with FOMA USB connection cable, before connecting.
- The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. Refer to each manual when using other OS.
- Click "スタート <Starb" ▶ "すべてのプログラム</li>
   All Programs>" ▶ "アクセサリ <Accessories>"
   "通信 <Communications>" ▶ "ネットワーク接続
   Network Connections>".
- 2 Double-click the icon of the set connection host.
- 🤧 Confirm the settings and click "ダイヤル <Dial>".
  - Click "接続 <Connect>" on Windows 98/Me.
  - When mopera U/mopera is selected, "ユー ザー名 <User name>" and "パスワード <Password>" can be left as blank spaces.
  - For dial-up connection through other providers, enter "ユーザー名 <User names" and "パスワード <Password>" before clicking "ダイヤル <Dial>".
  - Entry of password is not required next time after selecting "次のユーザーが接続するとき 使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワー ドを保存する <Save the user name and password for the next user to use>".

ample へ接続	?)
6	Q1
ユーザー名(型) パスワード(D):	
□次のユーザー を1条存するの	が接続するとき使用するために、このユーザー名とパスワード 20 1-のみ(0)
<ul> <li>このユー*</li> <li>このコンゼ</li> </ul>	コータを使うすべてのユーザー(色)

## Disconnecting

Closing the Internet browser alone may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection by the following procedure.

 The setting on Windows XP is described as an example. If using other OS, screens shown in this manual are different from the actual ones.

# 1 Double-click the icon of dial-up connection.

The status screen appears.



🤈 Click "切断 <Disconnect>".

# AT command

FOMA terminal supports AT commands, and accepts some extended commands and specified AT commands.

 AT commands are commands to set FOMA terminal functions with PC. These are called "AT command", for "AT" is added at the beginning of commands.

## AT commands

#### AT command input format

Input AT commands within a single line using onebyte (Half Mark) alphanumeric characters.

- AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered in a single line.
- All characters from the first character to the character directly preceding are regarded as a single line.
- Up to 545 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

<Example>

## **ATD\*99\*\*\*1**#

Return mark: Press Enter key. (Command separator)

Parameter: Command's argument

Command: Command name

## AT command input mode

FOMA terminal can be operated using AT commands in the terminal mode on PC (by starting "Hyper terminal" etc.) When PC is in terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate FOMA terminal.

#### Offline mode

FOMA terminal is in stand-by. FOMA terminal must be in stand-by status to use AT commands to control FOMA terminal.

#### Online data mode

FOMA terminal is under communication. If AT commands are entered and directly sent, it may cause malfunction on the modem of the other party. Do not enter AT commands during communication.

#### Online command mode

FOMA terminal can be operated using AT commands even when FOMA terminal is in communication mode. (Some operations are required when entering AT commands.) AT commands can be executed during communication with the other party, and the line stays connected.

# Switching between online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures.

- Enter the code set in "+++" command or "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C\* ER signal OFF when "AT&D1" is set.

To switch online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO

\* USB interface emulates the RS-232C signal line, and the signal control of RS-232C is activated by the communication software.

# **AT command list**

- The list below shows AT commands for FOMA SA702i Modem Port.
- On the entry of AT commands, entered "¥" may appear as "\", depending on the font setting of the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal is powered off, the set value may not be recorded.

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT%V	Displays FOMA terminal version.	Displays FOMA terminal version in "VerX.XXX" format etc.	AT%V Ver1.000 OK
AT&C <n></n>	Sets the operating conditions of the circuit CD (DCD) for DTE.*1	<ul> <li>n=0: Always ON.</li> <li>n=1: Varies according to line connection status (default).</li> <li>When set to "&amp;C1", the CD signal is set to ON immediately before sending "CONNECT" when ending connection. The CD signal is set to OFF immediately before the line is disconnected and "NO CARRIER" is sent.</li> </ul>	AT&C1
AT&D <n></n>	Sets the operation performed when circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE is switched from ON to OFF under online data mode. *1	<ul> <li>n=0: Ignores status (always regarded to be ON).</li> <li>n=1: Moves to online command mode when status changes from ON to OFF.</li> <li>n=2: Disconnects line and moves to offline mode when status changes from ON to OFF (default).</li> </ul>	AT&D1
AT&E <n></n>	Selects the type of speed display used while connecting. *1	This command is valid only if "ATX <n>" (→P25) is other than n=0. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal (default).</n>	AT&E1
AT&F	Resets the AT command settings of FOMA terminal to the factory default. When this command is entered during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected.		AT&F <b>J</b> OK
AT&S <n></n>	Sets how to control the data set ready (DR) signal to be output to DTE. *1	n=0: Always ON (default). n=1: On when the line is connected.	AT&SO <b>J</b> OK
AT&W	Registers the current settings to FOMA terminal.		AT&W <b>J</b> OK

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT*DANTE	Indicates FOMA terminal reception level by numbers.	By executing "AT*DANTE", displays in "*DANTE: <n>" format. n=0: ∰ (Out of service area) n=1: ℃ n=2: ℃ n=3: ℃</n>	AT*DANTE *DANTE:3 OK AT*DANTE=? *DANTE:(0-3) OK (Shows the range of values that can be displayed.)
AT*DGANSM= <n></n>	Sets the reject/accept setting mode for incoming packet communication. The setting made by this command is only valid for the packet communication received after the command is entered.* <sup>2</sup>	n=0: Reject/accept settings are OFF (default). n=1: Accepts incoming packet communication. n=2: Rejects incoming packet communication.	AT*DGANSM=0 OK AT*DGANSM? *DGANSM:0 OK
AT*DGPIR= <n></n>	The setting made by this command is valid when communication is sent or received. Also in dial-up network setting, you can add "186 (Activate)" or "184 (Deactivate)" to the dial-up connection number.*2	<ul> <li>n=0: When packet communication connection is established, connects to APN directly (default).</li> <li>n=1: When packet communication connection is established, connects to APN with "184" added.</li> <li>n=2: When packet communication connection is established, connects to APN with "186" added.</li> <li>When "186" (Activate)/"184"</li> <li>(Deactivate) is specified both by the command and dial-up network</li> <li>→P14</li> </ul>	AT*DGPIR=0
AT*DRPW	Indicates the level of power reception of the radio wave, received by FOMA terminal.	By setting "AT*DRPW", displays in "*DRPW: <n>" format.</n>	AT*DRPW *DRPW:0 OK AT*DRPW=? *DRPW:(0-75) OK (Shows the range of values that can be displayed.)
+++	This command switches the mode of FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode. The escape guard interval is "1 second" (fixed value).		
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the last communication.	See "Disconnection reason display" →P28	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets dial-up connection (APN) when sending packet communication.* <sup>2</sup>	See "Supplement to AT command" →P28	See "Supplement to AT command" →P28



AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (quality of service) sent from network when PPP packet communication is established.* <sup>2</sup>	See "Supplement to AT command" →P28	See "Supplement to AT command" →P28
AT+CGEQREQ	Registers the criteria for judging whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) requesting to network when packet communication is established. <sup>*2</sup>	See "Supplement to AT command" →P29	See "Supplement to AT command" →P29
AT+CGMR	Displays the FOMA terminal version.		AT+CGMR 123456789 0123456 OK
AT+CGREG= <n></n>	Sets whether to report network service registration status. The status reported is "Within service area" or "Out of service area".*1	<n> 0: Not notified (default) 1: Notified If "AT+CGREG=1" is set, when the terminal is moved from "Within service area" to "Out of service area" or vice versa, the status is reported in the format "+CGREG:<stat>". <stat> parameter supports "0, 1, 4". <stat> 0: Out of service area 1: Within service area (home) 4: Unknown When "AT+CGREG?" is set, "+CGREG:<n>, <stat>" is displayed.</stat></n></stat></stat></stat></n>	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to "Notified".) AT+CGREG? +CGREG:1, 0 OK (Means Notified, and Out of service area.)
AT+CGSN	Displays FOMA terminal serial No.		AT+CGSN 123456789 012345 OK
AT+CLIP= <n></n>	Sets whether to display Caller ID of sender on PC when 64K data communication is received. * <sup>1</sup>	<n> O: Does not display the result (default). D: Displays the result. When "AT+CLIP?" is set, "+CLIP:<n>, <m>" is displayed. <m> O: NW setting that does not send Caller ID to the other party when sending communication. D: NW setting that sends Caller ID to the other party when sending communication. D: Unknown</m></m></n></n>	AT+CLIP=0



AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT+CLIR= <n></n>	Sets whether to send	<n></n>	AT+CLIR=2
	phone number to remote device when sending 64K	0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send	ОК
	data communication.* <sup>2</sup>	2: Sends (default) When "AT+CLIR?" is set, "+CLIR: <n>, <m>" is displayed.</m></n>	
		<pre><m> 0: CLIR deactivated (always send)</m></pre>	
		1: CLIR always activated (never send) 2: Unknown	
		3: CLIR temporary mode (default=does not send)	
		4: CLIR temporary mode (default=send)	
AT+CMEE= <n></n>	Sets whether to display error report at FOMA	Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to report reasons by	AT+CMEE=0
	terminal.*1	numbers or characters.	AT+CNUM
		<ul><li>0: Displays "ERROR" without result code (default).</li><li>1: Uses the result code to indicate</li></ul>	AT+CMEE=1
		the reason by numbers. 2: Uses the result code to indicate	+CME ERROR:10
		the reason by characters. When error report display is set as	+CMEE:0 OK
		n=1 or n=2, error reports are displayed as follows.	
		"+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx means numbers or characters. "Error report list" →P28)	
AT+CNUM	Displays Own number of the FOMA terminal.	By executing "AT+CNUM", displays in +CNUM:," <number>",<type></type></number>	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190
		format. <number> Phone number <type></type></number>	12345678",145 OK
		129: International access code, + not included.	
		145: International access code, + included.	
AT+CPIN	Enter the security code of UIM (FOMA card).	Enter PIN1/PIN2 code and PUK. Refer to "Result code" →P29	(Enter PIN1/PIN2 code) AT+CPIN="1234"
			(Enter PUK and new PIN1/PIN2 code) AT+CPIN="12345678",
			+CPIN:READY OK

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT+CR= <mode> AT+CRC=<n></n></mode>	Sets whether to display information indicating packet communication or 64K data communication before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection. *1 Sets whether to use expanded result codes	<mode> 0: Does not display (default) 1: Displays "GPRS" is displayed for packet communication, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communication. n=0: Does not use the code (default) n=1: Uses the code</mode>	AT+CR=1 OK ATD*99***1# +CR:GPRS CONNECT AT+CR? +CR:0 OK AT+CRC=0 OK
	when communication is received.*1		AT+CRC? +CRC:0 OK
AT+CREG= <n></n>	Sets whether to display the status "Within service area"/"Out of service area" of network. * 1	<n> O: Not notified (default) 1: Notified If "AT+CREG=1" is set, when the terminal is moved from "within service area" to "out of service area" or vice versa, the status is reported in the format "+CREG:<stat>". <stat> parameter supports "0, 1, 4". <stat> O: Out of service area 1: Within service area 4: Unknown When "AT+CREG?" is set, "+CREG:<n>, <stat>" is displayed.</stat></n></stat></stat></stat></n>	AT+CREG=1
AT+CUSD= <n></n>	Sets network setup of optional services etc.	<n> 0: Interim result+CUSD: <m>[,<str>,<dcs>] is not transmitted. 1: Interim result+CUSD: <m>[,<str>,<dcs>] is transmitted. <str> only allows 0 to 9, # or *. <str> parameter is quoted by "" because it is string parameter.</str></str></dcs></str></m></dcs></str></m></n>	AT+CUSD=0,"xxxxx xxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1,"*148 *1*0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148*7#", 0 OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name of the FOMA terminal in one- byte alphanumeric characters.		AT+GMI <b>L</b> SANYO Electric Co., Ltd. OK
AT+GMM	Displays the product name of the FOMA terminal in one-byte alphanumeric characters.		AT+GMM FOMA SA702i OK
AT+GMR	Displays FOMA terminal version.	Displays FOMA terminal version in "VerX.XXX" format etc.	AT+GMR Ver1.000 OK

23

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT+IFC= <n,m></n,m>	Sets control method of local flow between PC and FOMA terminal.* <sup>1</sup>	<ul> <li>DCE by DTE(<n>)</n></li> <li>0: Performs no flow control.</li> <li>1: Performs XON/XOFF flow control.</li> <li>2: Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default).</li> <li>DTE by DCE(<m>)</m></li> <li>0: Performs no flow control.</li> <li>1: Performs XON/XOFF flow control.</li> <li>2: Performs RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default).</li> </ul>	AT+IFC=2,2
AT+WS46= <n></n>	Sets wireless network used when sending communication. It does not affect reception.	n=22: FOMA network (fixed value)	АТ+WS46=22 <b>Д</b> ОК
ΑΤΑ	Performs the receiving process when entered during 64K data communication.		RING ATA <b>L</b> CONNECT
A/	Used to execute the previously executed command again.	When previous response is "ERROR", "ERROR" is returned.	A/ OK
ATD	Performs sending process. *3	Packet communication: "ATD*999*** <cid>#]" When "ATD*99#" is entered, "<cid>=1" is used. (If <cid> is omitted from input, "<cid>=1" is set.) When the format beginning with "ATD184*99" is entered, "184" is added to the APN set for the specified <cid>. (Use "186" in the same way, to notify Caller ID.) 64K data communication: "ATD [parameter] [phone number]]]" Call process is not executed if the phone number contains characters other than '0 to 9, *, #, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, -(Hyphen), space, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, .(comma)". Characters in can be entered but are not recognized in dialing.</cid></cid></cid></cid></cid>	ATD*99***1#
ATE <n></n>	Sets whether FOMA terminal will return echo for the command sent from PC. *1	n=0: Echo "OFF" n=1: Echo "ON" (default) Set "n=1" for general use. If the PC has echo function, set this command to "n=0" to prevent double display of characters.	ATE1

AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
ATH ATI <n></n>	Disconnects the line when entered during packet communication or 64K data communication.		(Under communication) +++ OK ATH
ATI <n></n>	Displays the confirmation code.	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SA702i). n=2: Displays product version in "VerX.XXX" format.	AT10
ATO	Returns from online command mode to online data mode during communication.		ATO <b>J</b> CONNECT
ATQ <n></n>	Sets whether to display result code.*1	n=0: Displays (default) n=1: Does not display	ATQ0 🛃 OK
ATV <n></n>	Sets result code display method. *1	Displays all result codes in numeric or alphabetical characters. n=0: Displays in numeric characters. n=1: Displays in alphabetic characters (default).	ATV1
ATX <n></n>	Sets whether to display the speed in the "CONNECT" display for the connection. It also detects busy or dial tones.*1 Busy tone detection: Sends "BUSY" response when the destination is busy. Dial tone detection: Detects whether FOMA terminal is connected. Speed display: Sets whether to display speed on the "CONNECT" display when connecting.	<ul> <li>n=0: No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and no speed displayed.</li> <li>n=1: No busy tone, no dial tone detected, and speed displayed.</li> <li>n=2: No busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed displayed.</li> <li>n=3: Busy tone detected, no dial tone detected, and speed displayed.</li> <li>n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed displayed.</li> <li>n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, and speed displayed.</li> </ul>	ATX1
ATZ	Resets FOMA terminal AT command settings. *4	FOMA terminal AT command setting values is reset to that of nonvolatile memory. When this command is entered during communication, the terminal is reset after the line is disconnected.	(In online mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (In offline mode) ATZ OK
ATS0= <n></n>	Sets the number of rings until FOMA terminal answers automatically.*1	n=0: Does not answer automatically (default). n=1 to 255: Answers automatically after specified number of rings.	ATS0=0



AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
ATS2= <n></n>	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is invalid.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3= <n></n>	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to identify the end of AT command character strings. It is appended to the end of echoed command character strings and result codes. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=13)	ATS3=13 <b>J</b> OK ATS3? <b>J</b> 013 OK
ATS4= <n></n>	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	When result code is displayed in alphabetical characters, appended after [CR] character. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=10)	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5= <n></n>	Sets the back space (BS) character.	When this character is detected during AT command input, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The set value cannot be changed. (default: n=8)	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6= <n></n>	Sets the duration of pause until dialing starts (in seconds).	The Register is set by this command, but performs no operation. n: 2 to 10 (default: n=5)	ATS6=10
ATS8= <n></n>	Sets pause time when commas are dialed (in seconds).	This command sets the Register but does not affect the pause time (3 sec). n=0: Not paused n: 1 to 255 (default: n=3)	ATS8=3
ATS10= <n></n>	Sets the delay time for automatic disconnection (in seconds). (1/10 second).* <sup>1</sup>	The Register is set by this command, but performs no operation. n: 1 to 255 (default: n=1)	ATS10=1
ATS30= <n></n>	The line is disconnected if no data is sent or received for longer than the time set here.	The setting of this command is valid only during 64K data communication. <n> is set by minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default: n=0) With n=0, inactive timer is set to "OFF".</n>	ATS30=3
ATS103= <n></n>	Sets the separator used when sending with received sub addresses.	The setting of this command is valid only during 64K data communication. n=0: *asterisk n=1: / slash (default) n=2: ¥mark or backslash	АТS103=0 <b>µ</b> ОК
ATS104= <n></n>	Sets the separator used when sending with outgoing sub addresses.	The setting of this command is valid only during 64K data communication. n=0: # pound symbol n=1: % percent symbol (default) n=2: & ampersand	ATS104=0 <b>4</b> OK



AT command	Overview	Parameter/Description	Command examples
AT¥S	Displays the currently set		AT¥S
	commands and S register		E1Q0V1X4
	settings.		&C1&D2&S0&E1
			¥V0
			S000=000
			S002=043
			S003=013
			S004=010
			S005=008
			S006=005
			S007=060
			S008=003
			S010=001
			S030=000
			S103=001
			S104=001
			OK
AT¥V <n></n>	Selects type of response	This command is valid only when	AT¥V0
	codes used while	"ATX <n>" command is set other than</n>	OK
	connecting.*1	n=0. →P25	
		n=0: Does not use communication	
		protocol result codes (default)	
		n=1: Uses communication protocol	
		result codes	

\*1 The settings are registered in FOMA terminal by "&W" command.
\*2 Resetting with "&F" or "Z" commands is not available.
\*3 "ATDN ] and "ATDL ] can be used for redial calling.
\*4 When "Z" command is executed before "&W" command, the terminal is reset to the last status registered in memory, and prior changes are erased.

## Disconnection reason list

#### Packet communication

Value	Description
27	APN does not exist or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Not subscribed to packet communication.
36	Disconnected normally.

#### 64K data communication

Value	Description
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected normally.
17	Communication is failed because the line of the other party is busy.
18	You made a call but had no response within the specified time.
19	Communication is failed because the other party is dialing.
21	The other party rejected your call.
63	The service and option for network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	A call to a terminal with different terminal property is made or a call from a terminal with different terminal property is received.

## **Error report list**

No.	Text display	Description
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card)
15	SIM wrong	SIM, other than DoCoMo's (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	The password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error

## Supplement to AT command

#### Command name: +CGDCONT=[parameter]

- · Outline
- Sets the host (APN) for packet communication. Format
- - +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]
- Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 16 <APN>: Optional \* <cid> is the number used to manage host (APN) for packet communication to be registered to FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3. <APN> is an optional character string for each connection to indicate the destination to connect.

#### Execution example

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=3). AT+CGDCONT=3, "PPP", "abc" OK

 Operation performed when parameter is omitted

#### AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. Setting for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default.

## AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears specified <cid> settings. Setting for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default. AT+CGDCONT=?

## Displays a list of assignable value.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current set value.

## Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

#### · Outline

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS (Quality of Service) provided by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

#### • Format

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

## Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 16 <Maximum bitrate UL> : None (Default) or 64 <Maximum bitrate DL> : None (Default) or 384

\* <cid> is the number used to manage host (APN) for packet communication to be registered to FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3. For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If set to "None (default)", all speeds are permitted. Note that packet communication may not be connected if the parameter is set to "64" and "384", since any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted.



- · Execution example
  - ① Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2) AT+CGEQMIN=2 OK
  - 2 Command used to permit only 64 kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=3)

AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384

- 3 Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=4) AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64 OK
- ④ Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=5) AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384

OK

 Operation performed when parameter is omitted

## AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

#### AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

## AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays a list of assignable value.

#### AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays the current settings.

#### Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]

#### · Outline

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested to the network when transmission is executed during PPP packet communication.

#### • Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

#### Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid. <cid>: 1 to 16

\* <cid> is the number used to manage host (APN) for packet communication to be registered to FOMA terminal. "1 to 16" can be registered in FOMA terminal. By default, APN ("mopera.ne.jp") for connecting to "mopera" is set for <cid>=1, and APN ("mopera.net") for mopera U is set for <cid>=3.

#### · Execution example

(when <cid>=3) AT+CGEQREQ=3

 Operation performed when parameter is omitted

#### AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the setting by default. AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the setting by default.

#### AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays a list of assignable value. **AT+CGEQREQ?** 

Displays the current settings.

## **Result code**

#### Result code

No.	Text display	Description
0	ОК	Operation performed normally.
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to the other party.
2	RING	Call incoming
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone.
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Completed/Connection Time-out
100 *	RESTRICTION *	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial call restricted.

\* When "RESTRICTION" (Number: 100) is displayed, the communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.

#### Extended result code

No.	Text display	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected at 1,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected at 2,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected at 4,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected at 7,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected at 9,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected at 14,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected at 19,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected at 38,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected at 57,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected at 115,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected at 230,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected at 460,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC.

#### AT+CPIN? result code

PIN2 Status PIN1 Status	Authorized	Waiting for input	Waiting for PUK input	Blocked
Authorized	READY	SIM PIN2	SIM PUK2	READY
Waiting for input	SIM PIN1	SIM PIN1	SIM PIN1	SIM PIN1
Waiting for PUK input	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1	SIM PUK1
Blocked	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR	ERROR

## Information

- ●When ATV <n> command (→P25) is set to n=1, the result code is displayed in the alphabetical display format (default). When the command is set to n=0, the result code is displayed in the numerical display format.
- Communication speed is displayed as compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C is retained, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to PC with FOMA USB connection cable.

## Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connect via PPProverUD. (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
5	PACKET	Connect with packet transmission.

## Example of result code display

## When ATX 0 is set:

Regardless of the settings of AT¥V command (→P27), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1# text display CONNECT

Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1# numerical 1 display

## When ATX 4 is set:

 When ATX4, AT¥V0 is set (default) Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the format, CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal and PC>.

Example of	: ATD*99***1#
text display	CONNECT 460800

Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1# numerical 121 display • When ATX4, AT¥V1 is set:

The code is displayed upon completion of connection in the following format, CONNECT<speed between FOMA terminal and PC><Communication protocol><dial-up connection APN>/<upstream maximum speed (from FOMA terminal to radio base station)>/ <downstream maximum speed (from radio base station to FOMA terminal)>.\*

Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1# text display CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384 (indicates that the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp, providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.) Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

Example of : ATD\*99\*\*\*1# numerical 1215 display

\* When AT¥V1 is set, <Dial-up connection APN> and later are displayed only when packet transmission is used for connection.